





CORNELL  
UNIVERSITY  
LIBRARY

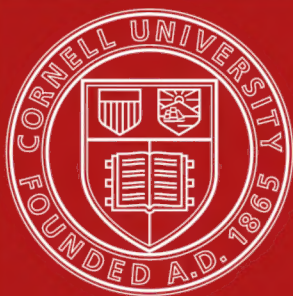


GIFT OF  
Coolidge Otis  
Chapman  
(Cornell, PhD  
1927)

CORNELL UNIVERSITY LIBRARY



3 1924 059 937 726



Cornell University  
Library

The original of this book is in  
the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in  
the United States on the use of the text.

<http://www.archive.org/details/cu31924059937726>





















# SIR GAWAINE;

A COLLECTION

OF

ANCIENT ROMANCE-POEMS,

BY

SCOTISH AND ENGLISH AUTHORS,

RELATING TO THAT CELEBRATED

KNIGHT OF THE ROUND TABLE,

WITH

AN INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND A GLOSSARY.

By SIR FREDERIC MADDEN, K.H.,

F.R.S., F.S.A., M.R.I.A., CORR. F.S.A.E., &c.

KEEPER OF THE MSS. IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM.

LONDON:

PRINTED BY RICHARD AND JOHN E. TAYLOR.

---

M.DCCC.XXXIX.





AT A MEETING OF THE COMMITTEE OF THE BANNATYNE  
CLUB, held at Edinburgh in the Hall of the Antiquarian  
Society, on Monday the 29th of August, 1836 :

RESOLVED,

That a Volume intituled *Syr Gawayne*, A COLLECTION OF  
ANCIENT ROMANCE-POEMS BY SCOTISH AND ENGLISH AUTHORS,  
RELATING TO THAT CELEBRATED KNIGHT OF THE ROUND TABLE,  
be printed at London, for the use of the Members, under the  
superintendence of SIR FREDERIC MADDEN, K.H.

DAVID LAING,  
Secretary.



# THE BANNATYNE CLUB.

AUGUST, M.DCCC.XXXIX.

---

THOMAS THOMSON, ESQ.

PRESIDENT.

THE EARL OF ABERDEEN.

THE EARL OF ASHBURNHAM.

THE DUKE OF BEDFORD.

LORD BELHAVEN AND HAMILTON.

ROBERT BELL, ESQ.

WILLIAM BELL, ESQ.

WILLIAM BLAIR, ESQ.

THE REV. PHILIP BLISS, D.C.L.

10 JOHN BORTHWICK, ESQ. 

BERIAH BOTFIELD, ESQ.

THE MARQUIS OF BREADALBANE.

GEORGE BRODIE, ESQ.

CHARLES DASHWOOD BRUCE, ESQ.

O. TYNDALL BRUCE, ESQ.

THE DUKE OF BUCCLEUGH AND QUEENSBERRY.

JAMES CAMPBELL, ESQ.

WILLIAM CLERK, ESQ.

HON. HENRY COCKBURN, LORD COCKBURN, *VICE-*

*PRESIDENT.*

## THE BANNATYNE CLUB.

---

- 20 DAVID CONSTABLE, ESQ.  
ANDREW COVENTRY, ESQ.  
JAMES T. GIBSON-CRAIG, ESQ., *TREASURER*.  
WILLIAM GIBSON-CRAIG, ESQ.  
GEORGE CRANSTOUN, ESQ.  
JAMES DENNISTOUN, ESQ.  
GEORGE DUNDAS, ESQ.  
RIGHT HON. W. DUNDAS, LORD CLERK REGISTER.  
LORD DUNFERMLINE.  
LORD FRANCIS EGERTON.
- 30 SIR CHARLES DALRYMPLE FERGUSON, BART.  
ROBERT FERGUSON, ESQ.  
GENERAL SIR RONALD C. FERGUSON.  
COUNT MERCER DE FLAHAULT.  
HON. JOHN FULLERTON, LORD FULLERTON.  
WILLIAM GOTT, ESQ.  
ROBERT GRAHAM, ESQ.  
LORD GRAY.  
RIGHT HON. THOMAS GRENVILLE.  
THE EARL OF HADDINGTON.
- 40 THE DUKE OF HAMILTON AND BRANDON.  
ED. W. A. DRUMMOND HAY, ESQ.  
SIR THOMAS BUCHAN HEPBURN, BART.  
JAMES MAITLAND HOG, ESQ.  
LORD HOLLAND.  
JOHN HOPE, ESQ., DEAN OF FACULTY.  
COSMO INNES, ESQ.  
DAVID IRVING, LL.D.

## THE BANNATYNE CLUB.

---

JAMES IVORY, ESQ., SOLICITOR-GENERAL.

SIR HENRY JARDINE, KT.

50 HON. FRANCIS JEFFREY, LORD JEFFREY.

JOHN GARDINER KINNEAR, ESQ.

THE EARL OF KINNOULL.

DAVID LAING, ESQ., *SECRETARY*.

THE EARL OF LAUDERDALE.

REV. JOHN LEE, D.D.

ALEXANDER WELLESLEY LEITH, ESQ.

LORD LINDSAY.

JAMES LOCH, ESQ.

LORD LOVAT.

60 THE MARQUIS OF LOTHIAN.

ALEXANDER MACDONALD, ESQ.

WILLIAM M'DOWALL, ESQ.

HON. J. H. MACKENZIE, LORD MACKENZIE.

JAMES MACKENZIE, ESQ.

JOHN WHITEFOORD MACKENZIE, ESQ.

WILLIAM FORBES MACKENZIE, ESQ.

JAMES MAIDMENT, ESQ.

THOMAS MAITLAND, ESQ.

VISCOUNT MELVILLE.

70 WILLIAM HENRY MILLER, ESQ.

THE EARL OF MINTO.

HON. SIR J. W. MONCRIEFF, LORD MONCRIEFF.

HON. SIR JOHN A. MURRAY, LORD MURRAY.

WILLIAM MURRAY, ESQ.

MACVEY NAPIER, ESQ.

## THE BANNATYNE CLUB.

---

SIR FRANCIS PALGRAVE.

LORD PANMURE.

HENRY PETRIE, ESQ.

SIR THOMAS PHILLIPPS, BART.

80 EDWARD PIPER, ESQ.

ROBERT PITCAIRN, ESQ.

ALEXANDER PRINGLE, ESQ.

JOHN RICHARDSON, ESQ.

THE EARL OF ROSEBERY.

RIGHT HON. A. RUTHERFURD, LORD ADVOCATE.

THE EARL OF SELKIRK.

JAMES SKENE, ESQ.

WILLIAM SMYTHE, ESQ.

THE EARL SPENCER.

90 JOHN SPOTTISWOODE, ESQ.

EDWARD STANLEY, ESQ.

MAJOR-GENERAL SIR JOSEPH STRATON.

THE HON. CHARLES FRANCIS STUART.

THE DUKE OF SUTHERLAND.

ALEXANDER THOMSON, ESQ.

WALTER C. TREVELYAN, ESQ.

DAWSON TURNER, ESQ.

ADAM URQUHART, ESQ.

RIGHT HON. SIR GEORGE WARRENDER, BART.

100 THE VEN. ARCHDEACON WRANGHAM.



## INTRODUCTION.

---

IN collecting for the first time the various Scottish and English poems relating to one of the most celebrated Knights of the Round Table, it might seem desirable to examine critically the sources whence the history of his exploits has been derived. But the subject is of such vast extent, is involved in so much obscurity, and, moreover, has been discussed with such conflicting theories and assertions, that the limits I here propose to myself will only allow me to state in succinct terms the conclusions which, after a long course of reading, I have arrived at.

The inquiry divides itself into two branches, closely connected together ; the first of which embraces the question of the antiquity of Welsh or Armorican traditions, and the share of Geoffrey of Monmouth in the compilation of the far-famed *Brut* ; the second includes the history of the ponderous French prose Romances of the Round Table, their authors, and the period of their composition. With regard to the former, it is impossible, I think, for any one, who is not prejudiced, to read the arguments of Ellis, Price, De la Rue, and the Author of “ *Britannia after the Romans*,” with the testimonies produced, and not to admit, that previous to the time of Geoffrey a mass of popular traditions relating to Arthur and his chivalry must have existed, and was circulated first by the native bards, and afterwards by the Anglo-Norman minstrels.

On these traditions the earliest Prose Romances appear to have been subsequently based, the materials for which were arranged, embellished, and enlarged by the imagination and invention of the various compilers. It is true that these writers are unanimous in referring to a Latin original, from which they profess to translate; and although the existence of such a work is called in question by Ritson, Scott, and Southey, yet I am not prepared altogether to deny it\*. But setting this aside, it appears to me, after a somewhat laborious perusal of the printed editions of these works, compared with existing manuscripts, that they must have been compiled in the following order.—1. The *Roman du Saint Graal*, sometimes intitled the *Roman de Joseph d'Arimathie*, composed by *Robert de Borron*. In the printed editions this is called the *first part* of the Saint Graal. 2. The *Roman de Merlin*, by the same. 3. The *Roman de Lancelot du Lac*, composed by Walter Map†. 4. The *Roman du Quête du Saint Graal*, by the same. In the editions this forms the *second part*. 5. The *Roman de la Mort Artus*, by the same, and originally distinct, but in the printed editions united to the Lancelot. 6. The first portion of the *Roman de Tristan*, by *Luces, Seigneur de Gast*. 7. The conclusion of *Tristan*, by *Helie de Borron*; and 8. The *Roman de Gyron le Courtois*, by the same. Of these the first six were written in the

\* Southey writes, "I do not believe that any of these Romances ever existed in *Latin*.—By whom or for whom could they have been written in that language?" *Pref. to Morte d'Arthur*, p. xvi. I merely stop to reply, that it is not more unreasonable to suppose a Latin work should have existed on the exploits of Arthur than on those of Charlemagne. I may also add, for the information of those whom it may concern, that I have myself read no less than *five Latin* romances still existing in manuscript, some of which are of considerable length. Three of these relate to *Arthur, Meriadoc, Gawayne*, and other British heroes; the fourth is the original of Chaucer's *Tale of Constance*; and the fifth is the *Knight of the Swan*.

† This is the mode in which his name is spelt in the ancient MSS. of the Romances, and it thus appears in an original charter preserved in the Cotton collection, by which he grants to Aunfelisa and her son John twelve acres of land in Wilesdune, part of his prebend of Mapesbury, co. Middlesex. Among the witnesses to this charter is "*Filippo Map, nepote meo*."

latter half of the twelfth century, and the remainder in the first half of the thirteenth. To these must be added the metrical romances composed by Chrestien de Troyes, between the years 1170 and 1195, as also the later prose compilations of Rusticien de Pise and his followers, in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries.

Having thus, I trust, successfully pointed out a clue to the labyrinth in which all our writers on early poetry have lost themselves, I shall proceed to consider the history, character, and exploits assigned to our Hero **Syr Gawayne** in this phalanx of romance authorities; the utility of which in illustrating the Arthurian cycle of fiction will be admitted, perhaps, as a sufficient excuse for the space it may occupy.

Our attention is naturally directed in the first place to the remains of the Welsh bards, but from those at present extant we learn but little. In the Triads we find *Gwalchmai*, the son of *Gwyar*, (who is identified with the *Walwainus* or *Galwanus* of Geoffrey and the *Gauvain* of the Anglo-Norman romancers,) recorded as one of the three golden-tongued or eloquent chiefs, whose persuasion none could resist; and in another passage, he is named as one of the three chiefs most courteous to strangers and guests\*. There is extant also a dialogue between *Gwalchmai* and *Trystan*†, and some of his adventures are preserved in the Red Book of Hergest, in Jesus College, Oxford, but I should apprehend that all of these have been borrowed from the Anglo-Norman romance-writers‡. Certain it is, that the stories in the *Ma-*

\* Thus also in the *Roman de Meliadus*, when Arthur and his knights are out riding, a stranger comes up, and inquires for the king.—“*Et messire Gauvain, qui estoit nouvel chevalier à celluy temps, qui estoit si debonaire et si courtois à toutes choses, que de sa courtoisie alloient parlant les estranges et les privez*, respondit, ‘Ouy, sire, veez le la;’ et luy monstra le roy Artus.” f. xv<sup>b</sup>, fol. ed. 1528.

† Printed at length in Lady C. Guest’s edition of the *Mabinogion*, pt. i. p. 118, 8vo, 1839.

‡ Leland says in his *Assertio Arthuri*, “*Melchinus, vates Britannicus, Gallovinus celebrat nomen.*” *Collectan.*, v. 24; and Bale adds, that this Melchin wrote *De Arthuri mensa rotunda*.

*binogion* referred to by Owen and others as proofs of the antiquity of the British traditions respecting Gawayne, are only translations of the *Chevalier au Lion* and the *Perceval le Gallois*. Turning therefore to Geoffrey of Monmouth, whose history was finished about the year 1138\*, and, consequently, at least twenty years earlier than the presumed date of any Anglo-Norman romance on the Round Table, we collect the following particulars.

*Walwainus* was the eldest son of Loth, sovereign of the province of Lothian and the adjacent territories, including the Orkneys, by Anna†, half-sister of Arthur. At the age of twelve years he was sent by his uncle to Rome, and delivered to the charge of Pope Sulpicius, from whom he received knighthood‡. The next mention of him occurs as one of the chiefs who accompanied Arthur to France, to encounter the Romans. He is sent§ with two others to treat with the emperor Lucius Tiberius, and purposely, to provoke a war, he cuts off the head of the emperor's nephew. In the decisive battle which shortly afterwards took place near Langres, he held with Hoel the joint command of the fourth division of Arthur's forces, and his prowess contributed

See what is said of his work on Glastonbury by the former, *De Scriptt. Britannicis*, vol. i. p. 41; and compare *Collectanea*, iv. 153, with the work of John of Glastonbury, published by Hearne, 8vo, 1726, vol. i. pp. 30, 55.

\* See Dr. Lloyd's letter to Price, in Owen's *British Remains*, 8vo, 1777. The author of "Britannia after the Romans," never could have read this, although he refers to it, and he is much mistaken, p. 21, in asserting that Sigebert of Gemblou, who died in 1112, was acquainted with Geoffrey's History, and thus confounding Sigebert with his interpolator. For Sigebert's genuine text see the edition of Miræus, 4to, Antv. 1608.

† Ellis says, that according to the chronicles of Brittany, Anna was married to Budic, king of Armorica, and her sister united to Loth. *Metr. Rom.* i. 59, ed. 1811. In the English metrical *Arthour and Merlin* Gawayne's mother is named *Belisent*, p. 97, 4to, 1838, and in Malory's *Morte d' Arthur*, she is called *Margawse*, i. 4. 4to, 1817.

‡ This passage is singularly misunderstood by Fordun, lib. 3, c. 25.

§ Wace, *Lazamon*, and Robert of Brunne add, that the cause of his being selected was that from his education at Rome he understood both the Latin and the British tongues.

mainly to the victory. He fights with the emperor single-handed, but they are separated by the surrounding combatants, and in the *melée* the latter is slain. After this succeeds the history of Mordred's treason, the return of Arthur, and the destruction of his Round Table.

The translators and imitators of Geoffrey have altered and amplified the above outline, but the general features remain the same. Wace has mistaken one passage in Geoffrey, and says that Gawayne arrived from Rome to assist Arthur in his expedition to Norway\*; and this interpretation is followed by Lazamon and Robert of Brunne. The passage in the latter is hitherto unedited, and may therefore be quoted here.

Loth sone, Syr Wawan,  
 Had bene at Rome to lere Romain,  
 W<sup>t</sup> Supplice the pape to wonne,  
 Honour to lere, langage to konne.  
 Ther was he dubbid knyght,  
 And holden hardy, strong and wight.  
 Syr Supplice had don his ende,  
 To Bretayn home Wawan gan wende.  
 Noble he was and curteis,  
*Honour of him men rede and seis ;*  
 He lufed mesure and fair beryng,  
 Pride ne boste lufed he no thing ;  
 Fals and fikele lesyng he hated,  
 Auauntour alle suilk he bated ;  
 More he gaf than he hette,  
 More he did than terme of-sette.

*MS. Inner Temple, No. 511, 7. f. 63, c. 2.*

Throughout the *Brut*, Gawayne is uniformly eulogised in similar terms, and placed first on the list of the Round Table,—a su-

\* *Roman du Brut*, ii. 79, 8vo, Rouen, 1839. Ellis also commits the same error, and increases it by saying, that Gawayne was invested with arms by Arthur. *Metr. Rom.* i. 65.

periority indeed which in that work there were no Lancelots or Tristans to dispute. His adventures are, however, confined to the circle already described, and contain so small a share of the marvellous, that they might easily have been accepted as grave matter of history.

It is to the authors, therefore, of the prose legends of the Round Table we must look for the invention or preservation of those numerous romantic narratives which record the exploits of Gawayne and his fellows on a more ample canvass, and clothe them with a character purely imaginative.

In the earliest of these, the *Roman du Saint Graal*, sometimes called the *Roman de Joseph d' Arimathie*, the knights of the Round Table are not commemorated, since it relates more particularly to the history of the Holy Vessel, and to the fabulous descendants of Joseph, in whose hands the miraculous relique remained, until its arrival in Britain.

The second on the list is *Mertin*, which perhaps is the most curious of the series, and best intitled to be considered a compilation founded on Armorican or Welsh traditions. In this we recognise the Gawayne of Geoffrey, but with such additions to his history, and such a marvellous character given to his exploits, as to render him the chief personage in the romance. The writer exhausts all his powers of language in praise of the valor, courtesy, and knightly bearing of the prince of Orkney:—" *Car le compte dit, que ce fut le plus saige chevalier en toutes choses qui fust au siecle, et le mieulx aprins, et le plus courtois, et le moins mesdisant d' aultruy\**." At the period of his birth Merlin pronounces his eulogium to Arthur, as destined to be one of the best and most loyal knights in the world. At an early age he comes with his three brothers to assist the British monarch in his war against the

\* Vol. ii. f. 51<sup>b</sup>, ed. 1498, 4to.



Saxons, who were then ravaging the kingdom, and after a series of sanguinary battles succeeds in expelling them. On account of his prowess he is made a knight of the Round Table, and appointed by Arthur constable\* of his household, and the next of rank to himself. After this he is employed in an expedition against king Claudas of Gaul and his Roman allies, whom he defeats with immense slaughter. At a later period of the history he is employed against the Roman emperor, and the narrative here is nearly similar to that of Geoffrey. In one MS. I have consulted, it is stated that Gawayne slew the emperor with his own hand†, and it is singular, that Peter de Langtoft should preserve this tradition, as expressed by his translator, Robert of Brunne,

I kan not say who did him falle,  
Bot *Syr Wawayn* said thei alle.—f. 80<sup>b</sup>‡.

The most surprising adventure of our hero in this romance is related at the close, in which he goes in search of his friend Merlin to the forest of Broceliande, which is cited at length by Southey, in his Notes to the Preface of *Morte d' Arthur*, p. xlv. It is in this work we also find the first mention of the supernatural strength of Gawayne, which augmented and diminished at different hours of the day. In the English metrical translation it is thus described :

For of his strengthe the maner  
Sumdel ye may lern and here.  
Bituen auen-song and night  
He no hadde bot o mannes might,

\* MS. Add. 10, 292, f. 151<sup>b</sup>. The printed edd. for *connestablie* read *moictie*.

† Ibid. f. 209. The printed ed. vol. ii. f. 154, follows the account of Geoffrey, but in a previous passage, vol. ii. f. 24, names the emperor *Julius Cæsar*, and says he was slain by Gawayne. This, however, is not in the MS., and seems to be an interpolation.

‡ See the original French text, MS. Cott. Jul. D. V. f. 39.

And that strengthe him last  
 Fort arnemorwe, bi the last ;  
 And fram arnemorowe to the midday  
 He had strengthe of knightes tuay ;  
 Fram midday fort after-none  
 He nadde strengthe bot of one ;  
 Fram afternone to euensong  
 So to knightes he was strong\*.

In the *Lancelot du Lac*, the next of the series, we are introduced to another race of heroes and a different set of adventures, connected only with the *Merlin* by the history of the war undertaken against King Claudas, and an incidental notice of the Saxons, as enemies of Arthur. Of course Lancelot is here the principal personage, and his intrigue with Queen Guenever the main-spring of the story, yet we find Sir Gawayne only inferior to Lancelot himself, and on some occasions the writer seems to have balanced between the two. Throughout the greater part of the romance they are represented as being the most intimate friends, and it is only after the blind fury of Lancelot has sacrificed three of Gawayne's brothers, that the latter entertains sentiments of hostility against their destroyer. He vows vengeance, and the result is the war undertaken by Arthur against the

\* Romance of *Arthour and Merlin*, 4to, 1838, p. 178, printed for the Maitland Club. I am sorry to perceive the text of this edition abound with so many errors. It is in general closely translated from the French romance, and concludes imperfectly at fol. cc. of vol. i. of the edition of 1498. In the original the above passage appears thus, "*Quant il se levoit au matin, il avoit la force al millor chevalier del monde ; et quant vint à eure de prime, si li doubloit, et à eure de tierce ausi ; et quant ce vint à eure de midi, si revenoit à sa première force, ou il avoit esté au matin ; et quant vint à eure de nonne, et à toutes les eures de la nuit, estoit il toudis en sa première force.*" MS. Add. 10,292, f. 113<sup>b</sup>. Compare this passage in the printed edition, vol. i. f. cxiv. and corresponding passages in the *Roman de Lancelot*, vol. i. f. xciii<sup>b</sup>, vol. ii. f. lxix., vol. iii. f. clxxxvii., ed. 1513., (where there is a fable introduced to account for the miraculous gift) ; *Roman de Perceval*, ff. liii<sup>b</sup>, lx<sup>b</sup>. ed. 1530 ; Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*, vol. i. p. 114, and the English metrical version, MS. Harl., 2252, f. 120<sup>b</sup>.

knight of the *Joyeuse Garde*\*, which ends in the discomfiture of Gawayne, and ultimately in his death. The quest of the Saint Graal by Arthur's knights forms a novel incident in the narrative, and connects the story with Robert du Borron's first work. Among those whose exploits are recorded in this quest, Sir Gawayne's name is one of the most prominent, and although, like Lancelot, he is not destined to achieve the adventure, yet he succeeds in reaching the magic castle of the guardian of the Holy Vessel, and witnesses the marvels which ensue on his resting upon the *lit aventureux*†. His deeds of valor against King Gallehaut's forces and elsewhere are so extraordinary, that Arthur orders them *first* to be recorded by his four veracious chroniclers, among whom Arrodian of Cologne is mentioned‡. The estimation also in which he was held at the court is shewn by his being elected unanimously king in the place of Arthur, on the disappearance and supposed death of that monarch. Of the episodes relating to him, those of his adventure with his *amie*, the daughter of the king of North Wales, and the history of his captivity in the prison of the giant Karados, are perhaps the most interesting. In the former we are told that the lady's chamber was guarded by twenty armed knights. These however at night fall asleep very opportunely, and Gawayne is enabled without resistance to reach his mistress's apartment. He takes

\* On the subject of this castle (placed by English poetical antiquaries at Berwick) see a curious paper in the *Mémoires de la Société des Antiquaires de France*, vol. x. p. 237, 8vo, 1834, intitled, "*Mémoire sur le Chateau de la Joyeuse Garde, sur la rivière d'Elorn, près Landerneau, Department du Finistère. Par le Chevalier de Freminville.*"

† In the *Roman de Perceval*, f. xxxix<sup>b</sup>, the incident of the enchanted bed is repeated, but under different circumstances. It forms the subject of an ivory carving engraved in the *Mém. de l'Acad. des Inscriptions*, vol. xviii. p. 322, 4to, 1753, and in Ferrario, *Analisi degli Romanzi di Cavalleria*, vol. ii. p. 101, which is unintelligible to the writers.

‡ Vol. i. f. cxliii<sup>b</sup>. One might forgive the writer in the *Bibliothèque des Romans* for believing in the historical reality of these personages (See Dunlop's *Hist. of Fiction*, i. 295); but it is matter of sincere regret to find so gross a blunder sanctioned by the name of Daunou, in the *Hist. Litt. de la France*, tome xvi. p. 177.

off his helmet and *ventaille*, and approaching the bed where the beauty lay asleep, begins to kiss her. She awakes, and exclaims, “*Sainte Marie ! qui est ce ?*” He replies, “*Taisez vous, belle douce amy, c’est la chose au monde que vous aimez mieulx.*” The lovers speedily contrive to make themselves happy, but the old king and queen are on the watch, and by means of a window that faces the chamber, perceive Gawayne lying in their daughter’s arms. They determine to kill him, and call two chamberlains, who arm themselves with a sword and mace, and come to the bed. The first makes a stab at the knight under the counterpane, but the cold steel only grazing his arm, he is aroused to a sense of his danger. The other intending to demolish him at once, strikes a blow with the mace so violently, that although it misses its object, it penetrates half a foot into the wall, and shivers in pieces ! Gawayne now loses no time, but jumping out of bed, rewards the two assailants by knocking out their brains, and then throwing their bodies out of the room, quietly locks the door, which he seems to have before forgotten to do. He then puts on his armour, and, encouraged by his *mie*, awaits the attack of the twenty guards, who come to the door and kick at it, whilst the old queen stands aloof, and cries out to them, “*Assaillez, filz de putains, que faictes vous, que ne occiez le traystre qui leans est !*” Gawayne, however, escapes, leaving behind him many dead bodies as testimonies of his prowess ! In the course of this romance the author presents us with a portrait of Gawayne, which I quote from an early MS. in the Royal Library, 19 B. VII. f. 246, as being fuller than the edition. “*Messire G. avoit la chere simple & debonaire, et la regardure pitouse. E il fust voirs, que messire G. estoit li plus beus de tous ses freres en graundure de cors.—Il est voirs, que mesire G. fuist li emplus\* de tous ses freres, & fuist beu chevalier de son grant, & bien taillés de totes*

\* The corresponding passage in MS. Add. 10, 293, f. 250, col. i. reads *li mieldres*.

*membres ; ne se fu trop grant ne trop petis, mes de bele stature ; si fu li plus chevaleros de son age que nus de se[s] freres ; & nepurquant li estoire dit, que Gaheries se[s] frere souffrit bien pres ausi grant fes des armes come il fist, mes il ne s'en mist oncques si grant cure com messire G. fist tous jours, & purce ne fuist pas si renomez. Et noepurquant la chose qu'il plus mist monseignor G. en remembraunce, si fu qu'il ama povre gent, & lor fu dolz & pitous\*."*

We next come to the *Quête du Saint Graal*, often confounded with the *History of the Graal*. It is intended as a continuation of the *Lancelot*, and was certainly composed subsequently to that romance, as the internal evidence demonstrates. The persons here celebrated are Perceval, Gawayne, Lancelot, and his son Galaad, by the last of whom the adventure is finally brought to an end. The exploits of Gawayne in pursuing the grand object of their search are marked, as in the two preceding romances, by a singular love of peril, determined valor, generosity, and courtesy. He is on all occasions the most amiable personage of the Round Table. His adherence to the laws of knighthood is tried severely more than once, and particularly at a tournament against Nabigan de la Roche, where in consequence of a vow taken to grant the first request made of him, he is enjoined to act the part of a coward, and sustains unmoved the jeers of the assembly. The following day, however, makes amends for this act of self-abasement, for he then nobly sustains his own character, and carries off the prize of the golden circlet†. The most chi-

\* In a MS. compilation of the 15th century, I have read a similar description, with the addition : "*Il n'eust les chevaux blancs ne rous, mais entredeux ; le visaige eust aucques brun ; les yeux eust vers et moult actrayens ; barbe eust à planté ; les espaules belles et larges, et les bras et les poings gros et carrez, et fors à desmesure. Courtois et gracieux estoit plus que chevalier du monde.*" I have mislaid the reference, but believe it to have been a MS. in Broadley's sale, 1832, intitled, "*Les noms, armes et blasons des Chevaliers de la Table Ronde, ou sont escripz les granz faiz de tous les Chevaliers.*"

† Vol. ii. f. 183, ed. 1516.

valorous of his undertakings is the acquisition of the famous sword with which St. John was beheaded, in the course of which he slays a monstrous giant on the top of a hill ; much after the fashion in which Arthur killed the giant Dinabuc on the Mont St. Michel. We have also a narrative, as in the *Lancelot*, but differing much in the circumstances, of Gawayne's arrival in the palace of King Pescheur, and the marvels of the Graal.

Map's series of romances is closed by the *Mort Artus*, which is generally confounded with the *Lancelot*. The queen's amour with the latter here leads to the disunion and destruction of the Round Table. The war undertaken by Arthur against the violator of his honor, proves his ruin. A furious battle takes place, in which Gawayne singly kills thirty knights, but his valor avails not, for in a second encounter Arthur's forces are worsted. The Pope interferes, and Lancelot gives up the queen, and retires to his paternal dominions. Arthur follows him, at the instigation of Gawayne, and a combat takes place between Gawayne and Lancelot. The victory is long doubtful, but at length is given to the more youthful opponent, and Gawayne is left on the field, severely wounded in the head. After this follows the conflict between the forces of Arthur and the Roman emperor, and the return of Arthur to Britain on account of Mordred's treason, all of which is founded on the narrative of Geoffrey, but told with the usual license of the romance-writers. The part which relates to Gawayne's death has some pathos and interest, and will bear an abridgment.

Arthur and his fleet arrive at Dover, where he is joyfully received at the castle. At vesper-time he is sent for by his nephew, and on coming to him, finds Gawayne so weak, as scarcely to be able to speak. On hearing the king's sorrow he opened his eyes, and said, " Sire, I am dying, and I pray you in God's name to refrain from a battle with Mordred, for I tell you truly he is



the man who will cause your death." He then desires to be remembered to Lancelot, whose pardon he asks, and requests him to visit his tomb.—"And I pray you, Sire, that you cause me to be interred at Kamalot, with my brothers; and I wish to be laid in the tomb wherein my brother Gaheriet lies, for him I loved most, and this inscription to be placed above, *CY GISENT LES DEUX FRERES GAHERIET ET GAUVAIN, QUE LANCELOT OCCIST PAR L'OULTRAIGE DE GAUVAIN.*" Arthur asks if he believes Lancelot to have been the cause of his death, which he answers in the affirmative, on account of the wound he had received in his head, which was renewed in the battle with the Romans. "*Et a tant se teust messire G. que plus ne parla, fors au derrenier qu'il dist, Jesu Crist, pere debonnaire, ne me juge pas selon mes mes-faitz!*" Arthur swoons several times with grief, and exclaims, "*Ha! Ha! mort villaine, comment as tu esté si hardye d'assaillir ung tel homme comme estoit mon nepveu, qui de bonté passoit tout le monde!*" On the mournful news arriving at the castle, the lamentation is so excessive, that *you could not have heard God thunder\**. They enveloped the corpse in silk, and surrounded it with so many lighted tapers, that the castle seemed on fire. In the morning Arthur caused a *bierre chevaleresse* to be brought, and Gawayne's body placed therein, which he gave in charge to one hundred men to convey to Kamalot. Every eye is moistened, and the people cry out, "*O preudhomme courtois, et bon chevalier sur tous aultres, mauldicte soit la morte qui de toy nous a osté la compaignie!*" The corpse is carried to the castle of Belloc, the lady of which, on hearing whose it is, loudly deplores his fate, and avows she had never loved any one but Gawayne. Her husband requites this declaration with a stroke of his sword, which cuts off her

\* This phrase is found in Benoit de St. More and other French writers of the twelfth century. It passed thence into the English romance of Alexander. See Weber, *Metr. Rom.* Introd., p. xxxiv.

shoulder, and penetrates deeply into the dead body of the knight. The lady expires, and requests to be buried by his side. Her death is revenged by the attendants, who then proceed with the body to Kamalot, and bury it in the tomb of Gaheriet, in the middle of the monastery. The remains of the lady of Belloc are also interred close by, with an inscription stating that she had been killed for her love of Gawayne\*.

The substance of this romance, but much abridged, is to be found in Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*, books 18, 20, and 21, and the latter text was versified in the reign of Henry the Seventh by an anonymous English author, who follows it in some instances verbally†.

The account of Gawayne's death differs considerably in the various versions of the story, nor is the place of his sepulture less a subject of disagreement. In Geoffrey, Arthur lands at the *Portus Rutupi*, rendered *Richborough* by Thompson, and *Sandwich* by Ellis‡ and others, where a battle takes place, in which Gawayne and his companions are slain. Wace, Lazamon§, and Robert of Brunne copy this narrative, but fix the spot at *Romney*. The Cotton MS. of Wace, Vitell. A. x., reads *Toteneis* (Totnes), while the Welsh (Tysilio) translation of Geoffrey and the alliterative poem in the Lincoln MS. place the locality at *Southampton*. Malory and

\* Vol. iii. ff. 191<sup>b</sup>, 192<sup>b</sup>, ed. 1513.

† This metrical version is preserved in MS. Harl. 2252, and was printed in 1819 for the Roxburghe Club. Ellis is in error in stating that it was translated immediately from the French text, *Metr. Rom.* i. 324, (copied by Dunlop, *Hist. of Fiction*, i. 244.) Had he taken the trouble of comparing them together, he would not have hazarded such an assertion.

‡ Ellis probably followed the general stream of the chroniclers who borrow from the English prose *Brut*, subsequently known under the title of Caxton's Chronicle and *Fructus Temporum*. In this and in its French prose MS. original, the place of landing is called *Sandwich*. See also a ballad printed in Percy, vol. iii. p. 40, ed. 1794.

§ But in another passage Lazamon writes, that Gawayne was killed "suth in Cornwale." vol. ii. p. 546.

his metrical translator follow the romance of Lancelot, in assigning the locality to *Dover*\*, but they vary in the detail. The latter says of our hero :

Syr Gawayne armyd hyme in that stounde,  
 Allas ! to longe hys hede was bare,  
 He was seke, and sore vnsond,  
 Hys woundis greuyd hym fulle sare.  
*One hytte hym vpon the olde wounde,*  
*W<sup>t</sup> a tronchon of an ore ;*  
 There is good Gawayne gone to grounde,  
 That speche spake he neuyr more.

*MS. Harl. 2252, fol. 123<sup>b</sup>.*

Malory follows the French text more closely, but inserts a letter, supposed to be written by the dying knight to Sir Lancelot, and concludes,—“ And so at the houre of none Syr Gawayn yelded up the spyryte ; and thenne the kynge lete entiere hym in a chappel within Douer Castel ; *and there yet alle men maye see the sculle of hym, and the same wound is sene that Syr Launcelot gaf hym in bataill.*” vol. ii. p. 435. Caxton, in his Preface, alleges the last mentioned circumstance as a proof of the reality of the fact ; and Leland quotes the authority of the *Chronicon Dovarensis monasterii* for the existence of Gawayne’s bones in the same place, which were shewn to himself on his visit there†. Leland therefore rejects the statement of William of Malmesbury, who says, that in the reign of William the Conqueror, the sepulchre of Gawayne was discovered on the sea-shore of a province of Wales, named *Ross*, [in Pembrokeshire,] fourteen feet in length, “ *ubi, à quibusdam ut asseritur, ab hostibus vulneratus, et naufragio*

\* Ellis must have read the passage carelessly, or he would not have transferred the place of sepulture to the Cathedral of Canterbury. See *Metr. Rom.* i. 392.

† *Collectanea*, vol. iii. p. 50 ; also in his *Codrus*, *ib.* vol. v. p. 7 ; and in *Assertio Arthuri*, *ib.* vol. v. p. 25.

*ejectus, à quibusdam dicitur à civibus in publico epulo interfectus\*.*" Leland acknowledges, however, that the remains of a castle called by Gawayne's name were still extant in his time near the shore, and at the present day, on the southernmost point of Pembrokeshire, called *St. Gowen's head*, stands a small chapel formed out of the rock, named after the same personage, which the traditional voice of the neighbourhood assigns as the burial place of Arthur's nephew†. Wace was ignorant of these statements, for he expressly writes,

Grans fu li dols de son neveu,  
*Le cors fist metre ne sai u,*  
 Ainc hom ne sot u il fu mis,  
 Ne qui l'ocist, ce m'est avis.  
*Vol. ii. p. 225, ed. 1839‡.*

Lazamon says nothing of the sepulture, but tells us that Gawayne previous to his death made great slaughter, and killed the son of Childric with his own hand, but at length was slain "*thurh an eorle Sexisce,—særi iwurthe his saule!*" Peter Langtoft and his translator add to the confusion, by stating that the body of Gawayne was interred at *Wybre* or *Wibire*, "*en la Walescherye*,"—"that is, in Wales§,"—by which I presume is intended *Webbery*,

\* *Scriptores post Bedam*, lib. ii. p. 64, edit. 1596. Malmesbury adds, that Gawayne reigned in that part of Britain called *Walwuthia* (Galloway), but was expelled from his kingdom by the brother and nephew of Hengist. We here may, perhaps, trace the historical incident which gave rise to the account in the romance of Merlin and elsewhere of Gawayne's battles with the Saxons. The above passage in Malmesbury is copied by many succeeding chroniclers, down to the time of Stowe and Baker.

† See a description in Fenton's Pembrokeshire, p. 414, 4to, 1811: but he knows nothing of the legend, and talks of some *Irish hermit* being buried there.

‡ From MS. de la Bibl. du Roi, No. 7515<sup>3-2</sup>. The Royal MS. 13, A. xxi. Brit. Mus. and Cott. Vit. A. x. read the same, except that the latter has *en sarcu*, instead of *ne sai u*.

§ MS. Cott. Jul. A. v. f. 40., MS. Reg. 20, D. ii. f. 31; Robert of Brunne's MS. Chron. f. 81<sup>b</sup>, c. 2.

not far from Bideford, in Devonshire. Lastly, in the prose French and English *Brut*, whether manuscript or printed, and in the romance of Arthur in the *Red Book of Bath*, Arthur is said to cause the bodies of Gawayne and Augusel to be taken to Scotland, their *native country*.

The alliterative Scottish romance of *Morte Arthure*, in the library of Lincoln Cathedral, marked A. 1. 17, is very much amplified in its account of the destruction of the Round Table, and does not agree with any other authority I have consulted\*. The British forces enter the harbour of Southampton, and Gawayne jumps into the water, "in alle his gylte wedys," attacks the Danish auxiliaries, and kills their leader, the king of Gothland. He then with a small band of followers advances against Mordred, and fights with his usual impetuosity.

In to þe hale bataile hedlynges he rynnys,  
And hurtes of þe hardieste þat one the erthe lenges,  
Letande alles a lyone, he lawnches theme thorowe,  
Lordes and ledars that one the launde houes.—  
And for wondsome and wille alle his wit failede,  
That wode alles a wylde beste he wente at þe gayneste,  
Alle walewede one blode, thare he a-waye passede.—fol. 93.

At length he encounters the traitor chief, and wounds him severely, but in the act of finishing the contest with a "shorte knyfe," the weapon slips on the mail, and his adversary instantly takes advantage of the accident, and strikes him through the helm to the brain.

And thus Syr Gawayne es gone, the gude man of armes,  
Withe owttynne reschewe of renke, and rewghes es þe more!  
Thus Syr Gawayne es gone, that gyede many othire;  
Fro Gowere to Gernesay, alle þe gret lordys,

\* It is a singular circumstance that it often coincides *verbally* with Malory's prose version, and the episode of *Gawayne and Priamus* is found in both, and no where else.

Of Glamour, of Galys londe, þis galyarde knyghtes,  
For glent of gloppyngnyng glade be they neuer!—fol. 93<sup>b</sup>.

King “Froderike of Fres” comes up, and inquires of Mordred who the knight was that had felled so many of his men, and now lay deprived of life? The reply is worthy of transcription, as a summary of the knightly qualities for which our Hero was distinguished.

Than Syr Modrede w<sup>t</sup> mouthe melis fulle faire:—  
“He was makles one molde, mane, be my trowhe!  
This was Syr Gawayne the gude, the gladdeste of othire,  
And the gracioseste gome that vndire God lyffede;  
Mane hardyeste of hande, happyeste in armes,  
And the hendeste in hawle vndire heuene-riche;  
The lordelieste of ledyng, qwhylles he lyffe myghte,  
Fore he was lyone allossede in londes inewe.  
Had thou knawene hym, syr kynge, in kythe thare he lengede,  
His konyng, his knyghthode, his kyndly werkes,  
His doying, his doughtynesse, his dedis of armes,  
Thow wolde hafe dole for his dede the dayes of thy lyfe!”—fol. 93<sup>b</sup>.

Mordred having thus borne testimony to the worth of his fallen foe and brother, sheds tears, and moves away, cursing the time his fate was shaped to work such unhappiness. Arthur afterwards causes the body of Gawayne to be honorably conveyed to Winchester, where it is received by a procession of the prior and monks, and they are charged by the king to observe every funereal solemnity,—

Lokis it be clanly kepyd, he said, and in the kirke holdene,  
Done for dergese, as to the ded fallys;  
Menskede w<sup>t</sup> messes, for mede of the saule.  
Loke it wante no waxe, ne no wirchipe elles,  
And at the body be baarmede, and one erthe holdene.—fol. 95.

I have now traced the history of Sir Gawayne from his birth to his burial-place, and might gladly have wished to let him rest

in peace, but this is forbidden. Subsequently to the completion of the romances by Robert de Borron and Map appeared a new work, the object of which was to introduce a knight of the Round Table, unknown and unnoticed by the preceding writers on the subject\*. This was the famous *Tristan*, whose amour with the fair Iseult and feats of arms, told as they were in the inimitable style of the *bon vieux François*, found subsequently such favor with the world, as completely to eclipse the earlier romance compositions. The first portion of this work was written by Luces de Gast†, in the time of Henry the Second, and the concluding part by Helie de Borron, in the reign of Henry the Third. Both are animated by the same spirit,—that of vilifying the lineage of king Loth, and more particularly the fame and deeds of Gawayne. Among other fictions unknown to previous writers, they feign a hostility between the sons of king Pellinor and the children of Loth, and take every opportunity of praising the latter at the expense of the former‡. Pellinor is said to have put king Loth to death, and is killed in return by Gawayne. Lamorat de Galles, the eldest son of Pellinor, and brother of

\* The fact of the more recent composition of the *Tristan* is, I think, indisputable. It is perfectly incredible, had he been previously celebrated, that no mention should be made of him by Robert de Borron and Map. These were also the sentiments of my learned friend M. Paulin Paris, in the first volume of his interesting work, *Les Manuscrits François de la Bibliothèque du Roi*, pp. 194-198, but in his second volume, p. 352, he retracts this opinion, and says he founded his arguments on the *second* portion of *Tristan*, composed at a later epoch. But the same conclusions may equally be drawn from the first part, in which the direct allusions to the *Roman de Lancelot* are frequent. To give a single instance. In the *Lancelot*, vol. i. f. clxxvi., is an account of Gawayne being carried off by a giant named Karados; and in the *Tristan* the same event is noticed as having previously occurred, vol. i. f. xlv. (MS. Harl. 49, fol. 105<sup>b</sup>.)

† The Abbé de la Rue conjectures that he possessed the seignory of the territory of *Gast*, in the canton of St. Severe, department of Calvados. *Essais sur les Bardes*, ii. 231. This requires confirmation, but merits inquiry.

‡ See the indignant remarks of Southey on the *Tristan*, in his Preface to *Morte d'Arthur*, p. xvi.



Perceval, intrigues with the Lady of Orkney, the mother of our hero, and is slain by her sons, for which act of retributive justice Gawayne is severely censured. Indeed whenever Gawayne is mentioned, it is only to represent him under circumstances of defeat and disgrace, or to calumniate him. The manuscripts of this work are fuller, by one half, than the printed editions, and contain an additional quantity of misrepresentation\*. To the same author who completed the *Tristan* we are indebted for a huge compilation intitled *Gyron le Courtois*, in which the exploits of Gyron, Meliadus, Branor le Brun, the Chevalier sans Peur, and a fresh race of worthies are commemorated, to whom even the Lancelots and Tristans are represented as inferior. Of course Sir Gawayne occupies here a very inferior grade, and is so changed from the all-conquering hero of the *Merlin*, as scarcely to be recognised. From this compilation, as well as from the prior works of Robert de Borron and Map, was formed the abridgment made by Rusticien de Pise in the reign of Edward the First; and in the course of the succeeding two centuries other compilers arose, who selected what portions they pleased, and formed them into distinct bodies of romance. These more recent compilations must be regarded as the immediate originals of the romances printed under the titles of *Gyron le Courtois* and *Meliadus de Léonnois*. The former of these first issued from the press of Verard, and represents with tolerable accuracy a portion of Rusticien's work. In this Sir Gawayne is only mentioned on two occasions, and in both passages as a vanquished knight. In the *Meliadus*† he is oftener introduced, but without a much greater

\* MSS. of the *prose* *Tristan* are rare in the libraries of Great Britain. In the British Museum are only three copies of portions of the first part, and two copies of the second part. The complete text, I believe, is in the collection of Sir Thomas Phillipps, Bart.

† The author of this romance frequently refers to the *Tristan*, the *Lancelot*, the *Perceval*, and the *Gyron*. M. Paris is inclined to refer its compilation to the commencement of the

degree of praise. His character for courtesy is indeed acknowledged, and an awkward fiction is alleged to account for his inferior powers, by stating that in the tournament of Galles, maintained between Arthur and the Seigneur des Loingtains Isles, (Gallehault,) he received such hurts as to deprive him of his previous force, so that afterwards he never recovered it.—“*Et du grant dueil qu'il en eut, il fist depuis moult de felonies, que la Table Ronde achepta moult durement.*” From the work of Rusticien de Pise it is probable that Sir Thomas Malory compiled the English prose *Morte d'Arthur* in the year 1469, in which, as Scott and Southey have remarked, the character of Gawayne is traduced, and his history misrepresented. There are a few adventures of Gawayne in this work which I have not found elsewhere, but they were doubtless furnished by the French manuscript originals, which I have had no opportunity of consulting\*.

The *metrical* romances composed by Chrestien de Troyes require next to be noticed. They all appear to have been borrowed from the prose romances, but contain also incidents derived from other sources. The longest and best known of these is the *Perceval le Gallois*, so large a portion of which relates to the exploits of sir Gawayne, that, as a French writer has already observed, it

sixteenth century, shortly before it was printed, but in Sir Thomas Phillipps's possession is a MS. of the fourteenth century, agreeing generally with the printed text, and containing the preface of *Helie de Borron* to his *Gyron le Courtois*, which in the printed edition of *Merliadus* is erroneously attributed to *Rusticien*. From this cause have sprung innumerable misstatements on the subject of these works, and the age of the composers.

\* There are no copies in the British Museum or Bodleian Library of the compilations of *Helie de Borron* and *Rusticien*. In Sir Thomas Phillipps's Library is a recension of *Helie's* work by Jehan le Vaillant, made in the year 1391, which was formerly in the La Vallière collection. I find also that a prose work intitled *Roman du Roi Artus* was printed at Paris in 1488, but is so scarce, that I do not know if a copy is to be found in England. It is evidently a late compilation, chiefly taken from the *Merlin*, but with variations. It is here stated, that at Loth's death Mordred disputes the right of Gawayne to his father's throne, and on Arthur taking the part of the latter, the catastrophe is brought on which ends in the monarch's destruction. This is quite a new version of the story.

might with equal propriety have been named after *both* these heroes. I have already spoken of this romance in my Notes, (p. 305,) and its popularity in Scotland and England must have been great, since no less than three of the poems printed in the present volume are founded on episodes in it. Here, as in the second part of the *Saint Graal*, the adventures of Gawayne in search of the Mysterious Vessel and the palace of king Pescheur, occupy a prominent place. His character for valor and courtesy re-appears in its original lustre, and is praised with the same warmth as in the romance of Merlin.—“*Sire,*” says an esquire to Arthur, after relating the feats of Gawayne at the enchanted castle of queen Yguerne, “*en ma puissance Gauvain assez suffisamment louer n’est pas possible ; le propos assez aorné ne la langue diserte ne ay-je elegante ne propice à ce faire, pource que, comme je croy, de toute chevalerie est la perle ; c’est celluy qui de tout vice est nect, innocent, et immaculle ; c’est celluy qui ne pourroit endurer felonnie ne mechanceté ; c’est le consolateur des desollez, le père des orphelins, l’abresse et la reconfort des femmes vefues.*” fol. xlvii. We are also in this romance introduced to Giglan, the son of Gawayne by the sister of Brandelis, of whom mention only previously occurs in the first part of the prose *Tristan*.

The remaining romances by Chrestien, are the *Tristan*, apparently now lost ; the *Chevalier au Lion*, which is known as the original of the English *Ywaine and Gawin* ; the *Roman d’Erec et Enide*, in which Gawayne is assigned the *first* station among the knights of the Round Table\* ; the *Roman de Fregus*, a narrative in many respects resembling that of *Perceval*, and the hero of which

\* Devant toz les bons chevaliers  
Doit estre *Gauvains* li premiers,  
Li seconz Erec, li filz Lac,  
Et li tierz Lanceloz dou Lac.

MS. de la Bibl. du Roi, No. 7498<sup>4</sup>, f. 13.

is a native of Scotland; the *Roman de la Charrette*, which is an episode taken from *Lancelot*; and the *Roman de Cliges*. The last four still remain in manuscript, in the Bibliothèque du Roi at Paris, but analyses of them are given in the *Bibliothèque des Romans* and the *Histoire Littéraire de la France*. In all of them we find Gawayne very honorably noticed.

Besides the longer romances several shorter poems of the same chivalrous character exist, in which Syr Gawayne's adventures are commemorated. One of these is the *Chevalier à l'Epée*\*, the author of which blames Chrestien de Troyes for omitting to celebrate Gawayne in a distinct poem, and says he will narrate one out of his numerous exploits. The subject connects it with the English tale of *Syr Gawene and the Carle of Carlyle*, as I have pointed out in the Notes, (p. 345.) Here too we meet with the amusing incident of the greyhounds†, which seems to have been borrowed from the metrical *Perceval*. Another is the *fabliau* of *La Mule sans Frein*‡; in which Gawayne undertakes for a lady the adventure of the bridle, and after many hazardous conflicts, succeeds in gaining it. A prosaical episode also is preserved, intitled the *Conte de l'Atre Perilleux*, containing an interesting account of Gawayne's encounter with a formidable magician or semi-dæmon, whom he destroys amidst flashes of lightning, and afterwards rescues a damsel from the power of a redoubtable knight named Ersanors de la Montagne§.

In all probability other narratives remain in manuscript relating to the same personage, and some may have been lost. In the

\* Printed in Meon's *Recueil de Fabliaux*, vol. i. p. 127, and analysed by Le Grand.

† See Dunlop's *Hist. of Fiction*, i. 272.

‡ Printed, *ib.* vol. i. p. 1. See Notes, p. 306.

§ Analysed in the *Bibl. des Romans*, Juillet, 1777, p. 70. It is mentioned in the *Inventaire des livres de l'ancienne Bibliothèque du Louvre, fait en l'année 1373*, p. 75, 8vo, 1836; edited by M. Van Praet.

*Reductorium Morale* of Pierre Bercheur, Prior of St. Eloi, at Paris, better known by his Latin name of Berchorius, who is supposed by Warton to have been the author of the *Gesta Romanorum*\*, at the end of his Prologue to book 14, *De Naturæ Mirabilibus*, speaking of the wonderful relations extant of Britain, he writes, "What shall I say of the marvels which occur in the histories of *Gawayne* (*Galwayni*), and Arthur? Of which I will mention only one, namely, of the palace under the water, which Gawayne accidentally discovered, where he found a table spread with eatables, and a chair placed ready for him, but was not able to find the door by which he might go out; but being hungry, and about to eat, suddenly the head of a dead man appeared in the dish, and a giant, who lay on a bier near the fire, rising up, and striking the roof with his head, and the head calling out and forbidding the repast, he never dared touch the viands, and after witnessing many wonders, got away he knew not how†!" Berchorius here evidently refers to the prodigies seen by Gawayne at the palace of the *Graal*, but the manuscripts used by him must have differed greatly from those now extant, or he must have quoted from memory, and much misrepresented the story‡. The former conjecture seems the most probable. So also in a copy of the *Merlin*, No. 6958 of the *Bibliothèque du Roi*, we meet with an episode not in the usual text of this romance. Gawayne rescues a lady by force of arms from Oriol, King of the Saxons, and to his great

\* See my Preface to the *Old English Versions of the Gesta Romanorum*, printed for the Roxburghe Club, 4to, 1838. Bercheur died in 1362.

† Edit. fol. Col. Agr. 1631, tom. ii. p. 901. He adds, "Melius ergo arbitror de istis tacere, quàm de ipsis aliqua narrativè asserere, ne forte videar fabulas hominum vel etiam opera dæmonum pro naturali veritate narrare. Ista ergo ad præsens omittam, nisi forte quando de fabulis poetarum tractabo, inseram aliquid de præmissis." This work, which was to have formed the *fifteenth* book, is unfortunately lost, or was never completed.

‡ Compare the *Roman de Perceval*, ff. cxxi—cxxiii.

delight recognises her as his *mie*, the Countess of Limos.—“ *Si saut jus du cheval, et l’embrace, et baise en la face, et ele lui, que onques dangier nul ne l’en fait ; et li dist, ‘ Certes, sire, bien me devez baisier et accoler, que onques mais baisier n’eustes, au mien escient, que vous autretant chierement eussiez acheté.’ ‘ Dame,’ fait il, ‘ de tant suis-je plus liez\*.’* ”

Our hero seems to have been famed more for his various intrigues than his constancy. At the trial of the ivory horn sent by Morgain to Arthur’s court, he is the first to raise it to his lips, but no sooner does he touch the wine than it runs over the enchanted rim, for “ *Ja nul chevallier n’y bevera qui aura triché son amye, ou que sa mie l’ait triché, que le vin sur lui ne respande†.* ” In the *Jeaste of Gawayne* we have one of his affairs of gallantry narrated, copied from the *Perceval*, and in the same romance we have a similar account of his amour with the daughter of the king of Escallon, with whom being surprised, he defends himself with a chess-board. A third affair of the same kind takes place with *Taurée*, sister of the Little Knight of the Great Forest, and in the *Lancelot* and Malory’s *Morte d’Arthur* we have additional narratives of his influence with the fair sex ; so that we can readily understand why he is addressed by the lady in the Scottish romance of the *Grene Knyzt* as a master and pattern not only of courtesy but of the art of love.

One more romantic composition relative to Gawayne remains to be noticed, which is the more remarkable from its being quite distinct from the established fictions of the Round Table. This composition may be assigned to the early part of the fourteenth century, and is written in *Latin* ; but whether derived from “ floating Celtic traditions,” or from an Anglo-Norman original, must be left

\* P. Paris, *Manuscrits Français*, ii. 344.

† *Roman de Perceval*, f. c<sup>b</sup>. Comp. *Rom. de Tristan*, i. f. liii. In the similar *fabliau* of the *Manteau mal taillé* it is *Genelas*, the *mie* of Gawayne, who fails in the trial.

to conjecture. It is intitled *De Ortu Waluuanii, nepotis Arturi*, and is a strange tissue of romantic fiction, embellished with many rhetorical flourishes. In it Gawayne is represented as the result of a secret intrigue between king Loth and Anna, the daughter of Uter Pendragon, and to conceal his birth his mother delivers him to some foreign merchants, who carry him to the coast of France, not far from Narbonne. They leave the ship and the infant in the care of a boy, who falls asleep ; and in their absence a fisherman carries the child off, together with a casket, containing testimonials of his birth, and a vast quantity of treasure. He afterwards proceeds to Rome, where giving himself out to be a descendant of a noble Roman family, he is received most honorably by the emperor, and assigned as a residence the marble palace of Scipio Africanus. The boy grows up, and is beloved by all for his courteous demeanour and surprising boldness. At the age of twelve years his reputed father dies, but on his death-bed reveals the secret of Gawayne's birth to the emperor and the pope Sulpicius, but charges them not to reveal it until he should be restored to his parents. The youth is brought up under the emperor's protection, receives knighthood from his hands, and distinguishes himself by his prowess so greatly, that he is sent for by the christians living at Jerusalem to fight in single combat, as a champion in their behalf, against the champion of the king of Persia, who had made war on them. In his way to the east he lands on an island ruled by king Milocrates, an enemy of the Romans, whom he kills, and afterwards encounters the hostile fleet of the king's brother, whose ships are sunk or captured. He at length reaches Jerusalem, and fights on foot with the pagan giant Gormundus, the Persian champion, for the space of three days, but at last cleaves him asunder with his sword from the head downwards, — "*non optabile stomacho antidotum*," — as the writer oddly remarks. He afterwards returns triumphantly to Rome, and thence, hearing

of the fame of Arthur, to Britain, where he establishes his claim as nephew of the British monarch. Such is the brief outline of this singular story, in which we can clearly trace some few particulars referable to Geoffrey of Monmouth, but worked up in a manner that would bear comparison with the extravagant fictions of a much later era.

The popularity of Gawayne, in spite of the calumny contained in the *Tristan* and *Gyron*, must have been great, but was necessarily joined with that of other heroes of the Round Table. His adventures are referred to by several Provençal poets previous to the close of the twelfth century, and often subsequently\*. In the poems of the Anglo-Norman *trouveurs* his name very frequently occurs, and always in terms of respect. It would occupy too much space to specify the passages, but I have indicated the principal in a note below†. The author of a manuscript Latin trans-

\* See the *Journal des Savans*, p. 521, Sept., 1833; and Raynouard's *Choix des Poesies des Troubadours*, vol. ii. pp. 288, 295, 296, 298. By the author of the romance of Jaufré and Elias Cairel, his feats of arms are placed on the same scale with the wisdom of Merlin or the love-passion of Tristan.

† A poem is quoted by the Abbé de la Rue, and assigned to king Henry the First, intitled *Le dictie d'Urbain*, in which it is said,—

Plus estre corteis et seïn  
Que ne fut Sire Gauveïn,

but I should doubt both the authorship and antiquity claimed for it. See *Essais sur les Bardes*, vol. ii. p. 38, 8vo, 1834. In the same volume, p. 63, the Abbé states that Turolde, the author of a romance on the battle of Roncevaux, places Gawayne among the paladins by the name of *Gautier*. This is a silly blunder, arising out of a passage in a more recent copy of the poem, analysed by M. Monin, in which the words *li nies Artus* do not refer to *Gautiers*, but to *Malarsus*, and the name of *Artus* itself is a mischievous variation from the original text, which reads *Droun*. Compare M. Michel's valuable edition of the *Chanson de Roland*, 8vo, 1837, p. 79, and Monin's *Dissertation*, pp. 26, 32. Consult also the *Lai de Lanval*, by Marie de France, vol. i. p. 220, 8vo, 1820; *Le Couronnement de Renart*, vol. iv. pp. 3, 5, 8vo, 1826; *Lai de l'Ombre*, p. 43, of *Lais Inédits*, par Fr. Michel, 8vo, 1836; *Lai de Melion*, p. 57, 8vo, 1832; the metrical *Livre de Oger de Dannemarche*, MS. Reg. 15 E. vi. f. 81<sup>b</sup>, col. 2; the *Roman de la Rose*, vol. iii. p. 211, 8vo, 1814; and the *Roman du*



lation of the celebrated *Calilah u Dimnah*, made in the year 1313, complains in his preface of the avidity with which the romances of Gawayne and others were read\*. But we are not hence to infer that there was originally any large distinct romance which passed by his name, but that allusion is made to one of those in which his exploits are prominently recorded. In this manner the romance of Gawayne might mean either the *Merlin* or the *Perceval* or the *Lancelot*, as in similar cases we read of the romances of *Gallehault*, *Agravain*, and *La Charrette*, all of which are only portions or branches of the *Lancelot*. Thus too in the Inventory of

*Guillaume d'Orange*, quoted by M. Michel in the Glossary to the *Chanson du Rolland*, p. 209. In the last of these passages Gawayne is placed in fairy-land with many other heroes of the cycles of Arthur and Charlemagne. The British sovereign thus addresses Renouart,—

Je sui Artus, dont l'en a tant parlé,  
Renouart, frère, ce sont la gent faé,  
Qui sont du siècle venus et trespasé.  
Vez-là Rollant, ce vermeil coulouré,  
Et c'est *Gauvain*, à ce poile roé,  
Et puis Yvain, un sien compaing privé;  
Et cele bele au vis enluminé,  
Icele est Morgue, ou tant a de biauté.

Hence may be explained the lines of Chaucer,—

That Syr *Gawayne* with his old curtesie,  
Although he come agen *out of Fairie*,  
He could him nought amendin in no worde.

Lydgate also, in his *Fall of Princes*, B. viii. ch. 25, speaks of Arthur's court in *Fairie*.

\* “Vos igitur regalem curiam frequentes, qui tempus vestrum consumitis in narrationibus anbagicis,—verbi gracia, Lanceloti, *Galvani*, consimilibusque,—libros in quibus nulla consistit sciencia vel modica viget utilitas, crebrius intendentes, abjecta vanitatis palea, librum istum regium virtutum perlegatis,” etc. The writer was a physician, named Raymond de Biterris, and he translated the work from the Spanish at the request of Joan, queen of Navarre. It is altogether different from the version of John of Capua, printed under the title of the *Directorium Humanæ Vitæ*. A beautiful copy of the work is preserved in the *Bibl. du Roi* at Paris, No. 8504.

the Library in the Louvre, in 1373, we find notices of volumes described, as, "No. 287. *De Merlin, et des fais de Lancelot du Lac et de Gauvain*, em prose," and again, "No. 302. *Du Saint Graal, de Lancelot, de Gauvain*, en grant volume plat, em prose." In the same manner must the passage of Caxton be understood, where he speaks of "the grete and many volumes of *Seint Graal, Ghalahot*, and *Launcelotte de Lake, Gawayne, Perceval, Lyonel*, and *Tristram\**," which renders Southey's conjecture as to their separate form of no force.

If we now turn to our English writers, we shall find the fame of Gawayne in full vigor from the thirteenth to the sixteenth century. The stream of romance which brought down the name of Arthur, invariably joined to it that of his courteous and valiant nephew; and his reputation in the popular estimation continued to retain its hold, in spite of the misrepresentations of the authors of the *Tristan* and the *Gyron*. John Hautville, author of the *Archithrenius*, written previous to the year 1207, places the following noble sentiments in our Hero's mouth,—

Et *Walganus* ego, qui nil reminiscor avara  
Illoculasse manu; non hæc mea fulgurat auro  
Sed gladio dextra†————

In some prefatory lines to the collection of Metrical *Legends of the Saints*, written shortly before the year 1300‡, we read,—

\* *Proheme to Godefrey of Boloyne*, fol. 1481. Compare his Preface to the *Book of the Ordre of Chyvalry*, fol. no date, but about 1484.

† MS. Cott. Vesp. B. xxiii. f. 30, and MS. Harl. 4066, 2, f. 30. The knight previously says of himself,—

Et genus et gentem tribuit *Lodonesia* nutrix,  
Prebuit irriguam morum *Cornubia* mammam.

‡ Warton, in *Hist. Engl. Poetr.* says 1200, vol. i. pp. 14, 126, and is incautiously followed by Ritson, *Metr. Rom.* p. civ. I am surprised to find the same error repeated in Mr. Guest's valuable work on English Rhythms, vol. ii. p. 220. The same writer persists, p.

Men wilnethe more yhere of batayle of kyngis  
 And of knyztis hardy, that mochel is lesyngis,  
 Of Roulond and of Olyuere, and Gy of Warwyk,  
 Of *Wawayne* and Tristram, that ne founde here ylike.

*MS. Bodl. 779, ap. Warton, vol. i. p. 126.*

Again, in the romance of *Richard Cœur de Lion*, composed probably within ten years of the same period,

Many romances men make newe,  
 Of good knyghtes, strong and trewe ;  
 Off theyr dedes men rede romance,  
 Bothe in Engeland and in France ;  
 Off Roweland and of Olyuer,  
 And of euery doseper ;  
 Of Alisandre and Charlemain,  
 Off kyng Arthour and off *Gawayn* ;  
 How they were knyghtes good and curteys,  
 Off Turpyn, and of Ogier Daneys\*.

In a curious poem in the Digby MS. No. 86, intituled “ *Le Cuntent parentre le Mauvis et la Russinole*, written in the reign of Edward the First, is the following stanza :

Niȝttingale, thou hauest wrong,  
 Wolt thou me senden of this lond,  
 For ich holde with the riȝtte ;  
 I take witnesse of Sire *Wawain*,  
 That Ihesu Crist ȝaf miȝt and main,  
 And strengthe for to fȝitte.—fol. 137†.

412, in assigning the year 1278 to Robert of Gloucester’s Chronicle, although in my Preface to *Havelok* I have pointed out a passage in it which proves it not to have been completed till after 1297.

\* Weber’s *Metr. Rom.* ii. 4; see also ii. 261. He is greatly mistaken in supposing the romance of *Ywaine and Gawin* to be here alluded to.

† A fragment of the same poem, written thirty years later, is preserved in the Auchinleck MS., and is thence quoted by Leyden, in *Complaynte of Scotland*, p. 159.

Chaucer's lines in reference to our hero are well known\*, and so are the passages in the romance of *Ywaine and Gawin*†, composed nearly at the same period. In a legendary MS. work, intitled *Cursor Mundi*, of the same age, we read in the prologue,—

Man yhernes rimes for to here,  
And romans red on manere sere,—  
O kyng Arthour, that was so rike,  
Quam non in hys tim was like;  
O ferlys that hys knythes fell,  
That aunter sere I here of tell;  
As *Wawan*, Cai, and other stabell,  
For to were the Ronde Tabell.

*MS. Cott. Vesp. A. III. fol. 1‡.*

In the fifteenth century there are numerous allusions to Sir Gawayne, and the vernacular translations of the *Saint Graal* and *Merlin*§, *Mort Artus*||, *Perceval*¶, *Launfal*\*\*\*, the *Squyr of Lowe Degre*††, and other romances, united with the publication of Malory's diffuse work towards the close of this period, must have powerfully operated in diffusing a knowledge of his romantic career. In a metrical version of Guido de Colonna's War of Troy, which has erroneously been attributed to Lydgate, the writer thus enumerates the popular fictions of the day,—

\* *Canterbury Tales*, l. 10,409, and *Rom. of the Rose*, l. 2209. Tyrwhitt's Glossary, in v. *Gawain*.

† L. 1419, ap. Ritson, *Metr. Rom.*, vol. i.

‡ This copy of the poem is written in the northern dialect. See the same passage, with numerous variations, quoted from the Laud MSS., No. 416, Bodl. Library, in Warton, *Hist. E. P.*, i. 127.

§ Preserved in Corpus Chr. Coll. Cambr., No. 80, and hitherto unpublished. The translator names himself Herry Lonelich: see Nasmyth's Catalogue, p. 55, 4to, 1777.

|| MS. Harl. 2252. Printed for the Roxburghe Club, 4to. 1819.

¶ MS. Eccles. Lincoln., A. 1. 17.

\*\* Ritson's *Metr. Rom.*, vol. i.

†† *Ibid.*, vol. iii.

Off Bevis, Gy, and of *Gawayn*,  
 Off kyng Richard, and of Owayn,  
 Off Tristram, and of Percyvale,  
 Off Rouland Ris and Aglavale.

*MS. Laud. 595, fol. 1. Bodl. Libr.*


And in the inedited romance of *Syr Degrevante*, a composition of much merit, we are told,—

W<sup>t</sup> kyng Arthure, I wene,  
 And dame Gaynore, the quene,  
 He was knawene for kene  
 This comly knyghte ;  
 In haythynnes and in Spayne,  
 In France and in Britayne,  
 W<sup>t</sup> Perceuelle and *Gawayne*,  
 For hardy and wyghte.

*MS. Linc. A. 1. 17.*

In the reign of Henry the Eighth we learn from a curious passage in Skelton's *Little Boke of Phillip Sparow*, what were the principal romance-stories then in vogue, and among them is "*Gawen* and *Syr Guy*," as well as *Lancelot*, *Tristan*, and *Libius Diosconius*, Gawayne's son. The repeated editions of such romances in the course of the sixteenth century must have rendered the name of Gawayne familiar to all, and at length, by the natural course of all popular literature, the ballad-makers succeeded the minstrels in the commemoration of his exploits. Perhaps one of the latest passages in which his name is used as a *bye-word* occurs in Laneham's amusing account of the actors in the Coventry pageant before Queen Elizabeth at Kenilworth :—" But aware ! keep bak, make room noow, heer they cum ! And fyrst captin Cox,—an od man, I promiz yoo,—by profession a mason, and that right skilfull ; very cunning in fens, and *handy as Gawin*, for hiz tonsword hangs




 Wyeu pe lege & pe allant Wat, leled at trope  
 pe wy brittened & brent to brondez & akeþ  
 pe tulk pat pe trames of tresou þ Wat  
 Wat tried for his tricheyrie pe trebest on er the  
 hit Wat Ennias pe athel & his high kynde  
 pat apen depreced pynices & patroues bi come  
 helneze of al pe Wele i pe West iles  
 fro riche romulus to rome richis hy Wyne  
 þt gret bobbaice pat durze he biges vpon fyrst  
 & neuenes hit his anne nome as hit nob hat  
 tieins to tuckan & telas bigynes  
 lang aberde i lulardie lyfetes vp homes || Wyth Wyne  
 & ter on pe french flod felþ brut  
 on mony bonkes ful brode bre tain he cetter  
 Where Werre & Wrake & Worder  
 bi typez hatz Wont þ ine  
 & oft bope blyste & bluder  
 ful kete hatz skysted cyne  
 ande qnen yis bretayn Wat bigged bi pis burn ryph  
 bold bredden per ine baret pat loden  
 in mony turned tyme tene pat Wrosten  
 mo ferlyeson pis fold han fallen here oft  
 pen in any of pat þot cyn pat ilk tyme  
 bot of alle pat here bult of bretaygne kyges  
 ay Wat arthur pe hendest as þat herde telle







at his tablz eend\*.” And a little further on, among the books which the same worthy had “at hiz fingers endz,” he mentions “Syr Isenbras, *Syr Gawyn*, and Olyver of the Castl.” Indeed there can be little doubt that Sir Gawayne was the prototype which furnished to Spenser the character of his Sir Calidore,

In whom it seemes that gentleness of spright  
And manners mylde were planted naturall,  
To which he adding comely guize withall,  
And gracious speach, did steale mens hearts away ;  
Nathlesse thereto he was full stout and tall,  
And well approv'd in batteilous affray,  
That him did much renowme, and far his fame display.

*Faerie Queene, B. vi. c. 1. st. 2.*

Having dwelt so long on the subject of our Hero's fame in England, it is scarcely necessary to add, that in southern Scotland the popularity of his exploits could not have been less, since he there was claimed as one of their own chieftains, the *Lord of Galloway*. The Scottish poems published in the present volume will best show how he was regarded by the writers of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, but they also prove, that these writers were indebted to Anglo-Norman romance-literature for nearly all that they knew of him. This is an important fact in the history of Scottish literature, and hitherto has not received the attention it deserves. The same remark may extend to Wales, as proved by the publication of the *Mabinogion*.

If we now look towards Germany, we shall find at an early period the romances of the Round Table received there, as borrowed from the French originals. Hartman von Owe translated the *Chevalier au Lion* at the commencement of the thirteenth century†,

\* Letter on the entertainment of the Queen at Kenilworth, p. 34, 1575. 12mo. Oliver of the *Castle* is a mistake for, or corruption of, Oliver of *Castille*.

† Printed in Müller's *Sammlung*, vol. ii. 4to, 1785.

and at the same period Wolfram von Eschenbach composed his romances of *Parzival* and *Titirel* from the authority of Kyot of Provence\*. The proper names in these are very much altered, and other liberties taken, but in the German *Parzival*, as in the French text, Sir Gawayne occupies the larger share of the poem. Goldast in his *Parænetica*, p. 377, quotes a distich from a German poem intitled by him *Historia Gewani*, but in all probability it is taken from the *Parzival*†. In the "*Altdeutsche Blätter*" are also printed three fragments of old German romances from MSS. of the 13th, 14th, and 15th centuries, relating to Gawayne, but it is doubtful to what works they belong‡. The same personage is mentioned in the romance of *Lohengrin*, which belongs to the same cycle§, as well as in the romance of *Wigolais*, by Wirnt von Gravenberg, of which I have spoken in my Notes, (p. 347.) Towards the end of the fifteenth century a cyclic compilation from the Round Table narratives was made by Ulrich Fürterer, a poet of Bavaria, and the work is still preserved in manuscript at Munich and Vienna||.

Among the Flemish poets the adventures of Gawayne were equally well known, and at as early a period. They are referred to by Jacob von Maerlant, (who died about the year 1300,) in his *Alexandreis*, and also by Jan de Helu, who was his contemporary, and by Jan de Clerk, who died in 1350¶. Besides these inci-

\* Printed in the edition of Eschenbach's works by Lachmann, 8vo, Berl. 1833. The *Parzival* consists of 24,678 lines.

† See Von der Hagen's *Grundriss zur Geschichte der Deutschen Poesie*, p. 122, 8vo, Berl. 1812.

‡ Vol. ii. pp. 148—159, 8vo, Leipz. 1838.

§ Edited by J. Görres, from a MS. in the Vatican, 8vo, Heidelb. 1813. In this, *Sygelint*, daughter of Gawayne, is noticed.

|| Von der Hagen *Grundr.* etc., p. 153. See also *Altdeutsche Gedichte aus den Zeiten der Tafelrunde*, v. F. F. Hofstätter, 2 Thl. 12mo, Wien, 1811.

¶ See Hoffman's *Horæ Belgicæ*, pt. i. pp. 48, 52, 8vo, 1830; and Mone's *Übersicht der Niederländischen Volks-Literatur*, p. 38, 8vo, Tüb. 1838.

dental passages, a poem consisting of 11,300 lines is extant, composed by Penninc and Peter Vostaert in the fourteenth century, in which the exploits of Gawayne are principally narrated, and which is, doubtless, a translation of the French *Perceval*\*. Even in the remoter regions of the North, the romances of Perceval, Ywaine, Erec and Enide, Tristan, and many more of French origin, found their way, and Icelandic versions of them are still preserved in the libraries of Stockholm, Copenhagen, and the British Museum. In the list given by Müller in his *Sagabibliothek*, vol. iii. p. 484, I find “*Valvent, Artus Kappa, Saga*,” or Romance of Gawayne, Arthur’s knight, and in the Additional MSS. in the British Museum, No. 4859, is preserved a transcript, with the title, “*Nu byriast Valvers [Valvens] þattur, sem var eirn af Artus Kauppum*.” It consists only of five chapters, and is evidently a short compilation from the *Perceval*.

In the southern countries of Europe the Round Table romances seem, comparatively speaking, to have been in far less repute. The Italians, indeed, had translations of the *Merlin*, the *Lancelot*, and the *Tristan*, but, with the exception of the last, they were never generally read, but gave way to the more popular romances of Charlemagne and his *Douze Pairs*†. Ariosto, however, takes occasion to eulogise the chivalry of Britain:—

Gran cose in essa già fece Tristano,  
Lancilotto, Galasso [Galeotto,] Artù, e Galvano.  
*Orlando Furioso, Canto iv. st. 52.*

And another writer of more recent date, Brusantino, in his *Angelica Innamorata*, also says,—

\* Consult the last cited works. Vostaert seems to have completed the poem in the year 1350.

† See Panizzi’s *Boiardo ed Ariosto, Essay*, p. 151, 12mo, 1830.

E tra i pregiati Artù gia fu e Tristano,  
E Bando, e Lancilotto, e 'l *buon Galvano*\*.

But it was reserved for a native of Cremona, at the request of the Loredani family of Venice, to celebrate Arthur's courteous nephew in a distinct work. It is written in *ottava rima*, and was printed without date at Milan by Peter Martir and his associates, and intitled, "*Libro novo de lo Inamoramento de Galvano*, etc., *composto da il laureato poeta Fossa da Cremona.*" By Ferrario it is assigned to Evangelista Fossa, but Count Melzi seems inclined to give it to Matteo Fossa, who died in 1516†. Both agree in stating that it is of extreme rarity, and extremely worthless.

Lastly, among the Greeks of the Eastern Empire we meet with the heroes of the Round Table, whose exploits must have been communicated to them in their intercourse with the Franks. This curious fact is proved by the fragment of a romance written in Greek political verses, a private impression of which was printed at Breslau in 1821, by Von der Hagen, and subsequently reprinted at the end of M. Michel's edition of *Tristan*, in 1835. Neither of these editors was aware of the fact, that the poem in question is only a portion of a longer romance, translated closely from the *Gyron le Courtois* of Helie de Borron or Rusticien de Pise, and consequently its composition cannot be assigned to so early a period as the twelfth century, but to the latter half of the thirteenth.

I have now only to add a few words respecting the execution of the present volume. The Glossary has cost considerable labor, and will, I trust, be considered of value, but to those who know

\* Cant. iii. st. 1, edit. 8vo, Vineg. 1553. No such personage as *Bando* occurs in the Arthurian romances.

† See *Storia degli antichi Romanzi di Cavalleria*, vol. ii. p. 330, 8vo, 1828; and Melzi's *Bibliografia de' Romanci*, p. 320, 8vo, 1838.











the difficulties which attend the explanation of the Northern alliterative poems, its imperfections will not prove matter of surprise. I hope the time may arrive, when the whole of these poems still remaining in manuscript will be published, and I am confident, that until this preliminary step is accomplished, no complete Dictionary of the Northern English can be made. Jamieson's is, indeed, a work of great industry, and his collection of modern Scoticisms intitled to considerable praise; but as a critical or etymological guide to the Scottish and Northern dialect of the thirteenth, fourteenth, and fifteenth centuries, it is miserably imperfect and inaccurate. A vicious theory pervades it throughout, which a more extensive acquaintance with the mass of vernacular literature still remaining inedited would, I am convinced, have excluded.

The poems here taken from original manuscripts are printed with a scrupulous regard to accuracy, and the abbreviations left as written, but, for the convenience of the reader, a list of these is annexed, and the words are written at length in the Glossary and Notes. The truth is, that editors of our old poetry have, with few exceptions, paid too little attention to the system of writing used by the early scribes, and the consequence is, that but a small portion of all that has been published will bear collation with the originals. I say this *advisedly*, having myself compared most of the poems edited by Ritson, Pinkerton, Weber, Percy, Ellis, Hartshorne, and others. It is time this were remedied.

I have added to the present Introduction, according to the excellent plan adopted by recent French writers, a description of the Manuscripts used by me, which may not be altogether devoid of interest.

For three of the transcripts from the Percy MS., my thanks are due in an especial manner to George Baker, Esq., the Historian

of Northamptonshire, who most kindly undertook to make them for me, which he was enabled to do by the liberal permission of the present possessor of the Manuscript, Ambrose Isted, Esq., of Ecton Hall.

FREDERIC MADDEN.

British Museum,  
9th August, 1839.

## DESCRIPTION OF THE MANUSCRIPTS USED IN THE PRESENT VOLUME.

---

I. COTTON MS. NERO A. x. A small quarto volume, consisting of three different MSS. bound together, which originally had no connection with each other. Prefixed is an imperfect list of contents, in the hand-writing of James, the Bodley Librarian.

The first portion consists of a panegyrical oration in Latin by Justus de Justis, on John Chedworth, archdeacon of Lincoln, dated at Verona, 16 July, 1468. It occupies thirty-six folios, written on vellum, and is the original copy presented by the author.

The second portion is that we are more immediately concerned with. It is described by James as "*Vetus poema Anglicanum, in quo sub insomnii figmento multa ad religionem et mores spectantia explicantur*," and this account with some slight changes is adopted by Smith and Planta, in their catalogues; both of whom assign it to the fifteenth century. It will appear, by what follows, that no less than four distinct poems have been confounded together by these writers.

This portion of the volume extends from fol. 37 to fol. 126, inclusive, and is written by one and the same hand, in a small, sharp, irregular character, which is often, from the paleness of the ink, and the contractions used, difficult to read. There are no titles or rubrics, but the divisions are marked by large initial letters of blue, florished with red, and several illuminations, coarsely executed, serve by way of illustration, each of which occupies a page.

1. Four of these are prefixed to the first poem. In the first the Author is represented slumbering in a meadow, by the side of a streamlet, clad in a long red gown, having falling sleeves, turned up with white, and a blue hood

attached round the neck. In the second the same person appears, drawn on a larger scale, and standing by the stream. In the third he occurs nearly in the same position, with his hands raised, and on the opposite side a lady dressed in white, in the costume of Richard the Second's and Henry the Fourth's time, buttoned tight up to the neck, with long hanging sleeves. Her hair is plaited on each side, and on her head is a crown. In the fourth we see the author kneeling by the water, and beyond the stream is depicted a castle, or palace, on the im battled wall of which appears the same lady, with her arm extended towards him.

The poem commences on fol. 39, and consists of one hundred twelve-line stanzas, every five of which conclude with the same line, and are connected by the iteration of a leading expression. It commences thus :—

Perle plesaunte to prynces paye,  
To clanky clos in golde so clere,  
Oute of oryente I hardely saye  
Ne proued I neuer her precios pere ;  
So rounde, so reken in vche araye,  
So smal, so smothe her sydes were,  
Quere so euer I iugged gemmes gaye  
I sette hyr sengeley in synglure.  
Allas ! I lefte hyr in on erbere,  
Purȝ gresse to grounde hit fro me got ;  
I dewyne for dowed of luf daungere,  
Of þat pryuy perle w'outen spot.

The writer represents himself as going in the month of August to seek his *pearl* or mistress, and falling asleep in a flowery arbour. He is carried in his vision to a stream near a forest, which flows over pebbles of emeralds and sapphires. On the other side he perceives a chrystal cliff, and “a mayden of menske” sitting beneath.

At the fote ther of ther sete a faunt,  
A mayden of menske ful debonere ;  
Blysnande whyt watȝ hyr bleaunt,  
I knew hyr wel, I had sene hyr ere.  
As glysnande golde þat men con schere,  
So schon þat schene an vnder schore ;  
On lenghe I loked to hyr pere,  
Pe lenger I knew hyr more & more.

The lady rises and approaches him, and in answer to his inquiries blames him for

supposing her lost. He wishes to pass the stream, but is told he may not till after death. The lady thence takes occasion to instruct him in religious doctrines, which are of a mystical tendency. The celestial Jerusalem is then pointed out to him, and he beholds a procession of virgins going to salute the Lamb. The lady leaves him to take her place among them; and on his attempting to jump into the stream to follow her, he awakes. The poem concludes on fol. 55<sup>b</sup>.

2. Then follow two more illuminations; in the first of which Noah and his family are represented in the ark; in the second the prophet Daniel expounding the writing on the wall to the affrighted Belshazzar and his queen. These serve as illustrations to the second poem, which begins at fol. 57, and is written in long alliterative lines.

Clannesse who so kyndly cowþe commende,  
& rekken vp alle þe resownȝ þ' ho by riȝt askeȝ,  
Fayre formeȝ myȝt he fynde in forering his speche,  
& in þe contrare kark & combraunce huge.

The first part of this poem is occupied with the parable of the marriage-feast, as applicable to cleanness of life. In the second is related the fall of the angels, the creation, and principal events of scripture history to the destruction of Sodom, after which follows a long passage on the birth of Christ, and reflexions of a moral character. The third part embraces the history of Daniel; and concludes on fol. 82.

3. Two illuminations precede, as before; one of which represents the sailors throwing the prophet Jonas into the sea, the other depicts the prophet in the attitude of preaching to the people of Nineveh. The poem is in the same metre as the last, and commences thus, fol. 83 :—

Pacience is a poynt, þaȝ hit displese ofte;  
When heuy herttes ben hurt wyth heȝyng, other elles,  
Suffraunce may aswagen hem, & þe swelme lethe,  
For ho quelles vche a qued, & quenches malyce.

It is occupied wholly with the story of Jonas, as applicable to the praise of meekness and patience; and ends on fol. 90.

4. The Romance intitled by me *Syr Gawayn and the Grene Knyȝt* follows, fol. 91. Prefixed is an illumination, of which an outline engraving is given at p. 18 of the present volume, and needs no further description, except that here and elsewhere the only colors used are green, red, blue, and yellow. A facsimile of the first page of the poem itself is also annexed. It ends on fol. 124<sup>b</sup>, and at the conclusion, in a later hand is written "Hony foit q̃ mal penc,"

which may, perhaps, allude to the illumination on the opposite page, fol. 125, representing the stolen interview between the wife of the Grene Knyzt and Syr Gawayne. (See p. 45.) Above the lady's head is written :

Mi mind is mukul on on, þ<sup>t</sup> wil me noȝt amende,

Sum time was trewe as fton, & fro schame couȝe hir defende.

It does not appear very clearly how these lines apply to the painting. Two additional illuminations follow ; in the first of which Gawayne is seen approaching the *Grene Chapel*, whilst his enemy appears above, wielding his huge axe (see p. 82.); and in the second Sir Gawayne, fully equipped in armour, is represented in the presence of king Arthur and queen Guenever, after his return to the court. (See p. 91.) The form of the helmet worn by the knight is here worthy of notice.

The third and concluding portion of the Cotton volume extends from fol. 127 to fol. 140<sup>b</sup>, inclusive, and consists of theological excerpts, in Latin, written in a hand of the end of the thirteenth century. At the conclusion is added *Epitaphium de Ranulfo, abbate Ramesiensi*, who was abbat from the year 1231 to 1253, and who is erroneously called *Ralph* in the *Monasticon*, vol. ii. p. 548, new ed.

II. THE THORNTON MS. preserved in the Library of Lincoln Cathedral, and marked A. 1. 17. It is a folio volume written on paper, in a small and occasionally negligent hand, consisting at present of 314 folios, but imperfect both at the beginning and end, and otherwise much injured by neglect<sup>1</sup>. It was apparently compiled by one Robert de Thornton, between the years 1430–1440. The Contents are,

1. Life of Alexander; in prose. fol. 1.

Beg. . . . . downe to þe dyke, and thare he felle, and was alle to-frusched.

At the conclusion we read, "*Here endeȝ þ<sup>e</sup> lyf of gret Alexander, conquerour of*

<sup>1</sup> This MS. was liberally lent to me in 1832, for a considerable period, by the Dean and Chapter of Lincoln. It was then in thick oaken boards, covered with white leather, and fastened by a clasp, but in so decayed a state, and the leaves in such loose disorder, as to make it absolutely necessary, for the sake of preserving it from destruction, to have it rebound. This I caused to be done, at my own expense, in a "good solid attire of Russia leather," and I prefixed to it a list of the contents, drawn up with considerable labor, to which I affixed my initials. It was therefore with some surprise I found, on looking into Dr. Dibdin's "*Bibliographical Tour in the Northern Counties*," 8vo, 1838, that in vol. i. pp. 110–116, the whole of this list was copied in my own words, (with some very trifling alterations, and some very glaring blunders,) without any proper acknowledgement to myself as the author, but on the contrary, at p. 117, the description is assigned to "*Mr. Willson's enlarged notice*." Justice to myself requires me to state this. Either Dr. Dibdin or Mr. Willson has not treated me fairly in this matter.

*alle þe worlde.*" It is a literal translation of the Latin prose Life, printed at Strasburg, in 1494, and from this or a similar version the alliterative Scottish Romance in MS. Ashmole 44, seems to have been versified.

On the verso of fol. 49 is written in a later hand than the usual text, "*Isto die natus fuit, sancta Maria ante [Nativitatem?] Domini nostri Jhesu Christi, Robertus Thornton in Ridaylle, anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>CCCCLIH.*"

2. Prognostications of the weather, etc., written in a different and more recent hand. fol. 50.

3. *Lamentacio Peccatoris.* fol. 51<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Alle crystyn men þ<sup>t</sup> wawkes me bye.

In twenty stanzas of four lines each, written in a later hand than Thornton's.

On fol. 52<sup>b</sup> is a rude drawing in pen and ink of a combat between a knight and a giant, executed apparently by the same hand.

4. *Here begynnes Morte Arthure.* fol. 53.

Beg. Now grett glorious godd | thurghe grace of hym seluene,  
And the precyous prayere | of hys prys modyr.

At the bottom of the page is written in red, *Espoyez Thornton,* } *ygl' En espyrance may . . . .* On fol. 93<sup>b</sup> occurs also the name of "*Robert Thornton,*" in a scroll attached to an initial letter, and at the end of the poem occurs, "*Here endes Morte Arthure, writene by Robert of Thorntone.*" A later hand adds, "*R. Thornton dictus, qui scripsit sit benedictus. Amen.*" Bishop Tanner, and after him Ritson and others, have considered Thornton here and elsewhere as the *author*, but he is evidently only the *scribe*. In all probability, this Romance is the "*gret Geste of Arthure,*" ascribed by Wyntown to Hucheon. (See Notes, p. 303.)

5. *Here by-gynnes the Romance off Octavyane.* fol. 98<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Mekylle and littille, olde and ȝynge,  
Herkyns alle to my talkynge.

In six-line stanzas. Unfortunately one half of fol. 108 has been torn away. It differs from the Romance printed by Weber, from the Cotton MS. Calig. A. II., but agrees with the copy at Cambridge, among Bp. More's MSS. in the Public Library, No. 690. (Ff. ii. 38.)

6. *Here begynnes the Romance off Syr Ysambrace.* fol. 109.

Beg. Jhesu Xp'c, Lorde of heuene kyng,  
Graunte vs alle his dere blyssynge.

In six-line stanzas. At the end is, "*Explicit Syr Ysambrace.*" It differs much



from Copland's edition, reprinted by Utterson in his *Early Popular Poetry*, vol. i. p. 77.

7. *Here bygynnes y<sup>e</sup> Romance off Dyoclicyane y<sup>e</sup> Emperour & y<sup>e</sup> Erle Be-  
rade of Tholous, and of y<sup>e</sup> Emprice Beaulilione.* fol. 114<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Jhesu Criste, God and Lorde in Trynnye,  
Onely god and persones thre.

In six-line stanzas. The close of this Romance has been torn away. It is printed by Ritson, *Metr. Rom.* vol. iii. p. 93, from Bp. More's MSS. in Publ. Libr. Cambridge, No. 690, and a third copy exists in the Ashmolean Museum, No. 45.

8. *Vita Sancti Christofori.* [*Her*]e bygynnes y<sup>e</sup> lyffe of y<sup>e</sup> Story of  
[*S*]aynte Cristofre. fol. 122<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Lordynges, if it be 3owre wille,  
And 3e wille here, and holde 3ow still.

In six-line stanzas. At the end is, "*Explicit Vita Sancti Christofori. Thorntone.*"  
9. *Syr Degreuance.* fol. 130.

Beg. Jhesu, Lorde in Trynite  
Graunte þam heuene for to see.

In eight-line stanzas. At the close is, "*Explicit Syr Degreuaunt.*" The name is printed erroneously *Degrenante* by Laing, (who conjectures it may be Sir *Degore*, which it is not,) and *Dygamore* by Dibdin. Ritson in his MS. Catalogue of Romances, MS. Add. 10,285, Append., mentions another copy as existing among Bp. More's MSS. at Cambridge.

10. *Incipit Syr Eglamour of Artasse.* fol. 138<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Jhesu þ' is heuens kyng,  
Gyff vs alle his blyssyng.

In six-line stanzas. There are other copies in MS. Cott. Calig. A. II., and MS. More, 690. It was printed by Chepman and Myllar at Edinburgh, in 1508, and subsequently by Copland, and by Walley, at London.

11. *De Miraculo beate Marie.* fol. 147.

Beg. Jhesu, Lorde in Trinyte,  
P' was, and es, and aye schalle be.

In six-line stanzas. The story relates to a wicked knight, who is converted from his sins by a friar.

12. *Lyarde*. fol. 148.

Beg. Lyarde es ane olde horse, and may noght wele drawe,  
He salle be putt in to þ<sup>e</sup> parke, holyne for to gnawe.

At the end is, "*Here endys Lyarde*." The tale is of an indecent cast.

13. *Tomas off Ersseldowne*. fol. 149<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Lystyns, lordynges, bothe grete and smale.

In stanzas of four lines each. At the end, "*Explicit Thomas of Erseledownne*." It is imperfect; part of fol. 152 and nearly the whole of fol. 153 having been torn away. It was printed from this copy by Laing in his *Popular Poetry of Scotland*, 4to, 1822, and previously had appeared in Scott's *Border Minstrelsy* and Jamieson's *Popular Ballads*, from the Cotton MS. Vitell. E. x., and MS. More Ff. v. 48.

14. *Here by-gynnes the Awntyrs of Arthure at the Terne-Wathelyne*. fol. 154.

Printed in the present Volume, p. 95. A fac-simile of the commencement is annexed, which will shew the general character of the MS.

15. *Here bygynnes the Romance off Syr Perecyuelle of Gales*. fol. 161.

Beg. Lef, lythes to me,  
Two wordes or thre.

In stanzas of eight lines. No other copy is at present known, but it is but of little merit as a composition.

## 16, 17, 18. Charms for the tooth-ache. fol. 176.

19. *Epistola Sancti Salvatoris*. fol. 176<sup>b</sup>.20. Prayer in Latin, with a Proem in English. fol. 176<sup>b</sup>.21. *A Preyere off the Fyve Joyes of oure Lady [in] Ynglys, and of the Fyve Sorowes*. fol. 177<sup>b</sup>.22. *Psalmus, Voce mea ad Dominum clamaui*. fol. 178.23. *Here bygynnys Fyve Prayers to the wirchipe of the Fyve Wondys of oure Lorde Jhesu Cryste*; in Latin. fol. 178.24. *Oracio in Ynglys*. fol. 178<sup>b</sup>.25. *A Colett to oure lady Saynt Marye*; in Latin. fol. 178<sup>b</sup>.26. *Oracio in modo Collecte, pro amico*. fol. 178<sup>b</sup>.27. *Antiphona Sancti Leonardi, cum Collecta*. fol. 178<sup>b</sup>.28. *Here begynnes the Previte off the Passioun of owre lorde Jhesu*. fol. 179.

Beg. Who so desyres to fynd comforthe and gostely gladnes.

At the end is written, "*Explicit Bonaventure de Misterijs Passionis Jhesu Christi*."

29. *Incipit tractatus Willielmi Nassyngtone, quondam Aduocati Juris Eboraci, de Trinitate et Vnitate, cum declaracione operum Dei, et de passione Domini nostri Jhesu Christi, etc.* fol. 189.

Beg. A, Lord God of myghtes maste, Fadere and Sone, and Haly Gaste,  
Fader, for þ<sup>n</sup> ert almyghty, sone for thow ert alle wytty.

Tanner notices this poem from the present MS., and so does Warton, *Hist. Engl. Poetry*, vol. iii. p. 9, who with his usual inaccuracy confounds it with Nafsyngton's translation of John de Waldeby's *Myrrour*, and then assigns the author to the year 1480; although in the Royal Library, British Museum, there is a copy of Nafsyngton's version of the *Myrrour*, dated in 1418, MS. Reg. 17, C. viii.

30, 31, 32. Prayers in verse. fol. 191<sup>b</sup>.

33. *Of the vertu, of the haly name of Jhesu.* fol. 192.

A translation from Richard Hampole's comment on the verse *Oleum effusum nomen tuum*, etc.

34. *A tale þat Richerde Hermet [made].* fol. 193<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. When I hade taken my syngulere purpos, and lefte þ<sup>e</sup> seculere habyte.

35. *A prayere þat þ<sup>e</sup> same Richerde Hermet made, þ<sup>t</sup> es beried at Hampulle;* in Latin. fol. 193<sup>b</sup>.

36. *Ymynus, quem composuit Sanctus Ambrosyus.* fol. 193<sup>b</sup>.

37. *De imperfecta contricione.* fol. 194.

Beg. Rycherde hermyte reherces a dredfulle tale.

38. *Moralia Richardi heremite, de natura apis.* fol. 194.

Beg. The bee has thre kyndis.

At the foot of this folio is written "*Edward Thornton*," in a hand of Henry the Eighth's time.

39. *De vita cujusdam puelle incluse propter amorem Christi.* fol. 194<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Alswa Heraclides, þ<sup>e</sup> clerke, telles.

At the close is, "Richerd heremyte reherces pis tale in ensampille."

40, 41. Two Latin extracts from "*Richardus Herymyta*." fol. 195.

42. *A notabille Tretys off the ten Comandementys, drawene by Richerde the hermyte off Hampulle.* fol. 195<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. The fyrste comandement es, Thy Lorde God þ<sup>n</sup> salle loute.

43. *Idem de septem donis Spiritus Sancti, Also of þ<sup>e</sup> gyftes of the Haly Gaste.* fol. 196.

44. *Idem de dilectacione in Deo. Also of þ<sup>e</sup> same, delyte and zernyng of Gode.* fol. 196<sup>b</sup>.

45. *Incipit Speculum Sancti Edmundi, Cantuar. Archiepiscopi, in Anglicis. Here begynnys the Myrrour of Seynt Edmonde, þ<sup>e</sup> Ersebechope of Canteberye.* ff. 197-209.

Beg. *Videte vocacionem vestram.* This wordes sayse saynte Paule.

Edmund Rich, the author of the Latin original of this treatise, died in 1242.

46. *Tractatus de dominica oracione.* fol. 209<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. In alle the wordes þat er stabilled.

47. Poetical address to Christ. fol. 211.

Beg. Jhesu Criste, saynte Marye sonne.

In stanzas of four lines. At the end is, *Explicit. Amen. Thorntone. Amen.*

48. Another metrical orison, in six-line stanzas. fol. 211<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Fadir, and Sone, and Haly Gaste.

49. Another, to Christ. fol. 212.

Beg. Jhesu Criste, Goddes sune of heuene.

50. *Incipit a Meditacione of þ<sup>e</sup> Fyve Woundes of oure Lorde Jhesu Criste;* in Latin. fol. 212.

51. A Meditacione of the Crosse of Criste; in Latin. fol. 212<sup>b</sup>.

At the end is added, "*R. Thorntone dictus, qui scripsit sit benedictus. Amen.*"

52. Moral Poem, in stanzas of four lines. fol. 213.

Beg. When Adam dalfe and Eue spane | Go spire, if þ<sup>e</sup> may spede,  
Whare was þane þ<sup>e</sup> pride of mane | þat now merres his mede.

53. Six lines of poetry; perhaps composed by Thornton himself. fol. 213<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Jhesu Criste, have mercy one me.

54. *Here begynnys a Sermone þat Dane Joh'n Gaytryge made, þ<sup>e</sup> whilke teches how scifte es to be made, and whare of, and in scifte how many thynges solde be consederide.* fol. 213<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Als a grett doctour schewes in his buke.

55. Hymn to Christ; in four-line stanzas. fol. 219.

Beg. Jhesu, thi swetnes wha moghte it se.

56. Religious treatise, in prose. fol. 219<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Dere frende, wit þ<sup>a</sup> wele, þat þ<sup>e</sup> ende and þ<sup>e</sup> soueraynte of perfeccione.

57. Moral Poem. fol. 222.

Beg. pi joy be ilke a dele to serue thi Godd to paye.

Imperfect at the end, as is the next piece at the beginning, a folio having been here torn out.

58. Treatise on Active and Contemplative Life, fol. 223.

Beg. . . . . menne þat ware in prelacye, and oþer also þat ware haly temporalle menne.

59. Prose religious treatise. fol. 229<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Wit thou wele, dere frende, þat þof þou had neuer done syne.

60. *Of Sayne Joh'n þe euaungelist.* fol. 231.

Beg. Of alle mankynde þat he made, þat maste es of myghte,  
And of þe molde merkede and mesured that tyde.

An alliterative poem in stanzas of fourteen lines each, of which the third, fifth, and seventh rhyme, and the second, fourth, sixth and eighth. At the close are six shorter lines, of which the first, second, fourth and fifth rhyme, and the third and sixth.

61. Prose tract on Prayer. fol. 233<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Praying es a gracyous gyfte of owre Lorde Godd.

62. *De gracia Dei.* fol. 240.

Beg. Off Goddis grace stirrand and helpand.

63. *Hic incipit quedam reuelacio. A Reuelacyone schewede to ane holy woman now one late tyme.* fol. 250.

Beg. Alle manere of thyng þat es by-gunne.

This revelation is stated to have occurred on St. Lawrence's day, 1422, which may assist in determining the age of the Manuscript.

64, 65. Two hymns, in Latin. fol. 258.

66. *Here bygynnys Sayne Jerome Spaltyre*; in Latin. fol. 258<sup>b</sup>.

Adjoined are various Latin prayers. On the margin of fol. 266 is written in a hand of the sixteenth century, "*Dorythy Thornton.*"

67. *Religio Sancti Spiritus religio munda.* fol. 271.

Beg. Off the Abbaye of Saynte Spirite, that es in a place that es callede Conseyence. A, dere brothir and systirs.

This is the well-known treatise of the "*Abbaye of the Holy Goste*," generally ascribed by bibliographers to John Alcock, bishop of Ely, who died about 1498. That this statement is erroneous, appears not only from the presumed date of the present MS., but by the fact, that there is a copy of the treatise in the Vernon MS. Bodleian Library, written in the reign of Richard the Second, before Alcock was born! Among the MSS. preserved in the library at Lambeth, No. 432, art. 2, a copy of this treatise is attributed to Richard Hampole, and this statement is not unlikely to be the true one.

68. A religious Poem. fol. 276<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. The begynnnyng es of thre.

69. *Ista oracio que sequitur est de vii. gaudia (sic) beate Marie virginis, per sanctum Thomam et Martirem, Cantuariensem episcopum edita.* fol. 277<sup>b</sup>.70. *Anoþer Salutacioun tille oure Lady, of hir fyve Joyes; in Latin.* fol. 277<sup>b</sup>.71. *Ane Antyme to þ<sup>e</sup> Fadir of heuene, w<sup>t</sup> a Colett; in Latin.* fol. 278.72. *Anoþer anteme of þ<sup>e</sup> passyoun of Criste Jhesu; in Latin.* fol. 278.73. *A Colecte of grete pardone oon to Crist Jhesu; in Latin.* fol. 278.74. Latin hymn to Christ. fol. 278<sup>b</sup>.

At the top of the page is written, "*Thorntone. Misereatur mei Deus!*"

75. *A Preyere to þ<sup>e</sup> wounde in Crystis syde; in Latin.* fol. 278<sup>b</sup>.76. *Memento, homo, quod sinis (sic) es*, a Poem in four-line stanzas, each of which rhymes with the same syllable. fol. 279.

Beg. Erthe owte of erth : es wondirly wroghte,  
Erthe hase getyn one erthe : a dignyte of noghte.

77. *Hic incipit liber de diuersis medicinis, et primo, pro capite*, ff. 280-314<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. For werke and vanyte ine þ<sup>e</sup> hede.

This treatise is imperfect, the latter leaves having been wholly or partly torn away. The authority of the *Rector of Oswaldkirk* is often referred to by the compiler, and the names of *Magister Will. de Excestre* and *Syr Apiltone* are also cited.

The scribe and compiler of this volume, Robert de Thornton, is stated by Mr. Laing to have held some situation in the cathedral of Lincoln, and afterwards to have become archdeacon of Bedford, and to have died in May, 1450. The internal

evidence of the volume is altogether against such a supposition. From the general contents it appears evidently to have been compiled by a native of Yorkshire, and in all probability by a member of the family of Thornton, which was seated in the Wapontake of Rydale, in the North Riding of Yorkshire, in whose possession it remained till the close of the sixteenth century, as appears by the entries on ff. 194 and 266. Compare the pedigree of Thornton in MS. Harl. 6070, fol. 11, in which the same family names occur. The mention of the *Rector of Oswaldkirk* and *Syr Apiltone* concur to prove this conjecture, since Oswaldkirk and Appleton both lie in the same immediate district. Ritson's supposition (*Bibl. Poet.*, p. 107.), that the compiler of the MS. was the same person as Robert de Thornton, Prior of Bardney, in Lincolnshire, is improbable, but it is possible that he may have been the same who was Vicar of Silkeston in the Deanery of Doncaster, in the year 1425. See MS. Add. 11,400, p. 55.

III. MS. DOUCE, now in the Bodleian Library. It consists of eleven folios of coarse paper, written in a large, inelegant, but very legible character, in the reign of Edward the Fourth. The guide-lines for the scribe have been ruled with a rough plummet, and at the bottom of each leaf is a series of signatures in red, beginning with *a. i.*, and ending with *b. iii.* The large initial letter at the commencement is coarsely colored with red. There are about thirty lines on a page, and no punctuation is used except in the middle of a line. On the inside of the cover appears the autograph of "*J. Baynes, Grey's Inn, 1781.*"

IV. PORKINGTON MS. No. 10. A small quarto volume, written on vellum and paper, in the reign of Edward the Fourth. ff. 211. Its Contents are as follows:

1. *Secundum Anticos Grecorum.* fol. 1.

Beg. The man þat falleþ syke þe fyrst day of eny moneþ.

This tract consists of rules for sickness or health on certain days; the lucky and unlucky days; rules for the weather; natures of the planets, etc.; and concludes with a short chronology, from the beginning of the world to the battle of Agincourt, in 1415.

2. A Calendar of the days, hours, and minutes in each mont. fol. 4.

On fol. 4<sup>b</sup> occur the names of *Griffyth Owen* of the county of Carnarvon, and of *John Williams*, petty constable of the parish of Llanarmon.

3. A Table of the hours of day and night. fol. 5<sup>b</sup>.

4. Rules regarding Nativities; in Latin. fol. 6.

5. Explanation of a Calendar made A.D. 1463 (which is missing); of the feast-days, hours of the day, altitude of the sun, etc. fol. 6<sup>b</sup>.

6. Rules for venesection, etc., with a figure. fol. 7.
7. A Table of Eclipses, calculated for the years 1462–1481. fol. 7<sup>b</sup>.
8. *For knowlege of the impressions concerning þe wedyr*, fol. 8<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Fyrst it ys to know þ<sup>t</sup> that the eyere ys deuyded.

9. *For to know in what sygne and degre þe mone ys*. fol. 11.
10. Syre Gawene and the Carle of Carelyle. fol. 12.

Printed in the present volume, Append. No. I. There is no title to this romance in the MS. A leaf is out of place between ff. 14 and 15, which ought to be fol. 66.

11. *Here begynnythe a schorte tretice for a manne to knowe wyche tyme of the yere hit is best to graffe or to plante treys, and also to make a tre to bere a maner frute of diuerys colourys and odowrys, w<sup>t</sup> many othere thyngys*. fol. 27.

Beg. When the mone is in *tauro*, hit is good to plante treys of pepyns.

12. Some other receipts of the same nature, which may be part of the same treatise. fol. 32.

13. *Here begynnythe the crafte of lymnyng of bokys*, etc. fol. 33.

Beg. To temper vermelone to wryte ther w<sup>t</sup>, grynde vermelone one a stone.

At the end is added on a scroll the name of the scribe or compiler, “*H. Hattun*.”

14. A Poem without title; in six-line stanzas. fol. 53.

Beg. Louely lordynges, ladys lyke,  
Wyues and maydyns ryallyke.

15. The Tale of Ten Wives; an amusing but indelicate Poem, in stanzas of six lines. fol. 56<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Leve, lystynes to me,  
Two wordys or thre.

16. Complaint of a Lover, in four-line stanzas. fol. 59<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Lord, how schalle I me complayne.

17. Moral Poem, in stanzas of four lines. fol. 61.

Beg. As I went one my playing.

18. Vision of St. Philibert, or Disputation between the Body and the Soul; in stanzas of seven lines; translated from the Latin. fol. 63<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. The fadyr of pytte and most of myserycorde.



19. Moral Poem, in stanzas of five long lines and one short one. fol. 79<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Erthe vpon erth is woundyrly wroȝte.

A much enlarged copy of the poem in the Lincoln MS. A. 1. 17. fol. 279.

20. Mourning of the Hare. fol. 81<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Bi a forrest as I gane fare.

A much better and fuller copy than that printed in Hartshorne's *Metrical Tales*, p. 165 ; from MS. More, Ff. v. 48.

21. *The Knyȝte his wyfe*, in couplets. fol. 83<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Ther was a knyȝt in a cu[n]ttre,  
þ<sup>t</sup> ryche man was wont to be.

22. *The holly mane sente Marttayne*. fol. 86<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. As he lay in his wesione.

23. *Narracyone of sente Tantene*. fol. 87.

Beg. Saynt Antony also manny a tyme.

24. Poetical address to the Virgin ; in four-line stanzas. fol. 87<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Off alle þ<sup>e</sup> bryddus þ<sup>t</sup> euer ȝeyt were.

25. *For þ<sup>e</sup> molde þ<sup>t</sup> ys fallone doune* ; a receipt in prose. fol. 89<sup>b</sup>.

26. Several more receipts of a similar description. fol. 90.

27. *Her begynneth þ<sup>e</sup> lyfe of þ<sup>e</sup> glorus uergyne seynt Katryne, þ<sup>e</sup> wyche lyffe was wrytyn of Athanaysus, þ<sup>e</sup> gret doctor* ; in prose. fol. 91.

Beg. In þ<sup>e</sup> grete cite of Alexandyr ther was a kynge.

28. A strange prosaical medley ; in the form of an epistle. fol. 129.

Beg. A, syre, A, ȝe syr, and ȝe, syr Johne.

29. *Be trewe, and holde þ<sup>t</sup> ȝe haue hyȝt* ; in stanzas of eight lines. fol. 130.

Beg. Be trewe, and holde þ<sup>t</sup> ȝe haue hyȝte.

30. A similar poem, by the same author. fol. 130<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. A, dere God, haue I deservyd this.

31. *Here bethe the Stacyons of Rome* ; in prose. fol. 132.

Beg. In Rome bethe ii<sup>c</sup>. paresche churches.

At the end is written, "*Explicyt tractis de indulgencia romana siue apostolica.*"

32. *The good wyfe wold a pylgremage*; in four-line stanzas. fol. 135<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. The good wyf wold a pylgremage  
Vnto þ<sup>e</sup> holly londe.

A similar poem to the present, intituled, "*How the Goode Wif thought hir Doughter,*" was edited by me from a MS. in the possession of C. W. Loscombe, Esq., of Pickwick House, Wilts, 8vo. 1838.

33. *The Friar and the Boy*. fol. 139.

Beg. God þ<sup>t</sup> dyed for vs alle,  
And dranke boþ<sup>e</sup> eyselle and galle.

A better and fuller copy than that printed by Ritson, in his *Pieces of Ancient Popular Poetry*, p. 35; but it omits all the lines after l. 397, and concludes with twenty-one different lines instead.

34. A Poem without title; in stanzas of eight lines. fol. 150.

Beg. As I stod in a ryalle haulte.

35. A ludicrous Poem; in couplets. fol. 152.

Beg. Herkons to my tale þ<sup>t</sup> I schalle here schow.

At the conclusion we read "*Explicyt trutallys.*" A similar strange composition is printed by Hartshorne, p. 145.

36. *Epistle to a lady*; in couplets. fol. 154.

Beg. Honowre w<sup>tt</sup> alle mannere of heylle.

37. *Have my hert*; in eight-line stanzas. fol. 154<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Have alle my hert, and be in peys.

38. Poem without title; in stanzas of four lines. fol. 153<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. As I cam by a forrest syde.

39. *The Sege of Jerusalem*; in prose. fol. 157<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Al men þ<sup>t</sup> wylle here of þ<sup>e</sup> sege of Jerusaleme.

At the end, "*Her enddyth þ<sup>e</sup> sege of Jerusaleme.*"

40. *Terms of Venery*, etc., taken from Juliana Barnes. fol. 184.

41. *Sentences in verse*. fol. 187<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Aryse erlly,  
And serve god dewoutly.

42. Extracts from Juliana Barnes' Treatise of Hawking. fol. 188<sup>b</sup>.

43. Prophecy of Merlin. fol. 192.

Beg. When þ<sup>e</sup> cocke in þ<sup>e</sup> northe hathe byld his neste.

Printed among the *Collection of Ancient Scottish Prophecies*, pp. 6-9, reprinted for the Bannatyne Club from Waldegrave's edition, 1603.

44. Letter from Balteser, son of the King "of Sarsyn," to the Duke of "Borgeyne" [Burgundy]. fol. 193<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Baltesere, be þ<sup>e</sup> grace of Mahounde, sone of þ<sup>e</sup> kynge of Sarsyn.

45. *This byne þ<sup>e</sup> presentacyons þ<sup>t</sup> þ<sup>e</sup> lordus of þ<sup>e</sup> cetty of Vennes haue present to oure fader þ<sup>e</sup> pope geneste [agenste] þ<sup>e</sup> Torke.* fol. 194.

46. A Poem without title; in stanzas of twelve lines. fol. 195.

Beg. *Timor mortis conturbat me,*  
Thys is my song in my olde age.

A different poem with the same burthen, composed by Lydgate, is in MS. Harl. fol. 128<sup>b</sup>. and Dunbar also adopted the same *refrain* in his *Lament for the Makkaris*, vol. i. p. 211, ed. Laing, 8vo, 1834.

This and the three following articles are written by a different hand.

47. Seven moral lines. fol. 198.

Beg. Dysseyte disseyveth.

48. Carol, or song. fol. 198.

Beg. Mery hit ys in May mornyng.

49. Another. fol. 198<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. The ster he schynythe boþ<sup>e</sup> nyȝte and day.

50. Carol, or religious poem. fol. 200.

Beg. Why, why, what ys þis, why hit ys.

51. A Christmas carol, in Latin and English. fol. 201.

Beg. *Christe qui lux est*, etc.  
A baby ys borne, vs blys to brynge.

52. Carol. fol. 202.

Beg. Hey, hey, hey, hey, þ<sup>e</sup> borrys hede is armȝd gay.

Probably imperfect. It differs much from the Boars-head Carols printed by Ritson and Sandys.

53. Moral Poem, in the form of a dialogue. fol. 203.

Beg. Be a forrest as I gane walke.

At the end is the colophon, "*Explicyt Marcy and Ryȝttusnis.*"

54. *The Marchand.* fol. 207<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Lystons, lordyngus, I yow pray.

It is imperfect, ending with l. 214 of Ritson's edition in *Pieces of Popular Poetry*, p. 77. It contains many various readings from the printed text.

V. MS. DOUCE. A small quarto volume, ff. 48, written on paper, in the year 1564, and illustrated with rude colored drawings. It contains transcripts of several Romances, apparently taken from editions earlier than Copland's.

1. *Here begynneth the hystorye of the valyaunte knyght, Syr Isenbras.*

It contains several variations from Copland's edition, but is imperfect, ending with l. 411.

2. Syr Degore.

The MS. commences at l. 415 of Copland's edition, as reprinted by Utterson, and is very imperfect. At the end is written, "*Here endeth the Tretyse of Syr Degore.*" In Heber's sale, Lot 556, was an unique copy of an edition by Wynkyn de Worde, from which perhaps this transcript was made.

3. Jeaste of Syr Gawayne.

Printed in the present Volume, Append. No. II. It commences imperfectly, and at the end is drawn a device of a shield bearing three fleurs de lis, supported by two angels. Beneath are the initials E. B., which are probably those of the transcriber. See Notes, p. 348.

4. Syr Eglamoure.

This is also imperfect. Dr. Bliss has in his possession some fragments of an edition earlier than that of Copland's, which perhaps may have served for the text of the present transcript. At the end of this MS. is a device of the letters IHS, and the date 1564, the period of its completion.

VI. THE PERCY MS. Now in the possession of Ambrose Isted, Esq., of Ecton Hall, Northamptonshire. A minute account of the volume, with a list of the first fifty-nine articles in it, is given in Dr. Dibdin's *Bibliographical Decameron*, vol. iii. pp. 338-344. I had intended to have completed this list, when indulged with a sight of the volume in 1831, but I was unable to accomplish my wish. Four romance-poems are printed from it in the present Volume for the first time.

VII. MS. RAWLINSON, marked C. 86, in the Bodleian Library, and formerly belonging to Knox Ward, Esq., Clarenceux king of Arms. It is a small folio, and consists of two distinct portions.

The first, extending from fol. 1 to fol. 30 inclusive, is written on vellum and paper in a late hand of the fifteenth century. It contains a long English poem on the Passion of Christ. Prefixed is a rude illumination of the crucifixion.

Beg. Off gostly maters I wylle meve.

At the end is: "*Explicit Passio Domini nostri Jhesu Christi, composita a quodam sapientissimo in materna lingua, videlicet Anglicorum, hominibus non intelligentibus scripturarum sensus.*" And below we read: "*Iste liber constat . . . (blot) . . . Wyllm'us Aylysburrey, monachus Sancti Saluatoris de Bermudesay.*"

The second portion consists of 159 leaves, and is written on paper in a negligent hand towards the close of Henry the Seventh's reign. The principal contents are as follows.

1. Unconnected moral sentences. fol. 31.

Beg. Vtter thy langage wythe good avisement.

2. *Policronica*; a prose geographical tract. fol. 31<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Josephus of Jewes þ<sup>t</sup> nobyl was the firste auctour of the booke of Policronica.

3. *The tale of Jak and his Stepdame*. fol. 52.

Beg. God that died for vs alle.

Printed by W. de Worde, and thence reprinted by Ritson in *Pieces of Ancient Popular Poetry*, 8vo. 1791. p. 35. Other manuscript copies, all of which differ much from each other, exist in MS. More, Ee. 4. 35. (which was printed by Mr. Wright, in 12mo. *Pickering*, 1836.) and MS. Porkington, No. 10, f. 139.

4. Four lines of doggerel poetry, in English and Latin. fol. 59.

Beg. Syng I wold, but alas! *discedant prospera grata*.

5. *Fabula*; a poem of eight stanzas of eight lines each. fol. 59<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Whenne men motythe of byrdys of gret gentree.

The burden of each stanza is, "pulle of her bellys and let her flye." It is probably composed by Lydgate, but is not found in Ritson's list of his writings.

6. A poem without title, by Lydgate; No. 61. of Ritson's list. fol. 61.

Beg. For helthe of body couere for colde thyne hede.

7. A poem by Lydgate; No. 214. of Ritson. fol. 62<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Beholde, mane, lyfte vp thy eye and se.

8. A Poem consisting of fourteen eight-line stanzas. The subject is an address of Christ to man. fol. 65.

Beg. Late as I wente one myne pleyng.

9. A Poem on the same subject, in eleven stanzas of twelve lines each. fol. 67.

Beg. Thys is Goddis owne compleynte.

Cf. MS. Lambeth. 853. p. 81.

10. A Poem by Lydgate, being a Lamentation of the Virgin on Christ's Passion; No. 201 of Ritson. fol. 69<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. In a tabernacle of a towre.

11. A Poem in ten eight-line stanzas, the burden of which is "I wite my self myne owne wo." fol. 71.

Beg. In my youthe fulle wylde I was.

Cf. MS. Lamb. 853. p. 226.

12. A Poem containing the Lamentation of our Lady, in twelve eight-line stanzas. fol. 72<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. In a chirche as I gane knele.

13. A Poem in eleven twelve-line stanzas, of which the burden is, "*Filius Régis mortuus est.*" fol. 74<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. As Jhesu rewlithe myne recheles mynde.

Cf. MS. Lamb. 853. p. 74.

14. *Fabula*; a Poem by Lydgate, on the mutability of human affairs, in twenty-two seven-line stanzas. fol. 77.

Beg. The worlde so wyde, the ayre so remeveabile.

Other copies occur in MSS. Harl. 7333, f. 192, 2251, f. 23<sup>b</sup>, 2255, f. 14, and Trin. Coll., Cambr., R. 3, 21. On the authority of the first of these, Ritson attributes it to one "squiere Halsam."

15. A Poem by Lydgate, in commendation of virtue; No. 95 of Ritson. fol. 79<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. As of hony menne gadrene swetnesse.

16. A Poem by Lydgate, against self-love; No. 99 of Ritson. fol. 81<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Towarde thende of frosty January.

Printed at the end of an edition of Lydgate's "Proverbes;" by W. de Worde. See Collier's Catalogue of the Library at Bridgewater House, p. 179, 4to. 1837.



25. *Landavalle*. fol. 119.

Beg. Sothely by Arthurs day  
Was Bretayne yn grete nobyle.

This is the Romance of *Launfal*, but varies very considerably from the copy in MS. Cott. Calig. A. II., printed by Ritson, *Metr. Rom.*, vol. ii. p. 170; and in Way's *Fabliaux*, vol. iii. p. 233, 8vo. 1815. Another copy is in the Lambeth MS. 305. f. 73; and a modernised text is preserved in the Percy MS.

26. *The Weddyng of S<sup>r</sup> Gawene and Dame Ragnelle*. fol. 128<sup>b</sup>.

Printed in the present volume, Appendix, No. VIII. This is the identical poem referred to erroneously by Warton as existing in one of the Tanner MSS. (See Notes, p. 358.) For its discovery, (after the greater part of the sheets of this work was printed off,) I am indebted to the Rev. Henry O. Coxe, Assistant Librarian of the Bodleian Library, who most kindly and promptly undertook a transcript, which was subsequently compared by myself with the Manuscript. It is, unquestionably, the original of the mutilated poem in the Percy folio, and is sufficiently curious to render its insertion in the Appendix an object of interest, although, had I been earlier aware of its existence, some change would probably have been made in the arrangement. The title in the MS. is added by a later hand, and the poem itself is very carelessly written, so that several lines appear occasionally omitted. An entire page, containing lines, is, unfortunately, wanting.

27. *Tabula*; a Poem by Lydgate; No. 120, of Ritson. fol. 141.

Beg. Ther is fulle lytel sicurnesse.

The burden of this poem, which consists of nine eight-line stanzas, is, "That now is hay summe tyme was grasse." Ritson inserts it in his list, No. 120, on Speght's authority, but gives no reference to any MS.

28. *Gwyscard and Segismonde*. fol. 142<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Prol. O wofulle worlde, deceyver of mankynde.  
— Work. Whylome was ther an hyghe and myghty prynce.

It differs from the version of this story by Walter, of which a MS. copy exists in Trin. Coll. Cambr. R. 3.20, and which was printed by W. de Worde. See Ritson's *Bibl. Poet.* p. 108.

29. Poem, consisting of six stanzas of seven lines each. fol. 155<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Myne hert is set vppone a lusty pynne.

At the end is, "*Finis, quod Quene Elyzabeth*;" by whom must be meant the queen of Henry the Seventh; but she is not mentioned as an authoress by Walpole.

30. *Grysille*. fol. 156<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. Ther is ryghte atte west syde of Italie.



This is the *Clerke of Oxenforde's Tale*, in Chaucer, f. xli<sup>b</sup>, edit. Speght, 1602.

31. Latin verses. fol. 174.

Beg. Carmina qui letus cecini, cano tristia mestus.

32. Poem in seven-line stanzas, on the murder of a child by the Jews. fol. 174<sup>b</sup>.

Beg. O goode Lorde, thyne name how mervelous.

This is the *Prioresses Tale*, in Chaucer, f. lxv. edit. 1602. It is, however, included among Lydgate's writings in MSS. Harl. 2251, f. 69<sup>b</sup>, and 2382, f. 97; whence Ritson has carelessly inserted it in his list, No. 239.

33. Poem on the Expedition of Henry the Fifth into France. fol. 178.

Beg. God that alle this world gane make.

Attributed to Lydgate in MS. Harl. 565, f. 502; and thence printed by Sir H. Nicolas, in the *Chronicle of London*, p. 216. A large portion was previously printed by Hearne, at the end of Tho. de Elmham, p. 359, from MS. Cott. Vitell. D. XII. At the end of the present copy is written, "*Explicit per Johannem Reve Free*," who may be the transcriber.

34. Poem on the reigns of the English kings, from William I. to Henry VI. fol. 187.

Beg. This myghti William, duke of Normandy.

Attributed to Lydgate in many MSS., and printed by W. de Worde, 4to. 1530; as also by Hearne, in Append. to *Robert of Gloucester*, vol. ii. p. 585. A copy in MS. Harl. 2251, f. 2<sup>b</sup>, has an additional stanza on the reign of Edward the Fourth.

MARKS OF ABBREVIATION.

- d' *de*, as, knelyd', had', welcomyd', *knelyde, hade, welcomyde*.
- ° *er*, as þ°, ou°, oþ°, aūt°, m°þe, *ther, ouer, aunter, merthe*. After the letter p it is expressed by *re*, as, p°fed, p°wey, *presed, prewey*.
- ℄ *es*, as, kryst℄, lyȝt℄, strik℄, welter℄, *krystes, lyȝtes, strikes, welteres*.
- h̄ *he*, as, high̄, ī nogh̄, wygh̄, with̄, burlich̄, *highe, in-noghe, wyghe, withe, burliche*.
- h<sup>t</sup> *hit*.
- l', ll', fl̄ *le, lle*, as, hondel', hanfell', aff, wiſt, femaffs, *hondele, hanselle, alle, wille, femalles*. In MSS. of the fifteenth century fl̄ is used even with the final e.
- ṁ *me*, as, tyṁ, þaṁ, heṁ, seldoṁ, *tyme, thame, heme, seldome*.
- ñ *ne*, as, arñ, myñ, añ, fytheñ, *arne, myne, ane, sythene*; it sometimes has the power of *nne*, as, guñ, þeñ, wheñ, *gunne, thenne, whenne*.
- p̄ *per*, as, pauēture, flep, pile, *perauenture, sleper, perile*.
- p̄ *pro*, as, puinces, p̄fered, *prouinces, profered*.
- q̄, q<sup>d</sup>, *quod*.
- ᵘ *ra*, as, g̃yped, g̃cōs, g̃ce, p̃yde, *graythed, gracons, grace, prayed*.
- r° *re*, as, her°, fair°, sekor°, fyr°, *here, faire, sekore, syre*.
- ᵀ *ri*, as, ciftmasse, t̄fel, *cristmasse, trifel*.
- ᵁ *ru*, as, t̄e, *true*.
- ſ̄ *ser, syr*.
- sp̄ial, *special*.
- þ<sup>e</sup>, *the*.
- þ<sup>i</sup>, *thei*; sometimes *thi*.
- þ<sup>a</sup>, *this*.
- þ<sup>t</sup>, *that*.
- þ<sup>u</sup>, *thou*.
- ᵁᵁ *ur*, as, tōnayed, cōt, gou°nō, yō, *ournayed, court, gouvernour, your*.
- ᵁᵁ *ur*, as, Gaynoᵁ, yoᵁ, *Gaynour, your*.
- ᵁᵁ *us*, as, Brut°, ho°, þ°, ded°, ell°, *Brutus, hous, thus, dedus, ellus*; v° is written for *us*.
- w<sup>t</sup>, *with*.

A short stroke over a letter denotes the absence of *m* or *n*, as, trāmes, tresoū, hȳ, ī, etc., *trammes, tresoun hym, in*.



**Syr Gawayn  
and  
The Grene Knyzt.**



## Syr Galwayn and the Grene Knyzt.

[FYTTE THE FIRST.]

### I.

[fol. 91.]

**S** IPEN þe fege & þe affaut watȝ fefed at Troye,  
þe borȝ brittened & brent to brondez & afkez,  
þe tulk þat þe trāmes of trefou þ<sup>o</sup> wroȝt,  
Watȝ tried for his tricherie, þe trewest on erthe ;  
Hit watȝ Ennias þe athel, & his high kynde,  
þat siþen depreed puinces, & patroūes bicomē  
— Welneȝe of al þe wele ī þe west iles,  
Fro riche Romulus to Rome ricchis hȳ fwyþe,  
W<sup>t</sup> gret bobbaūce þat burȝe he biges vpon fyrst,  
& neuenes hit his anne nome, as hit now hat ;  
Ticius to Tuskan [turnes,] & teldes bigȳnes ;  
Langaberde ī Lūbardie lyftes vp homes ;  
& fer ou<sup>o</sup> þe French flod Felix Brut<sup>o</sup>  
On many bonkkes ful brode Bretayn he setteȝ, || wyth wȳne ; 15  
Where werre, & wrake, & wonder,  
Bi fyþeȝ hatȝ wont þ<sup>o</sup> īne,  
& oft boþe blyffe & blūder  
Ful flete hatȝ fkyfted fȳne.

## II.

Ande quen þis Bretayn watȝ bigged bi þis burn rych, 20  
 Bolde bredden þer ine, baret þat lofden,  
 In mony turned tyme tene þat wroȝten ;  
 Mo ferlyēs on þis folde han fallen here oft  
 þen in any oþ<sup>9</sup> þat I wot, fyn þat ilk tyme.  
 Bot of alle þat here bult of Bretaygne kȳges 25  
 Ay watȝ Arthur þe hendest, as I haf herde telle ;  
 [fol. 91<sup>b</sup>.] For þi an aūt<sup>9</sup> in erde I attle to ſchawe,  
 þat a felly in fiȝt fūme men hit holden,  
 & an outrage awenture of Arthureȝ wond<sup>9</sup>eȝ ;  
 If ȝe wyl lyſten þis laye bot on littel quile,    ¶ w<sup>t</sup> tonge ;  
 I ſchal telle hit as tit as I ī toū herde,  
 As hit is ſtad & ſtoken,  
 In ſtori ſtif & ſtronge,  
 W<sup>t</sup> lel lett<sup>9</sup>es loken, 35  
 ī londe ſo hatȝ ben longe.

## III.

þis kȳg lay at Camylot vpon kryſt-maſſe,  
 W<sup>t</sup> mony luſſych lorde, ledeȝ of þe beſt,  
 Rekenly of þe rōude table alle þo rich breþ<sup>9</sup>, 40  
 W<sup>t</sup> rych reuel oryȝt, & rechles m<sup>9</sup>þes ;  
 þ<sup>9</sup> tōnayed tulkes bi tymeȝ ful mony,  
 Iuſted ful jolile þiſe gentyle kniȝtes,  
 Syþen kayred to þe court, caroles to make.  
 For þer þe feſt watȝ ilyche ful fiſten dayes,  
 With alle þe mete & þe mirþe þat mē couþe a-vyſe ; 45  
 Such glaumande gle glorio<sup>9</sup> to here,  
 Dere dyn vp on day, daūfȳg on nyȝtes,

Al watȝ hap vpon heȝe ī halleȝ & chambreȝ,  
 With lordeȝ & ladies, as leueſt hī þoȝt ;  
 With all þe wele of þe worlde þay woned þ<sup>o</sup> famen, 50  
 þe moſt kyd knyȝteȝ vnder kryſt<sup>e</sup> ſeluen,  
 & þe louelokkeſt ladies þat eu<sup>o</sup> lif haden,  
 & he þe comlokeſt kȝg þat þe court haldeſ.      ¶ on fille ; 55  
 For al watȝ þiſ fāyre folk ī her firſt age,  
 þe hapneſt vnder heuen,  
 Kȝg hyeſt mō of wylle,  
 Hit were <sup>1</sup> now gret nye to neuē  
 So hardy a here ō hille.

## IV.

Wyle nw ȝer watȝ fo ȝep þat h<sup>t</sup> watȝ nwe cūmen, 60  
 þat day doubble on þe dece watȝ þe douth ſerued,  
 Fro þe kȝg watȝ cūmen w<sup>t</sup> knyȝt<sup>e</sup> ī to þe halle,  
 þe chaūtre of þe chapel cheued to an ende ;  
 Loude crye watȝ þer keſt of clerkeȝ & oþer,  
 [fol. 92.] Nowel nayted o newe neuened ful ofte ; 65  
 & fyþen riche forth rūnen to reche honde-felle,  
 ȝeȝed ȝeres ȝiſtes on hiȝ, ȝelde hem bi hond,  
 Debated buſyly aboute þo giſtes ;  
 Ladies laȝed ful loude, þoȝ þay loſt haden,  
 & he þat wan watȝ not wrothe, þ<sup>t</sup> may ȝe wel trawe. 70  
 Alle þiſ mirþe þay maden to þe mete tyme ;  
 When þay had waſchen, worþyly þay wenten to fete,  
 þe beſt burne ay aboſ, as hit beſt ſemed ;  
 Whene Guenore ful gay, grayþed ī þe myddes,  
 Dreſſed on þe dēre des, dubbed al aboute, 75

<sup>1</sup> werere, *MS.*



Smal fendal bifides, a felure hir ou<sup>9</sup>  
 Of tryed Toloufe, of Tars tapites ī nogh,  
 þat were enbrawdēd & beten wyth þe beſt gēmes, || in daye; 80  
 þat myȝt be preued of prys wyth penyes to bye,  
 þe comlokeſt to diſcrye,  
 þer glent w<sup>t</sup> yȝen gray,  
 A femloker þat eu<sup>9</sup> he fyȝe,  
 Soth moȝt no mon ſay.

## V.

Bot Arthure wolde not ete til al were ſerued, 85  
 He watȝ ſo joly of his joyfnes, & fū quat child gered,  
 His liſ liked hȝ lyȝt, he louied þe laſſe  
 Auþ<sup>9</sup> to lenge lye, or to longe fitte,  
 So bified him his ȝonge blod & his brayn wylde;  
 & alſo anoþ<sup>9</sup> maner meued hī eke, 90  
 þat he þurȝ nobelay had nomen, he wolde neu<sup>9</sup> ete  
 Vpon ſuch a dere day, er hȝ deuifed were  
 Of fū auentur<sup>9</sup> þȝȝ an vncouþe tale,  
 Of fū mayn m<sup>9</sup>uayle, þat he myȝt trawe,  
 Of<sup>1</sup> alderes, of armes, of oþ<sup>9</sup> auentur<sup>9</sup>, 95  
 Oþ<sup>9</sup> fū ſegg hȝ bi-ſoȝt of fū fiker knyȝt,  
 To joyne wyth hȝ ī iuſtȝȝ in joparde to lay,  
 Lede liſ for lyf, leue vchon oþ<sup>9</sup>,  
 As fortune wolde fulfū hō þe fayrer to haue.  
 þis watȝ [the] kȝȝes coūtenaūce where he ī cōt were, || in halle;  
 At vch farand feſt amōȝ his fre meny,  
 þer fore of face ſo fere,  
 [fol. 92<sup>b</sup>.] He ftiȝtleȝ ftiſ ī ftalle,

<sup>1</sup> Of of, *MS*.

Ful ȝep ī þat nw ȝere,  
Much mirthe he mas w<sup>t</sup> alle.

105

## VI.

Thus þ<sup>o</sup> ftondes ī ftale þe ftif kȳg his feluen,  
Talkkande bifore þe hyȝe table of trifles ful hende ;  
There gode Gawan watȝ g<sup>a</sup>yþed, Gwenore bifyde,  
& Ag<sup>a</sup>uayn a la dure mayn on þat oþ<sup>o</sup> fyde fittes, 110  
Boþe þe kȳges fiſt<sup>o</sup> fūes, & ful fiker kniȝtes ;  
Biſchop Bawdewyn abof bi-gineȝ þe table,  
& Ywan, Vryn fon, ette wit hȳfeluen ;  
Piſe were diȝt on þe des, & derworþly ferued,  
& fiþen mony fiker ſegge at þe fidbordeȝ. 115  
þē þe fiſt cors come with crakkȳg of trūpes,  
Wyth mony baner ful bryȝt, þat þer bi hanged,  
Nwe nakryn noyſe w<sup>t</sup> þe noble pipes,  
Wylde werbles & wyȝt wakned lote,  
þat mony hert ful hiȝe hef at her towches ; 120  
Dayntes dryuen þer wyth of ful dere metes,  
Foyfoū of þe freſche, & on fo ſele diſches,  
þat pine to fynde þe place þe peple bi-forne  
For to ſette þe fyluen<sup>o</sup>, þat ſere ſewes halden, ¶ on clothe ; 125  
Iche lede as he loued hȳ ſelue  
þer laght w<sup>t</sup> outen loþe,  
Ay two had diſches twelue,  
Good ber, & bryȝt wyn boþe.

## VII.

Now wyl I of hor ſeruife ſay yow no more,  
For vch wyȝe may wel wit no wont þat þ<sup>o</sup> were ,

130

An oþ<sup>9</sup> noyfe ful newe neȝed biliue,  
 þat þe lude myȝt haf leue liflode to cach.  
 For vneþe watȝ þe noyce not awhyle fefed,  
 & þe fyrft cōce ī þe cōt kyndely ferued, 135  
 þer hales ī at þe halle dor an aghlich mayft<sup>9</sup>,  
 On þe moft on þe molde on mefure hygħ;  
 Fro þe fwyre to þe fwange fo fware & fo þik,  
 & his lyndes & his lymes fo longe & fo grete,  
 [fol. 93.] Half etayn ī erde I hope þat he were. 140  
 Bot mon moft I algate mȳn hȳ to bene,  
 & þat þe myrieft ī his muckel þat myȝt ride;  
 For of bak & of breft al were his bodi ſturne,  
 Bot his wombe & his waft were worthily ſmale,  
 & alle his fetures folȝande, ī forme þat he hade, || ful clene;  
 For wonder of his hwe mē hade,  
 Set ī his ſemblaūt ſene;  
 He ferde as freke were fade,  
 & ou<sup>9</sup> al enker grene. 150

## VIII.

Ande al grayþed ī grene þis gome & his wedes,  
 A ſtrayt cote ful ſtreȝt, þat ſtek on his fides,  
 A mere mantile abof, menfked w<sup>t</sup> īne,  
 W<sup>t</sup> pelure pured apert þe pane ful clene,  
 W<sup>t</sup> blyþe blaūn<sup>9</sup> ful bryȝt, & his hod boþe, 155  
 þat watȝ laȝt fro his lokkeȝ, & layde on his ſchulderes;  
 Heme wel haled hoſe of þat ſame grene,  
 þat ſpenet on his ſparlyr, & clene ſpures vnder,  
 Of bryȝt golde, vpon filk bordes, barred ful ryche,  
 & ſcholes vnder ſchankes, þere þe ſchalk rides; 160  
 & alle his veſture uerayly watȝ clene v<sup>9</sup>dure,

Boþe þe barres of his belt & oþ<sup>9</sup> blyþe ſtones,  
 Þ<sup>t</sup> were richely rayled ī his aray clene,  
 Aboutte hȝ felf & his ſadel, vpon filk werkeȝ,  
 Þat were to tor for to telle of tryfles þe halue, 165  
 Þat were enbrauded abof, wyth bryddes & flyȝes,  
 With gay gaudi of grene, þe golde ay ī myddes ;  
 Þe pendaūtes of his payttrure, þe proude cropure,  
 His molaynes, & alle þe metail anamayld was þēne,  
 Þe ſteropes þat he ſtod on, ſtayned of þe ſame, 170  
 & his arſouȝ al after, & his aþel ſturtes,  
 Þat euer glemed & glent al of grene ſtones.  
 Þe ſole þat he ferkkes on, fyn of þat ilke,     || fertayn ;  
 A grene hors gret & þikke, 175  
 A ſtede ful ſtif to ſtrayne,  
 ī brawden brydel quik,

[fol. 93<sup>b</sup>.] To þe gome he watȝ ful gayn.

## IX.

Wel gay watȝ þis gome gered ī grene,  
 & þe here of his hed of his hors fwete ; 180  
 Fayre fannand fax vmbe-foldes his ſchulderes ;  
 A much berd as <sup>1</sup> a bufk ou<sup>9</sup> his breſt henges,  
 Þat wyth his hiȝlich here, þat of his hed reches,  
 Watȝ enefeȝ al vmbe-torne, a-bof his elbowes,  
 Þat half his armes þer vnder were halched ī þe wyfe 185  
 Of a kȝȝeȝ capados, þat cloſes his fwyre.  
 Þe mane of þat mayn hors much to hit lyke,  
 Wel creſped & cēmed wyth knottes ful mony,  
 Folden ī wyth fildore aboute þe fayre grene,

<sup>1</sup> as as, *MS*.

Ay a herle of þe here, an oþ<sup>9</sup> of golde ; 190  
 þe tayl & his toppȝg twȝnen of a fute,  
 & bouȝden boþe wyth a bande of a bryȝt grene,  
 Dubbed wyth ful dere ſtoneȝ, as þe dok laſted,  
 Syþen þrawen wyth a þwong a þwarle knot aloſte,  
 þer mony belleȝ ful bryȝt of brende golde rungen. 195  
 Such a fole vpon folde, ne freke þat hȝ rydes,  
 Watȝ neu<sup>9</sup> ſene ī þat ſale wyth ſyȝt er þat tyme, || w<sup>t</sup> yȝe ;  
 He loked as layt ſo lyȝt,  
 So ſayd al þat hȝ ſyȝe, 200  
 Hit ſemed as no mon myȝt,  
 Vnd<sup>9</sup> his dyntteȝ dryȝe.

## X.

Wheþ<sup>9</sup> hade he no helme ne hawbrgh nauþ<sup>9</sup>,  
 Ne no pyſan, ne no plate þat pented to armes,  
 Ne no ſchafte, ne no ſchelde, to ſchwne ne to ſmyte, 205  
 Bot ī his on honde he hade a holyn bobbe,  
 þat is gratteſt ī grene, when greueȝ ar bare,  
 & an ax ī his oþ<sup>9</sup>, a hoge & vn-mete,  
 A ſpetos ſparþe to expoū ī ſpelle quo ſo myȝt ;  
 þe hede of an elnȝerde þe large lenkþe hade, 210  
 þe grayn al of grene ſtele & of golde hewen,  
 þe bit burnyſt bryȝt, w<sup>t</sup> a brod egge,  
 As wel ſchapen to ſchere as ſcharp raſores ;  
 þe ſtele of a ſtif ſtaf þe ſturne hit bi-grypte,  
 [fol. 94.] þat watȝ waūden wyth yrn to þe wandeȝ ende, 215  
 & al bigrauen w<sup>t</sup> grene, ī g<sup>ā</sup>cōs werkes ;  
 A lace lapped aboute, þat louked at þe hede,  
 & ſo aſt<sup>9</sup> þe halme halched ful ofte,  
 Wyth tryed taſſeleȝ þerto tacched ī nogħe,

On botoūȝ of þe bryȝt grene brayden ful ryche. 220  
 Þis haþel heldeȝ hȳ ī, & þe halle entres,  
 Driuande to þe heȝe dece, dut he no woþe,  
 Haylfed he neuȝ ane, bot heȝe he ouȝ loket.  
 Þe fyrſt word þat he warp, “ wher is,” he ſayd,  
 “ þe gouȝnō of þis gȳg ? gladly I wolde 225  
 Se þat ſegg ī fyȝt, & w<sup>t</sup> hȳ ſelf ſpeke,     ¶ rayfoū.”  
 To knyȝteȝ he keſt his yȝe,  
 & reled hȳ vp & doū,  
 He ſtemmed & con ſtudie, 230  
 Quo walt þer moſt renoū.

## XI.

Ther watȝ lokȳg on lenþe, þe lude to be-holde,  
 For vch mō had meruayle quat hit mene myȝt,  
 Þat a haþel & a horſe myȝt fuch a hwe lach,  
 As growe grene as þe gres & grener hit ſemed, 235  
 Þen grene aumayl on golde lowande bryȝtȝ ;  
 Al ſtudied þat þȝ ſtod, & ſtalked hȳ nerre,  
 Wyth al þe wonder of þe worlde, what he worth ſchulde.  
 For ſele ſellyeȝ had þay ſen, bot fuch neuȝ are,  
 For þi for fantoū & fayryȝe þe folk þere hit demed ; 240  
 Þer fore to anſware watȝ arȝe mony aþel freke,  
 & al ſtouned at his ſteuen, & ſton-ſtil ſeten,  
 In a ſwogħ ſylence þurȝ þe ſale riche,  
 As al were flypped vpon flepe ſo flaked horloteȝ,     ¶ ī hyȝe ;  
 I deme hit not al for doute,  
 Bot fū for cortayfye,  
 Bot let hȳ þat al ſchulde loute,  
 Caſt vnto þat wyȝe.

## XII.

þēn Arþoʳ bifore þe hiȝ dece þat auenture byholdeȝ, 250  
 & rekenly hȳ reu<sup>o</sup>enced, for-rad was he neu<sup>o</sup>,  
 & fayde, “ wyȝe, welcū iwys to þis place,  
 [fol. 94<sup>b</sup>.] þe hede of þis oftel Arthoʳ I hat ;  
 Liȝt luſflych adoū, & lenge, I þe praye,  
 & quat ſo þy wylle is, we ſchal wyt aft<sup>o</sup>.” 255  
 “ Nay as help me,” q̄ þe haþel, “ he þat on hyȝe fyttēs,  
 To wone any quyle ī þis won, hit watȝ not mȳ ernde ;  
 Bot for þe los of þe lede is lyft vp ſo hyȝe,  
 & þy burȝ & þy burnes beſt ar holden,  
 Stifeſt vnder ſtel-gere on ſtedes to ryde, 260  
 þe wyȝteſt & þe worþyeſt of þe worldes kynde,  
 Preue forto play wyth in oþ<sup>o</sup> pure laykeȝ ;  
 & here is kydde cortayfye, as I haf herd carp,  
 & þat hatȝ wayned me hider, I wyis, at þis tyme.  
 ȝe may be ſeker bi þis braūch þat I bere here, 265  
 þat I paſſe as ī pes, & no plyȝt ſeche ;  
 For had I fouēd ī fere, ī feȝtȳg wyfe,  
 I haue a haubergȝn at home & a helme boþe,  
 A ſchelde, & a ſcharp ſpere, ſchinande bryȝt,  
 Ande oþ<sup>o</sup> weppenes to welde, I wene wel als, 270  
 Bot for I wolde no were, my wedeȝ ar ſoft<sup>o</sup>.  
 Bot if þ<sup>u</sup> be ſo bold as alle burneȝ tellen,  
 þ<sup>u</sup> wyl g<sup>u</sup>nt me godly þe gomen þat I afk,    ¶ bi ryȝt.”  
 Arthoʳ con onſware, 275  
 & fayd, “ ƒ cortays knyȝt,  
 If þ<sup>u</sup> craue batayl bare,  
 Here fayleȝ þ<sup>u</sup> not to fyȝt.”

## XIII.

“ Nay, frayst I no fyȝt, ī fayth I þe telle,  
 Hit arn aboute on þis bench bot berdlez chylder ; 280  
 If I were halped ī armes on a heȝe stede,  
 Here is no mon me to mach, for myȝtez fo wayke.  
 For þy I craue ī þis cōt a crystemas gomē,  
 For hit is ȝol & nwe ȝer, & here ar ȝep mony ;  
 If any fo hardy ī þis ho<sup>9</sup> holdez hȝ feluen, 285  
 Be fo bolde ī his blod, brayn ī hys hede,  
 þat dar stifylly strike a strok for an oþ<sup>9</sup>,  
 I schal gif hȝ of my gyft þys giferne ryche,  
 þis ax, þat is heue ī nogh, to hondel’ as hȝ lykes,  
 [fol. 95.] & I schal bide þe fyrst bur, as bare as I fitte. 290  
 If any freke be fo felle to fonde þat I telle,  
 Lepe lyztly me to, & lach þis weppen,  
 I quit clayme hit for eu<sup>9</sup>, kepe hit as his auen,  
 & I schal stonde hȝ a strok, stif on þis flet,  
 Elleȝ þ<sup>u</sup> wyl diȝt me þe dom to dele hȝ an oþ<sup>9</sup>,     || barlay ; 295  
 & ȝet gif hȝ respite,  
 A twelmonyth & a day ;  
 Now hyȝe, & let se tite  
 Dar any her īne oȝt fay.” 300

## XIV.

If he hem stowned vpon fyrst, stiller were þāne  
 Alle þe hered-men ī halle, þe hyȝ & þe loȝe ;  
 þe renk on his rōuce hȝ ruced ī his fadel,  
 & runischly his rede yȝen he reled aboute,  
 Bende his brefed brōȝez, blycande grene, 305



Wayued his berde for to wayte, quo ſo wolde ryfe ?  
 When non wolde kepe hȳ, w<sup>t</sup> carp he coȝed ful hyȝe,  
 And rimed hȳ ful richȝly, & ryȝt hȳ to ſpeke :  
 “ What, is þis Arþures ho<sup>o</sup>,” & þe haþel þēne,  
 “ þat al þe ro<sup>o</sup> rēnes of, þurȝ ryalmes ſo mony ?  
 Where is now yō ſōquydrye & yō cōqueſtes,  
 Yō gryndel-layk, & yō greme, & yō grete wordes ?  
 Now is þe reuel & þe renou of þe rōude table  
 Ou<sup>o</sup>-walt wyth a worde of on wyȝes ſpeche ;  
 For al dares for drede, w<sup>t</sup> oute dynt ſchewed ! ”  
 Wyth þis he laȝes ſo loude, þat þe lorde greued ;  
 þe blod ſchot for ſcham ī to his ſchyre face,      ¶ & lere ;  
 He wex as wroth as wynde,  
 So did alle þat þer were,  
 þe kȳg as kene bi kynde,  
 þē ſtod þat ſtif mon nere.

## XV.

Ande fayde, “ haþel, by heuen þȳ afkȳg is nys,  
 & as þ<sup>n</sup> folȝ hatȝ frayſt, fynde þe be-houes ;  
 I know no gome þat is gaſt of þȳ grete wordes.  
 Gif me now þȳ geferne, vpon godeȝ halue,  
 & I ſchal bayþen þȳ bone, þat þ<sup>n</sup> boden habbes.”  
 [fol. 95<sup>b</sup>.] Lyȝtly lepeȝ he hȳ to, & laȝt at his honde ;  
 þen feerfly þat oþ<sup>o</sup> freke vpon fote lyȝtis.  
 Now hatȝ Arthure his axe, & þe halme grypeȝ,  
 & ſturnely ſtureȝ hit aboute, þat ſtryke wyth hit þoȝt.  
 þe ſtif mon hȳ bifore ſtod vpon hyȝt,  
 Herre þen ani in þe ho<sup>o</sup> by þe hede & more ;  
 Wyth ſturne ſchere þer he ſtod, he ſtroked his berde,  
 & wyth a cōūtenaūce dryȝe he droȝ doū his cote,

No more mate ne difmayd for hys maȝ dinteȝ,  
 þen any burne vpon bench hade broȝt hȳ to drynk, || of wyne.  
 Gawan, þat fate bi þe quene,  
 To þe kȳg he can enclyne, 340  
 “ I be-feche now w<sup>t</sup> faȝeȝ fene,  
 þis melly mot be myne.”

## XVI.

“ Wolde ȝe worþilych, lorde,” q̃ Gawan to þe kȳg,  
 “ Bid me boȝe fro þis benche, & ſtonde by yow þere,  
 þat I wyth oute vylanye myȝt voyde þis table, 345  
 & þat my legge lady lyked nat ille,  
 I wolde com to yō couſeyl, bifore yō cort ryche.  
 For me þink hit not ſemly, as hit is ſoþ knawen,  
 þ<sup>o</sup> fuch an afkȳg is heuened ſo hyȝe ī yō fale,  
 þaȝ ȝe ȝō ſelf be talenttyf to take hit to yō ſeluen, 350  
 Whil mony ſo bolde yow aboute vpon bench fytten,  
 þat vnder heuen, I hope, non haȝer er of wylle,  
 Ne bett<sup>o</sup> bodyes on bent, þer baret is rered ;  
 I am þe wakkeſt, I wot, & of wyt febleſt,  
 & leſt lur of my lyf, quo laytes þe ſoþe, 355  
 Bot for as much as ȝe ar myn em, I am only to prayſe,  
 No boūte bot yō blod I in my bode knowe,  
 & fyþen þis note is ſo nys, þ<sup>t</sup> noȝt hit yow falles,  
 & I haue frayned hit at yow fyrſt, foldeȝ hit to me,  
 & if I carp not comlyly, let alle þis cort rych, || bout blame.”  
 Ryche to-geder con roū,  
 & fyþen þay redder alle fame,  
 To ryd þe kȳg wyth croū,  
 & gif Gawan þe game. 365

## XVII.

[fol. 96.] þen comaūded þe kȳg þe knyȝt for to ryfe ;  
 & he ful radly vp ros, & ruchched hȳ fayre,  
 Kneled doū bifore þe kȳg, & cacheȝ þat weppen ;  
 & he luflyly hit hȳ laft, & lyfte vp his honde,  
 & gef hȳ goddeȝ bleffȳg, & gladly hȳ biddes 370  
 þat his hert & his honde ſchalde hardi be boþe.  
 “ Kepe þe cofyn,” q þe kȳg, “ þat þ<sup>u</sup> on kyrf ſette,  
 & if þ<sup>u</sup> redeȝ hȳ ryȝt, redly I trowe,  
 þat þ<sup>u</sup> ſchal byden þe bur þat he ſchal bede aft<sup>9</sup>.”  
 Gawan gotȝ to þe gome, w<sup>t</sup> giſerne ī honde, 375  
 & he baldly hȳ bydeȝ, he bayft neu<sup>9</sup> þe helder.  
 þen carppeȝ to f Gawan þe knyȝt ī þe grene,  
 “ Refourme we oure forwardes, er we fyrre paſſe.  
 Fyrft I eþe þe, haþel, how þat þ<sup>u</sup> hattes,  
 þat þ<sup>u</sup> me telle truly, as I tryft may ?” 380  
 “ In god fayth,” q þe goode knyȝt, “ Gawan I hatte,  
 þat bede þe þis buffet, quat ſo bi-falleȝ aft<sup>9</sup>,  
 & at þis tyme twelmonyth take at þe anoþ<sup>9</sup>,  
 Wyth what weppen ſo þ<sup>u</sup> wylt, & wyth no wyȝ elleȝ, || on lyue.”  
 þat oþ<sup>9</sup> onſwareȝ agayn,  
 “ Sir Gawan, ſo mot I þryue,  
 As I am ferly fayn,  
 þis dint þat þ<sup>u</sup> ſchal dryue.”

## XVIII.

“ Bi gog,” q þe grene knyȝt, “ f Gawan, me lykes, 390  
 þat I ſchal fange at þy fuft þat I haf frayft here ;  
 & þ<sup>u</sup> hatȝ redily rehersed, bi reſoū ful trwe,

Clanly al þe couenaūt þat I þe kȳge afked,  
 Saf þat þ<sup>u</sup> ſchal ſwer me, fegge, bi þi trawþe,  
 þat þ<sup>u</sup> ſchal ſeche me þi ſelf, where ſo þ<sup>n</sup> hopes 395  
 I may be funde vpon folde, & fych þe ſuch wages  
 As þ<sup>u</sup> deles me to day, bifore þis douþe ryche.”  
 “Where ſchulde I wale þe,” q̃ Gauan, “where is þy place ?  
 I wot neu<sup>9</sup> where þ<sup>n</sup> wonyes, bi hȳ þat me wroȝt,  
 Ne I know not þe, knyȝt, þy cort, ne þi name. 400  
 Bot teche me truly þer to, & telle me howe þ<sup>n</sup> hattes,  
 & I ſchal ware alle my wyt to wȳne me þeder ;  
 [fol. 96<sup>b</sup>.] & þat I ſwere þe for ſoþe, & by my ſeker trawep̃.”  
 “þat is in nogh in nwe ȝer, hit nedes no more,”  
 q̃ þe gome ī þe grene to Gawan þe hende, 405  
 “Gif I þe telle trwly, quen I þe tape haue,  
 & þ<sup>u</sup> me ſmoþely hatȝ ſmyten, ſmartly I þe teche  
 Of my ho<sup>9</sup>, & my home, & myn owen nome,  
 þen may þ<sup>u</sup> frayſt my fare, & forwardeȝ holde,  
 & if I ſpende no ſpeche, þēne ſpedeȝ þ<sup>u</sup> þe bett<sup>9</sup>, 410  
 For þ<sup>u</sup> may leng ī þy londe, & layt no fyrre,     || bot flokes ;  
 Ta now þy grȳme tole to þe,  
 & let ſe how þ<sup>u</sup> cnokeȝ.”  
 “Gladly ꝑ, for ſoþe,” 415  
 q̃ Gawan ; his ax he ſtrokes.

## XIX.

The grene knyȝt vpon groude grayþely hȳ dreffeȝ  
 A littel lut w<sup>t</sup> þe hede þe lere he diſkoue<sup>9</sup>,  
 His longe louelych lokkeȝ he layd ou<sup>9</sup> his croū,  
 Let þe naked nec to þe note ſchewe. 420  
 Gauan gripped to his ax, & gederes hit on hyȝt,  
 þe kay fote on þe folde he be-fore ſette,

Let hit doū lyȝtly lyȝt on þe naked,  
 þat þe ſcharp of þe ſchalk ſchyndered þe bones,  
 & ſchrāk þurȝ þe ſchyre grece, & ſcade hit ī twȳne, 425  
 þat þe bit of þe broū ſtel bot on þe groūde.  
 þe fayre hede fro þe halce hit [felle] to þe erþe,  
 þat fele hit foyned wyth her fete, þere hit forth roled ;  
 þe blod brayd fro þe body, þ<sup>t</sup> blykked on þe grene ;  
 & nawþer falt<sup>o</sup>ed ne fel þe freke neu<sup>o</sup> þe helder, 430  
 Bot ſtyþly he ſtart forth vpon ſtyf ſchonkes,  
 & ruyſchly he raȝt out, þere as renkkeȝ ſtoden,  
 Laȝt to his luſly hed, & lyft hit vp ſone ;  
 & ſyþen boȝeȝ to his blonk, þe brydel he cachcheȝ,  
 Steppeȝ ī to ſtel bawe, & ſtrydeȝ alofte, 435  
 & his hede by þe here ī his honde haldeȝ ;  
 & as ſadly þe ſegge hȳ ī his fadel fette,  
 As non vnhap had hȳ ayled, þaȝ hedleȝ ho we<sup>1</sup>, || ī ſtedde ;  
 He brayde his bluk<sup>a</sup> aboute, 440  
 [fol. 97.] þat vgly bodi þat bledde,  
 Moni on of hȳ had doute,  
 Bi þat his reſouȝ were redde.

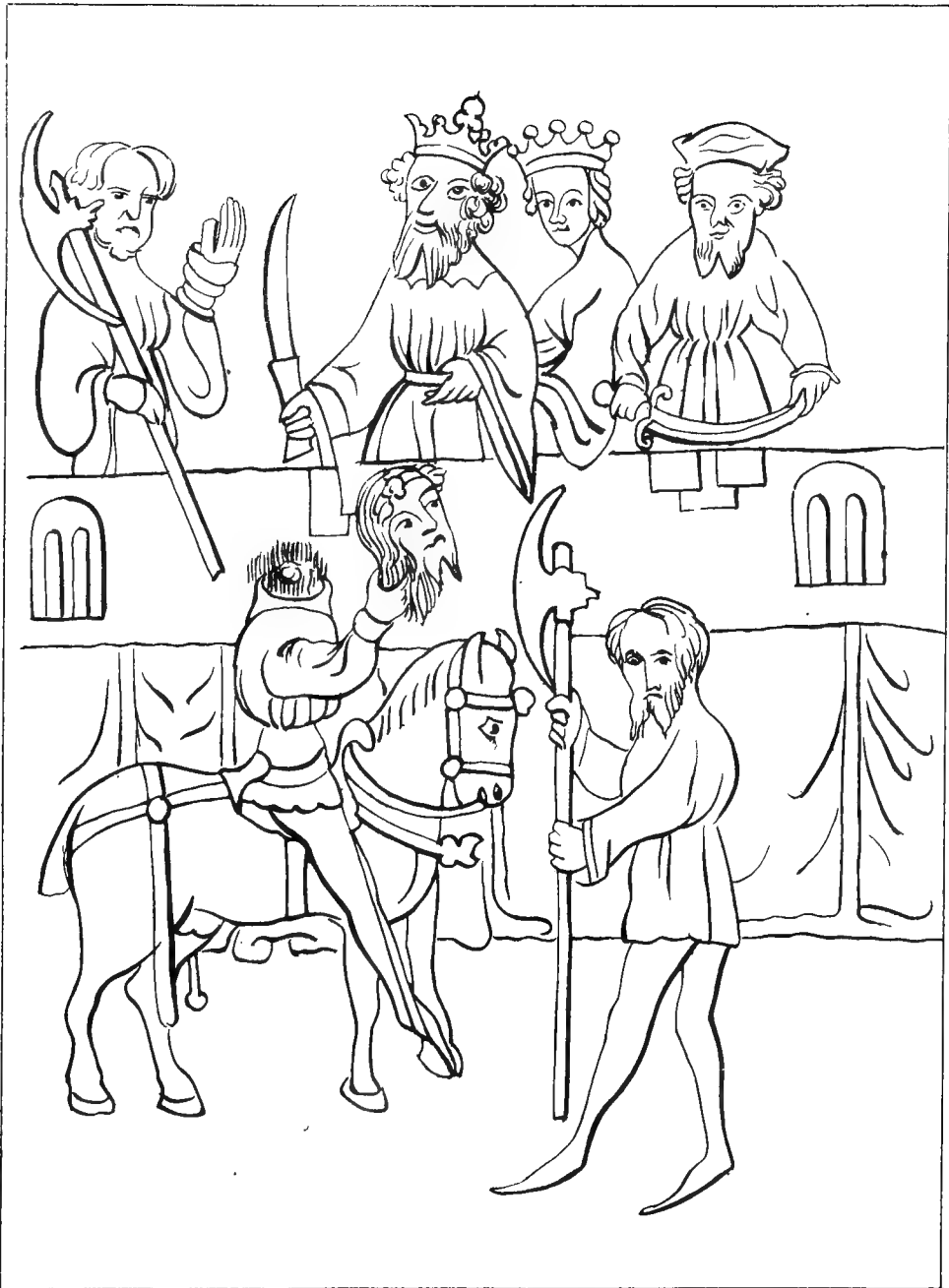
## XX.

For þe hede in his honde he haldeȝ vp euen,  
 To-ward þe derreſt on þe dece he dreffeȝ þe face, 445  
 & hit lyfte vp þe yȝe-lyddeȝ, & loked ful brode,  
 & meled þ<sup>o</sup> much w<sup>t</sup> his muthe, as ȝe may now here.  
 “ Loke, Gawan, þ<sup>u</sup> be grayþe to go as þ<sup>u</sup> hetteȝ,  
 & layte as lelly til þ<sup>u</sup> me, lude, fynde,  
 As þ<sup>u</sup> hatȝ hette ī þis halle, herande þiſe knyȝtes ; 450

<sup>1</sup> he were ?<sup>a</sup> blunk ?







Madrey fish 3 Wellington S & S brand





To þe grene chapel þ<sup>u</sup> chofe, I charge þe to fotte,  
 Such a dunt as þ<sup>u</sup> hatȝ dalt differued þ<sup>u</sup> habbeȝ,  
 To be ȝederly ȝolden on nw ȝeres morn ;  
 þe knyȝt of þe grene chapel men knowen me mony ;  
 For þi me for to fynde if þ<sup>u</sup> frayȝteȝ, fayleȝ þ<sup>u</sup> neu<sup>9</sup>, 455  
 þer fore com, oþ<sup>9</sup> recreaūt be calde, þe be-houes.”  
 With a runiſch rout þe rayneȝ he torneȝ,  
 Halled out at þe hal-dor, his hed ī his hande,  
 þat þe fyr of þe flynt flaȝe fro ſole houes.  
 To quat kyth he be-com, knwe non þere,  
 Neu<sup>9</sup> more þen þay wyȝte fr<sup>m</sup> queþen he watȝ wōnen, || what þēne?  
 þe kȳg & Gawen þare,  
 At þat grene þay laȝe & grēne,  
 ȝet breued watȝ hit ful bare, 465  
 A m<sup>9</sup>uayl amōg þo mēne.

## XXI.

þaȝ Arþ<sup>9</sup> þe hende kȳg at hert hade wonder,  
 He let no ſemblaūt be ſene, bot ſayde ful hyȝe  
 To þe comlych quene, wyth cortays ſpeche,  
 “ Dere dame, to day demay yow neu<sup>9</sup> ; 470  
 Wel by-cōmes ſuch craft vpon c<sup>i</sup>ſtmaſſe,  
 Laykȳg of ent<sup>9</sup>ludeȝ, to laȝe & to fȳng,  
 Amōg þiſe, kynde caroles of knyȝteȝ & ladyeȝ ;  
 Neu<sup>9</sup> þe lece to my mete I may me wel dres,  
 For I haf ſen a ſelly, I may not for-fake.” 475  
 He glent vpon ƒ Gawen, & gaynly he ſayde,  
 “ Now ƒ, heng vp þyn ax, þat hatȝ ī nogh hewen.”  
 [fol. 97b.] & hit watȝ don aboȝ þe dece, on doſer to henge,  
 þer alle men for m<sup>9</sup>uayl myȝt on hit loke,  
 & bi trwe tyteli þ<sup>9</sup> of to telle þe wonder. 480

þēne þay boȝed to a borde þife burnes to-geder,  
 þe kȳg & þe gode knyȝt, & kene mē hē ferued  
 Of alle dayntyeȝ double, as derreſt myȝt falle,  
 Wyth alle maner of mete & mynſtralcie boþe ;      ¶ in londe. 485  
 Wyth wele walt þay þat day, til worþed an ende,  
 Now þenk wel, & Gawan,  
 For woþe þat þ<sup>u</sup> ne wonde,  
 þis auenture forto frayn,  
 þat þ<sup>u</sup> hatȝ tan on honde. 490

## [FYTTE THE SECOND.]

## I.

**T**his hanſell' hatȝ Arthur of auenturus on fyrſt,  
 In ȝonge ȝer, for he ȝerned ȝelpȳg to here,  
 Thaȝ hym wordeȝ were wane, when þay to ſete wenten ;  
 Now ar þay ſtoken of ſturne werk ſtaf-ful her hond.  
 Gawan watȝ glad to be-gȳne þoſe gomneȝ ī halle, 495  
 Bot þaȝ þe ende be heuy, haf ȝe no wonder ;  
 For þaȝ man bē mery in mȳde, quen þay han mayn drynk,  
 A ȝere ȝernes ful ȝerne, & ȝeldeȝ neu<sup>o</sup> lyke,  
 þe forme to þe fyniſment foldeȝ ful felden.  
 For þi þis ȝol ou<sup>o</sup>-ȝede, & þe ȝere aft<sup>o</sup>, 500  
 & vche ſefou ſerlepes ſued after oþ<sup>o</sup> ;  
 After cryſten-maſſe com þe crabbed lentoū,  
 þat frayſteȝ fleſch wyth þe fyſche & fode more fymple ;  
 Bot þēne þe weder of þe worlde wyth wynter hit þrepeȝ,

Colde clengeȝ adoū, cloudeȝ vp lyften, 506  
 Schyre ſchedeȝ þe rayn ī ſchowreȝ ful warme,  
 Falleȝ vpon fayre flat, flowreȝ þere ſchewen,  
 Boþe groūdeȝ & þe greueȝ grene ar her wedeȝ,  
 Bryddeȝ buſken to bylde, & bremlych fȳgen, 510  
 For ſolace of þe ſofte ſom<sup>9</sup> þat fueȝ þer aft<sup>9</sup>,     || bi bonk ;  
 & bloſſūeȝ bolne to blowe,  
 Bi raweȝ rych & ronk,  
 Þē noteȝ noble ī noȝe,  
 [fol. 98.] Ar herde in wod fo wlonk. 515

## II.

After þe ſeſoū of ſom<sup>9</sup> wyth þe ſoft wyndeȝ,  
 Quen ȝefer<sup>9</sup> fȳfleȝ hȳ ſelf on ſedeȝ & erbeȝ,  
 Wela wȳne is þe wort þat woxes þer oute,  
 When þe donkande dewe dropeȝ of þe leueȝ,  
 To bide a blyfful bluſch of þe bryȝt ſūne. 520  
 Bot þē hyȝes herueſt, & hardenes hȳ ſone,  
 Warneȝ hȳ for þe wynter to wax ful rype ;  
 He dryues wyth droȝt þe duſt for to ryſe,  
 Fro þe face of þe folde to flyȝe ful hyȝe ;  
 Wroþe wynde of þe welkyn wraſteleȝ w<sup>t</sup> þe ſūne, 525  
 Þe leueȝ lancen fro þe lynde, & lyȝten on þe groūde,  
 & al grayes þe gres, þat grene watȝ ere ;  
 Þēne al rypeȝ & roteȝ þat ros vpon fyrſt,  
 & þ<sup>9</sup> ȝirneȝ þe ȝere ī ȝiſterdayeȝ monȝ,  
 & wynter wyndeȝ aȝayn, as þe worlde aſkeȝ,     || no fage. 530  
 Til meȝel-mas mone,  
 Watȝ cūen wyth wynter wage ;  
 Þen þenkkeȝ Gawan ful ſone,  
 Of hiȝ amo<sup>9</sup> uyage. 535

## III.

ȝet quyl al-hal-day w<sup>t</sup> Arþ<sup>9</sup> he lenges,  
 & he made a fare on þ<sup>t</sup> feſt, for þe frekeȝ ſake,  
 W<sup>t</sup> much reuel & ryche of þe rōude table ;  
 Knyȝteȝ ful cortays & comlych ladies,  
 Al for luſ of þat lede ī longȳge þay were, 540  
 Bot neu<sup>9</sup> þe lece ne þe lat<sup>9</sup> þay neuened bot m<sup>9</sup>þe,  
 Mony ioyleȝ for þat ientyle iapeȝ þer maden.  
 For aſtter mete, w<sup>t</sup> mōnȳg he meleȝ to his eme,  
 & ſpekeȝ of his paſſage, & pertly he ſayde,  
 “ Now, lege lorde of my lyf, leue I yow aſk ; 545  
 ȝe knowe þe coſt of þis cace, kepe I no more  
 To telle yow teneȝ þer of neu<sup>9</sup> bot t<sup>i</sup>fel ;  
 Bot I am boū to þe bur barely to morne,  
 To ſech þe gome of þe grene, as god wyl me wyſſe.”  
 Þēne þe heſt of þe burȝ boȝed to-geder, 550  
 Aywan, & Errik, & oþ<sup>9</sup> ful mony,  
 [fol. 98b.] f Doddinaual de Sauage, þe duk of Clarence,  
 Launcelot, & Lyonel, & Lucan þe gode,  
 f Boos, & fir Byduer, bigmē boþe,  
 & mony oþ<sup>9</sup> menſkful, w<sup>t</sup> Mador de la Port. 555  
 Alle þis compayny of court com þe kȳg nerre,  
 For to couſeyl þe knyȝt, with care at her hert ;  
 Þere watȝ much derne doel driuen ī þe ſale,  
 Þat ſo worthe as Wawan ſchulde wende on þat ernde, ¶ wyth bronde ;  
 To dryȝe a delful dynt, & dele no more,  
 þe knyȝt mad ay god chere,  
 & ſayde, “ quat ſchuld I wonde,  
 Of deſtines derf & dere,  
 What may mon do bot fonde ! ” 565

## IV.

He dowelleȝ þer al þat day, and dresseȝ on þe morn,  
 Afkeȝ erly hys armeȝ, & alle were þay broȝt ;  
 Fyrst a tule tapit, tyȝt ou<sup>9</sup> þe flet,  
 & miche watȝ þe gyld gere þat glent þer alofte ;  
 þe stif mon steppeȝ þeron, & þe stel hondeleȝ, 570  
 Dubbed ī a dublet of a dere tars,  
 & fyþen a crafty capados, clofed aloft,  
 þat wyth a bryȝt blaūner was bouȝden w<sup>t</sup> īne ;  
 þēne set þay þe sabatoūȝ vpon þe segge foteȝ,  
 His legeȝ lapped ī stel w<sup>t</sup> luflych greueȝ, 575  
 W<sup>t</sup> polayneȝ piched þer to, policed ful clene,  
 Aboute his kneȝ knaged wyth knoteȝ of golde ;  
 Queme quyffewes þē, þat coyntlych clofed  
 His thik þrawen þyȝeȝ, w<sup>t</sup> þwonges to-tachched ;  
 & fyþen þe brawden bryne of bryȝt stel rȝȝeȝ, 580  
 Vmbe-weued þat wyȝ, vpon wlonk stuffe ;  
 & wel bornyft brace vpon his boþe armes,  
 W<sup>t</sup> gode cowers & gay, & gloueȝ of plate,  
 & alle þe godlych gere þat hȝ gayn schulde, || þat tyde ; 585  
 Wyth ryche cote armure,  
 His gold sporeȝ spend w<sup>t</sup> pryde,  
 Gurde wyth a bront ful fure,  
 W<sup>t</sup> filk fayn vmbe his fyde.

## V.

[fol. 99.] When he watȝ hasped ī armes, his harnays watȝ ryche, 590  
 þe lest lachet ou<sup>9</sup> loupe lemed of golde ;  
 So harnayft as he watȝ he herkneȝ his masse,

Offred & honoʳed at þe heȝe auter ;  
 Syþen he comeȝ to þe kȳg, & to his cort fereȝ,  
 Lacheȝ lufly his leue at lordeȝ & ladyeȝ ; 595  
 & þay hȳ kyft & conueyed, bikende hȳ to kryft.  
 Bi þat watȝ Gryngolet grayth, & gurde w<sup>t</sup> a fadel,  
 Þat glemed ful gayly w<sup>t</sup> mony golde frenges,  
 Ay quere naylet ful nwe for þat note ryched ;  
 þe brydel barred a-boute, w<sup>t</sup> bryȝt golde boūden ; 600  
 þe apparayl of þe payttrure, & of þe proude ſkyrteȝ,  
 þe cropore, & þe couertor, acorded wyth þe arfoūeȝ ;  
 & al watȝ rayled on red ryche golde nayleȝ,  
 Þat al glytered & glent as glem of þe fūne.  
 þēne hentes he þe helme, & haftily hit kyffes, 605  
 Þat watȝ ſtapled ſtiſly, & ſtoffed wyth īne ;  
 Hit watȝ hyȝe on his hede, haſped bihynde,  
 Wyth a lyȝth vryfoū ou<sup>o</sup> þe auentayle,  
 Enbrawden & boūden wyth þe beſt gēmeȝ,  
 On brode fylkyn borde, & bryddeȝ on ſemeȝ, 610  
 As papiayeȝ paynted pernȳg bitwene,  
 Tortors & trulofeȝ entayled ſo þyk,  
 As mony burde þer aboute had bē feuē wynt<sup>o</sup>,    ¶ ī toūe ;  
 þe cercle watȝ more o prys, 615  
 Þat vmbe-clypped hys croū,  
 Of diamaūteȝ a deuys,  
 Þat boþe were bryȝt & broū.

## VI.

Then þay ſchewed hȳ þe ſchelde, þat was of ſchyr gouleȝ,  
 Wyth þe pentangel de-paynt of pure golde hweȝ ; 620  
 He braydeȝ hit by þe bauderyk, a-boute þe hals keſtȝ,  
 Þat biſemed þe ſegge ſemlyly fayre.

& quy þe pentangel apendeȝ to þat prynce noble,  
 I am ī tent yow to telle, þof tary hyt me ſchulde ;  
 Hit is a fȳgne þat Salamon fet fū quyle, 625  
 ī bytoknȳg of trawþe, bi tytlye þat hit habbeȝ,  
 [fol. 99<sup>b</sup>.] For hit is a figure þat haldeȝ fyue poynteȝ,  
 & vche lyne vmbe-lappeȝ & loukeȝ ī oþer,  
 & ay quere hit is emdeleȝ, & Englych hit callen  
 ou<sup>o</sup> al, as I here, þe endeles knot. 630  
 For þy hit acordeȝ to þis knyȝt, & to his cler armeȝ,  
 For ay faythful ī fyue & ſere fyue fyþeȝ,  
 Gawan watȝ for gode knawen, & as golde pured,  
 Voyded of vche vylany, wyth vertueȝ ēnōned, || ī mote ; 635  
 For þy þe pentangel nwe  
 He ber ī ſchelde & cote,  
 As tulk of tale moſt trwe,  
 & gentyleſt knyȝt of lote.

## VII.

Fyrſt he watȝ funden faultleȝ ī his fyue wytteȝ, 640  
 & eſte fayled neu<sup>o</sup> þe freke ī his fyue fynGRES,  
 & alle his aſyaūce vpon folde watȝ ī þe fyue woūdeȝ  
 þat cryſt kaȝt on þe croys, as þe crede telleȝ ;  
 & quere ſo eu<sup>o</sup> þys mon ī melly watȝ ſtad,  
 His þro þoȝt watȝ ī þat þurȝ alle oþ<sup>o</sup> þȳgeȝ, 645  
 þat alle his forſnes he fong at þe fyue ioieȝ,  
 þat þe hende heuen quene had of hir chylde ;  
 At þis cauſe þe knyȝt comlyche hade  
 ī þe more half of his ſchelde hir ymage depaynted,  
 þat quen he bluſched þerto, his belde neu<sup>o</sup> payred. 650  
 þe fyft fyue þat I finde þat þe frek vfed,  
 Watȝ fraūchyſe, & felazſchyp, for be al þȳg



His clannes & his cortayfye croked were neu<sup>9</sup>;  
 & pite, þat paffeȝ alle poynteȝ, þyfe pure fyue  
 Were harder happed on þat hapeȝ þē on any oþ<sup>9</sup>. 655  
 Now alle þefe fyue fyþeȝ forfoþe were fetled on þis knyȝt,  
 & vchone halched in oþ<sup>9</sup>, þat non ende hade,  
 & fyched vpon fyue poynteȝ, þat fayld neu<sup>9</sup>,  
 Ne farned neu<sup>9</sup> ī no fyde, ne fundred nouþer,  
 W<sup>t</sup> outen ende at any noke i quere<sup>1</sup> fynde, 660  
 Where eu<sup>9</sup> þe gomen bygan, or glod to an ende.  
 Þer fore on his fchene fchelde fchapen watȝ þe knot,  
 þ<sup>9</sup> alle wyth red golde vpon rede gowleȝ,  
 [fol. 100.] þat is þe pure pentaungel wyth þe peple called, || w<sup>t</sup> lore. 665  
 Now grayþed is Gawan gay,  
 & laȝt his laūce ryȝt þore,  
 & gef hem allē goud day,  
 He wende for eu<sup>9</sup> more.

## VIII.

He fperred þe fted w<sup>t</sup> þe fpureȝ, & fprong on his way, 670  
 So ftif þat þe fton fyr fstroke out þer aft<sup>9</sup>;  
 Al þat feȝ þat femly fyked ī hert,  
 & fayde foþly al fame fegges til oþ<sup>9</sup>,  
 Carande for þat comly, “bi kryft, hit is fcaþe,  
 þat þ<sup>u</sup>, leude, fchal be loft, þat art of lyf noble ! 675  
 To fynde hys fere vpon folde, ī fayth is not eþe ;  
 Warloker to haf wroȝt had more wyt bene,  
 & haf dyȝt ȝonder dere a duk to haue worþed ;  
 A lowande leder of ledeȝ ī londe hȝ wel femeȝ,  
 & fo had bett<sup>9</sup> haf ben þē britned to noȝt, 680

<sup>1</sup> ay quere ?

Hadet wyth an aluifch mon, for angardeȝ pryde.  
 Who knew eu<sup>9</sup> any kȳg fuch coufel to take,  
 As knyȝteȝ ī cauelouȝ on cryft-maffe gomneȝ ! ”  
 Wel much watȝ þe warme water þ<sup>t</sup> walt<sup>9</sup>ed of yȝen, || þad<sup>1</sup> daye;  
 When þat femly fyre foȝt fro þo woneȝ,  
 He made non abode,  
 Bot wyȝtly went hys way,  
 Mony wylfū way he rode,  
 þe bok as I herde fay.

690

## IX.

Now rideȝ þis renk þurȝ þe ryalme of Logres,  
 ꝥ Gauan on godeȝ halue, þaȝ hȳ no gomen þoȝt ;  
 Oft leudleȝ alone he lengeȝ on nyȝtes,  
 þer he fonde noȝt hȳ byfore þe fare þat he lyked ;  
 Hade he no fere bot his fole, bi frytheȝ & doūeȝ,  
 Ne no gome bot god, bi gate wyth to karp,  
 Til þat he neȝed ful nogh<sup>2</sup> ī to þe Norþe Waleȝ ;  
 Alle þe iles of Angleſay on lyft half he haldeȝ,  
 & fareȝ ou<sup>9</sup> þe fordeȝ by þe for-londeȝ,  
 Ou<sup>9</sup> at þe Holy-Hede til he hade eft bonk,  
 ī þe wyldreneſſe of Wyrle ; wonde þer bot lyte  
 [fol. 100<sup>b</sup>.] þat auþ<sup>9</sup> god oþ<sup>9</sup> gome wyth goud hert louied.  
 & ay he frayned, as he ferde, at frekeȝ þat he met,  
 If þay hade herde any karp of a knyȝt grene,  
 ī any groude þer aboute, of þe grene chapel<sup>3</sup> ;  
 & al nykked hȳ wyth nay, þat neu<sup>9</sup> ī her lyue  
 þay feȝe neu<sup>9</sup> no ſegge þat watȝ of ſuche hweȝ, || of grene.  
 þe knyȝt tok gates ſtraunge,

695

700

705

<sup>1</sup> þat ?<sup>2</sup> nygh ?<sup>3</sup> clapel, *MS.*

ī mony a bonk vn-bene,  
 His cher ful oft con chaūge,  
 þat chapel er he myȝt fene.

710

## X.

Mony klyf he ou<sup>9</sup> clambe ī contrayeȝ ſtraūge,  
 Fer floten fro his frendeȝ fremedly he rydeȝ ;  
 At vche warþe oþer wat<sup>9</sup> þer þe wyȝe paſſed,  
 He fonde a foo hȳ byfore, bot ferly hit were,  
 & þat ſo foule & ſo felle, þat feȝt hȳ by-hode ;  
 So mony m<sup>9</sup>uayl bi moūt þ<sup>9</sup> þe mon fyndeȝ,  
 Hit were to tore for to telle of þe tenþe dole.  
 Sumwhyle wyth wormeȝ he werreȝ, & w<sup>t</sup> wolues als,  
 Sūwhyle wyth wodwos, þat woned ī þe knarreȝ,  
 Boþe wyth bulleȝ & bereȝ, & boreȝ oþ<sup>9</sup> quyle,  
 & etayneȝ, þat hȳ a-nelede, of þe heȝe felle ;  
 Nade he ben duȝty & dryȝe, & dryȝtyn had ferued,  
 Douteles he hade ben ded, & dreped ful ofte.  
 For werre wrathed hȳ not ſo much, þat wȳt<sup>9</sup> was wors,  
 When þe colde cler wat<sup>9</sup> fro þe cloudeȝ ſchadden,  
 & fres er hit falle myȝt to þe fale erþe ;  
 Ner ſlayn wyth þe flete he ſleped ī his yrnes,  
 Mo nyȝteȝ þē ī noght ī naked rokkeȝ,  
 þ<sup>9</sup> as clat<sup>9</sup>ande fro þe creſt þe colde borne rēneȝ,  
 & hanged heȝe ou<sup>9</sup> his hede ī hard iiffe ikkles.  
 þus ī peryl, & payne, & plytes ful harde,  
 Bi contray caryeȝ þis knyȝt, tyl kryſt-maſſe euen,     || al one ;  
 þe knyȝt wel þat tyde,  
 To Mary made his mone,  
 þat ho hȳ red to ryde,  
 & wyffe hȳ to fū wone.

715

720

725

730

735

## XI.

Bi a moūte on þe morne meryly he rydes, 740  
 Into a forest ful dep, þat ferly watȝ wylde,  
 Hiȝe hilleȝ on vche a halue, & holt wodeȝ vnder,  
 Of hore okeȝ ful hoge a hundreth to-geder ;  
 þe hafel & þe haȝ-þorne were harled al ſamen,  
 W<sup>t</sup> roȝe raged moſſe rayled ay where, 745  
 W<sup>t</sup> mony bryddeȝ vnblyþe vpon bare twyges,  
 þat pitofly þer piped for pyne of þe colde.  
 þe gome vpon Gryngolet glydeȝ hem vnder,  
 þurȝ mony miȝy & myre, mō al hȝ one,  
 Carande for his coſtes, leſt he ne keu<sup>9</sup> ſchulde 750  
 To ſe þe ſeruy of þat fyre, þat on þat ſelf nyȝt  
 Of a burde watȝ borne, oure baret to quelle ;  
 & þerfore ſykȝg he ſayde, “ I be-ſeche þe, lorde,  
 & Mary, þat is myldeſt moder ſo dere,  
 Of ſū herber, þer heȝly I myȝt here maſſe, 755  
 Ande þy matyneȝ to-morne, mekely I aſk,  
 & þer to preſtly I pray my pat<sup>9</sup> & aue,      || & crede.”  
 He rode ī his prayere,  
 & cryed for his myſdede, 760  
 He ſayned hȝ ī ſyþes ſere,  
 & ſayde “ cros kryſt me ſpede ! ”

## XII.

Nade he ſayned hȝ ſelf ſegge bot þrye,  
 Er he watȝ war ī þe wod of a won ī a mote,  
 Abof a laūde, on a lawe, loken vnder boȝeȝ, 765  
 Of mony borelych bole, aboute bi þe dicheȝ ;

A caſtel þe comlokeſt þat eu<sup>9</sup> knyȝt aȝte,  
 Pyched on a prayere, a park al aboute,  
 W<sup>t</sup> a pyked palays, pyned ful þik,  
 þat vmbe-teȝe mony tre mo þē two myle. 770  
 þat holde on þat on fyde þe haþel auyſed,  
 As hit ſchemered & ſchon þurȝ þe ſchyre okeȝ ;  
 þēne hatȝ he hendly of his helme, & heȝly he þonkeȝ  
 Jeſus & fay Gilyan, þat gentyle ar boþe,  
 [fol. 101<sup>b</sup>.] þat cortayfly hade hȝ kydde, & his cry herkened. 775  
 “ Now bone hoſtel,” coþe þe burne, “ I be-ſeche yow ȝette ! ”  
 þēne gedereȝ he to Gryngolet w<sup>t</sup> þe gilt heleȝ,  
 & he ful chaūcely hatȝ choſen to þe cheſ gate,  
 þat broȝt bremly þe burne to þe bryge ende,      ¶ ī haſte ; 780  
 þe bryge watȝ breme vp brayde,  
 þe ȝateȝ wer ſtoken faſte,  
 þe walleȝ were wel arayed,  
 Hit dut no wyndeȝ blaſte.

## XIII.

þe burne bode on bonk, þat on blonk houed, 785  
 Of þe depe double dich þat drof to þe place,  
 þe walle wod ī þe wat<sup>9</sup> wonderly depe,  
 Ande eft a ful huge heȝt hit haled vpon loſte,  
 Of harde hewen ſton vp to þe tableȝ,  
 Enbaned vnder þe abataylmēt, ī þe beſt lawe ; 790  
 & fyþen garyteȝ ful gaye gered bi-twene,  
 Wyth mony luſflych loupe, þat louked ful clene ;  
 A bett<sup>9</sup> barbican þat burne bluſched vpon neu<sup>9</sup> ;  
 & īnermore he be-helde þat halle ful hyȝe,  
 Towre telded bytwene trochet ful þik, 795  
 Fayre fylyoleȝ þat fyȝed, & ferlyly long,

With coruon coproūes, craftyly fleȝe ;  
 Chalk whyt chymnees þer ches he ī noȝe,  
 Vpon baſtel roueȝ, þat blenked ful quyte ;  
 So many pynakle payntet watȝ poudred ay quere, 800  
 Amōȝ þe caſtel carneleȝ, clambred fo þik,  
 Þat pared out of papure purely hit femed.  
 Þe fre freke on þe ſole hit fayr ī noghe<sup>1</sup> þoȝt,  
 If he myȝt keu<sup>2</sup> to com þe cloyſt<sup>3</sup> wyth ine,  
 To herber ī þat hoſtel, whyl halyday leſted, || amnant ;  
 He calde, & ſone þer com  
 A porter pure pleaſaūt,  
 On þe wal his ernd he nome,  
 & haylſed þe knyȝt eryaūt. 810

## XIV.

“ Gode ƒ,” ȝ Gawan, “ woldeȝ þ<sup>n</sup> go mȝ ernde,  
 To þe heȝ lorde of þis ho<sup>2</sup>, herber to craue ?”  
 [fol. 102.] “ ȝe, Pet<sup>3</sup>,” ȝ þe port<sup>3</sup>, “ & purely I trowe<sup>2</sup>,  
 þat ȝe be, wyȝe, welcū to won quyle yow lykeȝ.” 815  
 Þē ȝede þ<sup>e</sup> wyȝe aȝayn ſwyȝe,  
 & folke frely hȝ wyth, to ſonge þe knyȝt ;  
 Þay let doū þe grete draȝt, & derely out ȝeden,  
 & kneled doū on her kneſ vpon þe colde erȝe,  
 To welcū þis ilk wyȝ, as worȝy hom þoȝt ;  
 Þay ȝolden hȝ þe brode ȝate, ȝarked vp wyde, 820  
 & he hem rayſed rekenly, & rod ou<sup>2</sup> þe brygge ;  
 Sere ſeggeȝ hȝ ſefed by ſadel, quel<sup>3</sup> he lyȝt,  
 & ſyȝen ſtabeled his ſtede ſtif mē ī noȝe.  
 Knyȝteȝ & ſwyereȝ cōmen doū þēne,

<sup>1</sup> nghe, *MS.*<sup>2</sup> trowoe, *MS.*<sup>3</sup> quyle ?

For to brȝg þis burne <sup>1</sup> wyth blys ī to halle ; 825  
 Quen he hef vp his helme, þer hiȝed ī nogh  
 For to hent hit at his honde, þe hende to feruen ;  
 His bronde & his blafoū boþe þay token.  
 Þē haylfed he ful hendly þo haþeleȝ vch one,  
 & mony proud mon þer p<sup>o</sup>fed, þat prȝce to hono<sup>r</sup> ; 830  
 Alle hafped ī his heȝ wede to halle þay hȝ wōnen,  
 Þer fayre fyre vpon flet ferfly brēned.  
 Þēne þe lorde of þe lede louteȝ fro his chambre,  
 For to mete wyth menfke þe mon on þe flor ;  
 He ſayde, “ ȝe ar welcū to welde as yow lykeȝ,  
 Þat here is al is yowre awen, to haue at yowre wyllē, || & welde.”  
 “ Graūt mercy,” q̄ Gawayn,  
 “ Þer kryft hit yow for-ȝelde,”  
 As frekeȝ þat femed fayn, 840  
 Ayþ<sup>o</sup> oþ<sup>o</sup> ī armeȝ cō felde.

## XV.

Gawayn glyȝt on þe gome þat godly hȝ gret,  
 & þuȝt hit a bolde burne þat þe burȝ aȝte,  
 A hoge haþel for þe noneȝ, & of hygħ elde <sup>2</sup> ;  
 Brode bryȝt watȝ his berde, & al beu<sup>o</sup> hwed, 845  
 Sturne ſtif on þe ſtryþþe on ſtalworth ſchonkeȝ,  
 Felle face as þe fyre, & fre of hys ſpeche ;  
 & wel hȝ femed for foþe, as þe ſegge þuȝt,  
 To lede a lortſchyp ī lee of leudeȝ ful gode.  
 [fol. 102<sup>b</sup>.] Þe lorde hȝ charred to a chambre, & chefly <sup>3</sup> cūaūdeȝ 850  
 To delyu<sup>o</sup> hym a leude, hym loȝly to ferue ;  
 & þere were boū at his bode burneȝ ī noȝe,

<sup>1</sup> buurne, *MS*.<sup>2</sup> eldee, *MS*.<sup>3</sup> clefly, *MS*.

þat broȝt hȝ to a bryȝt boure, þ<sup>o</sup> beddȝg watȝ noble,  
 Of cortynes of clene fylk, wyth cler golde hēmeȝ,  
 & cou<sup>o</sup>toreȝ ful curious, w<sup>t</sup> comlych paneȝ, 855  
 Of bryȝt blaunn<sup>o</sup> <sup>1</sup> a-boue enbrawdēd bifydeȝ,  
 Rudeleȝ rēnande on ropeȝ, red golde rȝgeȝ,  
 Tapyteȝ tyȝt to þe woȝe, of tuly & tars,  
 & vnder fete on þe flet of folȝande fute.  
 þer he watȝ dispoyled, wyth ſpecheȝ of my<sup>o</sup>þe, 860  
 þe burn of his bruny, & of his bryȝt wedeȝ ;  
 Ryche robes ful rad renkkeȝ hem broȝten,  
 For to charge, & to chaunge, & choſe of þe beſt.  
 Sone as he on hent, & happed þ<sup>o</sup> īne,  
 þat fete on hym<sup>o</sup> femly, wyth ſaylande ſkyrteȝ, 865  
 þe ver by his uifage verayly hit femed  
 Welneȝ to vche haȝel alle on hwes,  
 Lowande & luſly, alle his lȝmeȝ vnder,  
 þat a comloker knyȝt neu<sup>o</sup> kryſt made, || hem þoȝt ; . 870  
 Wheȝen ī worlde he were,  
 Hit femed as he myȝt  
 Be prynce w<sup>t</sup> outen pere,  
 ī felde þ<sup>o</sup> felle mē fyȝt.

## XVI.

A cheyer by-fore þe chemne, þ<sup>o</sup> charcole brēned, 875  
 Watȝ grayȝed for f Gawan, grayȝely w<sup>t</sup> cloȝeȝ,  
 Whyſſynes vpon queldepoyntȝ, þa koȝt wer boȝe ;  
 & þēne a mere mantyle watȝ on þat mon caſt,  
 Of a broū bleeaūt, enbraūded ful ryche,  
 & fayre furred wyth īne w<sup>t</sup> felleȝ of þe beſt, 880

<sup>1</sup> blaunn<sup>o</sup>, *MS.*<sup>2</sup> hyn, *MS.*



Alle of ermyn ī erde, his hode of þe fame ;  
 & be-fete ī þat fettel femlych ryche,  
 & achaufed hȳ chefly<sup>1</sup>, & þēne his cher mended.  
 Sone watȝ telded vp a tapit, on trefteȝ ful fayre,  
 Clad wyth a clene cloþe, þat cler quyt ſchewed, 885  
 Sanap, & ſalure, & fylu<sup>9</sup> ī ſponeȝ ;  
 [fol. 103.] þe wyȝe weſche at his wyllē, & went to his mete.  
 Seggeȝ hym ſerued femly ī noȝe,  
 Wyth fere fewes & fete, feſoude of þe beſt,  
 Double felde, as hit falleȝ, & fele kyn fiſcheȝ ; 890  
 Sūme baken ī bred, fūme brad on þe gledeȝ,  
 Sūme ſoþen, fūme ī ſewe, ſau<sup>9</sup>ed w<sup>t</sup> ſpyces,  
 & aȝfawes ſo fleȝeȝ, þat þe ſegge lyked.  
 þe freke calde hit a feſt ful frely & ofte,  
 Ful hendely, quen alle þe haþeles re-hayted hȳ at oneȝ, || as hende ;  
 “ þis penaūce now ȝe take,  
 & eft hit ſchal amende ; ”  
 þat mon much m<sup>9</sup>þe con make,  
 For wȳ ī his hed þat wende. 900

## XVII.

þēne watȝ ſpyed & ſpured vpon ſpare wyfe,  
 Bi preue poynteȝ of þat prynce, put to hȳ ſeluen,  
 þat he be-knew cortayfly of þe court þat he were,  
 þat aþel Arthure þe hende haldeȝ hȳ one,  
 þat is þe ryche ryal kȳg of þe roūde table ; 905  
 & hit watȝ Wawen hȳ ſelf þat ī þat won fytteȝ,  
 Comen to þat kryſtmaſſe, as caſe hȳ þen lymped.  
 When þe lorde hade lerned þat he þe leude hade,

<sup>1</sup> ceſly, *MS.*

Loude laȝed he þ<sup>o</sup>at, ſo lef hit hȳ þoȝt,  
 & alle þe men ī þat mote maden much joye, 910  
 To apere ī his preſenſe preſtly þat tyme,  
 Þat alle prys, & prowes, & pured þewes  
 Apendes to hys perſoū, & prayſed is eu<sup>o</sup>,  
 By-fore alle men vpon molde, his menſk is þe moſt.  
 Vch fegge ful ſoftly fayde to his fere, 915  
 “ Now ſchal we ſemlych ſe fleȝtez of þeweȝ,  
 & þe teccheles termes of talkȳg noble,  
 Wich ſpede is ī ſpeche, vnſpurd may we lerne,  
 Sȳ we haf ſonged þat fyne fader of nurture ;  
 God hatȝ geuen v<sup>o</sup> his g<sup>o</sup>ce godly for ſoþe, 920  
 Þat ſuch a geſt as Gawan graūtez v<sup>o</sup> to haue,  
 When burneȝ blyþe of his burþe ſchal fitte,     || & fȳge ;  
 ī menȳg of man<sup>o</sup>eȝ mere,  
 [fol. 103<sup>b</sup>.] Þis burne now ſchal v<sup>o</sup> brȳg, 925  
 I hope þat may hȳ here,  
 Schal lerne of luſ-talkȳg.”

## XVIII.

Bi þat þe diner watȝ done, & þe dere vp,  
 Hit watȝ neȝ at þe nyȝt<sup>1</sup> neȝed þe tyme ;  
 Chaplayneȝ to þe chapeles choſen þe gate, 930  
 Rūgen ful rychely, ryȝt as þay ſchulden,  
 To þe herfū euenſong of þe hyȝe tyde.  
 Þe lorde loutes þerto, & þe lady als,  
 ī to a comly cloſet coyntly ho entreȝ ;  
 Gawan glydeȝ ful gay, & gos þeder ſone ; 935  
 Þe lorde laches hȳ by þe lappe, & ledeȝ hȳ to fytte,

<sup>1</sup> myȝt, MS.

& couply hȝ knoweȝ, & calleȝ hȝ his nome,  
 & fayde he watȝ þe welcomeȝt wyȝe of þe worlde ;  
 & he hȝ þonkked þroly, & ayþ<sup>9</sup> halched oþer,  
 & feten ſoberly ſamen þe ſeruife-quyle ; 940  
 Þēne lyft þe lady to loke on þe knyȝt.  
 Þēne com ho of hir cloſet, w<sup>t</sup> mony cler burdeȝ,  
 Ho watȝ þe fayreſt ī felle, of fleſche & of lyre,  
 & of compas, & colo<sup>r</sup>, & coſtes of alle oþ<sup>9</sup>,  
 & wener þen Wenore, as þe wyȝe þoȝt. 945  
 He ches þurȝ þe chaūfel, to cheryche þat hende ;  
 An oþer lady hir lad bi þe lyft honde,  
 Þat watȝ alder þen ho, an aūcian hit ſemed,  
 & heȝly honowred w<sup>t</sup> haþeles aboute.  
 Bot vn-lyke on to loke þo ladyes were, 950  
 For if þe ȝonge watȝ ȝep, ȝolȝe watȝ þ<sup>t</sup> oþ<sup>9</sup> ;  
 Riche red on þat on rayled ay quere,  
 Rugħ ronkled chekeȝ þat oþ<sup>9</sup> on rolled ;  
 Kerchoſes of þat on wyth mony cler perleȝ  
 Hir breſt & hir bryȝt þrote bare diſplayed, 955  
 Schon ſchyrrer þē ſnawe, þat ſcheder on hilleȝ ;  
 Þat oþ<sup>9</sup> wyth a gorger watȝ gered ou<sup>9</sup> þe ſwyre,  
 Chymbled ou<sup>9</sup> hir blake chyn w<sup>t</sup> mylk-quyte vayles,  
 Hir froūt folden ī fylk, enfoubled ay quere,  
 Toret & trejeted w<sup>t</sup> tryfleȝ aboute, 960  
 [fol. 104.] Þat noȝt watȝ bare of þat burde bot þe blake broȝes,.  
 þe tweyne yȝen, & þe naſe, þe naked lyppeȝ,  
 & þoſe were ſoure to ſe, & ſellyly blered ;  
 A menſk lady on molde mō may hir calle,      || for gode ; 965  
 Hir body watȝ ſchoȝt & þik,  
 Hir buttokeȝ bay & brode,  
 More lykker-wys on to lyk,  
 Watȝ þat ſcho hade on lode.

## XIX.

When Gawayn glyȝt on þ<sup>t</sup> gay, þ<sup>t</sup> g<sup>ac</sup>cio<sup>o</sup>ly loked, 970  
 Wyth leue laȝt of þe lorde he went hem aȝaynes ;  
 þe alder he haylſes, heldande ful lowe,  
 þe loueloker he lappeȝ a lyttel ī armeȝ,  
 He kyffes hir comlyly, & knyȝtly he meleȝ ;  
 þay kallen hȳ of a quoȳtaūce, & he hit quyk afkeȝ 975  
 To be her ſeruaūt ſothly, if hem ſelf lyked.  
 þay tan hȳ bytwene hem, wyth talkȳg hȳ leden  
 To chambre, to chemne, & cheſly þay afken  
 Spyceȝ, þat vn-ſparely mē ſpeded hom to brȳg,  
 & þe wȳne-lych wyne þ<sup>o</sup> w<sup>t</sup> vche tyme. 980  
 þe lorde luſſlych aloft lepeȝ ful ofte,  
 Mȳned m<sup>o</sup>the to be made vpon mony fyþeȝ,  
 Hent heȝly of his hode, & on a ſpere hanged,  
 & wayned hom to wȳne þe worchip þer of,  
 þat moſt myrþe myȝt mene þ<sup>t</sup> cryſtenmas whyle ; 985  
 “ & I ſchal fonde, bi my fayth, to fylt<sup>o</sup> wyth þe beſt,  
 Er me wont þe wedeȝ, w<sup>t</sup> help of my frendeȝ.”  
 þ<sup>o</sup> wyth laȝande loteȝ þe lorde hit tayt<sup>1</sup> makeȝ,     || þ<sup>t</sup> nyȝt ; 990  
 For to glade f Gawayn w<sup>t</sup> gomneȝ ī halle,  
 Til þat hit watȝ tyme,  
 þe kȳg comaūdet lyȝt,  
 f Gawen his leue con nyme,  
 & to his bed hȳ diȝt.

<sup>1</sup> layt ?

## XX.

On þe morne, as vch mon mynez þat tyme, 995  
 þat dryȝtyn for oure deſtyne to deȝe watȝ borne,  
 Wele waxeȝ ī vche a won ī w̃orlde, for his ſake ;  
 So did hit þere on þat day, þurȝ dayntes mony ;  
 [fol. 104<sup>b</sup>.] Boþe at meſ & at mele, meſſes ful quaynt ;  
 Derf men vpon dece, dreft of þe beſt. 1000  
 þe olde aūcian wyf heȝeſt ho fytteȝ ;  
 þe lorde luſly herby lent, as I trowe ;  
 Gawan & þe gay burde to-geder þay feten,  
 Euen ī myddeȝ, as þe meſſe metely come ;  
 & fyþen þurȝ al þe ſale, as hem beſt ſemed, 1005  
 Bi vche grome at his degre g̃yþely watȝ ſerued.  
 þ<sup>o</sup> watȝ mete, þer watȝ myrþe, þ<sup>o</sup> watȝ much ioie,  
 þat for to telle þerof hit me tene were,  
 & to poynte hit ȝet I pyned me pauēture ;  
 Bot ȝet I wot þat Wawen & þe wale burde 1010  
 Such comfort of her compaynye caȝten to-geder,  
 þurȝ her dere dalyaūce of her derne wordeȝ,  
 Wyth clene cortays carp, clofed fro fylþe ;  
 & hor play watȝ paſſande vche prynce gomen, || ī vayres ;  
 Trūpeȝ & nakerys,  
 Much pypȝg þ<sup>o</sup> repayres,  
 Vche mō tented hys,  
 & þay two tēted þayres.

## XXI.

Much dut watȝ þer dryuen þat day & þat oþ<sup>o</sup>, 1020  
 & þe þryd as þro þronge ī þeraſt<sup>o</sup> ;

þe ioye of fayn Joneȝ day watȝ gentyle to here,  
 & watȝ þe laȝt of þe layk, leudeȝ þer þoȝten.  
 Þer wer geȝtes to go vpon þe gray morne,  
 For þy wonderly þay woke, & þe wyn dronken,  
 Daūfed ful dreȝly wyth dere caroleȝ ;  
 At þe laȝt, when hit watȝ late, þay lachen her leue,  
 Vchon to wende on his way, þat watȝ wyȝe ftronge.  
 Gawan geȝ hȳ god-day, þe god mō hȳ lachcheȝ,  
 Ledes hȳ to his awen chambre, þe chȳne byȝyde,  
 & þere he draȝeȝ hȳ on dryȝe, & derely hȳ þonkkeȝ,  
 Of þe wȳne worȝchip & <sup>1</sup> he hȳ wayned hade,  
 As to hono<sup>r</sup> his ho<sup>d</sup> on þat hyȝe tyde,  
 & enbelyȝe his burȝ w<sup>t</sup> his bele chere.

1025

1030

“ I wyȝfe ȝ, quyl I leue, me worȝeȝ þe better,

1035

[fol. 105.] þat Gawayn hatȝ ben my geȝt, at goddeȝ awen feȝt.”

“ G<sup>a</sup>nt merci<sup>2</sup> ȝ,” ȝ Gawayn, “ ī god fayth hit is yowreȝ,  
 Al þe hono<sup>r</sup> is yo<sup>r</sup> awen, þe heȝe kȳȝ yow ȝelde ;  
 & I am wyȝe at yo<sup>r</sup> wylle, to worch yo<sup>r</sup>e heȝt,      ¶ bi riȝt.”  
 As I am halden þ<sup>o</sup> to, ī hyȝe & ī loȝe,

1040

þe lorde faȝt can hȳ payne,  
 To holde lenger þe knyȝt,  
 To hȳ anȝwreȝ Gawayn,  
 Bi non way þat he myȝt.

1045

## XXII.

Then frayned þe freke ful fayre at him ſeluē,  
 Quat derne dede had hȳ dryuen, at þat dere tyme,  
 So kenly fro þe kȳȝeȝ kourt to kayre al his one,  
 Er þe halidayeȝ holly were halet out of toū ?

<sup>1</sup> þat ?<sup>2</sup> merci, *MS.*

“ For soþe ƿ,” q̃ þe segge, “ ȝe fayn bot þe trawþe ; 1050  
 A heȝe ernde & a hafty me hade fro þo woneȝ ;  
 For I am fūned my ſelfe to ſech to a place,  
 I wot <sup>1</sup> ī worlde wheder warde to wende, hit to fynde ;  
 I nolde, bot if I hit negh myȝt on nwȝeres morne,  
 For alle þe londe ī wyth Logres, ſo me oure lorde help ! 1055  
 For þy, ƿ, þis enqueſt I require yow here,  
 þat ȝe me telle w<sup>t</sup> trawþe, if eu<sup>9</sup> ȝe tale herde  
 Of þe grene chapel, quere hit on groūde ſtondeȝ,  
 & of þe knyȝt þat hit kepes, of colō<sup>r</sup> of grene ?  
 Þ<sup>9</sup> watȝ ſtabled bi ſtatut a ſteuen v<sup>9</sup> by-twene, 1060  
 To mete þat mon at þ<sup>t</sup> mere, ȝif I myȝt laſt ;  
 & of þat ilk nwȝere bot neked now wonteȝ,  
 & I wolde loke on þat lede, if god me let wolde,  
 Gladloker, bi goddeȝ fū, þē any god welde !  
 For þi I wyffe, bi ȝowre wylle, wende me bi-houes, 1065  
 Naſ I now to bufy bot bare þre dayeȝ,  
 & me als fayn to falle feye as fayly of mȳ<sup>3</sup> ernde.”  
 Þēne laȝande q̃ þe lorde, “ now leng þe by-houes,  
 For I ſchal teche yow to þa terme bi þe tymeȝ ende,  
 þe grene chapayle vpon groūde, greue yow no more ; 1070  
 Bot ȝe ſchal be ī yowre bed, burne, at þȳ eſe,  
 Quyle forth dayeȝ, & ferk on þe fyrſt of þe ȝere,  
 [fol. 105<sup>b</sup>.] & cum to þat merk at mydmorn, to make quat yow likeȝ, || in ſpēne ;  
 Dowelleȝ whyle, new ȝeres daye, 1075  
 & rys, & raykeȝ þēne,  
 Mō ſchal yow ſette ī waye,  
 Hit is not two myle hēne.”

<sup>1</sup> not ?<sup>2</sup> myȳ, MS.

## XXIII.

þēne watȝ Gawan ful glad, & gomenly he laȝed,—  
 “ Now I þonk yow þryuandely þurȝ alle oþ<sup>9</sup> þȝge, 1080  
 Now acheued is my chaūce, I ſchal at yō wylle  
 Dowelle, & elleȝ do quat ȝe demen.”  
 þēne ſefed hȝ þe fyre, & fet hȝ byfyde,  
 Let þe ladieȝ be fette, to lyke hē þe bett<sup>9</sup> ;  
 þer watȝ ſeme ſolace by hem ſelf ftille ; 1085  
 þe lorde let for luſ loteȝ fo myry,  
 As wyȝ þat wolde of his wyte, ne wyft quat he myȝt.  
 þēne he carped to þe knyȝt, criande loude,  
 “ ȝe han demed to do þe dede þat I bidde ;  
 Wyl ȝe halde þis hes here at þys oneȝ ? ” 1090  
 “ ȝe f, for ſoþe,” ſayd þe ſegge trwe,  
 “ Why! I byde ī yowre borȝe, be bayn to ȝowe<sup>1</sup> heft.”  
 “ For ȝe haf trauayled,” q þe tulk, “ towen fro ferre,  
 & fyþen waked me wyth, ȝe arn not wel waryft,  
 Nauȝ<sup>9</sup> of ſoftnaūce ne of flepe, ſoþly I knowe ; 1095  
 ȝe ſchal lenge ī yō lofte, & lyȝe ī yō eſe,  
 To morn quyle þe meſſe-quyle, & to mete wende,  
 When ȝe wyl, wyth my wyf, þat wyth yow ſchal fitte,  
 & comfort yow w<sup>t</sup> compayny, til I to cort torne, || ȝe lende ;  
 & I ſchal erly ryfe,  
 On hūtyȝ wyl I wende.”  
 Gauayn g<sup>nt</sup>eȝ alle þyfe,  
 Hȝ heldande, as þe hende.

<sup>1</sup> ȝowre ?



## XXIV.

“ ȝet firre,” ȝ þe freke, “ a forwarde we make ; 1105  
 Quat fo euer I wȝne ī þe wod, hit worþeȝ to yōēȝ,  
 & quat chek fo ȝe acheue, chaūge me þer forne ;  
 Swete, fwap we fo, fware w<sup>t</sup> trawþe,  
 Queþ<sup>9</sup> leude fo lymþ, lere oþ<sup>9</sup> bett<sup>9</sup>.”  
 “ Bi god,” ȝ Gawayn þe gode, “ I g<sup>nt</sup> þ<sup>9</sup> tylle, 1110  
 [fol. 106.] & þat yow lyft forto layke, lef hit me þynkȝ.”  
 “ Who brȝgeȝ v<sup>9</sup> þis beu<sup>9</sup>age, þis bargayn is maked,”—  
 So fayde þe lorde of þat lede ; þay laȝed vchone,  
 þay dronken, & daylyeden, & dalten vntyȝtel,  
 þife lordeȝ & ladyeȝ, quyle þat hem lyked ; 1115  
 & fyþen w<sup>t</sup> frenkyfch fare & fele fayre loteȝ  
 þay ftoden, & ftemed, & ftylly fpeken,  
 Kyften ful comlyly, & kaȝten her leue.  
 W<sup>t</sup> mony leude ful lyȝt, & lemande torches,  
 Vche burne to his bed watȝ broȝt at þe lafte,   || ful foſte ;  
 To bed ȝet er þay ȝede,  
 Recorded couenaūteȝ ofte ;  
 þe olde lorde of þat leude<sup>1</sup>,  
 Cowþe wel halde layk a-lofte. 1125

<sup>1</sup> lede ?

## [FYTTE THE THIRD.]

## I.

**F**ul erly bifore þe day þe folk vp ryfen,  
 Gestes þat go wolde, hor gromeȝ þay calden,  
 & þay busken vp bilyue, blonkkeȝ to fadel,  
 Tyffen her ' takles, truffen her males,  
 Richen hem þe rycheft, to ryde alle arayde, 1130  
 Lepen vp lyȝtly, lachen her brydeles,  
 Vche wyȝe on his way, þer hȝ wel lyked.  
 þe leue lorde of þe londe watȝ not þe laft,  
 A-rayed for þe rydȝg, w<sup>t</sup> renkkeȝ ful mony;  
 Ete a fop haftyly, when he hade herde maffe, 1135  
 W<sup>t</sup> bugle to bent felde he buskeȝ by-lyue;  
 By þat þat any day-lyȝt lemed vpon erþe,  
 He w<sup>t</sup> his haȝeles on hyȝe horffes weren.  
 þene þife cacheres þat couȝe, cowpled hor houȝdeȝ,  
 Vnclofed þe kenel dore, & calde hem þ<sup>o</sup>oute, 1140  
 Blwe bygly ī bugleȝ þre bare mote;  
 Braches bayed þ<sup>o</sup>fore, & breme noyfe maked,  
 & þay chaftyfed, & charred, on chafȝg þat went;  
 A hundreth of hunt<sup>o</sup>es, as I haf herde telle, || of þe beft;  
 To tryftors vewters ȝod,  
 Couples huntres of-keft,  
 [fo1. 106b.] þ<sup>o</sup> ros for blaſteȝ gode,  
 Gret rurd ī þat forest.

' he, MS.

## II.

At þe fyrst quethe of þe quest quaked þe wylde ; 1150  
 Der drof ī þe dale, doted for drede,  
 Hized to þe hyȝe, bot het<sup>o</sup>ly þay were  
 Restayed w<sup>t</sup> þe stablye, þat stoutly ascryed ;  
 þay let þe hertteȝ haf þe gate, w<sup>t</sup> þe hyȝe hedes,  
 þe breme bukkeȝ alȝo, w<sup>t</sup> hor brode paumeȝ ; 1155  
 For þe fre lorde hade defende ī fermyfoū tyme,  
 þ<sup>t</sup> þ<sup>o</sup> schulde no mon mene to þe male dere.  
 þe hindeȝ were halden ī, w<sup>t</sup> hay & war,  
 þe does dryuen w<sup>t</sup> gret dyn to þe depe fladeȝ ;  
 þer myȝt mon se, as þay flypte, fleutȝg of arwes, 1160  
 At vche wende vnder wande wapped a flone,  
 þat bigly bote on þe broū, w<sup>t</sup> ful brode hedeȝ,  
 What þay brayen, & bleden, bi bonkkeȝ þay deȝen.  
 & ay rachches ī a res radly hem folȝes,  
 Hūtereȝ wyth hyȝe horne haſted hem aft<sup>o</sup>, 1165  
 Wyth fuch a crakkande kry, as klyffes haden bruſten ;  
 What wylde ſo at-waped wyȝes þat ſchotten,  
 Watȝ al to-raced & rent, at þe reſayt.  
 Bi þay were tened at þe hyȝe, & tayfed to þe wattreȝ,  
 þe ledeȝ were ſo lerned at þe loȝe tryſteres, 1170  
 & þe gre-hoūdeȝ ſo grete, þat geten hem bylyue,  
 & hem to fylched, as faſt as frekeȝ myȝt loke, || þ<sup>o</sup> ryȝt.  
 þe lorde for blys abloy,  
 Ful oft con laūce & lyȝt, 1175  
 & drof þat day wyth joy,  
 Thus to þe derk nyȝt.

1

2

3

4

5

My mynde is mykul on y<sup>on</sup> hit me nozt amende  
Sum time has tressas don fro shame compe hysfende







## III.

þ<sup>9</sup> laykeȝ þis lorde by lynde wodeȝ eueȝ,  
 & G. þe god mon, ī gay bed lygeȝ,  
 Lurkkeȝ quyl þe day-lyȝt lemed on þe wowes, 1180  
 Vnder couerto<sup>u</sup> ful clere, cortyned aboute ;  
 & as ī flom<sup>9</sup>ȝg he flode, fleȝly he herde  
 A littel dyn at his dor, & derfly vpon ;  
 & he heueȝ vp his hed, out of þe cloȝes,  
 [fol. 107.] A corner of þe cortyn he caȝt vp a lyttel, 1185  
 & wayteȝ warly þider warde, quat hit be myȝt.  
 Hit watȝ þe ladi, loflyeft to be-holde,  
 þat droȝ þe dor aft<sup>9</sup> hir ful dernly & ftylle,  
 & boȝed to-warde þe bed ; & þe burne ſchamed,  
 & layde hȝ doū lyftyly, & let as he flepte. 1190  
 & ho ſtepped ftilly, & ſtel to his bedde,  
 Keft vp þe cortyn, & creped w<sup>t</sup> ine,  
 & fet hir ful ſoftly on þe bed-ſyde,  
 & lenged þere ſelly longe, to loke quē he wakened.  
 þe lede lay lurked a ful longe quyle, 1195  
 Compaſt ī his concience to quat þat cace myȝt  
 Mene oþ<sup>9</sup> amoūt, to m<sup>9</sup>uayle hȝ þoȝt ;  
 Bot ȝet he ſayde ī hȝ ſelf, “ more ſemly hit were  
 To aſpye wyth my ſpelle, ſpace quat ho wolde.”  
 þen he wakenede, & wroth, & to hir warde torned, 1200  
 & vn-louked his yȝe-lyddeȝ, & let as hȝ wondered,  
 & ſayned hȝ, as bi his ſaȝe þe ſau<sup>9</sup> to worthe, || w<sup>t</sup> hande ;  
 Wyth chȝne & cheke ful fwete,  
 Boþe quit & red ī blande, 1205  
 Ful luſſy con ho lete,  
 Wyth lyppeȝ ſmal laȝande.



## IV.

“ God morou, f Gawayn,” fayde þat fayr lady,  
 “ ȝe ar a flep vn-flyȝe, þat mō may flyde hider ;  
 Now ar ȝe tan aftyt, bot t<sup>e</sup> v<sup>o</sup> may fchape,  
 I ſchal bynde yow ī yō<sup>o</sup> bedde, þ<sup>t</sup> be ȝe trayft ; ”—  
 Al laȝande þe lady lanced þo bourdeȝ.  
 “ Goud morou g<sup>e</sup> <sup>1</sup>,” q Gawayn þe blyþe,  
 “ Me ſchal worþe at yō<sup>o</sup> wille, & þat me wel lykeȝ,  
 For I ȝelde me ȝederly, & ȝeȝe aft<sup>o</sup> g<sup>e</sup>ce,  
 & þat is þe beſt, be my dome, for me by-houeȝ nede ; ”—  
 & þus he bourded a-ȝayn w<sup>t</sup> mony a blyþe laȝt<sup>o</sup> ;—  
 “ Bot wolde ȝe, lady louely, þē leue me g<sup>e</sup>nte,  
 & deprece yō<sup>o</sup> pryfoū, & pray hȝ to ryfe,  
 I wolde boȝe of þis bed, & bufk me bett<sup>o</sup>,  
 I ſchulde keu<sup>o</sup> þe more comfort to karp yow wyth.”  
 [fol. 107<sup>b</sup>.] “ Nay, for ſoþe, beau f,” fayd þat fwete,  
 “ ȝe ſchal not riſe of yō<sup>o</sup> bedde, I rych yow bett<sup>o</sup>,  
 I ſchal haue yow here þat oþ<sup>o</sup> half als,  
 & fyþen karp wyth my knyȝt, þat I kaȝt haue ;  
 For I wene wel, I wyffe, f Wawen ȝe are,  
 þat alle þe worlde worchipeȝ, quere ſo ȝe ride ;  
 Yō<sup>o</sup> hono<sup>r</sup>, yō<sup>o</sup> hendelayk is hendely prayfed  
 W<sup>t</sup> lordeȝ, wyth ladyes, w<sup>t</sup> alle þat lyf bere.  
 & now ȝe ar here, I wyffe, & we bot oure one ;  
 My lorde & his ledeȝ ar on lenþe faren,  
 Oþ<sup>o</sup> burneȝ ī her bedde, & my burdeȝ als,  
 þe dor drawen, & dit w<sup>t</sup> a derf hafpe ;  
 & fyþen I haue ī þis ho<sup>o</sup> hȝ þat al lykeȝ,  
 I ſchal ware my whyle wel, quyl hit laſteȝ,      ¶ w<sup>t</sup> tale ;

1210

1215

1220

1225

1230

<sup>1</sup> This word is very doubtful in the MS.

ȝe ar welcū to my cors,  
 Yowre awen won to wale,  
 Me be-houeȝ of fyne force,  
 Yo<sup>a</sup> feruaūt be & ſchale.”

1240

## V.

“ In god fayth,” ȝ Gawayn, “ gaȝ hit me þynkkeȝ,  
 þaȝ I be not now he þat ȝe of ſpeken ;  
 To reche to ſuch reuerence as ȝe reherce here  
 I am wyȝe vn-worþy, I wot wel my ſeluen ;  
 Bi god, I were glad, & yow god þoȝt,  
 At faȝe oþ<sup>9</sup> at ſeruyce þat I fette myȝt  
 To þe pleſaūce of yo<sup>a</sup> prys, hit were a pure ioye.”

1245

“ In god fayth, & Gawayn,” ȝ þe gay lady,  
 “ þe prys & þe prowes þat pleſeȝ al oþ<sup>9</sup>,  
 If I hit lakked, oþ<sup>9</sup> fet at lyȝt, hit were littel daynte ;  
 Bot hit ar ladyes ī noȝe, þat leu<sup>9</sup> wer nowþe  
 Haf þe hende ī hor holde, as I þe habbe here,  
 To daly w<sup>t</sup> derely yo<sup>a</sup> daynte wordeȝ,  
 Keu<sup>9</sup> hem comfort, & colen her careȝ,  
 Þē much of þe garyſoū oþ<sup>9</sup> golde þat <sup>1</sup> þay hauen ;  
 Bot I louue <sup>2</sup> þat ilk lorde, þ<sup>t</sup> þe lyfte haldeȝ,  
 I haf hit holly ī my honde, þat al deſyres,      || þurȝe grace.”  
 Scho made hȝ fo gret chere,

1250

1255

[fol. 108.] þat watȝ fo fayr of face,  
 þe knyȝt w<sup>t</sup> ſpeches ſkere,  
 Afward <sup>3</sup> to vche a cace.

1260

<sup>1</sup> þat þ<sup>t</sup>, *MS.*<sup>2</sup> louie ?<sup>3</sup> anſward ?

## VI.

“ Madame,” ȝ þe myry mon, “ Mary yow ȝelde,  
 For I haf fouȝden, ī god fayth, yowre fraūchis nobele,  
 & oþʒ ful much of oþʒ folk fongen hor dedeȝ ; 1265  
 Bot þe daynte þʰ þay delen for my difert nyfen,  
 Hit is þe worchyp of yōʰ felf, þat noȝt bot wel cōneȝ.”  
 “ Bi Mary,” ȝ þe menfkful, “ me þynk hit anoþʒ ;  
 For were I worth al þe wone of wȝmen alyue,  
 & al þe wele of þe worlde were ī my honde, 1270  
 & I ſchulde chepen & choſe, to cheue me a lorde,  
 For þe coſtes þat I haf knowen vpon þe knyȝt here,  
 Of bewte, & debonerte, & blyþe femblaūt,  
 & þat I haf er herkkened, & halde hit here trwe <sup>1</sup>,  
 þʒ ſchulde no freke vpon folde bifore yow be choſen.” 1275  
 “ I wyſſe, worþy,” ȝ þe wyȝe, “ ȝe haf waled wel bettʒ,  
 Bot I am proude of þe prys þat ȝe put on me,  
 & ſoberly yōʰ ſeruaūt my ſouʒayn I holde yow,  
 & yowre knyȝt I be-com, & kryſt yow for-ȝelde.”  
 þʒ þay meled of much quat, til myd-morn paſte, 1280  
 & ay þe lady let lyk, a<sup>2</sup> hȝ loued mych ;  
 þe freke ferde wʰ defence, & feted ful fayre.  
 “ þaȝ I were burde bryȝteſt,” þe burde ī mynde hade,  
 “ þe laſſe luſ ī his lode, for lur þat he ſoȝt,     || boute hone ;  
 þe dunte þat ſchilde hȝ deue,  
 & nedeȝ hit moſt be done ; ”  
 þe lady þēn ſpek of leue,  
 He ȝnted hir ful ſone.

<sup>1</sup> trwee, *MS.*<sup>2</sup> and ?

## VII.

þēne ho gef hȝ god-day, & wyth a glent laȝed, 1290  
 & as ho ſtod, ho ſtonyed hȝ wyth ful ſtor wordeȝ,—  
 “ Now he þat ſpedeȝ vche ſpech, þis diſport ȝelde yow !  
 Bot þat ȝe be Gawan, hit gotȝ ī mȝde.”  
 “ Quer fore ? ” q þe freke, & freſchly he afkeȝ,  
 Ferde leſt he hade fayled ī fōme of his caſtes ; 1295  
 Bot þe burde hȝ bleſſed, & bi þis ſkyl ſayde,  
 [fol. 108<sup>b</sup>.] “ So god as Gawayn gaynly is halden,  
 & cortayſye is cloſed ſo clene ī hȝ ſeluen,  
 Couth not lyȝtly haf lenged ſo long wyth a lady,  
 Bot he had craued a coſſe, bi his cōtayſye, 1300  
 Bi fū towch of fūme tryfle, at fū taleȝ ende.”  
 þē q Wowen, “ I wyſſe, worþe as yow lykeȝ,  
 I ſchal kyſſe at yō<sup>a</sup> comaūdement, as a knyȝt falleȝ,  
 & fire<sup>1</sup> leſt he diſpleſe yow, fo<sup>a</sup> plede hit no more.”  
 Ho comes nerre w<sup>t</sup> þat, & cacheȝ hȝ ī armeȝ, 1305  
 Louteȝ luſflych adoū, & þe leude kyſſeȝ ;  
 þay comly bykēnen to kryſt ayþ<sup>o</sup> oþ<sup>o</sup> ;  
 Ho dos hir forth at þe dore, w<sup>t</sup> outhen dyn more.  
 & he ryches hȝ to ryſe, & rapes hȝ fone,  
 Clepes to his chamberlayn, choſes his wede, 1310  
 Boȝeȝ forth, quen he watȝ boū, blyþely to maſſe,  
 & þēne he meued to his mete, þ<sup>t</sup> mēſkly hy keped,  
 & made myry al day til þe mone ryfed, || w<sup>t</sup> game ;  
 W<sup>t</sup><sup>3</sup> neu<sup>o</sup> freke fayrer fonge, 1315  
 Bitwene two ſo dȝgne dame,  
 þe alder & þe ȝonge,  
 Much folace ſet þay ſame.

<sup>1</sup> fere ?<sup>2</sup> fo ?<sup>3</sup> Was ? Nas ?

## VIII.

And ay þe lorde of þe londe is lent on his gamnez,  
 To hūt ī holtez & heþe, at hyndeȝ barayne, 1320  
 Such a fowme he þʰ flowe bi þat þe fūne heldet,  
 Of dos & of oþʰ dere, to deme were wonder.  
 þēne ferfly þay flokked ī folk at þe laſte,  
 & quykly of þe quelled dere a querre þay maked ;  
 þe beſt boȝed þerto, wʰ burnez ī nogħ, 1325  
 Gedered þe gratteſt of gres þat þer were,  
 & didden hem derely vndo, as þe dede afkeȝ ;  
 Serched hem at þe aſay, fūme þat þʰ were,  
 Two fȳgeres þay fonde of þe fowleſt of alle ;  
 Syþē þay flyt þe flot, feſed þe erber, 1330  
 Schaued wyth a ſcharp knyf, & þe ſchyre knitten ;  
 Syþen rytte þay þe foure lȳmes, & rent of þe hyde,  
 þē brek þay þe bale, þe baleȝ out token,  
 [fol. 109.] Lyſtily forlancȳg, & bere of þe knot ;  
 þay gryped to þe gargulū, & ġʷely departed 1335  
 þe weſaūt fro þe wynt-hole, & walt out þe gutteȝ ;  
 þē ſcher þay out þe ſchuldereȝ wʰ her ſcharp knyueȝ,  
 Haled hem by a lyttel hole, to haue hole fydes ;  
 Siþen britned þay þe breſt, & brayden hit ī twȳne,  
 & eft at þe gargulū bigyneȝ on þēne, 1340  
 Ryueȝ hit vp radly, ryȝt to þe byȝt  
 Voydeȝ out þe a-vanters, & vʰayly þʰaftʰ  
 Alle þe rymeȝ by þe rybbeȝ radly þay lance ;  
 So ryde þay of by reſoū bi þe rygge boneȝ,  
 Euenden to þe haunche, þat hanged alle ſamen, 1345  
 & heuen hit vp al hole, & hwen hit of þere,  
 & þat þay neme for þe noūbles, bi nome as I trowe, || bi kynde ;

Bi þe byȝt al of þe þyȝes,  
 þe lappeȝ þay lance bi-hynde,  
 To hewe hit ī two þay hyȝes,  
 Bi þe bak-bon to vnbynde.

1350

## IX.

Boþe þe hede & þe hals þay hwen of þēne,  
 & fyþen funder þay þe fydeȝ fwyft fro þe chyne,  
 & þe corbeles fee þay keft ī a greue ;  
 Þēn þurled þay ayþer þik fide þurȝ, bi þe rybbe,  
 & hinged þēne aþ<sup>9</sup> bi hoȝes of þe fourcheȝ,  
 Vche freke for his fee, as falleȝ forto haue.  
 Vpon a felle of þe fayre beft fede þay þayr hoūdes,  
 Wyth þe lyu<sup>9</sup> & þe lyȝteȝ, þe leþer of þe pauncheȝ,  
 & bred baþed ī blod, blende þer amōgeȝ ;  
 Baldely þay blw prys, bayed þayr rachcheȝ,  
 Syþen fonge þay her fleſche folden to home,  
 Strakande ful ſtoutly mony ſtif moteȝ.  
 Bi þat þe daylyȝt watȝ done, þe douthe watȝ al wonen  
 ī to þe comly caſtel, þer þe knyȝt bideȝ,  
 Wyth blys & bryȝt fyr bette,  
 þe lord is comen þ<sup>9</sup> tulle,  
 When Gawayn wyth hȳ mette,  
 þer watȝ bot wele at wylle.

1355

1360

|| ful ftille ;

1370

## X.

[fol. 109<sup>b</sup>.] Thēne comaūded þe lorde ī þ<sup>t</sup> fale to ſamen allē þe meny,  
 Boþe þe ladyes on logh to lyȝt, w<sup>t</sup> her burdes,  
 Bi-fore alle þe folk on þe flette, frekeȝ he beddeȝ  
 V<sup>9</sup>ayly his venyfoū to fech hȳ byforne ;

1375

& al godly i gomen Gawayn<sup>1</sup> he called,  
 Techeȝ hȝ to þe tayles of ful tait beſtes,  
 Scheweȝ hȝ þe ſchyrrer grete ſchorne vpon rybbes.—  
 “How payeȝ yow þis play? haf I prys wōnen?  
 Haue I þryuandely þonk þurȝ my craft ſerued?” 1380  
 “ȝe, I wyſſe,” q̃ þat oþ<sup>2</sup> wyȝe, “here is wayth fayreſt  
 þat I feȝ þis ſeuēn ȝere, i ſefōū of wynt<sup>3</sup>.”  
 “& al I gif yow, Gawayn,” q̃ þe gome þēne,  
 “For by a-corde of couenaūt ȝe craue hit as yō<sup>4</sup> awen.”  
 “Þis is ſoth,” q̃ þe ſegge, “I fay yow þat ilke, 1385  
 & I haf worthyly<sup>2</sup> þis woneȝ wyth ine,  
 I wyſſe w<sup>t</sup> as god wylle hit worþeȝ to ȝo<sup>e</sup>eȝ.”  
 He haſppeȝ his fayre hals his armeȝ wyth ine,  
 & kyſſes hȝ as comlyly as he<sup>3</sup> couþe awyſe,—  
 “Tas yow þere my cheuicaūce, I cheued no more, 1390  
 I wowche hit faf fynly, þaȝ feler hit were.”  
 “Hit is god,” q̃ þe god mon, “g<sup>nt</sup> m<sup>o</sup>cy þ<sup>o</sup>fore,  
 Hit may be fuch, hit is þe bett<sup>o</sup>, & ȝe me breue wolde  
 Where ȝe wan þis ilk wele, bi wytte of hor<sup>4</sup> ſeluen?”  
 “Þat watȝ not forward,” q̃ he, “frayſt me no more, 1395  
 For ȝe haf tan þat yow tydeȝ, trawe ȝe non oþ<sup>2</sup>   || ȝe mowe.”  
 þay laȝed, & made hem blyþe,  
 Wyth loteȝ þat were to lowe,  
 To ſoper þay ȝede affwyþe, 1400  
 Wyth dayntes nwe i nowē.

## XI.

And fyþen by<sup>4</sup> e chymne i chamber þay feten,  
 Wyȝeȝ þe walle wyn weȝed to hem oft,

<sup>1</sup> Gaway, *MS.*<sup>2</sup> *A word seems here to be wanting.*<sup>3</sup> ho, *MS.*<sup>4</sup> your?

& efte ī her bourdȝg þay bayþen ī þe morn,  
 To fylle þe fame forwardez þat þay by-fore maden, 1405  
 þat chaūce fo by-tydez hol cheuyfaūce to chaūge,  
 What nweȝ fo þay nome, at naȝt quen þay mette.  
 þay acorded of þe couenaūtez byfore þe cōt alle ;  
 [fol. 110.] þe beuerage watȝ broȝt forth ī bourde at þat tyme ;  
 þēne þay louelych leȝten leue at þe laȝt, 1410  
 Vche burne to his bedde buȝked bylyue.  
 Bi þat þe coke hade croweȝ<sup>1</sup> & cakled bot þryȝe,  
 þe lorde watȝ lopen of his bedde, þe leudeȝ vch one,  
 So þat þe mete & þe maffe watȝ metely delyu<sup>2</sup>ed ;  
 þe douthe dresȝed to þe wod, er any day ſprenged, || to chace ;  
 Heȝ w<sup>t</sup> hūte & horneȝ,  
 þurȝ playneȝ þay paȝſe ī ſpace,  
 Vn-coupled amōg þo þorneȝ,  
 Racheȝ þat ran on race. 1420

## XII.

Sone þay calle of a queȝt ī aker fyde,  
 þe hūȝt re-hayȝted þe hoūdeȝ, þat hit fyrȝt mȝged,  
 Wylde wordeȝ hȝ warp wyth a wraȝt noyce ;  
 þe howndeȝ þat hit herde, haȝtid þider ſwyȝe,  
 & fellen as faȝt to þe fuyt, fourty at ones ; 1425  
 þēne ſuch a glau<sup>3</sup>ande glam of gedered rachcheȝ  
 Ros, þat þe rochereȝ rūgen aboute ;  
 Hūtereȝ hem hardened w<sup>t</sup> horne & wyth muthe.  
 þē al ī a ſemble ſweȝed to-geder,  
 Bitwene a floȝche ī þat fryth, & a foo cragge ; 1430  
 In a knot, bi a clyȝfe, at þe kerre fyde,

<sup>1</sup> crowed ?



þ<sup>9</sup> as þe rogh rocher vn-rydely watȝ fallen,  
 þay ferden to þe fyndȝg, & frekeȝ hem aft<sup>9</sup> ;  
 þay vmbe-keften þe knarre & þe knot boþe,  
 Wyȝeȝ, whyl þay wyften wel wyt ine hē hit were, 1435  
 þe beft þat þer breued watȝ wyth þe blod-hoūdeȝ.  
 þēne þay beten on þe buſkeȝ, & bede hȝ vp ryfe,  
 & he vnſoūdyly out ſoȝt, ſeggeȝ ou<sup>9</sup> þwert,  
 On þe ſellokeft fwyn ſwenged out þere,  
 Long fythen for þe ſoūder þat wiȝt for olde, 1440  
 For he watȝ b . . . & bor alþer gratteft,  
<sup>1</sup> . . . . . ere quen he gronyed, þēne greued mony,  
 For . . . . . t þe fyrft þraſt he þryȝt to þe erþe,  
 & ſped . . . forth good ſped, boute ſpyt more,  
 And þay halowed hyȝh ful hyȝe, & hay ! hay ! cryed, 1445  
 [fol. 110b.] Haden hornȝ to mouþe heterly rechated ;  
 Mony watȝ þe myry mouthe of men & of hoūdeȝ,  
 þat buſkkeȝ aft<sup>9</sup> þis bor, w<sup>t</sup> boft & wyth noyfe, || to quelle ;  
 Ful oft he bydeȝ þe baye, 1450  
 & maymeȝ þe mute in melle,  
 He hurteȝ of þe hoūdeȝ, & þay  
 Ful ȝomerly ȝaule & ȝelle.

## XIII.

Schalkeȝ to ſchote at hȝ ſchowen to þēne,  
 Haled to hym of her areweȝ, hitten hym oft ; 1455  
 Bot þe poȝteȝ payred at þe pyth þ<sup>t</sup> pyȝt ī his ſcheldeȝ,  
 & þe barbeȝ of his browe bite non wolde,  
 þaȝ þe ſchauen ſchaft ſchyndered ī peceȝ,  
 þe hede hypped aȝayn, were ſo eu<sup>9</sup> hit hitte ;

<sup>1</sup> The MS. is here in several lines illegible.

Bot quen þe dynteȝ hȝ dered of her dryȝe arweȝ, 1460  
 Þen brayn-wod for bate on burneȝ he raſeȝ,  
 Hurteȝ hem ful heterly þer he forth hyȝeȝ,  
 & mony arȝed þerat, & on lyte droȝen.  
 Bot þe lorde on a lyȝt horce laūces hym aft<sup>o</sup>,  
 As burne bolde vpon bent his bugle he bloweȝ, 1465  
 He rechated, & r . . .<sup>1</sup> þurȝ roueȝ ful þyk,  
 Suande þis wylde fwyn, til þe fūne ſchafted.  
 Þis day wyth þis ilk dede þay dryuen on þis wyfe,  
 Whyle oure luſflych lede lys ī his bedde,  
 Gawayn, gȝypely at home, ī gereȝ ful ryche. || of hewe ;  
 þe lady noȝt forȝate,  
 Com to hȝ to ſalue,  
 Ful erly ho watȝ hȝ ate,  
 His mode forto remwe. 1475

## XIV.

Ho cōmes to þe cortyn, & at þe knyȝt totes,  
 & Wawen her welcūed worþy on fyrſt,  
 & ho hȝ ȝeldeȝ aȝayn, ful ȝerne of hir wordeȝ,  
 Setteȝ hir ſoſly by his fyde, & ſwyþely ho laȝeȝ,  
 & wyth a luſflych loke ho ſayde hȝ þeſe wordeȝ : 1480  
 “ƒ, ȝif ȝe be Wawen, wonder me þynkkeȝ,  
 Wyȝe þat is ſo wel wraft alway to god,  
 & conneȝ not of compaynye þe coſteȝ vnder-take,  
 [fol. 111.] & if mon kēnes yow hom to knowe, ȝe keſt hom of yō mȝde ;  
 þ<sup>u</sup> hatȝ for-ȝeten ȝederly þat ȝiſt<sup>o</sup>day I taȝtte 1485  
 Bi alder trueſt token of talk þat I cowþe.”  
 “What is þat ? ” q þe wyȝh, “ I wyſſe I wot neu<sup>o</sup>,

<sup>1</sup> rydes ? rode ?

If hit be sothe þat ȝe breue, þe blame is mȝ awen."  
 "ȝet I kende yow of kyffȝg," q þe clere þēne,  
 " Quere so couēnaūce is couþe, quikly to clayme, 1490  
 þat bicūes vche a knyȝt, þat cortayfy vſes."  
 " Do way," q þat derf mon, " my dere, þat ſpeche,  
 For þat durft I not do, leſt I denayed were,  
 If I were werned, I were wrang I wyffe, ȝif I pfered."  
 " Ma fay," q þe mere wyf, " ȝe may not be werned, 1495  
 ȝe ar ſtif ī nogh to conſtrayne wyth ſtrenkþe, ȝif yow lykeȝ,  
 ȝif any were ſo vilano<sup>9</sup> þat yow denaye<sup>1</sup> wolde."  
 " ȝe, be god," q Gawayn, " good is yo<sup>o</sup> ſpeche,  
 Bot þrete is vn-þryuande ī þede þ<sup>9</sup> I lende,  
 & vche gift þat is gyuen not w<sup>t</sup> goud wylle ; 1500  
 I am at yo<sup>o</sup> comaundemēt, to kyffe quen yow lykeȝ,  
 ȝe may lach quen yow lyft, & leue quen yow þynkkeȝ, || in ſpace."  
 þe lady louteȝ a-doū,  
 & comlyly kyffes his face, 1505  
 Much ſpeche þay þ<sup>9</sup> expoū,  
 Of druryes greme & g<sup>ce</sup>.

## XV.

" I woled wyt at yow, wyȝe," þat worþy þer fayde,  
 " & yow wrathed not þer wyth, what were þe ſkylle,  
 þat ſo ȝong & ſo ȝepe, as ȝe at þis tyme, 1510  
 So cortayfe, ſo knyȝtyly, as ȝe ar knowen oute,  
 & of alle cheualry to choſe, þe cheſ þȝg a-loſed,  
 Is<sup>2</sup> þe lellayk of luſ, þe lettrure of armes ;  
 For to telle of þis tenelȝg of þis trwe knyȝteȝ,  
 Hit is þe tytelet, token, & tyxt of her werkkeȝ, 1515

<sup>1</sup> de vaye, *MS*.<sup>2</sup> In ?

How le . . . <sup>1</sup> for her lele luf hor lyueȝ han aūtered,  
 Endured for her drury dulful ſtoūdeȝ,  
 & aft<sup>9</sup> wenged w<sup>t</sup> her walō<sup>a</sup>, & voyded her care,  
 & broȝt blyſſe ī to boure, w<sup>t</sup> boūtees hor awen.  
 & ȝe ar knyȝt comlokeſt kyd of yō<sup>a</sup> elde, 1520  
 [fol. 111<sup>b</sup>.] Yō<sup>a</sup> worde & yō<sup>a</sup> worchip walkeȝ ay quere,  
 & I haf ſeten by yō<sup>a</sup> ſelf here fere twyes,  
 ȝet herde I neu<sup>9</sup> of yō<sup>a</sup> hed helde no wordeȝ  
 ꝑat eu<sup>9</sup> longed to luf, laſſe ne more ;  
 & ȝe, ꝑat ar ſo cortays, & coȳt of yō<sup>a</sup> hetes, 1525  
 Ogħ to a ȝonke þȳk ȝern to ſchewe,  
 & teche fū tokeneȝ of trweluf craftes.  
 Why ar ȝe lewed, ꝑat alle þe los weldeȝ,  
 Op<sup>9</sup>elles ȝe demen me to dille, yō<sup>a</sup> dalyaūce to herken? || for ſchame !  
 I com hider ſengel, & fitte,  
 To lerne at yow fū game,  
 Dos techeȝ me of yō<sup>a</sup> wytte,  
 Whil my lorde is fro hame.”

## XVI.

“ In goud fayþe,” q̃ Gawayn, “ god yow for-ȝelde, 1535  
 Gret is þe gode gle, & gomen to me huge,  
 ꝑat ſo worþȳ as ȝe wolde wȳne hidere,  
 & pyne yow w<sup>t</sup> ſo pou<sup>9</sup> a mon, as play wyth yō<sup>a</sup> knyȝt,  
 With any ſkȳneȝ coūtenaūce, hit keu<sup>9</sup>eȝ me eſe ;  
 Bot to take þe tornayle to my ſelf, to trwluf typōū, 1540  
 & towche þe temes of tyxt, & taleȝ of armeȝ,  
 To yow, ꝑat I wot, wel werdeȝ more flyȝt  
 Of ꝑat art, bi þe half, or a hūdreth of ſeche

<sup>1</sup> ledes ?

As I am, oþ<sup>9</sup> eu<sup>9</sup> ſchal, ī erde þer I leue,  
 Hit were a fole fele folde, my fre, by my trawþe. 1545  
 I wolde yowre wylnȝg worche at my myȝt,  
 As I am hyȝly bihalden, & eu<sup>9</sup> more wylle  
 Be feruaūt to yo<sup>a</sup> feluen, fo faue me dryȝtyn ! ”  
 þ<sup>9</sup> hȝ frayned þat fre, & fondet hȝ ofte,  
 Forto haf wōnen hȝ to woȝe, what fo ſcho þoȝt elleȝ, 1550  
 Bot he defended hȝ fo fayr, þat no faut ſemed,  
 Ne non euel on nawþ<sup>9</sup> halue, nawþ<sup>9</sup> þay wyſten, || bot blyffe ;  
 þay laȝed & layked longe,  
 At þe laſt ſcho con hȝ kyffe, 1555  
 Hir leue fayre con ſcho fonge,  
 & went hir waye I wyffe.

## XVII.

Then ruþes hȝ þe renk, & ryſes to þe maſſe,  
 [fol. 112.] & fiþen hor din<sup>9</sup> watȝ dyȝt, & derely ſerued.  
 þe lede w<sup>t</sup> þe ladyeȝ layked alle day, 1560  
 Bot þe lorde ou<sup>9</sup> þe londeȝ laūced ful ofte,  
 Sweȝ his vncely fwyn, þat fwȝgeȝ bi þe bonkkeȝ,  
 & bote þe beſt of his bracheȝ þe bakkeȝ ī fūder ;  
 þer he bode ī his bay, tel<sup>1</sup> bawe men hit breken,  
 & maden <sup>2</sup> hym, maw-gref his hed, forto mwe vtt<sup>9</sup>, 1565  
 So felle floneȝ þer flete, when þe folk gedered ;  
 Bot ȝet þe ſtyffest to ſtart bi ſtoūdeȝ he made,  
 Til at þe laſt he watȝ fo mat, he myȝt no more rēne,  
 Bot ī þe haſt þat he myȝt, he to a hole wȝneȝ,  
 Of a raſſe, bi a rokk, þ<sup>9</sup> rēneȝ þe borne ; 1570  
 He gete þe bonk at his bak, bigȝeȝ to ſcrape,

<sup>1</sup> til ?<sup>2</sup> madee, *MS.*

þe froþe femed <sup>1</sup> at his mouth, vnfayre bi þe wykeȝ,  
 Whetteȝ his whyte tufcheȝ ; w<sup>t</sup> hȝ þē irked  
 Alle þe burneȝ ſo bolde, þat hȝ by ſtoden,  
 To nye hȝ on ferum, bot neȝe hȝ non durſt,      || for woþe ;  
 He hade hurt ſo mony byforne,  
 þat al þoȝt þēne ful loþe,  
 Be more wyth his tufcheȝ torne,  
 þat breme watȝ braȝ-wod both,

1580

## XVIII.

Til þe knyȝt com hȝ ſelf, kachande his blonk,  
 Syȝ hȝ byde at þe bay, his burneȝ byfyde,  
 He lyȝt<sup>e</sup> luſlych adoū, leueȝ his corſo<sup>o</sup>,  
 Braydeȝ out a bryȝt bront, & bigly forth ſtrydeȝ,  
 Foudeȝ faſt þurȝ þe forth, þer þe felle bydeȝ.      1585  
 þe wylde watȝ war of þe wyȝe w<sup>t</sup> weppen ī honde,  
 Heſ hyȝly þe here, ſo hett<sup>o</sup>ly he ſnaſt,  
 þat fele ferde for þe frekeȝ <sup>2</sup>, leſt felle hȝ þe worre ;  
 þe ſwyn ſetteȝ hȝ out on þe ſegge euen,  
 þat þe burne & þe bor were boþe vpon hepeȝ,      1590  
 In þe wyȝcreſt <sup>3</sup> of þe wat<sup>o</sup>, þe worre had þat oþ<sup>o</sup> ;  
 For þe mon merkkeȝ hȝ wel, as þay mette fyrſt,  
 Set ſadly þe ſcharp ī þe flot euen,  
 Hit hȝ vp to þe hult, þat þe hert ſchyndered,  
 & he ȝarrande hȝ ȝelde, & ȝedoū <sup>4</sup> þe wat<sup>o</sup>,      || ful tyt ;  
 [fol. 112<sup>b</sup>.] A hūdreth hoūdeȝ hȝ hent,  
 þat bremely con hȝ bite,  
 Burneȝ hī broȝt to bent,  
 & doggeȝ to dethe endite.

1600

<sup>1</sup> fomed ?<sup>2</sup> freke ?<sup>3</sup> *This word is doubtful in the MS.*<sup>4</sup> ȝede doun ?

## XIX.

There watȝ blawȝg of prys ī mony breme horne,  
 Heȝe halowīg on hiȝe, w<sup>t</sup> haȝeleȝ þat myȝt ;  
 Brachetes bayed þat beſt, as bidden þe mayſt<sup>re</sup>ȝ,  
 Of þat chargeaūt chace þat were chef hūtes.  
 Þēne a wyȝe þat watȝ wys vpon wod-crafteȝ, 1605  
 To vnlace þis bor luſſy bigȝneȝ ;  
 Fyrſt he hewes of his hed, & on hiȝe ſetteȝ,  
 & fyȝen rendeȝ him al rogħ bi þe rygge after,  
 Braydeȝ out þe boweles, brēneȝ hō on glede,  
 With bred blent þer w<sup>t</sup> his braches rewardeȝ ; 1610  
 Syȝen he britneȝ out þe brawen, ī bryȝt brode cheldeȝ,  
 & hatȝ out þe haſtletteȝ, as hiȝtly biſemeȝ ;  
 & ȝet hem halcheȝ al hole þe halueȝ to-geder,  
 & fyȝen on a ſtiſ ſtange ſtoutly hem henges.  
 Now with þis ilk ſwyn þay ſwengen to home ; 1615  
 Þe bores hed watȝ borne biſore þe burnes ſeluen,  
 þat hī for-ferde ī þe forþe, þurȝ forſe of his honde,      ¶ ſo ſtronge ;  
 Til he ſey ƒ Gawayne,  
 Ī halle hȝ þoȝt ful longe, , 1620  
 He calde, & he com gayn,  
 His feeȝ þ<sup>o</sup> for to fonge.

## XX.

Þe lorde ful lowde w<sup>t</sup> lote, & laȝed myry, ,  
 Whē he ſeȝe ƒ G : w<sup>t</sup> ſolace he ſpereȝ ;  
 Þe goude ladyeȝ were geten, & gedered þe meyny, 1625  
 He ſcheweȝ hem þe ſcheldeȝ, & ſchapes hem þe tale,

Of þe largeſſe, & þe lenþe, þe hy<sup>9</sup>neȝ<sup>1</sup> alſe,  
 Of þe were of þe wylde ſwyn, ī wod þer he fled.  
 Þat oþ<sup>9</sup> knyȝt ful comly comended his dedeȝ,  
 & prayfed hit as gret prys, þat he proued hade ; 1630  
 For ſuche a brawne of a beſt, þe bolde burne ſayde,  
 Ne ſuch fydes of a ſwyn, ſegh he neu<sup>9</sup> are.  
 þēne hondeled þay þe hoge hed, þe hende mō hit prayfed,  
 [fol. 113.] & let lodly þerat þe lorde forto here ;—  
 “ Now Gawayn,” q þe god mon, “ þis gomen is yō<sup>o</sup> awen, 1635  
 Bi fyn forwarde & faſte, faythely ȝe knowe.”  
 “ Hit is fothe,” q þe ſegge, “ & as fiker trwe ;  
 Alle my get I ſchal yow gif agayn, bi my trawþe.”  
 He <sup>a</sup> þe haþel aboute þe halfe, & hendely hȝ kyſſes,  
 & eft<sup>9</sup> ſones of þe ſame he ſerued hȝ þere. 1640  
 “ Now ar we euen,” q þe haþel, “ ī þis euen-tide,  
 Of alle þe couenaūtes þat we knyȝt, fyþen I com hider, || bi lawe ;”  
 Þe lorde ſayde, “ bi ſaynt Gile,  
 ȝe ar þe beſt þat I knowe, 1645  
 ȝe ben ryche ī a whyle,  
 Such chaffer & ȝe drowe.”

## XXI.

þēne þay teldet tableȝ, treſtes<sup>a</sup> aloſte,  
 Keſten cloþeȝ vpon clere lyȝt þēne,  
 Wakned bi woȝeȝ waxen torches, 1650  
 Seggeȝ fette, & ſerued ī fale al aboute ;  
 Much glam & gle glent vp þ<sup>9</sup> ine,  
 Aboute þe fyre vpon flet, & on fele wyfe,  
 At þe ſoper & aft<sup>9</sup>, mony aþel ſongeȝ,

<sup>1</sup> hyneȝ?    <sup>a</sup> A word is here deficient, perhaps hent or haſped. Cf. l. 1388.    <sup>3</sup> on treſtes?



As couȝdutes of kryȝt-maffe, & caroleȝ newe, 1655  
 With alle þe man<sup>o</sup>ly m<sup>o</sup>þe þ<sup>t</sup> mon may of telle.  
 & eu<sup>o</sup> oure luflych knyȝt þe lady bi-fyde ;  
 Such femblaūt to þat fegge femly ho made,  
 Wyth stille stollen couȝtenaūce, þat ſtalworth to pleſe, .  
 þat al for-wondered watȝ þe wyȝe, & wroth w<sup>t</sup> hȳ ſeluen, 1660  
 Bot he nolde not for his nurture nurne hir a-ȝayneȝ,  
 Bot dalt w<sup>t</sup> hir al ī daynte, how ſe eu<sup>o</sup> þe dede turned,   || to wraſt ;  
 Quen þay hade played ī halle,  
 As lange as hor wylle hom laſt, 1665  
 To chambre he con hȳ calle,  
 & to þe chemne þay paſt.

## XXII.

Ande þer þay dronken, & dalten, & demed eft nwe,  
 To norne on þe ſame note, on nweȝereȝ euen ;  
 Bot þe knyȝt craued leue to kayre on þe morn, 1670  
 For hit watȝ neȝ at þe terme, þat he to ſchulde.  
 [fol. 113<sup>b</sup>.] þe lorde hȳ letted of þat, to lenge hȳ reſteyed,  
 & fayde, “as I am trwe fegge, I ſwer my trawþe,  
 þ<sup>u</sup> ſchal cheue to þe grene chapel, þy charres to make,  
 Leude, on nwȝereȝ lyȝt, longe bifore pryme ; 1675  
 For þy þow lye ī þy loſt, & lach þyn eſe,  
 & I ſchal hūt in þis holt, & halde þe towcheȝ,  
 Chaūge wyth þe cheuiſaūce, bi þat I charre hider ;  
 For I haf frayſted þe twys, & faythful I fynde þe,  
 Now þrid tyme þrowe beſt þenk on þe morne, 1680  
 Make we mery quyl we may, & mȳne vpon joye,  
 For þe lur may mon lach, when ſo mon lykeȝ.”  
 Þis watȝ grayþely graūted, & Gawayn is lenged,  
 Bliþe broȝt watȝ hym drynk, & þay to bedde ȝeden,   || w<sup>t</sup> liȝt ;

f G: lis & flepes,  
 Ful stille & softe al niȝt;  
 þe lorde þat his craftes kepes,  
 Ful erly he watȝ diȝt.

## XXIII.

Aft<sup>9</sup> meffe a morfel he & his men token, 1690  
 Miry watȝ þe mornȳg, his moūture he afkes;  
 Alle þe haþeles þat on hōrfe ſchulde helden hȳ aft<sup>9</sup>,  
 Were boū bufked on hor blonkkeȝ, bi-fore<sup>1</sup> þe halle ȝateȝ;  
 Ferly fayre watȝ þe folde, for þe forst clenged,  
 Ī rede rudede vpon rak rifes þe fūne, 1695  
 & ful clere coſteȝ þe clowdes of þe welkyn.  
 Hūteres vnhardeled bi a holt fyde,  
 Rocheres roūgen bi rys, for rurde of her hornes;  
 Sūme fel ī þe fute, þer þe fox bade,  
 Trayleȝ ofte a trayt<sup>9</sup>es, bi traūt of her wyles; 1700  
 A kenet kryes þerof, þe hūt on hȳ calles,  
 His ſelaȝes fallen hȳ to, þ<sup>t</sup> fnafted ful þike,  
 Rūnen forth ī a rabel, ī his ryȝt fare;  
 & he fyfkeȝ hem by-fore, þay founden hȳ ſone,  
 & quen þay ſegh hȳ w<sup>t</sup> fyȝt, þay ſued hȳ faſt, 1705  
 Wreȝande hȳ ful weterly with a wroth nōyfe;  
 & he trantes & tornayeeȝ þurȝ mony tene greue,  
 Hamloūeȝ, & herkeneȝ, bi heggeȝ ful ofte;  
 [fol. 114.] At þe laſt bi a littel dich he lepeȝ ou<sup>9</sup> a ſpēne,  
 Steleȝ out ful ſtilly, bi a ſtrothe raude, 1710  
 Went haf wylt of þe wode, w<sup>t</sup> wyleȝ fro þe hoūdes.  
 þēne watȝ he went, er he wyft, to<sup>2</sup> a wale tryft<sup>9</sup>, || al graye;  
 þer þre þro at a þrich þrat hȳ at ones,

<sup>1</sup> bi-forere, *MS.*<sup>2</sup> to to, *MS.*

He blenched aȝayn bilyue,  
 & stify ſtart on ſtray,  
 With alle þe wo on lyue,  
 To þe wod he went away.

1715

## XXIV.

Thēne watȝ hit lif vpon liſt to lyþen þe hoūdeȝ,  
 When alle þe mute hade hȳ met, menged to-geder,  
 Suche a forȝe at þat fyȝt þay ſette on his hede,  
 As alle þe clamberande clyffes hade clat<sup>ed</sup> on hepes ;  
 Here he watȝ halawed, when haþeleȝ hȳ metten,  
 Loude he watȝ ȝayned, w<sup>t</sup> ȝarande ſpeche ;  
 Þer he watȝ þreted, & ofte þeſ called,  
 & ay þe titleres at his tayl, þat tary he ne myȝt ;  
 Ofte hē watȝ rūnen at, when he out rayked,  
 & ofte reled ī aȝayn, ſo reniarde watȝ wyle.  
 & ȝe he lad hem bi lagmon, þe lorde & his meyny ;  
 On þis man<sup>o</sup> bi þe moūtes, quyle myd, ou<sup>o</sup>, vnder,  
 Whyle þe hende knyȝt at home halfūly flepes,  
 With īne þe comly cortȳes, on þe colde morne.  
 Bot þe lady for luſ let not to flepe,  
 Ne þe purpoſe to payre, þat pyȝt ī hir hert,  
 Bot ros hir vp radly, rayked hir þeder,  
 In a mery mantyle, mete to þe erþe,  
 Þat watȝ furred ful fyne w<sup>t</sup> felleȝ wel pured,  
 No hweȝ goud on hir hede, bot þe haȝer ſtones  
 Traſed aboute hir treffo<sup>a</sup>, be twenty ī cluſt<sup>es</sup> ;  
 Hir þryuen face & hir þrote þrowen al naked,  
 Hir breſt bare bifore, & bihinde eke.  
 Ho comeȝ w<sup>t</sup> īne þe chambre dore, & cloſes hit hir aft<sup>o</sup>,

1720

1725

1730

1735

1740

Waynez vp 'a wyndow, & on þe wyȝe calleȝ,  
 & radly þ<sup>o</sup> rehayted hȝ, w<sup>t</sup> hir riche wordes,      ¶ w<sup>t</sup> <sup>1</sup> chere ; 1745  
 " A ! mon, how may þ<sup>u</sup> flepe,  
 [fol. 114<sup>b</sup>.] Þis mornȝ is ſo clere ? "  
 He watȝ ī drowpȝ depe,  
 Bot þēne he con hir here.

## XXV.

In dreȝ droupȝg of dreme draueled þat noble, 1750  
 As mon þat watȝ in mornȝg of mony þro þoȝtes,  
 How þat deſtine ſchulde þat day his wyrde,  
 At þe grene chapel, when he þe gome metes,  
 & bi-houes his buffet abide, with oute debate more ;  
 Bot quen þat comly he keu<sup>o</sup>ed his wyttes, 1755  
 Swenges out of þe ſweuenes, & ſwareȝ w<sup>t</sup> haft.  
 Þe lady luſflych cum laȝande ſwete,  
 Felle ou<sup>o</sup> his fayre face, & fetly hȝ kyffed ;  
 He welcūȝ hir worȝily, with a wale chere ;  
 He feȝ hir ſo glorio<sup>o</sup>, & gayly atyred, 1760  
 So fautles of hir fetures, & of ſo fyne hewes,  
 Wiȝt wallande joye warmed his hert ;  
 W<sup>t</sup> ſmoȝe ſmylȝg & ſmolt þay ſmeten ī to m<sup>e</sup>þe,  
 þat al watȝ blis & bonchef, þat breke hem bi-twene,      ¶ & wȝne ;  
 þay lanced wordes gode,  
 Much wele þē watȝ þ<sup>o</sup> īne,  
 Gret pile bi-twene hem ſtod,  
 Nif mare of hir knyȝt mȝne.

<sup>1</sup> bi, à *sec. manu.*

## XXVI.

For þat prynce of pris deprefed hȳ fo þikke, 1770  
 Nurned hȳ fo neȝe þe þred, þat nede hȳ bi-houed,  
 Oþ<sup>9</sup> lach þer hir luf, oþ<sup>9</sup> lodly refufe ;  
 He cared for his cortayſye, leſt craþayn he were,  
 & more for his meſchef, ȝif he ſchulde make fȳne,  
 & be traytor to þat tolke, þat þ<sup>t</sup> telde aȝt. 1775  
 “ God ſchylde,” q þe ſchalk, “ þat ſchal not be-falle ! ”  
 W<sup>t</sup> luf-laȝȳg a lyt, he layd hȳ by fyde  
 Alle þe ſpecheȝ of ſpecialte þat ſprange of her mouthe.  
 q þat burde to þe burne, “ blame ȝe differue,  
 ȝif ȝe luf not þat lyf þat ȝe lye nexte, 1780  
 Bifore alle þe wyȝes ī þe worlde, wouȝded ī hert,  
 Bot if ȝe haf a lēman, a leu<sup>9</sup>, þat yow lykeȝ bett<sup>9</sup>,  
 & folden fayth to þat fre, feſtned ſo harde,  
 [fol. 115.] þat yow lauſen ne lyft, & þat I leue nouþe ;  
 And þat ȝe telle me þat, now trwly I pray yow,  
 For alle þe luſeȝ vpon lyue, layne not þe ſoþe, || for gile.”  
 þe knyȝt fayde, “ be fayn Jon,”  
 & ſmeþely con he ſmyle,  
 “ In fayth I welde riȝt non, 1790  
 Ne non wil welde þe quile.”

## XXVII.

“ þat is a worde,” q þat wyȝt, “ þat worft is of alle,  
 Bot I am ſwared for ſoþe, þat fore me þinkkeȝ ;  
 Kyffe me now comly, & I ſchal cach heȝen,  
 I may bot mo<sup>n</sup>e vpon molde, as may þat much louyes.” 1795  
 Sykande ho fweȝe doū, & ſemly hȳ kyffed,

& siþen ho seuʒes hȝ fro, & fays as ho ftondes,  
 “ Now, dere, at þis departȝg, do me þis ese,  
 Gif me sumquat of þy gifte, þi gloue of<sup>1</sup> hit were,  
 þat I may mȝne on þe mon, my moʒnȝ to laffen.” 1800  
 “ Now I wyffe,” q̃ þat wyȝe, “ I wolde I hade here  
 þe leuest þiȝ for þy luf, þat I in londe welde,  
 For ȝe haf deferued, forsoþe, fellyly ofte  
 More rewarde bi resoũ, þē I reche myȝt,  
 Bot to dele yow for drurye, þ<sup>t</sup> dawed bot naked ; 1805  
 Hit is not yō honoʒ to haf at þis tyme  
 A gloue for a garyfoũ, of Gawayneȝ gifteȝ,  
 & I am here an erande ī erdeȝ vncouþe,  
 & haue no mē wyth no maleȝ, w<sup>t</sup> menfkful þiȝeȝ ;  
 þat mislykeȝ me, lade, for luf at þis tyme<sup>2</sup>,  
 Iche tolke mon do as he is tan, tas to non elle, || ne pine.”  
 “ Nay, hende of hyȝe honoʒs,”  
 q̃ þat luffũ vnder lyne,  
 “ þaȝ I hade oȝt of yōeȝ, 1815  
 ȝet schulde ȝe haue of myne.”

## XXVIII.

Ho razȝt hȝ a riche rynk of red golde werkeȝ,  
 Wyth a fstarande fton, ftondande alofte,  
 þat bere bluffchande bemeȝ as þe bryȝt fũne ;  
 Wyt ȝe wel, hit watȝ worth wele ful hoge. 1820  
 Bot þe renk hit renayed, & redyly he fayde,  
 [fol. 115<sup>b</sup>.] “ I wil no gifteȝ for gode, my gay, at þis tyme ;  
 I haf none yow to norne, ne noȝt wyl I take.”  
 Ho bede hit hȝ ful byfily, & he hir bode wernes,

<sup>1</sup> if ?<sup>2</sup> tyne, *MS.*

& fwere fwyftely <sup>1</sup> his fothe, þat he hit fefe nolde ; 1825  
 & ho fore þat he forfoke, & fayde þ<sup>o</sup> after,  
 “ If ȝe renay my rynk, to ryche for hit femeȝ,  
 ȝe wolde not fo hyȝly halden be to me,  
 I ſchal gif yow my girdel, þat gaynes yow laffe.”  
 Ho laȝt a lace lyȝtly, þat leke vmbe hir fyde, 1830  
 Knit vpon hir kyrtel, vnder þe clere mantyle,  
 Gered hit watȝ w<sup>t</sup> grene fylke, & w<sup>t</sup> golde ſchaped,  
 Noȝt bot aroūde brayden, beten w<sup>t</sup> fynGREȝ ;  
 & þat ho bede to þe burne, & blyþely bi-foȝt  
 Þaȝ hit vn-worþi were, þat he hit take wolde. 1835  
 & he nay þat he nolde negh ī no wyfe,  
 Nauþer golde ne garyfoū, er god hȳ g<sup>o</sup>ce fende,  
 To acheue to þe chaūce þat he hade choſen þere.  
 “ & þerfore, I pray yow, diſpleſe yow noȝt,  
 & letteȝ be yō biſineſſe, for I bayþe hit yow neu<sup>o</sup>, || to graūte ;  
 I am derely to yow biholde,  
 Bi cauſe of yō ſembelaūt,  
 & eu<sup>o</sup> ī hot & colde  
 To be yō trwe ſeruaūt.” 1845

## XXIX.

“ Now forfake ȝe þis filke,” ſayde þe burde þēne,  
 “ For hit is fymple ī hit ſelf, & ſo hit wel femeȝ,  
 Lo ! ſo hit is littel, & laſſe hit is worþy ;  
 Bot who ſo knew þe coſtes þat knit ar þer īne,  
 He wolde hit prayſe at more prys, parauenture ; 1850  
 For quat gome ſo is gorde w<sup>t</sup> þis grene lace,  
 While he hit hade hemely halched aboute,

<sup>1</sup> fwyftel, *MS.*

þer is no haþel vnder heuen to-hewe hȝ þat myȝt ;  
 For he myȝt not be flayn, for fliȝt vpon erþe.”  
 þē keſt þe knyȝt, & hit come to his hert, 1855  
 Hit were a juel for þe joparde, þat hȝ iugged were,  
 When he acheued to þe chapel, his chek forto fech ;  
 Myȝ<sup>1</sup> he haf flypped to be vn-flayn, þe fleȝt were noble.  
 [fol. 116.] þēne he þulged with hir þrepe, & þoled hir to ſpeke,  
 & ho bere on hȝ þe belt, & bede hit hȝ ſwyþe, 1860  
 & he g<sup>nted</sup>, & hȝ gafe with a goud wylle,  
 & bi-foȝt hym, for hir ſake, diſceu<sup>9</sup> hit neu<sup>9</sup>,  
 Bot to lelly layne, for hir lorde ; þe leude hȝ acordeȝ,  
 þat neu<sup>9</sup> wyȝe ſchulde hit wyt, I wyſſe, bot þay twayne, || for noȝte ;  
 He þonkked hir oft ful ſwyþe,  
 Ful þro w<sup>t</sup> hert & þoȝt,  
 Bi þat on þrȝne fyþe,  
 Ho hatȝ kyft þe knyȝt ſo toȝt.

## XXX.

Thēne lachcheȝ ho hir leue, & leueȝ hȝ þere, 1870  
 For more myrþe of þat mon moȝt ho not gete ;  
 When ho<sup>2</sup> watȝ gon, & G. gereȝ hȝ ſone,  
 Riſes, & riches hȝ ī araye noble,  
 Lays vp þe luſ-lace, þe lady hȝ raȝt,  
 Hid hit ful holdely, þ<sup>9</sup> he hit eft fonde ; 1875  
 Syþē cheuely to þe chapel choſes he þe waye,  
 Preuely aproched to a preſt, & prayed hȝ þere  
 þat he wolde lyfte<sup>3</sup> his lyf, & lern hȝ bett<sup>9</sup>,  
 How his ſawle ſchulde be ſaued, when he ſchuld ſeye heþē.  
 þere he ſchrof hȝ ſchyrlȝ, & ſchewed his myſdedeȝ, 1880

<sup>1</sup> myȝt?<sup>2</sup> he, *MS.*<sup>3</sup> lyfte?



Of þe more & þe mȳne, & m<sup>o</sup>ci befecheȝ,  
 & of abfolucioū he on þe fegge calles ;  
 & he afoyled hȳ furely, & fette hȳ fo clene,  
 As ðomeȝ-day ſchulde haf ben diȝt on þe morn.  
 & fyþen he mace hȳ as mery amōȝ þe fre ladyes, 1885  
 W<sup>t</sup> comlych caroles, & alle kȳnes ioie,  
 As neu<sup>o</sup> he did bot þat daye, to þe derk nyȝt, || w<sup>t</sup> blys ;  
 Vche mon hade daynte þare,  
 Of hȳ, & fayde I wyffe, 1890  
 þ<sup>o</sup> myry he watȝ neu<sup>o</sup> are,  
 Syn he com hider, er þis.

## XXXI.

Now hȳ lenge ī þat lee, þ<sup>o</sup> luf hȳ bi-tyde ;  
 ȝet is þe lorde on þe laūde, ledande his gomnes,  
 He hatȝ forfaren þis fox, þ<sup>t</sup> he folȝed longe ; 1895  
 As he ſprent ou<sup>o</sup> a ſpēne, to ſpye þe ſchrewe,  
 [fol. 116<sup>b</sup>.] þer as he herd þe howndes, þat haſted hȳ ſwyþe,  
 Renaud com richchande þurȝ a roȝe greue,  
 & alle þe rabel ī a res, ryȝt at his heleȝ.  
 Þe wyȝe watȝ war of þe wylde, & warly abides, 1900  
 & braydeȝ out þe bryȝt bronde, & at þe beſt caſteȝ ;  
 & he ſchūt for þe ſcharp, & ſchulde haf arered,  
 A rach rapes hȳ to, ryȝt er he myȝt,  
 & ryȝt bifore þe hors fete þay fel on hȳ alle,  
 & worried me þis wyly wyth a wroth noyfe. 1905  
 þe lorde lyȝteȝ bi-lyue, & cacheȝ by <sup>1</sup> ſone,  
 Raſed hȳ ful radly out of þe rach mouþes,  
 Haldeȝ heȝe ou<sup>o</sup> his hede, haloweȝ faſte,

& þ<sup>o</sup> bayen hȳ mony bray hoūdeȝ ;  
 Hūtes hyȝen hem þeder, w<sup>t</sup> horneȝ ful mony, 1910  
 Ay rechatande aryȝt, til þay þe renk feȝen ;  
 Bi þat watȝ comen his compeyny noble,  
 Alle þat eu<sup>o</sup> ber bugle blowed at ones,  
 & alle þife oþ<sup>o</sup> halowed, þat hade no hornes,  
 Hit watȝ þe myrieȝt mute þat eu<sup>o</sup> mē herde,  
 þe rich rurd þat þ<sup>o</sup> watȝ rayfed for renaude faule, || w<sup>t</sup> lote ;  
 Hor hoūdeȝ þay þ<sup>o</sup> rewarde,  
 Her <sup>1</sup> hedeȝ þay fawne & frote,  
 & fyþen þay tan reynarde, 1920  
 & turnen of his cote.

## XXXII.

& þēne þay helden to home, for hit watȝ nieȝ nyȝt,  
 Strakande ful ftoutly ī hor ſtore horneȝ ;  
 þe lorde is lyȝt at þe laſte at hys lef home,  
 Fyndeȝ fire vpon flet, þe freke þ<sup>o</sup> by-fide, 1925  
 Sir Gawayn þe gode, þat glad watȝ w<sup>t</sup> alle,  
 Amōȝ þe ladies for luf he ladde much ioȝe.  
 He were a bleaūt of blwe, þat bradde to þe erþe,  
 His furkot ſemed hȳ wel, þat ſofte watȝ forred,  
 & his hode of þat ilke hanged on his ſchulder, 1930  
 Blande al of blaūner were boþe al aboute.  
 He meteȝ me þis god man ī myddeȝ þe flore,  
 & al with gomen he hȳ gret, & goudly he ſayde,  
 “ I ſchal fylle vpon fyrſt oure forwardeȝ nouþe,  
 [fol. 117.] þat we ſpedly han ſpoken, þer ſpared watȝ no drynk ; ” 1935  
 þen acoles he [þe] knyȝt, & kyſſes hȳ þryes,

<sup>1</sup> her her, *MS.*

As ſauerly & ſadly as he hem ſette couþe.

“ Bi kryſt,” ȝ þat oþʳ knyȝt, “ ȝe cach much ſele,  
 I cheuiſaũce of þis chaffer, ȝif ȝe hade goud chepeȝ.”

“ ȝe of þe chepe no charg,” ȝ cheſtly þat oþʳ,

1940

“ As is pertly payed þe chepeȝ þat I aȝte.”

“ Mary,” ȝ þat oþʳ mon, “ myn is bi-hynde,  
 For I haf hũted al þis day, & noȝt haf I geten,

Bot þis foule fox felle, þe fende haf þe godeȝ,

& þat is ful pore, for to pay for fuche prys þȝges,      || fo gode.”

As ȝe haf þryȝt me here, þro fuche þre coſſes,

“ Inoȝ,” ȝ f Gawayn,

“ I þonk yow, bi þe rode ; ”—

& how þe fox watȝ flayn,

1950

He tolde hȳ, as þay ſtode.

### XXXIII.

With mʳþe & mynſtralſye, wyth meteȝ at hor wylle,

þay maden as mery as any mē moȝten,

Wt laȝȝ of ladies, wt loteȝ of bordeȝ ;

Gawayn & þe gode mō ſo glad were þay boþe,

1955

Bot if þe douthe had doted, oþʳ dronken ben oþʳ,

Boþe þe mon & þe meyny maden mony iapeȝ,

Til þe ſeſoũ watȝ ſeȝen, þat þay ſeuʳ moſte ;

Burneȝ to hor bedde be-houed at þe laſte.

þēne loȝly his leue at þe lorde fyrſt

1960

Fechcheȝ þis fre mon, & fayre he hȳ þonkkeȝ,—

“ Of fuch a fellyly <sup>1</sup> ſoiorne, as I haf hade here,

Yō honō, at þis hyȝe feſt, þe hyȝe kȳg yow ȝelde !

I ȝef yow me for on of yōeȝ, if yowre ſelf lykeȝ,

<sup>1</sup> felly ?

For I mot nedes, as ȝe wot, meue to morne ; 1965  
 & ȝe me take fū tolke, to teche, as ȝe hyȝt,  
 Þe gate to þe grene chapel, as god wyl me suffer  
 To dele, on nwȝereȝ day, þe dome of my wyrdes."  
 " In god fayþe," q þe god mon, " wyth a goud wylle ;  
 Al þat eu<sup>9</sup> I yow hyȝt, halde ſchal I rede." 1970  
 Þer afȝignes he a ſeruaūt, to ſett hȝ ī þe waye,  
 [fol. 117<sup>b</sup>.] & cōūdue hȝ by þe downeȝ, þat he no drechch had, ¶ bi greue.  
 For to ferk<sup>1</sup> þurȝ þe fryth, & fare at þe gayneſt,  
 þe lorde Gawayn con þonk, 1975  
 Such worchip he wolde hȝ weue ;  
 Þē at þo ladyeȝ wlonk,  
 þe knyȝt hatȝ tan his leue.

## XXXIV.

With care & wyth kyffȝg he carppeȝ hem tille,  
 & fele þryuande þonkkeȝ he þrat hom to haue, 1980  
 & þay ȝelden hȝ aȝayn<sup>2</sup> ȝeþly þat ilk ;  
 þay bikende hȝ to kryft, w<sup>t</sup> ful colde fykyȝeȝ.  
 Syþen fro þe meyny he menfkly departes ;  
 Vche mon þat he mette, he made hem a þonke,  
 For his ſeruyfe, & his ſolace, & his fere pyne, 1985  
 þat þay wyth buſynes had ben, aboute hȝ to ſerue ;  
 & vche ſegge as fore, to ſeu<sup>9</sup> w<sup>t</sup> hy þere,  
 As þay hade wonde worþyly w<sup>t</sup> þat wlonk eu<sup>9</sup>.  
 Þē w<sup>t</sup> ledes & lyȝt he watȝ ladde to his chambre,  
 & blyþely broȝt to his bedde, to be at his reſt ; 1990  
 ȝif he ne flepe ſōūdyly, ſay ne dar I,  
 For he hade mucche on þe morn to mȝne, ȝif he wolde, ¶ in þoȝt ;

<sup>1</sup> frk, *MS*.<sup>2</sup> aȝay, *MS*.

Let hȝ lyȝe þere stille,  
 He hatȝ nere þat he ȝoȝt,  
 & ȝe wyl a whyle be ſtylle,  
 I ſchal telle yow how þay wroȝt.

1995

## [FYTTE THE FOURTH.]

## I.

**N**ow neȝeȝ þe nwȝere, & þe nyȝt paſſeȝ,  
 þe day dryueȝ to þe derk, as dryȝtyn biddeȝ ;  
 Bot wylde wedereȝ of þe worlde wakned þeroute,  
 Clowdes keſten kenly þe colde to þe erþe,  
 Wyth nyȝe in nogh of þe norþe, þe naked to tene ;  
 þe ſnawe ſnitered ful ſnart, þat ſnayped þe wylde ;  
 þe werbelande wynde wapped fro þe hyȝe,  
 & drof vche dale ful of dryfȝes ful grete.  
 þe leude lyſtened ful wel, þat leȝ ī his bedde,  
 þaȝ he lowkeȝ his liddeȝ, ful lyttel he ſlepes ;  
 Bi vch kok þat crue, he knwe wel þe ſteuen <sup>1</sup>.

2000

2005

[fol. 118.] Deliu<sup>9</sup>ly he dreſſed vp, er þe day ſprenged,  
 For þere watȝ lyȝt of a laupe<sup>2</sup>, þat lemed ī his chambre ;  
 He called to his chamberlayn, þat coſly hȝ ſwared,  
 & bede hȝ brȝg hȝ his bruny, & his blonk ſadel ;  
 þat oþ<sup>9</sup> ferkeȝ hȝ vp, & fecheȝ hȝ his wedeȝ,  
 & grayþeȝ me f Gawayn vpon a grett wyſe.  
 Fyrſt he clad hȝ ī his cloþeȝ, þe colde forto were ;

2010

2015

<sup>1</sup> *This word is doubtful in the MS. ,*<sup>2</sup> *laumpe ?*

& fyȝen his oȝ<sup>9</sup> harnays, þat holdely watȝ kēped,  
 Boȝe his paūce, & his plateȝ, piked ful clene,  
 þe rȳgeȝ rokked of þe rouft, of his riche bruny ;  
 & al watȝ frefch as vpon fyrst, & he watȝ fayn þēne, || to þonk ;  
 He hade vpon vche pece,  
 Wypped ful wel & wlonk ;  
 þe gayeft ī to Grece,  
 þe burne bede brȳg his blonk.

## II.

Whyle þe wlonkeft wedes he warp on hȳ feluen ;  
 His cote, wyth þe conyfaūce of þe clere werkeȝ,  
 Ennurned vpon veluet v<sup>9</sup>tuu<sup>9</sup> ſtoneȝ,  
 Aboute beten, & boūden, enbrauded femeȝ,  
 & fayre furred w<sup>t</sup> īne wyth fayre pelures.  
 ȝet laft he not þe lace, þe ladieȝ gifte,  
 þat for-gat not Gawayn, for gode of hȳ feluen ;  
 Bi he hade belted þe bronde vpon his balȝe haūcheȝ,  
 þeñ dreffed he his drurye double hȳ aboute ;  
 Swyȝe fwepled vmbe his fwange fwetely, þat knyȝt,  
 þe gordel of þe grene filke, þat gay wel bi-femed,  
 Vpon þat ryol red cloȝe, þat ryche watȝ to ſchewe.  
 Bot wered not þis ilk wyȝe for wele þis gordel,  
 For pryde of þe pendaūteȝ, þaȝ polyft þay were,  
 & þaȝ þe glyt<sup>9</sup>ande golde glent vpon endeȝ,  
 Bot forto ſauē hȳ ſelf, when fuffer hȳ by-houed,  
 To byde bale w<sup>t</sup> oute dabate, of bronde hȳ to were, || oȝ<sup>9</sup> knyffe ;  
 Bi þat þe bolde mon boū,  
 Wȳneȝ þeroute bilyue,  
 Alle þe meyny of renoū,  
 He þonkkeȝ ofte ful ryue.

## III.

[fol. 118<sup>b</sup>.] Thēne watȝ Gryngolet grayȝe, þat gret watȝ & huge,  
 & hade ben foio<sup>n</sup>ed fau<sup>o</sup>ly, & ī a fiker wyfe,  
 Hȝ lyft prik for poȝt, þat proude hors þēne ;  
 þe wyȝe wȝneȝ hȝ to, & wyteȝ on his lyre, 2050  
 & fayde ſoberly hȝ felf, & by his ſoth fwereȝ,  
 “ Here is a meyny ī þis mote, þat on menſke þenkkeȝ,—  
 þe mon hem mayntemes, ioȝ mot þay hāue ;  
 þe leue lady, on lyue luſ her bityde ;  
 ȝif þay for charyte cheryſen a geſt, 2055  
 & halden hono<sup>r</sup> ī her honde, þe haȝel hē ȝelde,  
 þat haldeȝ þe heuen vpon hyȝe, & al ſo yow alle !  
 & ȝif I myȝt lyf vpon londe lede any quyle,  
 I ſchuld rech yow fū rewarde redyly, if I myȝt.”  
 þeñ ſteppeȝ he ī to ſtirop, & ſtrydeȝ alofte ; 2060  
 His ſchalk ſchewed hȝ his ſchelde, on ſchulder he hit laȝt,  
 Gordeȝ to Gryngolet, w<sup>t</sup> his gilt heleȝ,  
 & he ſtarteȝ on þe ſton, ſtod he no lenger,      || to praūce ;  
 His haȝel on hors watȝ þēne, 2065  
 þat bere his ſpere & laūce,—  
 “ þis kaſtel to kryſt I kēne,  
 He geſ hit ay god chaūce !”

## IV.

The brygge watȝ brayde doū, & þe brode ȝateȝ  
 Vn-barred, & born open, vpon boȝe halue ; 2070  
 þe burne bleſſed hȝ bilyue, & þe bredeȝ paſſed ;  
 Prayſes þe porter, bifore þe prynce kneled,  
 Gef hym god & goud day, þat Gawayn he ſaue ;

& went on his way, w<sup>t</sup> his wyȝe one,  
 þat ſchulde teche hȝ to to<sup>n</sup>e to þat tene place, 2075  
 þer þe ruful race he ſchulde refayue.  
 þay boȝen bi bonkkeȝ, þ<sup>o</sup> boȝeȝ ar bare,  
 þay clomben bi clyffeȝ, þer clengeȝ þe colde ;  
 þe heuen watȝ vp halt, bot vgly þer vnder,  
 Miȝt mugged on þe mor, malt on þe mouȝeȝ, 2080  
 Vch hille had a hatte, a myȝt-hakel huge ;  
 Brokeȝ byled, & breke, bi bonkkeȝ aboute,  
 Schyre ſchaſ<sup>o</sup>ande on ſchoreȝ, þ<sup>o</sup> þay doū ſchowned.  
 [fol. 119.] Welawylle watȝ þe way, þer þay bi wod ſchulden, ॥ þat tyde ;  
 Til hit watȝ fone feſoū, þat þe ſūne ryȝes,  
 þay were on a hille ful hyȝe,  
 þe quyte fnaw lay biȝyde ;  
 þe burne þat rod hȝ by,  
 Bede his mayȝter abide. 2090

## V.

“ For I haf wōnen yow hider, wyȝe, at þis tyme,  
 & now nar ȝe not fer fro þat note place,  
 þat ȝe han ſpied & ſpurȝed ſo ſpecially aȝ<sup>o</sup> ;  
 Bot I ſchal ſay yow for ſoþe, ſyþen I yow knowe,  
 & ȝe ar a lede vpon lyue, þat I wel louy, 2095  
 Wolde ȝe worch bi my wytte, ȝe worȝed þe bett<sup>o</sup>.  
 þe place þat ȝe prece to, ful perelo<sup>o</sup> is halden ;  
 þer woneȝ a wyȝe ī pat waȝte, þe worȝt vpon erþe ;  
 For he is ſtiffe, & ſturne, & to ſtrike louies,  
 & more he is þē any mon vpon myddelerde, 2100  
 & his body bigger þē þe beȝt fowre,  
 þat ar ī Arþureȝ ho<sup>o</sup>, heȝtor<sup>1</sup>, oþ<sup>o</sup> oþ<sup>o</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Hector ?



He cheuez þat chaūce at þe chapel grene;  
 Þer passēs non bi þat place, so proude ī his armes,  
 þat he ne dȳnez hȳ to deþe, w<sup>t</sup> dynt of his honde; 2105  
 For he is a mon methles, & mercy non vfes,  
 For be hit chorle, oþ<sup>9</sup> chaplayn, þat bi þe chapel rydes,  
 Monk, oþ<sup>9</sup> maffe-prest, oþ<sup>9</sup> any mon elles,  
 Hȳ þynk as queme hȳ to quelle, as quyk go hȳ seluen.  
 For þy I say þe as soþe as ȝe ī fadel fitte, 2110  
 Com ȝe þere, ȝe be kylded, may þe knyȝt rede,  
 Trawe ȝe me þat trwely, þaȝ ȝe had twenty lyues || to fpende;  
 He hatȝ wonyd here ful ȝore,  
 On bent much baret bende, 2115  
 Aȝayn his dynteȝ fore,  
 ȝe may not yow defende.”

## VI.

“ For þy, goude f Gawayn, let þe gome one,  
 & gotȝ a-way fū oþ<sup>9</sup> gate, vpon goddeȝ halue,  
 Cayrez bi fū oþ<sup>9</sup> kyth, þer kryft mot yow fpede; 2120  
 [fol. 119<sup>b</sup>.] & I fchal hyȝ me hom aȝayn, & hete yow fyrre,  
 þat I fchal fwere bi god, & alle his gode halȝez,  
 As help me god & þe halydam, & oþez ī noghȝ,  
 þat I fchal lelly yow layne, & lance neu<sup>9</sup> tale,  
 þat eu<sup>9</sup> ȝe fondet to fle, for freke þat I wyft.” 2125  
 “ G<sup>ant</sup> m<sup>9</sup>ci,” q Gawayn, & gruchȳg he fayde,  
 “ Wel worth þe wyȝe, þat woldeȝ my gode,  
 & þat lelly me layne, I leue wel þ<sup>u</sup> woldeȝ!  
 Bot helde þ<sup>u</sup> hit neu<sup>9</sup> so holde, & I here passēd,  
 Fouēd for ferde for to fle, ī fō<sup>me</sup> þat þ<sup>u</sup> telleȝ, 2130  
 I were a knyȝt kowarde, I myȝt not<sup>1</sup> be excused.

<sup>1</sup> mot, *MS*.

Bot I wyl to þe chapel, for chaūce þat may falle,  
 & talk wyth þat ilk tulk þe tale þat me lyfte,  
 Worþe hit wele, oþ<sup>9</sup> wo, as þe wyrde lykez,      || hit hafe ;  
 Þaȝe he be a ſturn knape,  
 To ſtiȝtel, & <sup>1</sup> ſtad w<sup>t</sup> ſtaue,  
 Ful wel con dryȝtyn ſchape,  
 His ſeruaūteȝ forto ſaue.”

## VII.

“ Mary !” q þat oþ<sup>9</sup> mon, “ now þ<sup>u</sup> ſo much ſpelleȝ,      2140  
 þat þ<sup>u</sup> wylt þyn awen nye nyme to þy ſeluen,  
 & þe lyft leſe þy lyf, þe lette I ne kepe ;  
 Haf here þi helme on þy hede, þi ſpere ī þi honde,  
 & ryde me doū þis ilk rake, bi ȝon rokke ſyde,  
 Til þ<sup>u</sup> be broȝt to þe boȝem of þe brem valay ;      2145  
 Þēne loke a littyl on þe laūde, on þi lyfte honde,  
 & þ<sup>u</sup> ſchal ſe ī þat flade þe ſelf chapel,  
 & þe borelych burne on bent, þat hit kepeȝ.  
 Now fareȝ wel on godeȝ half, Gawayn þe noble,  
 For alle þe golde vpon groūde I nolde go wyth þe,      2150  
 Ne bere þe ſelaȝſchip þurȝ þis fryth on fote fyrre.”  
 Bi þat þe wyȝe ī þe wod wendeȝ his brydel,  
 Hit þe hors w<sup>t</sup> þe heleȝ, as harde as he myȝt,      || al one ;—  
 Lepeȝ hȳ ou<sup>9</sup> þe laūde, & leueȝ þe knyȝt þere,  
 “ Bi goddeȝ ſelf,” q Gawayn,  
 “ I wyl nauȝ<sup>9</sup> grete ne grone,  
 To goddeȝ wylle I am ful bayn,  
 & to hȳ I haf me tone.”

<sup>1</sup> & &, *MS.*

## VIII.

[fol. 120.] Thēne gyrdez he to Gryngolet, & gedereȝ þe rake, 2160  
 Schowueȝ ī bi a ſchore, at a ſchaze fyde,  
 Rideȝ þurȝ þe roȝe bonk, ryȝt to þe dale ;  
 & þēne he wayted hȝ aboute, & wylde hit hȝ þoȝt,  
 & feȝe no fȝgne of reſette, bi-fydeȝ nowhere,  
 Bot hyȝe bonkkeȝ & brent, vpon boȝe halue, 2165  
 & ruȝe knokled knarreȝ, w<sup>t</sup> knorned ſtoneȝ ;  
 þe ſkweȝ of þe ſcowtes ſkayned hȝ þoȝt.  
 þēne he houed, & wyth-hylde his hors at þat tyde,  
 & ofte chaūged his cher, þe chapel to ſeche ;  
 He feȝ non fuche ī no fyde, & ſelly hym þoȝt, 2170  
 Sone a lyttel on a laūde, a lawe as hit were <sup>1</sup> ;  
 A balȝ berȝ, bi a bonke, þe brȝme by-fyde,  
 Bi a forȝ of a flode, þ<sup>t</sup> ferked þare ;  
 þe borne blubred þer īne, as hit boyled hade.  
 þe knyȝt kacheȝ his caple, & com to þe lawe, 2175  
 Liȝteȝ doū luſflyly, & at a lynde tacheȝ  
 þe rayne, & his riche, with a roȝe braūche ;  
 þēne he boȝeȝ to þe berȝe, aboute hit he walkeȝ,  
 Debetande w<sup>t</sup> hȝ ſelf, quat hit be myȝt.  
 Hit hade a hole on þe ende, & on ayȝer fyde, 2180  
 & ou<sup>2</sup>-growen w<sup>t</sup> greſſe ī glodes ay where,  
 & al watȝ holȝ ī w<sup>t</sup>, no bot an old caue,  
 Or a creuiſſe of an olde cragge, he couȝe hit noȝt deme, || w<sup>t</sup> ſpelle,  
 “ We, lorde,” q̃ þe gentyle knyȝt, 2185  
 “ Wheȝer þis be þe grene chapelle ;  
 He myȝt aboute myd-nyȝt,  
 þe dele his matȝnes telle !”

<sup>1</sup> we, *MS.*

## IX.

“ Now I wyffe,” q Wowayn, “ wyfty is here ;  
 þis oritore is vgly, w<sup>t</sup> erbeȝ ou<sup>9</sup> growen ; 2190  
 Wel biſemeȝ þe wyȝe wruxled ī grene  
 Dele here his deuocioū, on þe deueleȝ wyfe ;  
 Now I fele hit is þe fende, ī my fyue wytteȝ,  
 þat hatȝ ſtoken me þis ſteuen, to ſtrye me here ;  
 þis is a chapel of meſchaūce, þat chekke hit by-tyde, 2195  
 Hit is þe craſedeſt kyrk, þat eu<sup>9</sup> I com īne !”  
 [fol. 120<sup>b</sup>.] With heȝe helme on his hede, his laūce ī his honde,  
 He romeȝ vp to þe rokke of þo roȝ woneȝ ;  
 þene herde he of þat hyȝe hil, ī a harde roche,  
 Biȝonde þe broke, ī a bonk, a wonder breme noyfe, 2200  
 Quat hit clat<sup>9</sup>ed ī þe clyff, as hit cleue ſchulde,  
 As one vpon a gryndelfton hade groūden a fyþe ;  
 What hit wharred, & whette, as wat<sup>9</sup> at a mulne,  
 What hit ruſched, & ronge, rawþe to here.  
 þēne “ bi godde,” q Gawayn, “ þat gere, at <sup>1</sup> I trowe,      ¶ bi rote ;  
 Is ryched at þe reu<sup>9</sup>ence, me renk to mete,  
 Let god worche we loo,  
 Hit helpeȝ me not a mote,  
 My lif þaȝ I for-goo, 2210  
 Drede dotȝ me no lote.”

## X.

Thēne þe knyȝt con calle ful hyȝe,  
 “ Who ſtiȝtleȝ ī þis ſted, me ſteuen to holde ?

<sup>1</sup> as ?

For now is gode Gawayn goande ryȝt here,  
 If any wyȝe oȝt wyl wȳne hider faȝt, 2215  
 Oȝ<sup>9</sup> now, oȝ<sup>9</sup> neu<sup>9</sup>, his nedeȝ to ſpede.”  
 “Abyde,” q̃ on on þe bonke, abouen ou<sup>9</sup> his hede,  
 “& þ<sup>u</sup> ſchal haf al ī haȝt, þat I þe hyȝt ones.”  
 ȝet he ruſched on þat rurde, rapely a þrowe,  
 & wyth quettȳg a wharf, er he wolde lyȝt ; 2220  
 & fyþen he keu<sup>9</sup>eȝ bi a cragge, & comeȝ of a hole,  
 Whyrlande out of a wro, wyth a felle weppen,  
 A deneȝ ax nwe dyȝt, þe dynt w<sup>t</sup> o<sup>1</sup> ȝelde  
 W<sup>t</sup> a borelych bytte, bende by þe halme,  
 Fyled ī a fylor, fowre fote large, 2225  
 Hit watȝ no laffe, bi þat lace þat lemed ful bryȝt.  
 & þe gome ī þe grene gered as fyrſt,  
 Boþe þe lyre & þe leggeȝ, lokkeȝ, & berde,  
 Saue þat fayre on his fote he foudeȝ on þe erþe,  
 Sette þe ſtele to the ſtone, & ſtalked byfyde. 2230  
 When he wan to þe watter, þer he wade nolde,  
 He hypped ou<sup>9</sup> on hys ax, & orpedly ſtrydeȝ,  
 Bremly broþe on a bent, þat brode watȝ a-boute, || on ſnawe.  
 [fol. 121.] f̃ Gawayn þe knyȝt con mete, 2235  
 He ne lutte hȳ no þȳg lowe,  
 þat oȝ<sup>9</sup> ſayde, “now, f̃ ſwete,  
 Of ſteuen mon may þe trowe.”

## XI

“Gawayn,” q̃ þat grene gome, “god þe mot lōke !  
 I wyffe þ<sup>u</sup> art welcom<sup>2</sup>, wyȝe, to my place, 2240  
 & þ<sup>u</sup> hatȝ tymed þi trauayl as t<sup>u</sup>e<sup>3</sup> mon ſchulde ;

<sup>1</sup> to?<sup>2</sup> welcon, *MS.*<sup>3</sup> t<sup>u</sup>ee, *MS.*











& þ<sup>u</sup> knoweȝ þe couenaūteȝ keft v<sup>o</sup> by-twene,  
 At þis tyme twelmonyth þ<sup>u</sup> toke þ<sup>t</sup> þe falled,  
 & I ſchulde at þis nwe ȝere ȝeþly þe quyte.  
 & we ar ī þis valay, v<sup>o</sup>ayly oure one, 2245  
 Here ar no renkes vs to rydde, rele as v<sup>o</sup> likeȝ ;  
 Haf þy þy helme of þy hede, & haf here þy pay ;  
 Buſk no more debate þē I þe bede þēne,  
 When þ<sup>u</sup> wypped of my hede at a wap one."  
 "Nay, bi god," ȝ Gawayn, " þ<sup>t</sup> me goſt lante, 2250  
 I ſchal grūch þe no grwe, for grem þat falleȝ ;  
 Bot ſtytzel þe vpon on ſtrok, & I ſchal ſtonde ſtylle,  
 & warp þe no wernȝg, to worch as þe lykeȝ, || no whare."  
 He lened w<sup>t</sup> þe nek, & lutte, 2255  
 & ſchewed þat ſchyre al bare,  
 & lette as he noȝt dutte,  
 For drede he wolde not dare.

## XII.

Thē þe gome ī þe grene grayþed hȝ ſwyþe,  
 Gedereȝ vp hys grȝme tole, Gawayn to ſmyte ; 2260  
 W<sup>t</sup> alle þe bur ī his body he ber hit on lofte,  
 Mūt as maȝtyly, as marre hȝ he wolde ;  
 Hade hit dryuen adoū, as dreȝ as he atled,  
 þer hade ben ded of his dynt, þat doȝty watȝ eu<sup>o</sup>.  
 Bot Gawayn on þat giſerne glyfte hȝ byfyde, 2265  
 As hit com glydande adoū, on glode hȝ to ſchende,  
 & ſchranke a lytel w<sup>t</sup> þe ſchulderes, for þe ſcharp yrne.  
 þat oþ<sup>o</sup> ſchalk wyth a ſchūt þe ſchene wyth-haldeȝ,  
 & þēne repreued he þe prynce w<sup>t</sup> mony prowde wordeȝ :—  
 " þ<sup>u</sup> art not Gawayn," ȝ þe gome, " þ<sup>t</sup> is fo goud halden, 2270  
 þat neu<sup>o</sup> arȝed for no here, by hylle ne be vale,

[fol. 121<sup>b</sup>.] & now þ<sup>u</sup> fles for ferde, er þ<sup>u</sup> fele harmez ;  
 Such cowardise of þat knyȝt cowþe I neu<sup>9</sup> here.  
 Nawþ<sup>9</sup> fyked I, ne flaȝe, freke, quen þ<sup>u</sup> myntest,  
 Ne keſt no kaulacoū, in kȳgez ho<sup>9</sup> Arthor, 2275  
 My hede flaȝ to my fote, & ȝet flaȝ I neu<sup>9</sup> ;  
 & þ<sup>u</sup>, er any harme hent, arȝez ī hert,  
 Wherefore þe better burne me burde be called,      || þ<sup>9</sup> fore.”  
 “ q̄ G:”, “ I ſchūt oneȝ, 2280  
 & ſo wyl I no more,  
 Bot þaȝ my hede falle on þe ſtoneȝ,  
 I con not hit reſtore.

## XIII.

Bot buſk, burne, bi þi fayth, & brȳg me to þe poȳt,  
 Dele to me my deſtine, & do hit out of honde, 2285  
 For I ſchal ſtonde þe a ſtok, & ſtart no more,  
 Til þȳ ax haue me hitte, haf here my trawþe.”  
 “ Haf at þe þēne,” q̄ þ<sup>t</sup> oþ<sup>9</sup>, & heueȝ hit aloſte,  
 & wayteȝ as wroþely, as he wode were ;  
 He mynteȝ at hȳ maȝtyly, bot not þe mon ryueȝ, 2290  
 With-helde het<sup>9</sup>ly his <sup>1</sup> honde, er hit hurt myȝt.  
 Gawayn grayþely hit bydeȝ, & glent w<sup>t</sup> no membre,  
 Bot ſtode ſtylle as þe ſton, oþ<sup>9</sup> a ſtubbe auþer,  
 þat raþeled is ī roche groūde, w<sup>t</sup> roteȝ a hundreth.  
 þē muryly eſte con he mele, þe mon ī þe grene, 2295  
 “ So now þ<sup>u</sup> hatȝ þi hert holle, hitte me bihoues <sup>2</sup> ;  
 Halde þe now þe hyȝe hode, þat Arþur þe raȝt,  
 & kepe þy kanel at þis keſt, ȝif hit keu<sup>9</sup> may.”  
 G: ful gryndelly w<sup>t</sup> greme þēne ſayde,

<sup>1</sup> hȝ, *MS*.<sup>2</sup> bihous, *MS*.

“ Wy þrefch on, þ<sup>u</sup> þro mon, þ<sup>u</sup> þreteȝ to longe, 2300  
 I hope þat þi hert arȝe wyth þyn awen feluen.”  
 “ For foþe,” ȝ þat oþ<sup>9</sup> freke, “ fo felly þ<sup>u</sup> fpekeȝ, || riȝt nowe.”  
 I wyl no leng<sup>9</sup> on lyte lette þin ernde,  
 þēne tas he <sup>1</sup> hȝ ftryþe to ftryke, 2305  
 & froūfes boþe lyppe & browe,  
 No meruayle þaȝ hȝ myflyke,  
 þat hoped of no refcowe.

## XIV.

He lyftes lyȝtly his lome, & let hit doū fayre,  
 [fol. 122.] W<sup>t</sup> þe barbe of þe bitte bi þe bare nek; 2310  
 þaȝ he homered het<sup>9</sup>ly, hurt hȝ no more,  
 Bot fnyrt hȝ on þat on fyde, þat feū<sup>9</sup>ed þe hyde;  
 þe fcharp fchrank to þe flefche þurȝ þe fchyre grece,  
 þat þe fchene blod ou<sup>9</sup> his fchulderes fchot to þe erþe.  
 & quen þe burne feȝ þe blode blenk on þe fnawe, 2315  
 He fprit forth fpēne fote more þē a fpere lenþe,  
 Hent het<sup>9</sup>ly his helme, & on his hed caſt,  
 Schot w<sup>t</sup> his fchuldereȝ his fayre fchelde vnder,  
 Braydeȝ out a bryȝt fworde, & bremely he fpekeȝ;  
 Neu<sup>9</sup> fyn þat he watȝ burne borne of his moder, 2320  
 Watȝ he neu<sup>9</sup> ī þis worlde, wyȝe half fo blyþe :—  
 “ Blȝne, burne, of þy bur, bede me no mo;  
 I haf a ſtroke ī þis ſted w<sup>t</sup> oute ftryf hent,  
 & if þow recheȝ me any mo, I redyly fchal quyte, || & foo;  
 & ȝelde ȝederly aȝayn, & þ<sup>9</sup> to ȝe tryft,  
 Bot on ſtroke here me falleȝ,  
 þe couenaūt fchap ryȝt foo,

<sup>1</sup> he he, *MS.*

. . . . .<sup>1</sup> ī Arþureȝ halleȝ,  
& þer fore, hende, now hoo!"

2330

## XV.

The haþel heldet hȝ fro, & on his ax refted,  
Sette þe ſchaft vpon ſchore, & to þe ſcharp lened,  
& loked to þe leude, þat on þe launde ȝede,  
How þat doȝty dredles dernely þer ſtondeȝ,  
Armed ful aȝleȝ; ī hert hit hȝ lykeȝ.

2335

þēn he meleȝ muryly, wyth a much ſteuen,  
& wyth a rykande rurde he to þe renk fayde,  
" Bolde burne, on þis bent be not ſo gryndel;  
No mon here vn-man<sup>ly</sup> þe mys-boden habbe,  
Ne kyd, bot as couenaūde, at kȝgeȝ kort ſchaped;  
I hyȝt þe a ſtok, & þ<sup>u</sup> hit hatȝ, halde þe wel payed,  
I relece þe of þe remnaūt, of ryȝtes alle oþ<sup>er</sup>;  
ȝif<sup>2</sup> I deliuer had bene, a boffet, paraūt<sup>3</sup>,  
I couþe wroþeloker haf, waret, to þe haf wroȝt ang<sup>er</sup><sup>3</sup>.

2340

Fyrft I manſed þe muryly, w<sup>t</sup> a mynt one,

2345

[fol. 122<sup>b</sup>.] & roue þe wyth no rof, fore w<sup>t</sup> ryȝt I þe pfered,

For þe forwarde þat we feſt ī þe fyrft nyȝt,  
& þ<sup>u</sup> tryfityly þe trawþe & trwly me haldeȝ,  
Al þe gayne þow me gef, as god mon ſchulde;  
þat oþ<sup>er</sup> mūt for þe morne, mon, I þe profered,

þ<sup>u</sup> kyffedes my clere wyf, þe coffeȝ me raȝteȝ,  
For boþe two here I þe bede bot two bare myntes, ¶ boute ſcaþe;

Trwe mon trwe reſtore,

þēne þar mō drede no waþe;

2355

At þe þrid þ<sup>u</sup> fayled þore,

& þ<sup>er</sup> for þat tappe taþe.

<sup>1</sup> *Illegible.*

<sup>2</sup> *uf, MS.*

<sup>3</sup> *This word is doubtful.*

## XVI.

For hit is my wede þat þ<sup>u</sup> wereȝ, þ<sup>t</sup> ilke wouen girdel,  
 Myn owen wyf hit þe weued, I wot wel forsoþe ;  
 Now know I wel þy coffes, & þy coftes als,  
 & þe wowȝg of my wyf, I wroȝt hit myfeluen ;  
 I fende hir to afay þe, & fothly me þynkkeȝ,  
 On þe fautleſt freke, þat eu<sup>9</sup> on fote ȝede ;  
 As perle bi þe quite peſe is of prys more,  
 So is Gawayn, ī god fayth, bi oþ<sup>9</sup> gay knyȝteȝ.  
 Bot here yow lakked a lyttel, f, & lewte yow wanted,  
 Bot þat watȝ for no wylyde werke, ne wowȝg nauþ<sup>9</sup>,  
 Bot for ȝe luſud yō lyf, þe laſſe I yow blame.”  
 þat oþ<sup>9</sup> ſtiſ mon ī ſtudy ſtod a gret whyle ;  
 So agreued for greme he gryed w<sup>t</sup> īne,  
 Alle þe blode of his breſt blende ī his face,  
 þat al he ſchrank for ſchome, þat þe ſchalk talked.  
 þe forme worde vpon folde, þat þe freke meled,—  
 “ Corſed worth cowarddyſe & couetyſe boþe !  
 ī yow is vylany & vyſe, þat v<sup>9</sup>tue diſſtryeȝ.”  
 þēne he kaȝt to þe knot, & þe keſt lawſeȝ,  
 Brayde broþely þe belt to þe burne ſeluen :—  
 “ Lo ! þer þe falſſȝg, foule mot hit falle !  
 For care of þy knokke cowardyſe me taȝt  
 To a-corde me w<sup>t</sup> couetyſe, my kynde to for-ſake,  
 þat is larges & lewte, þat longeȝ to knyȝteȝ.  
 Now am I fawty, & falce, & ferde haf ben eu<sup>9</sup> ;  
 Of trecherye & vn-trawþe boþe bityde forȝe,     || & care !  
 I bi-knowe yow, knyȝt, here ſtyle,  
 Al fawty is my fare,  
 Leteȝ me ou<sup>9</sup>-take yō wylle,  
 & eſte I ſchal be ware.”

2360

2365

2370

2375

2380

[fol. 123.]

2385

## XVII.

Thēn loȝe þat oþ<sup>9</sup> leude, & lufflyly fayde,  
 “ I halde hit hardily<sup>1</sup> hole, þe harme þat I hade ; 2390  
 þ<sup>u</sup> art confessed fo clene, be-knowen of þy myffes,  
 & hatȝ þe penaūce apert, of þe poȝt of myn egge,  
 I halde þe polyfed of þat plyȝt, & pured as clene,  
 As þ<sup>u</sup> hadeȝ neu<sup>9</sup> forfeȝed, fyþē þ<sup>u</sup> watȝ fyrft borne.  
 & I gif þe, f, þe gurdel þat is golde hēmed ; 2395  
 For hit is grene as my goune, f G : , ȝe maye  
 þenk vpon þis ilke þrepe, þ<sup>9</sup> þ<sup>u</sup> forth þrȝȝeȝ  
 Amōȝ prynceȝ of prys, & þis a pure token  
 Of þe chaūce of þe grene chapel, at cheualro<sup>9</sup> knyȝteȝ ;  
 & ȝe ſchal ī þis nwe ȝer aȝayn to my woneȝ,  
 & waſch ū reuel þe remnaūt of þis ryche feſt, || ful bene.”  
 þer laȝed hȝ faſt þe lorde,  
 & fayde, “ w<sup>t</sup> my wyf, I wene,  
 We ſchal yow wel acorde, 2405  
 þat watȝ yō enmy kene.”

## XVIII.

“ Nay, for foȝe,” q þe ſegge, & ſeȝed hys helme,  
 & hatȝ hit of hendely, & þe haȝel þonkkeȝ,  
 “ I haf ſoiorned ſadly, ſele yow bytyde,  
 & he ȝelde hit ȝow ȝare, þat ȝarkkeȝ al mēſkes ! 2410  
 & comaūdeȝ me to þat cortays, yō comlych fere,  
 Boȝe þat on & þat oþ<sup>9</sup>, myn hono<sup>ed</sup> ladyeȝ,  
 þat þ<sup>9</sup> hor knyȝt wyth hor keſt han koȝtly bigyled.

<sup>1</sup> hardilyly, *MS.*

Bot hit is no ferly, þaȝ a fole madde,  
 & þurȝ wyles of wȳmen be wonen to forȝe ; 2415  
 For ſo watȝ Adam ī erde w<sup>t</sup> one bygyled,  
 & Salamon w<sup>t</sup> fele fere, & Samfon eft ſoneȝ,  
 Dalyda dalt hȳ hys wyrde, & Dauyth þer aft<sup>9</sup>  
 Watȝ blended w<sup>t</sup> Barſabe, þat much bale þoled.  
 Now þeſe were wrathed wyth her wyles, h<sup>t</sup> were a wȳne huge, 2420  
 To luſ hom wel, & leue hem not, a leude þat coupe,  
 [fol. 123<sup>b</sup>.] For þeſ wer forne þe freeſt þat folȝed alle þe ſele,      ¶ þat muſed ;  
 Exellently of alle þyſe oþ<sup>9</sup>, vnder heuen-ryche,  
 & alle þay were bi-wyled, 2425  
 With <sup>1</sup> wȳmen þat þay vſed,  
 þaȝ I be now bigyled,  
 Me þink me burde be excuſed.”

## XIX.

“ Bot yō gordel,” q̃ G: “ god yow for-ȝelde !  
 þat wyl I welde wyth good wylle, not for þe wȳne golde, 2430  
 Ne þe ſaynt, ne þe fylk, ne þe fyde pendaūdes,  
 For wele, ne for worchyp, ne for þe wlonk werkkeȝ,  
 Bot ī fȳgne of my furfet I ſchal ſe hit ofte ;  
 When I ride ī renoū, remorde to myſeluen  
 þe faut & þe fayntyſe of þe fleſche crabbed, 2435  
 How tender hit is to entyſe teches of fylþe ;  
 & þ<sup>9</sup>, quen pryde ſchal me pryk, for prowes of armes,  
 þe loke to þis luſ lace ſchal leþe my hert.  
 Bot on I wolde yow pray, diſpleſes yow neu<sup>9</sup> ;  
 Syn ȝe be lorde of the ȝonder londe, þ<sup>9</sup> I haf lent īne, 2440  
 Wyth yow wyth worſchyp,—þe wyȝe hit yow ȝelde

<sup>1</sup> with wyth, *MS.*



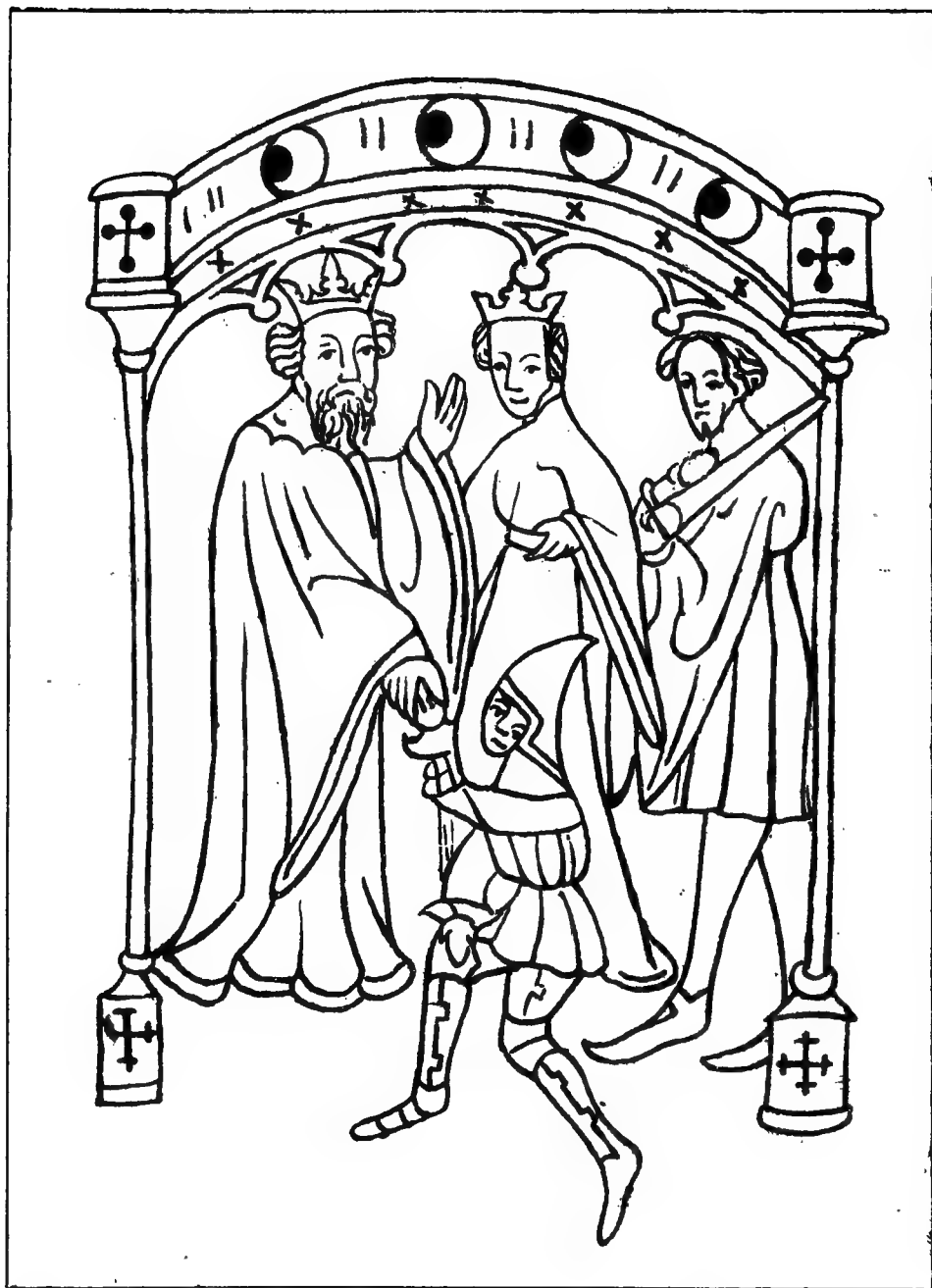
þat vp-haldeȝ þe heuē, & on hyȝ fitteȝ,—  
 How norne ȝe yowre ryȝt nome, & þēne no more ?”  
 “ þat ſchal I telle þe trwly,” q̃ þ<sup>t</sup> oþ<sup>9</sup> þēne,  
 “ Bernlak de Hautdefert I hat ī þis londe, 2445  
 þurȝ myȝt of Morgne la Faye, þat ī my ho<sup>9</sup> lenges,  
 & <sup>1</sup> koyntyfe of clergie, bi craftes wel lerned,  
 þe mayſtres of M<sup>9</sup>lyn, mony ho<sup>2</sup> taken ;  
 For ho hatȝ dalt drwry ful dere fū tyme,  
 With þat conable klerk, þat knowes alle yō<sup>o</sup> knyȝteȝ, || at hame ;  
 Morgne þe goddes,  
 þerfore hit is hir name ;  
 Weldeȝ non ſo hyȝe hawteffe,  
 þat ho ne con make ful tame. 2455

## XX.

Ho wayned me vpon þis wyfe to yō<sup>o</sup> wȳne halle,  
 For to aſſay þe ſurquidre, ȝif hit ſoth were,  
 þat rēnes of þe grete renoū of þe Roūde Table ;  
 Ho wayned me þis wonder, yō<sup>o</sup> wytteȝ to reue,  
 [fol. 124.] For to haf greued Gayno<sup>o</sup>, & gart hir to dyȝe, 2460  
 W<sup>t</sup> gopnȳg of þat ilke gomen, þat goſtlych ſpeked,  
 W<sup>t</sup> his hede ī his honde, bifore þe hyȝe table.  
 þat is ho þat is at home, þe aūcian lady ;  
 Ho is euen þyn aūt, Arþureȝ half fuſter,  
 þe duches doȝter of Tyntagelle, þat dere Vt<sup>9</sup> aſt<sup>9</sup> 2465  
 Hade Arþur vpon, þat aþel is nowþe.  
 þerfore I eþe þe, haþel, to com to þy naūt,  
 Make myry ī my ho<sup>9</sup>, my meny þe louies,  
 & I wol þe as wel, wyȝe, bi my faythe,

<sup>1</sup> in ?<sup>2</sup> ho hatȝ ?









As any gome vnder god, for þy grete traufþe.” 2470  
 & he nikked hȳ naye, he nolde bi no wayes ;—  
 þay acolen & kyffen, [bikennen] ayþer oþ<sup>9</sup>  
 To þe prynce of paradife, & parten ryȝt þere, || on coolde ;  
 Gawayn on blonk ful bene, 2475  
 To þe kȳges burȝ bufkeȝ bolde,  
 & þe knyȝt ī þe enker grene,  
 Whiderwarde ſo eu<sup>9</sup> he wolde.

## XXI.

Wylde wayeȝ ī þe worlde Wowen now rydeȝ,  
 On Gryngolet, þat þe g<sup>ȝ</sup>ce hade geten of his lyue ; 2480  
 Ofte he herbered ī houte, & ofte al þeroute,  
 & mony a-venture ī vale, & venquyſt ofte,  
 þat I ne tyȝt, at þis tyme, ī tale to remene.  
 þe hurt watȝ hole, þat he hade hent ī his nek,  
 & þe blykkande belt he bere þerabout, 2485  
 A belef as a bauderyk, bouȝden bi his fyde,  
 Loken vnder his lyfte arme, þe lace, w<sup>t</sup> a knot,  
 Ī tokenȳg he watȝ tane ī tech of a faute ;  
 & þ<sup>9</sup> he cōmes to þe cōt, knyȝt al ī ſouȝde.  
 þer wakned wele ī þat wone, when wyſt þe grete, 2490  
 þat gode G: watȝ cōmen, gayn hit hym þoȝt ;  
 þe kȳg kyffeȝ þe knyȝt, & þe whene alce,  
 & fyþen mony fyker knyȝt, þat ſoȝt hȳ to haylce,  
 Of his fare þat hȳ frayned, & ferlyly he telles ;  
 Bi-knoweȝ alle þe coſtes of care þat he hade,— 2495  
 þe chaūce of þe chapel, þe chere of þe knyȝt,  
 [fol. 124<sup>b</sup>.] þe luſ of þe ladi, þe lace at þe laſt.  
 þe nirt ī þe nek he naked hem ſchewed,  
 þat he laȝt for his vnleute at þe leudes hondes, || for blame ;

He tened quen he schulde telle,  
 He groned for gref & grame ;  
 þe blod ī his face con melle,  
 When he hit schulde fchewe, for fchame.

## XXII.

“ Lo ! lorde,” q þe leude, & þe lace hondeled, 2505  
 “ þis is þe bende of þis blame I bere [in] my nek,  
 þis is þe laþe & þe loffe, þat I laȝt haue,  
 Of couardife & couetyfe, þat I haf caȝt þare,  
 þis is þe token of my trawþe, þat I am tan īne,  
 & I mot nedeȝ hit were, wyle I may laft ; 2510  
 For non may hyden his harme, bot vnhap ne may hit,  
 For þ̃ hit oneȝ is tachched, twȳne wil hit neũ.”  
 þe kȳg comfoteȝ þe knyȝt, & alle þe cōt als,  
 Laȝen loude þ̃ at, & luflȳly acorden,  
 þat lordes & ladis, þ̃ longed to þe Table, 2515  
 Vche burne of þe broþ̃-hede a bauderyk schulde haue,  
 A bende, a belef hȳ a-boute, of a bryȝt grene,  
 & þat, for fake of þat fegge, ī fwete to were.  
 For þat watȝ acorded þe renoũ of þe Roūde Table,  
 & he honõed þat hit hade, eũ more aft̃, 2520  
 As hit is breued ī þe beft boke of romaūce.  
 þ̃ ī Arthur̃ day þis aūt̃ bitidde,  
 þe Brut̃ bokeȝ þ̃ of beres wytteneffe ;  
 Syþ̃ Brut̃, þe bolde burne, boȝed hider fyrft,  
 Aft̃ þe fegge & þe afaute watȝ fefed at Troye, 2525  
 Monȳ aūt̃eȝ here bi-forne,  
 Haf fallen fuche er þis :—  
 Now þat bere þe croū of þorne,  
 He brȳg ṽ to his blyffe ! AMEN. 2530

|| I wyffe ;

**The Awntyrs of Arthure at the  
Terne Wathelpne.**





# Here bygynnes The awntyrs of Arthure at the Terne Wathelyñ.

## I.

[fol. 154.]

**I**N 'Kyng Arthure tyñ<sup>1</sup> ane awntir by-tyde,  
By the 'TerneWathelyñ, als<sup>2</sup> the buke tellis,  
Als<sup>3</sup> he to Carelele was cōmeñ, that<sup>4</sup> conqueroure kyde,  
With dukes, and w<sup>t</sup><sup>5</sup> ducheperes, þat w<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>6</sup> dere duellys,  
For<sup>7</sup> to hūnte at the herdys, þat lange hafe<sup>8</sup> bene hyde; 5  
And<sup>9</sup> one a daye þay þam<sup>10</sup> dighte to þ<sup>e</sup> depe dellis,  
To fetfe<sup>11</sup> of þ<sup>e</sup> femmales, in þ<sup>e</sup><sup>12</sup> foreste 'wele frythede<sup>13</sup>,  
Faire 'in the fernyfone tyme, by frythis<sup>14</sup>, and fellis.  
Thus to þ<sup>e</sup><sup>15</sup> wode are<sup>16</sup> thay wente, the wlonkefte in wedys, —  
Bothe the kyng, and the qwene, —  
And aȝ þ<sup>e</sup> doghety by-dene, — } Dame Gayenoure he ledis.  
Syr Gawane, gayefte one grene, — }

I.—<sup>1</sup> the tyme of Arthur, *MS. Douce.*   <sup>2</sup> Turnewathelañ, as.   <sup>3</sup> Whañ.   <sup>4</sup> and.  
<sup>5</sup> *This word omitted.*   <sup>6</sup> þe.   <sup>7</sup> *Om.*   <sup>8</sup> had.   <sup>9</sup> *Om.*   <sup>10</sup> hem.   <sup>11</sup> fall'.   <sup>12</sup> *Om.*  
<sup>13</sup> and frydde.   <sup>14</sup> by þe firmyschamis, in frithes.   <sup>15</sup> *Om.*   <sup>16</sup> arñ.

## II.

And<sup>1</sup> thus f Gawane þ<sup>e</sup> gay, dame<sup>2</sup> Gayen<sup>3</sup> he ledis,  
 In a glet<sup>4</sup>ande gyde, þat glemet full gaye ; 15  
 With riche rebanes reuerffede, 'who þ<sup>t3</sup> righte redys,  
 Raylede w<sup>t</sup> rubes, 'one royalle<sup>4</sup> arraye ;  
 Hir hude 'was of hawe<sup>5</sup> hewe, þ<sup>t</sup> hir hede hydys,  
 'Wroghte w<sup>t</sup> peloure, and pafte, and<sup>6</sup> perrye to paye ;  
 Schruedede<sup>7</sup> in a fchorte cloke, þat the rayne fchrydes<sup>8</sup>, 20  
 Sett ou<sup>9</sup> w<sup>t</sup> fasyrs, full<sup>9</sup> fothely to saye.  
 'And thus wondirfully was all þ<sup>e</sup> wyghtis wedys<sup>10</sup>, —————  
 Hir faditt femye<sup>11</sup> of þat ilke, —————  
 'Semlely sewede w<sup>t12</sup> fylke; ————— Gayely fcho<sup>14</sup> glydis. —————  
 One a myle als<sup>13</sup> the milke, —————

## III.

Thus<sup>1</sup> alle in glet<sup>4</sup>ande golde gayely fcho<sup>2</sup> glydis  
 The gates, w<sup>t</sup> f Gawane, by a<sup>3</sup> grene wette ;  
 'Nane bot hym felfe, one a<sup>4</sup> blonke, 'by þ<sup>t</sup> birde<sup>5</sup> bydis,  
 That borne was in Burgoyne, by buke, & by bette ; 30  
 He ledde þ<sup>t</sup> lady so lange by 'þofe lande<sup>6</sup> fydys,  
 Sytheñ<sup>7</sup> vndir a 'lorere fcho<sup>8</sup> lyghte, lawe by a fette ;  
 Sir<sup>9</sup> Arthure, w<sup>t</sup> his erles, full<sup>10</sup> ernestly rydis,  
 To teche 'þaĩ to þaire tristis, trewely<sup>11</sup> to tette.

II.—<sup>1</sup> Om.    <sup>2</sup> Om.    <sup>3</sup> ho fo.    <sup>4</sup> of riall'.    <sup>5</sup> of a herde.    <sup>6</sup> Of pillor, of pal-  
 werk, of.    <sup>7</sup> Schurde.    <sup>8</sup> fhedes.    <sup>9</sup> Om.    <sup>10</sup> With faffres & feladynes, fet by  
 þe fides.    <sup>11</sup> fette.    <sup>12</sup> Saude with fambutes of.    <sup>13</sup> as.    <sup>14</sup> fhe.

III.—<sup>1</sup> Om.    <sup>2</sup> ho.    <sup>3</sup> þe.    <sup>4</sup> And þat burne, oñ his.    <sup>5</sup> with the Quene.    <sup>6</sup> þe  
 lawe.    <sup>7</sup> Om.    <sup>8</sup> lorre þey.    <sup>9</sup> And.    <sup>10</sup> Om.    <sup>11</sup> hem to her tristres, þe trouthe for.

To 'paire triftis he þam taughte, who þ<sup>t</sup> righte<sup>12</sup> trowes,   
 'Ilke a<sup>13</sup> lorde, w<sup>t</sup> owttyn lett,   
 'At his trifte was he sett<sup>14</sup>,  Vndir þofe<sup>15</sup> bewes.   
 W<sup>t</sup> bowe and w<sup>t</sup> barcelett,

## IV.

Vndir þofe<sup>1</sup> bewes þay bade, þofe beryns so bolde,  
 To bekire at 'þofe barrayne<sup>2</sup>, in bankis so bare; 40  
 [fol. 154<sup>b</sup>.] Thay kefte of þaire<sup>3</sup> copitts, in clyffes so calde;  
 'Thay recomforthed þaire<sup>4</sup> kenettis, to 'kele þa<sup>m</sup><sup>5</sup> of care;  
 þare myghte 'hirdmeñ, hendely forfothte<sup>6</sup>, herdis by-halde,  
 Herkyn huntynge 'w<sup>t</sup> hornnes<sup>7</sup>, in holtis so hare;  
 þay 'fellede dow<sup>n</sup>e<sup>8</sup> þ<sup>e</sup> femmatts, full thikke folde, 45  
 W<sup>t</sup> fresche hundis, and fette, 'felonofly þay<sup>9</sup> fare.   
 'þay queftede<sup>10</sup>, and quellys,   
 By<sup>11</sup> frythis and fellis,  '& darkys and darys<sup>13</sup>.   
 'þat þ<sup>e</sup> dere dwellys<sup>12</sup>,

## V.

'A<sup>l</sup>le darkis<sup>1</sup> the dere, 'and to dow<sup>n</sup> fchowys<sup>2</sup>,  
 And<sup>3</sup>, for þ<sup>e</sup> dowte<sup>4</sup> of þ<sup>e</sup> dede<sup>5</sup> drowpys the daa,  
 And by þ<sup>e</sup> ftremys so ftrange, þat fwyftly swoghes<sup>6</sup>,

<sup>12</sup> here triftres he hem tauzt, ho þe trouth. <sup>13</sup> Eche. <sup>14</sup> To añ oke he hem fette.

<sup>15</sup> þe.

IV.—<sup>1</sup> þe. <sup>2</sup> þes baraynes. <sup>3</sup> here. <sup>4</sup> Conforte her. <sup>5</sup> hele hem. <sup>6</sup> hapeles in hij. <sup>7</sup> in haft. <sup>8</sup> fel of. <sup>9</sup> þei folowen her. <sup>10</sup> With gret queftes. <sup>11</sup> Both in. <sup>12</sup> All' the dur<sup>e</sup> in þe delles. <sup>13</sup> They durkeñ, and dare. *In MS. Douce the lines 5, 6 are transposed before the two which precede. In both MSS. a line seems wanting (the ninth) to complete the stanza.*

V.—<sup>1</sup> Then durkeñ. <sup>2</sup> in þe dýme fkuwes. <sup>3</sup> þat. <sup>4</sup> drede. <sup>5</sup> detñ. <sup>6</sup> *This line is omitted in MS. D.*

Pay wery þ<sup>e</sup> wilde fwyne, and 'wyrkkis þa<sup>m</sup> waa<sup>7</sup>;  
 'Thay hunte, and halowes, in holttis and hillys<sup>8</sup>, 50  
 'And tiſt þaire riſte, raches relyes oñ þaire raye<sup>9</sup>;  
 Thay gafe no<sup>10</sup> gameñ, 'no grythe<sup>11</sup>, þ<sup>t</sup> one grownde growes,  
 Grete hundis<sup>12</sup> [in the greues<sup>13</sup>] fuſt<sup>14</sup> gladly 'gañ gaa<sup>15</sup>.  
 Thus thies gomes þay ga<sup>16</sup>, in grevys so grene, —  
 'And boldly blawes rechayfe<sup>17</sup>, —  
 And folowes<sup>18</sup> faſte one þ<sup>e</sup> traſe, — Swylk<sup>19</sup> folauce to fene. —  
 W<sup>t</sup> many fergyaunte of mace, —

## VI.

Thus<sup>1</sup> w<sup>t</sup> folauce þay femelede<sup>2</sup>, the prowdeſte in paſſe,  
 And few<sup>3</sup> to þ<sup>e</sup> ſoueraigne, 'in cleues ſo clene<sup>4</sup>; 60  
 Nane<sup>5</sup> bot f Gawane, the<sup>6</sup> gayeſte of aſſe,  
 By-leuys w<sup>t</sup> dame Gayno<sup>6</sup> in 'poſe greues<sup>7</sup> grene;  
 Vndir a lorrere 'ſcho laye<sup>8</sup>, þat lady ſo ſmaſſe,  
 Off boxe, and of barбораñe<sup>9</sup>, byggyde fuſt bene;  
 Faſte by-fore vndrone<sup>10</sup>, this ferly guñ<sup>11</sup> falle, 65  
 And this mekiſt mervette, þat I of<sup>12</sup> mene.  
 Now wiſt<sup>13</sup> I of this mervette meen, ȝif I mote; —  
 The daye waxe als dirke, —  
 Als<sup>14</sup> it were mydnyghte myrke; — And lyghte one his fote. —  
 Ther of 'f Gawane<sup>15</sup> was irke, —

<sup>7</sup> worcheñ hē wo.    <sup>8</sup> The huntis þei halowe, in hurſtes and huwes.    <sup>9</sup> And bluwe rechas, ryally þei rañ to the ro.    <sup>10</sup> to no.    <sup>11</sup> Om.    <sup>12</sup> þe grete gre[u]ndes.  
<sup>13</sup> Supplied from MS. D.    <sup>14</sup> fo.    <sup>15</sup> þei go.    <sup>16</sup> So gladly þei goñ.    <sup>17</sup> The king blowe rechas.    <sup>18</sup> folowed.    <sup>19</sup> þ<sup>t</sup>.

VI.—<sup>1</sup> Om.    <sup>2</sup> femble.    <sup>3</sup> fuweñ.    <sup>4</sup> w<sup>t</sup> in ſchaghes ſchene.    <sup>5</sup> Al.    <sup>6</sup> Om.  
<sup>7</sup> greues fo.    <sup>8</sup> ho was liȝt.    <sup>9</sup> berber.    <sup>10</sup> vndre.    <sup>11</sup> coñ.    <sup>12</sup> ſhal of.    <sup>13</sup> wol.  
<sup>14</sup> As.    <sup>15</sup> þe king.

## VII.

Thus one<sup>1</sup> fote are þay 'lyghte, þofe<sup>2</sup> frekis vn-fayne,  
 And 'fledde faste to<sup>3</sup> the foreste, and<sup>4</sup> to þe fawe<sup>5</sup> fellis;  
 Thay rañe faste to the roches, for reddoure of þe rayñe<sup>6</sup>,  
 For þe 'flete, and þe snawe, þat snayppede þaṁ so fñette<sup>7</sup>; 75  
 Thare come a 'lowe one the loughe, i lede es noghte<sup>8</sup> to layne,  
 In the lyknes of Lucyfere, layeth este in helle;  
 And glyddis to 'dame Gaynoure<sup>9</sup> the gatis full<sup>10</sup> gayne,  
 '3ollande 3amyrlly<sup>11</sup>, with many lowde 3elle<sup>12</sup>.

'It 3ellede, it 3amede, with vengeance full<sup>13</sup> wete; —  
 And saide, 'ofte syghandefull<sup>14</sup> sare, —  
 " I ame<sup>15</sup> the body 'þt þe<sup>16</sup> bare, — I gloppyñ<sup>17</sup> and I grete!" —  
 [fol. 155.] Allas! now kyndyls my kare, —

## VIII.

Thane gloppenyde, and grett, dame<sup>1</sup> Gaynoure the gay, 85  
 And askede<sup>2</sup> f Gawayne, whatt 'was his beſte<sup>3</sup> rede?  
 " It es<sup>4</sup> the clippes of the mone<sup>5</sup>, I herde a clerke saye;" —  
 And thus he comforthede<sup>6</sup> þe qwene, w<sup>t7</sup> his knyghtehede. —  
 " Sir Cadore, 'Sir Caduke, Sir Coſtarde<sup>8</sup>, Sir Kaye,  
 Thir<sup>9</sup> knyghtis are<sup>10</sup> vn-curtayſe, by croſe, & by crede! 90  
 That thus 'me haſe leſte in this erthe, at my dede<sup>11</sup> daye,

VII.—<sup>1</sup> to. <sup>2</sup> fareñ þes. <sup>3</sup> fleñ fro. <sup>4</sup> Om. <sup>5</sup> fewe. <sup>6</sup> This line and line 6 are omitted in MS. D. <sup>7</sup> fñeterand fñawe fñartly hem fñelles. <sup>8</sup> lede of þe lawe, in londe is not. <sup>9</sup> Syr Gawayñ. <sup>10</sup> to. <sup>11</sup> 3auland, and 3omerand. <sup>12</sup> 3elles. <sup>13</sup> Hit 3aules, hit 3amers, w<sup>t</sup> waymynges. <sup>14</sup> with fiking. <sup>15</sup> bañ. <sup>16</sup> me. <sup>17</sup> gloppe.

VIII.—<sup>1</sup> Om. <sup>2</sup> feid to. <sup>3</sup> is þi good. <sup>4</sup> ar. <sup>5</sup> foñ. <sup>6</sup> confortes. <sup>7</sup> for. <sup>8</sup> Sir Cleges, Sir Coſtardyne. <sup>9</sup> þes. <sup>10</sup> ariñ. <sup>11</sup> oonly haue me laſt oñ my dep<sup>e</sup>.

With the gryfelyeste gafte, þat eu<sup>9</sup> herde I grete<sup>12</sup>!—  
 “ ‘At this<sup>13</sup> gafte,” quod ‘f Gaweayne<sup>14</sup>, “ greue þowe no more;  
 I<sup>15</sup> saffe ſpeke w<sup>t</sup> þone<sup>16</sup> ſpyrete, —  
 ‘In þone wayes ſo<sup>17</sup> wete, — Of þone<sup>19</sup> body bare.” —  
 ‘If I<sup>18</sup> maye the bales bete, —

## IX.

Bare was hir<sup>1</sup> body, and blake to the bone,  
 Afte by-claggede in claye, ‘vn-comlyly cleded<sup>2</sup>;  
 It ‘weryit, it wayemettede, lyke<sup>3</sup> a womañ, 95  
 ‘þat nowþ<sup>9</sup> one hede, ne on hare, hillynge<sup>4</sup> it hade;  
 It ftottyde<sup>5</sup>, it ſtoūnede, it ſtode als<sup>6</sup> a ſtane,  
 It marrede, it ‘mōnede, it moyffed<sup>7</sup> for made.  
 ‘Vn to þat<sup>8</sup> gryfely gafte f Gaweayne es gane;  
 He raykede ‘to it one<sup>9</sup> a rafe, for he<sup>10</sup> was neu<sup>9</sup> rade<sup>11</sup>. 100  
 ‘For rade<sup>12</sup> was he neu<sup>9</sup>, ‘nowe who þ<sup>t</sup><sup>13</sup> ryghte redys;  
 One þ<sup>e</sup> chefe of þ<sup>e</sup> choſte<sup>14</sup>, —  
 A ‘tade pykit one hir<sup>15</sup> poſte, — ‘Glowand als<sup>17</sup> gledis. —  
 Hir eghne ware<sup>16</sup> holkedefuſt hoſte, —

## X.

Afte glowede ‘als gledis<sup>1</sup> the gafte, ‘whare ſcho<sup>2</sup> glydis,  
 ‘Vmbycleded in<sup>3</sup> a clowde, ‘w<sup>t</sup> clethyng<sup>4</sup> vn-clere;

<sup>12</sup> Written at first grede, and so MS. D. <sup>13</sup> Of þe. <sup>14</sup> þe gome. <sup>15</sup> For I. <sup>16</sup> þe.

<sup>17</sup> And of þe wayes I shall. <sup>18</sup> What. <sup>19</sup> þe.

IX.—<sup>1</sup> þe. <sup>2</sup> in vncomly cladde. <sup>3</sup> varied, hit wayment, as. <sup>4</sup> But on hide, ne on huwe, no heling. <sup>5</sup> ſtemered. <sup>6</sup> as. <sup>7</sup> memered, hit mufed. <sup>8</sup> Agayñ þe. <sup>9</sup> out at. <sup>10</sup> Om. <sup>11</sup> drad. <sup>12</sup> Drad. <sup>13</sup> ho fo. <sup>14</sup> clolle. <sup>15</sup> pade pikes on þe. <sup>16</sup> Om. <sup>17</sup> That gloed as þe.

X.—<sup>1</sup> as a glede. <sup>2</sup> pere ho. <sup>3</sup> Vmbe-clipped hī w<sup>t</sup>. <sup>4</sup> of cleyng.

Cerkeleytt<sup>5</sup> with serpentes, 'þat satt by hir<sup>6</sup> sydes;—  
 To telle þe<sup>7</sup> dedis<sup>7</sup> þer one, my tonge were to<sup>8</sup> tere.  
 The 'beryñ brawndeche owte his<sup>9</sup> brande, and the body bydis,  
 There fore þat<sup>10</sup> cheualrous knyghte 'thoghte it<sup>11</sup> no chere ; 110  
 The hūdes 'are to hillys<sup>12</sup>, & 'paire hedes<sup>13</sup> hydes,  
 For þat<sup>14</sup> gryfely gaste made so<sup>15</sup> gryme bere.  
 The grete grewhundes were agayste, 'for þat<sup>16</sup> grym·bere ;  
 The birdes on<sup>17</sup> the bewes, —  
 þat one 'that gaste gewes<sup>18</sup>, — That 'hedowswhenñ þay<sup>21</sup> here.  
 Thay clyme<sup>19</sup> in the clewes<sup>20</sup>, —

## XI.

'Who þat myghte þat hedows see, hendeste in<sup>1</sup> haulte,  
 How 'hir choſte chatirede, hyr chaſtis, and hir<sup>2</sup> chȳne ; 119  
 Thane coniurede 'hir þat<sup>3</sup> knyghte, and<sup>4</sup> one Criſte guñ<sup>5</sup> he caſte,—  
 " Aſts<sup>6</sup> þou was crucefyede one croyſe, to 'ſaue vs fra<sup>7</sup> ſyñ,  
 'Thou ſpirette, ſaye<sup>8</sup> me the ſothe, whedir þat<sup>9</sup> þou ſaſt,  
 And whi þat<sup>9</sup> þou walkes<sup>10</sup> thies wayes, thies<sup>11</sup> woddis, w<sup>t</sup> inñ?"—  
 " I was of fegure, and 'of fleſche, the<sup>12</sup> fayereſte of aſte,  
 Criſtenede, and kryfōmede<sup>13</sup>, with kynges in my kyñ. 125  
 [fol. 155b.] I haſe kynges in my kyñ, knaweñ 'kyde fuſt<sup>14</sup> kene; —  
 God haſe 'ſent me this<sup>15</sup> grace, —  
 To drye my paynes in this place, — To ſpeke with þoure qwēne.—  
 'And nowe am I cōmeñ one a paſe<sup>15</sup>, —

<sup>5</sup> Skeled. <sup>6</sup> all' aboute þe. <sup>7</sup> todes. <sup>8</sup> full'. <sup>9</sup> burne braides out þe. <sup>10</sup> þe.  
<sup>11</sup> changed. <sup>12</sup> hiȳen to þe wode. <sup>13</sup> here hede. <sup>14</sup> þe. <sup>15</sup> a. <sup>16</sup> of þe. <sup>17</sup> in.  
<sup>18</sup> þe goost glowes. <sup>19</sup> ſkryke. <sup>20</sup> ſkowes. <sup>21</sup> haþeles may.

XI.—<sup>1</sup> Hapeleſe miȳt here ſo fer into. <sup>2</sup> chatered þe cholle, þe chalus oñ þe. <sup>3</sup> þe.  
<sup>4</sup> Om. <sup>5</sup> coñ. <sup>6</sup> As. <sup>7</sup> clanſe vs of. <sup>8</sup> That þ<sup>n</sup> ſei. <sup>9</sup> Om. <sup>10</sup> walkeſt. <sup>11</sup> þe.  
<sup>12</sup> face. <sup>13</sup> knoweñ. <sup>14</sup> for. *In MS. L. firſt written "for kyde," but afterwards*  
*"for" crossed out and "full' kene" added.* <sup>15</sup> me geven of his. <sup>16</sup> I am comeñ in  
 þis cace.



## XII.

Qwene was I 'whilome, wele<sup>1</sup> bryghtere of browes,  
 Than Beryke<sup>2</sup>, or Brangwayne, the<sup>3</sup> byrdis so balde ;  
 Of 'any gamnes, or gudis<sup>4</sup>, þat one the<sup>5</sup> grownde growes,  
 Wele<sup>6</sup> grettere þan<sup>7</sup> Gayno<sup>8</sup>, of garfomes<sup>9</sup>, & of<sup>9</sup> golde,  
 Of 'pales, of powndis, of parkes<sup>10</sup>, of plewes, 135  
 Of townnes, of towris, of trefoures<sup>11</sup> vn-tolde,  
 'Of cōtres, of castells<sup>12</sup>, of craggas, of clewes ;  
 'And nowe am I cachede<sup>13</sup> owte of 'kythie, in<sup>14</sup> carys so colde !  
 In<sup>15</sup> care am I cachede<sup>16</sup>, and cowchede in claye ; —————  
 Loo<sup>17</sup> ! curtayfe knyghte, —————  
 How 'þat dede<sup>18</sup> hafe me dyghte ; — Of Gayeno<sup>8</sup> the gaye." —  
 Nowe gyffe me anes<sup>19</sup> a syghte, —

## XIII.

'Nowe to<sup>1</sup> Gayeno<sup>8</sup> þe<sup>2</sup> gaye Sir Gawayne es gane,  
 And to þat<sup>3</sup> body 'hafe he<sup>3</sup> broghte 'that birde þeñ fo<sup>4</sup> bryghte : 145  
 " Welecome, Wayno<sup>8</sup> !" 'fcho fays, " þu<sup>5</sup> worthe in wane !  
 Loo ! howe þat<sup>6</sup> dulefull dede<sup>7</sup> hafe thi dame dyghte.  
 I was reddere in<sup>8</sup> rode þan rose in þe<sup>9</sup> rayne ;  
 My lyre als<sup>9</sup> the lely, 'lufely to syghte<sup>10</sup>,  
 And<sup>11</sup> nowe 'I am a grifely<sup>12</sup> gaste, and 'grymly granes<sup>13</sup>, 150  
 W<sup>t</sup> Lucefere, in a lake, lawe ame I lyghte.

XII.—<sup>1</sup> some wile. <sup>2</sup> Berell'. <sup>3</sup> þes. <sup>4</sup> al gāmen, or gle. <sup>5</sup> Om. <sup>6</sup> Om. <sup>7</sup> þeñ  
 Dame. <sup>8</sup> garfoñ. <sup>9</sup> Om. <sup>10</sup> palaies, of parkes, of pondes. <sup>11</sup> trefor. <sup>12</sup> Of cas-  
 tles, of contreyes. <sup>13</sup> Now ame I cauȝt. <sup>14</sup> kide, to. <sup>15</sup> Into. <sup>16</sup> caught.  
<sup>17</sup> Lo ! fir. <sup>18</sup> delfulle deth. <sup>19</sup> Lete me onys haue.

XIII.—<sup>1</sup> After. <sup>2</sup> þe. <sup>3</sup> he her. <sup>4</sup> and to þe burde. <sup>5</sup> i-wis. <sup>6</sup> Om. <sup>7</sup> deth.  
<sup>8</sup> of. <sup>9</sup> as. <sup>10</sup> lonched on hight. <sup>11</sup> Om. <sup>12</sup> am I a gracelos. <sup>13</sup> grifly I groñ.

'Thus am I lyke to Lucefere, takis witnes<sup>14</sup> by mee ;  
 For all ȝoure<sup>15</sup> frefche fauoure,  
 'Nowe moyse one this<sup>16</sup> mirroure,  
 For bothe<sup>17</sup> kynge and empoure, —

Thus saff ȝe bee. —

## XIV.

And<sup>1</sup> thus dede with ȝow dighte, 'takis witnesse by me<sup>2</sup>,  
 And<sup>3</sup> there one hertly takis<sup>4</sup> hede, whils þ<sup>t5</sup> þ<sup>u</sup> es<sup>6</sup> here ;  
 When þou 'es richely<sup>7</sup> arrayede, and 'rydes in a<sup>8</sup> rowte,  
 Hafe þa<sup>n9</sup> pete, '& mynd<sup>10</sup> one þ<sup>e</sup> pore, for<sup>11</sup> þ<sup>u</sup> arte of powere ; 160  
 Beryns, and byrdis, 'are besye<sup>12</sup> the a-bowte,  
 Wheñ thi body es bawmede, and broghte appone<sup>13</sup> bere,  
 Thane 'with þay leue the lyghtely<sup>14</sup>, þat nowe with the lowte,  
 'And thane helps the<sup>15</sup> no thyng, bot halye prayere.  
 The prayere of þ<sup>e16</sup> pore 'chaffes the from helle<sup>17</sup> ;  
 Of 'pafe þat ȝellis at thi<sup>18</sup> ȝate,  
 Wheñ 'þ<sup>u</sup> sittis<sup>19</sup> in thi sette, — 'Some dayntes þou dele<sup>21</sup>.  
 With all mirthes at thi<sup>20</sup> mete, —

## XV.

With daynteths<sup>1</sup> one deffe, thi dyetes are dyghte, 170  
 And thus<sup>2</sup> in dawngere, and dole, 'I downe, &<sup>3</sup> I dueffe ;  
 Nasty<sup>4</sup>, and nedfull, and<sup>5</sup> nakede one nyghte,  
 [fol. 156.] þere folowes<sup>6</sup> me a ferde of fendis 'full fell<sup>7</sup> ;

<sup>14</sup> Take truly tent tȝt nowe. <sup>15</sup> pi. <sup>16</sup> Muse oñ my. <sup>17</sup> Om.

XIV.—<sup>1</sup> Om. <sup>2</sup> thare you not doute. <sup>3</sup> Om. <sup>4</sup> take. <sup>5</sup> Om. <sup>6</sup> art. <sup>7</sup> art richeft. <sup>8</sup> rideft in pi. <sup>9</sup> Om. <sup>10</sup> Om. <sup>11</sup> Om. <sup>12</sup> þat beñ. <sup>13</sup> oñ a. <sup>14</sup> lite wyñ þe light. <sup>15</sup> For þeñ he helps. <sup>16</sup> Om. <sup>17</sup> may purchas þe pes. <sup>18</sup> that þou yeues at þe. <sup>19</sup> þou art fet. <sup>20</sup> Om. <sup>21</sup> And dayntes on des.

XV.—<sup>1</sup> riche dayntes. <sup>2</sup> I. <sup>3</sup> in dongoñ. <sup>4</sup> Naxte. <sup>5</sup> Om. <sup>6</sup> folo. <sup>7</sup> of helle.

Thay harle me vnhendely, 'and hewys<sup>8</sup> me one hÿghte ;  
 In braffe, and in bromstane, I 'burne als<sup>9</sup> a belle ; 175  
 Was neu<sup>9</sup> wroghte in this werlde a wafullere wyghte ;  
 It were 'tore til<sup>10</sup> any tonge my tourmenttis<sup>11</sup> to tette !  
 Bot<sup>12</sup> now wi<sup>11</sup> I of my tourment talke<sup>13</sup>, or I gaa ; —  
 Thynke hertly on this, —  
 Now<sup>14</sup> fande to mende of<sup>15</sup> thi mys ; — Bewarrenow, <sup>17</sup>bemywaa!" —  
 For<sup>16</sup> thou erte warnede, I wyffe, —

## XVI.

"Now<sup>1</sup> wo es me, for thi waa!" sayd<sup>2</sup> Waynō, "I wyffe,  
 Bot 'a worde<sup>3</sup> wolde I wete, and<sup>4</sup> thi wi<sup>11</sup> ware ;  
 Gyff<sup>5</sup> matyñs, or messes<sup>6</sup>, myghte oghte<sup>7</sup> mendeñ<sup>8</sup> thi myffe, 185  
 Or any moby<sup>11</sup>ts<sup>9</sup> on molde, my myrthis<sup>10</sup> ware the mare ;  
 Or<sup>11</sup> bedis of bechopis myghte brynge the to blyffe,  
 Or coueñtis, in cloyst<sup>9</sup>s<sup>12</sup>, myghte kele<sup>13</sup> the of care ;  
 For<sup>14</sup> if þou be my modir, grete m<sup>9</sup>vette<sup>15</sup> it es,  
 That 'thi burlyche<sup>16</sup> body es blakenede<sup>17</sup> fo bare !— 190  
 "I bare the of my body ; whate bote es 'to lye<sup>18</sup> ? —  
 'Be that to takenynge<sup>19</sup> thou trowe, —  
 I brake a folempne a-vowe, — 'And þ<sup>9</sup> fore dole I drye<sup>21</sup>." —  
 'That none wyfte, bot I &<sup>20</sup> thowe, —

<sup>8</sup> pei harme. <sup>9</sup> breñ as. <sup>10</sup> ful tore. <sup>11</sup> t<sup>1</sup>ment. <sup>12</sup> Om. <sup>13</sup> tel. <sup>14</sup> Om. <sup>15</sup> Om.  
<sup>16</sup> Om. <sup>17</sup> Om.

XVI.—<sup>1</sup> Om. <sup>2</sup> q<sup>d</sup>. <sup>3</sup> one þing. <sup>4</sup> if. <sup>5</sup> If auþer. <sup>6</sup> mas. <sup>7</sup> Om. <sup>8</sup> mende.  
<sup>9</sup> meble. <sup>10</sup> merthe. <sup>11</sup> If. <sup>12</sup> cloistre. <sup>13</sup> kere. <sup>14</sup> Om. <sup>15</sup> wonder. <sup>16</sup> al þi burly.  
<sup>17</sup> brouȝt to be. <sup>18</sup> h<sup>t</sup> I layñ. <sup>19</sup> By þ<sup>t</sup> token. <sup>20</sup> And no mañ wi<sup>11</sup> h<sup>t</sup> but. <sup>21</sup> þat  
 fopely I fayñ. *The lines 10, 11, 12 of this stanza in MS. D. stand in order 12, 10, 11.*

## XVII.

“ Telle me now<sup>1</sup> fothely, what may ‘safe thi sytis<sup>2</sup>,  
 And I saß ‘garre feke fayntes<sup>3</sup>, for thi fake ;  
 Bot ‘of thafe<sup>4</sup> balefuß bestis, þ<sup>t</sup> one thi body bytys<sup>5</sup>,  
 Afte ‘blendis my blode, thi blee es<sup>6</sup> foo blake.”—  
 “ ‘This es it to luffe pamoures, and lustis, and litys<sup>7</sup>,  
 That gerfe<sup>8</sup> me lyghte and ‘lenge so lawe in þis<sup>9</sup> lake ;  
 For<sup>10</sup> afte the welthe of this<sup>11</sup> werlde thus<sup>12</sup> a-waye wytis ;  
 ‘This werlde es wandrethe, þat wirkis<sup>13</sup> me wrake.  
 For<sup>14</sup> wrake ‘it me wirkis, now<sup>15</sup> Waynoure, I wyffe ;  
 Were thritty trentalls doñe,  
 ‘By-twyxeñ vndroñe<sup>16</sup> and noñe, — And broghte ‘i to<sup>18</sup> blyffe.”  
 My saule ‘were saluede fuß<sup>17</sup> fone, —

200

XVIII.<sup>1</sup>

“ To blyffe brynge the that<sup>2</sup> barne, þ<sup>t</sup> ‘dere hafe the boghte<sup>3</sup>,  
 That was crucyfiende one croyse, & crownede w<sup>t</sup> thorne ;  
 Cryftynnade<sup>4</sup>, and kryfōmede, w<sup>t</sup> candills<sup>5</sup>, and coude,  
 ‘Fullede in fuñstane, fuß<sup>6</sup> frely by-forne ;  
 Mary, ‘þat es<sup>7</sup> myghty, and<sup>8</sup> myldeste of mode,  
 ‘That bare þ<sup>t</sup> blyßchede<sup>9</sup>, in Bedleme was borne,

210

XVII.—<sup>1</sup> Say. <sup>2</sup> þe faueñ, y-wys. <sup>3</sup> make fere meñ to finge. <sup>4</sup> þe. <sup>5</sup> is.  
<sup>6</sup> bledis my ble, þi bones arñ. <sup>7</sup> þat is luf par amo<sup>r</sup>, listes, and delites. <sup>8</sup> has. <sup>9</sup> laft  
 loz in a. <sup>10</sup> Om. <sup>11</sup> þe. <sup>12</sup> þ<sup>t</sup>. <sup>13</sup> With þe wilde wermis, þ<sup>t</sup> worche. <sup>14</sup> Om.  
<sup>15</sup> þe me worchen. <sup>16</sup> By-twene vnder. <sup>17</sup> focoured with. <sup>18</sup> to þe.

XVIII.—<sup>1</sup> In the Lincoln MS. this and the two next stanzas, are misplaced, and  
 appear as the XIX., XX., and XVIII. The peculiar form of the verses, and the au-  
 thority of MS. D. both confirm the order now adopted. <sup>2</sup> þe. <sup>3</sup> brought [boghte ?]  
 þe oñ rode. <sup>4</sup> As þou was criftened. <sup>5</sup> candel. <sup>6</sup> Folowed in fontestone oñ. <sup>7</sup> þe.  
<sup>8</sup> Om. <sup>9</sup> Of whom þe blifful barne [barne].

Gyffe<sup>10</sup> me grace, 'for to<sup>11</sup> grete 'thy saule w<sup>t</sup> some gude<sup>12</sup>, 215  
 And mene<sup>13</sup> the w<sup>t</sup> messes<sup>14</sup>, and matynes<sup>15</sup> one morne."—  
 "To 'mene me<sup>16</sup> w<sup>t</sup> messes, grete 'menfke nowe<sup>17</sup> it were ; —  
 For hym, þ<sup>t</sup> ryfte one the rode, —  
 Gyffe nowe<sup>18</sup> fafte of thy gude, — 'Whytts þat<sup>20</sup> þou erte here." —  
 To folke þat fayles<sup>19</sup> the fude, —

## XIX.

"Now<sup>1</sup> here hertly one<sup>2</sup> hande, 'I hete the<sup>3</sup> to halde,  
 W<sup>t</sup> a melyōne of messes to make 'thy menyng<sup>4</sup>.—  
 'Bot one worde," faide dame Waynō<sup>5</sup>, "nowe wiete þ<sup>t</sup> I walde<sup>6</sup>,  
 Whate greues<sup>6</sup> Gode moſte 'of any kyns thyng<sup>7</sup>?" — 225  
 "Pride, w<sup>t</sup> 'apparentis, als<sup>8</sup> pphetis haue<sup>9</sup> tolde,  
 By-fore þ<sup>e</sup> pople 'appertly, in thaire<sup>10</sup> p<sup>9</sup>chynge ;  
 'The [bowe] is fuſt<sup>11</sup> bittire, þare of be thou balde,  
 It<sup>12</sup> makis beryns 'fuſt balde<sup>13</sup>, to breke his byddyng.  
 'Who fo<sup>14</sup> his byddyng brekis, 'bare he es<sup>15</sup> of blyffe ; —  
 Bot þay be ſalued of that ſare, —  
 Certis<sup>16</sup>, or þay hethyñ fare, — Waynoure, I wys." —  
 Thay moñ wiete<sup>17</sup> of calde<sup>18</sup> care, —

<sup>10</sup> Lene. <sup>11</sup> þ<sup>t</sup> I may. <sup>12</sup> þe w<sup>t</sup> gode. <sup>13</sup> mynge. <sup>14</sup> matens. <sup>15</sup> maffes. <sup>16</sup> mende vs.  
<sup>17</sup> myfter. <sup>18</sup> Om. <sup>19</sup> failen. <sup>20</sup> While.

XIX.—<sup>1</sup> Om. <sup>2</sup> my. <sup>3</sup> þes heſtes. <sup>4</sup> þe mȳnȳg. <sup>5</sup> A ! quod Wayno<sup>r</sup>, I wis, yit  
 weteñ I wolde. <sup>6</sup> wrathed. <sup>7</sup> at pi weting. <sup>8</sup> þe appurtenaunce, as. <sup>9</sup> hañ. <sup>10</sup> apt  
 in he<sup>r</sup>. <sup>11</sup> Hit beres bowes. *Instead of the word inclosed within brackets a blank  
 space is left in the Lincoln MS.* <sup>12</sup> þat. <sup>13</sup> fo bly. <sup>14</sup> Bot ho. <sup>15</sup> þei beñ. <sup>16</sup> Om.  
<sup>17</sup> weteñ. <sup>18</sup> Om.

## XX.

“ ‘Telle me,’ sayde<sup>1</sup> Wayno<sup>2</sup> “ ‘a worde<sup>3</sup>, ȝif þou wolste, 235  
 Whate dedis<sup>3</sup> myghte me beste ‘in to blysche<sup>4</sup> brynge?’—  
 “ ‘Mekeneffe and mercy,’ ‘ſcho faide<sup>5</sup>, “ ‘þo are<sup>6</sup> the moſte,  
 Haſe<sup>7</sup> pete one the pore, ‘thane plefys þou owre<sup>8</sup> kyng; 240  
 Sytheñ ‘aft<sup>9</sup> that, do almous dedis of aſte oþ<sup>9</sup> thyng<sup>9</sup>;  
 Thies areñ the gud<sup>10</sup> gyftis of the holy goſte,  
 That enſpyres ‘aſte ſperites, w<sup>t</sup> owttyñ<sup>11</sup> ſpillynge,  
 [fol. 156<sup>b</sup>.] ‘For to come to that blyſſe, that eu<sup>9</sup> more ſaſt laſte<sup>12</sup>.  
 Of ‘thies ſperituale thynges ſpyre me<sup>13</sup> na mare ; —————  
 Whills<sup>14</sup> þou arte qwene in thi quarte, —————  
 Halde thies wordis in thyñ<sup>15</sup> herte, ————— Hethyñ ſaſt þ<sup>u</sup> fare.” —————  
 For<sup>16</sup> þou ſaſt lyffe bot a ſtarte ; —————

## XXI.

“ ‘How ſaſt we fare,’ faide<sup>1</sup> the freke, “ þ<sup>t</sup> fowndis<sup>2</sup> to fyghte,  
 ‘That ofte fouñdis the folkes, in<sup>3</sup> fele kyngis landis ;  
 ‘That riche rewmes ou<sup>9</sup> rýnnes, agaynes the<sup>4</sup> ryghte, 250  
 ‘And wýnnes wirchippis, & welthis, by<sup>5</sup> wyghtenes of handis?’—  
 “ —ȝowre kyng es to couetous, I tell<sup>6</sup> the, ſir knyghte,  
 Maye no mañ ‘ſtere hý of<sup>7</sup> ſtrenghe, ‘whiſſs þ<sup>e8</sup> whele ſtandis ;

XX.—<sup>1</sup> Wyſſe me, q<sup>d</sup>. <sup>2</sup> fom̄ wey. <sup>3</sup> bedis. <sup>4</sup> to þe bliffe. <sup>5</sup> Om. <sup>6</sup> þes arñ.  
<sup>7</sup> And ſipeñ haue. <sup>8</sup> þat plefes heuen. <sup>9</sup> charite is cheſ, and þeñ is chaſte. <sup>10</sup> grace-  
 ful. <sup>11</sup> iche ſprete, with oute. <sup>12</sup> And þeñ almeſſe dede cure al þing. *In MS. D.*  
*this line is the 6th.* <sup>13</sup> þis ſpī'al þing ſpute þ<sup>u</sup>. <sup>14</sup> Als. <sup>15</sup> Om. <sup>16</sup> Om.

XXI.—<sup>1</sup> q<sup>d</sup>. <sup>2</sup> fondeñ. <sup>3</sup> And þus defouleñ þe folke, oñ. <sup>4</sup> And riches ouer  
 reymes, w<sup>t</sup> outeñ eny. <sup>5</sup> Wynneñ worſhipp' in werre, þorgh. <sup>6</sup> warne. <sup>7</sup> ſtry  
 him with. <sup>8</sup> while his.

When he es in his mageste 'hegheste, &<sup>9</sup> maste 'es of<sup>10</sup> myghte,  
 He saß lighte full lawe, appone<sup>11</sup> the see sandis. 255  
 [fol. 157.] 'Thus 3oure<sup>12</sup> cheualrous kyng<sup>13</sup> chefe schaffe a<sup>14</sup> chawnce,  
 'Falso fortune<sup>15</sup> in fyghte, —  
 'That wondirfull whele-wryghte<sup>16</sup>, — Takes<sup>18</sup> witnes by Fraunce.  
 'Mase lordis lawe for<sup>17</sup> to lyghte; —

## XXII.

Fraunce hafe 3e frely w<sup>t</sup> 3o<sup>e</sup> fyghte wonneñ;  
 'The Frolo, and þ<sup>e</sup> Farnaghe, es frely by-leuede<sup>1</sup>;  
 Bretayne, and Burgoyne, 'es bothe to 3ow bowneñ<sup>2</sup>,  
 And alle the dugepers<sup>3</sup> of Fraunce w<sup>t</sup> þ<sup>e</sup><sup>4</sup> dyñ dreuede<sup>5</sup>.  
 Gyane may gretyñ<sup>6</sup>, þ<sup>t</sup><sup>7</sup> þ<sup>e</sup> werre was by-gounneñ;  
 'Es noghte a lorde in þat lande, appoñ lyfe<sup>8</sup> leuede;  
 3ete saß þ<sup>e</sup> riche Romaynes<sup>9</sup> w<sup>t</sup> '3ow beñ ou<sup>9</sup><sup>10</sup> ronneñ,  
 And alle<sup>11</sup> þ<sup>e</sup> Rownde Tabiff þaire<sup>12</sup> rentis be reuede.  
 'Thay saß 3itt be Tybire tymbire 3ow<sup>13</sup> tene; —  
 Gete the, f Gawayne, —  
 Turne þou<sup>14</sup> to Tuskayne, — W<sup>t</sup> a knyghte<sup>16</sup> kene. —  
 For '[lese] thu saß<sup>15</sup> Bretayne, —

<sup>9</sup> Om. <sup>10</sup> in his. <sup>11</sup> oñ. <sup>12</sup> And this. <sup>13</sup> kni3t. <sup>14</sup> porgh. <sup>15</sup> Falsely fordone. <sup>16</sup> With a wonderfull' wight. <sup>17</sup> Shall' make lordes. <sup>18</sup> Take.

XXII.—<sup>1</sup> Freol, and his folke, fey ar þey leued. <sup>2</sup> al to you boweñ. <sup>3</sup> duffiperes.  
<sup>4</sup> yo<sup>r</sup>. <sup>5</sup> deued. <sup>6</sup> grete. <sup>7</sup> Om. <sup>8</sup> There ar no lordes oñ lyue, in þat londe.  
<sup>9</sup> remayns. <sup>10</sup> one be aur. <sup>11</sup> with. <sup>12</sup> þe. <sup>13</sup> Thus shal a Tyber vntrue tymber  
 with. <sup>14</sup> þe. <sup>15</sup> ye shal lese. *In MS. L. a blank space is left for the word lese.*  
<sup>16</sup> king.

## XXIII.

'A knyghte saß kenly clofeñ þ<sup>e</sup><sup>1</sup> crowne,  
 And at Carelyone<sup>2</sup> be crownede for<sup>3</sup> kyng ; 275  
 That<sup>4</sup> fege saß 'be fefede at a fefone<sup>5</sup>,  
 That 'mekiß bale, and barete, tiß Ynglande<sup>6</sup> fall bryng ;  
 Ther<sup>7</sup> saß in Tufkane be tallde of þat<sup>8</sup> trefone,  
 And 'torne home a-þayne for that<sup>9</sup> tydyng ;  
 And<sup>10</sup> ther saß the Rownde Tabiße losse<sup>11</sup> the renowñe, 280  
 Be-fyde Rameßfaye, fuß ryghte<sup>12</sup> at a rydyng ;  
 'And at Dorsett<sup>13</sup> saß dy the doghetyeste of alle. —————  
 Gette the, & Gawayne, —————  
 þ<sup>e</sup> baldeste of Bretayne ; ————— 'Swylke ferly<sup>15</sup> saß fatte ! —————  
 For<sup>14</sup> in a flake þ<sup>u</sup> saß be flayne, —

## XXIV.

'Siche ferly<sup>1</sup> saß falle, w<sup>t</sup> owtteñ<sup>2</sup> any fabiße,  
 Appoñe Cornewayle coste, w<sup>t</sup> a knyghte kene ;  
 'Arthure þ<sup>e</sup> auenante, þ<sup>t</sup> honeste es & abiß<sup>3</sup>,  
 Saß<sup>4</sup> be wondid, I wyße, fuß<sup>5</sup> wathely, I wene ; 290  
 [And al þe rial rowte of þe Rounde Table,  
 þei fhulleñ dye oñ a day, þe doughy by-dene<sup>6</sup> ;]  
 Suppryfeðe w<sup>t</sup> a 'sugette, þat beris of<sup>7</sup> sabiße,

XXIII.—<sup>1</sup> This knight shal be clanly enclosed w<sup>t</sup> a.    <sup>2</sup> Carlele shal þat comly.  
<sup>3</sup> as.    <sup>4</sup> A.    <sup>5</sup> he feche, with a ceffioñ.    <sup>6</sup> myche baret, and bale, to Bretayñ.    <sup>7</sup> Hit.  
<sup>8</sup> þe.    <sup>9</sup> ye fhulleñ t<sup>r</sup>ne ayeñ for þe.    <sup>10</sup> Om.    <sup>11</sup> lese.    <sup>12</sup> rad.    <sup>13</sup> In Dorsetshire.  
<sup>14</sup> Om.    <sup>15</sup> Sich ferlyes.

XXIV.—<sup>1</sup> Suche ferlies.    <sup>2</sup> oute.    <sup>3</sup> Syr Arthur þe honest, auenant, and able.  
<sup>4</sup> He fhal.    <sup>5</sup> Om.    <sup>6</sup> These two lines are omitted in MS. L. and are supplied from MS. D.    <sup>7</sup> furget, he beris hit in.



A<sup>s</sup> sawtire engrelede, of siluer full fchene.

He beris [it<sup>9</sup>] of sabitte, fothely to saye; —

[fol. 157b.] In kyng<sup>10</sup> Arthures hauſte —

The childe<sup>11</sup> playes hym<sup>12</sup> at the baſte, — 'Full derfely a<sup>14</sup> daye. —

That 'saft owttraye<sup>13</sup> 3ow aſte, —

## XXV.

Hafe gud daye, dame<sup>1</sup> Gayn<sup>2</sup>, and Gawayne þ<sup>e</sup> gude !

300

I hafe no langare 'tyme, mo tales to<sup>3</sup> teſte ;

'For me buſe wende one my waye, thorowte this<sup>3</sup> wode,

'Vn to my wonnyng wane<sup>4</sup>, in waa for to weſte<sup>5</sup>.

For hym þ<sup>t</sup> 'rewfully raſe, & rente was one<sup>6</sup> rude,

Thynke one þe dawngere, 'and the dole<sup>7</sup>, þ<sup>t</sup> I in dueſte ;

305

And<sup>8</sup> fede folke, for my ſake, þat fautes<sup>9</sup> the fude,

And mene<sup>10</sup> me w<sup>t</sup> 'meſſes, and matyns<sup>11</sup> ī meſte.

[Meſſes arñ medecyes to vs that bale bides<sup>12</sup> ;] —

Vs thynke a meſſe als<sup>13</sup> ſwete, —

Als<sup>13</sup> any ſpyce þat eu<sup>9</sup> 'þ<sup>u</sup> ete<sup>14</sup>. — The gaſte a-waye glydis. —

'And thus<sup>15</sup>, w<sup>t</sup> a gryfely grete, —

## XXVI.

[With a grifly grete, þe goofte a-wey glides,

And goes, with gronyng fore, þorgh þe greues grene<sup>1</sup> ;]

<sup>8</sup> With a. <sup>9</sup> Supplied from MS. D. <sup>10</sup> riche. <sup>11</sup> barne. <sup>12</sup> Om. <sup>13</sup> on-tray shall'.

<sup>14</sup> Delfully þ<sup>t</sup>.

XXV.—<sup>1</sup> Om. <sup>2</sup> tome, tidinges. <sup>3</sup> I mote walke oñ my wey, þorgh pis wilde.

<sup>4</sup> In my wonyng ftid. <sup>5</sup> dwelle. <sup>6</sup> rightwifly roſe, & reſt oñ þe. <sup>7</sup> Om. <sup>8</sup> Om.

<sup>9</sup> faileñ. <sup>10</sup> menge. <sup>11</sup> matens & maſſe. <sup>12</sup> Instead of this line from MS. D. the Lincoln MS. has the laſt five lines of stanza XVIII. inserted, by negligence of the ſcribe. <sup>13</sup> as. <sup>14</sup> ye yete. <sup>15</sup> Om.

XXVI.—<sup>1</sup> Theſe lines are wanting in MS. L.

The wynde<sup>2</sup>, and<sup>3</sup> the wedyrs, þa<sup>4</sup> welke<sup>5</sup> 'in hydis<sup>6</sup>; 315  
 Tha<sup>7</sup> vnclofede the clowddis, þ<sup>e</sup> fo<sup>8</sup>ne 'fchane fchene<sup>6</sup>.  
 The kynge his bogift hafe blowe<sup>9</sup>, & on þ<sup>e</sup> bent bydis;  
 His fayre folke in 'firthes, flokkes in fere<sup>7</sup>;  
 'Alle that royatte<sup>8</sup> rowte to þ<sup>e</sup> qwene rydys,  
 'And melis to hir mildely, one þaire manere<sup>9</sup>. 320  
 The 'wyes on fwilke wondirs a-wondirde þaire<sup>10</sup> were;   
 'The prynces<sup>11</sup> prowdeste in patte,   
 Dame Gayno<sup>6</sup>, and atte,  To þaire<sup>13</sup> fopere.   
 Went to 'Randolfe fett hau<sup>12</sup>,

## XXVII.

The kynge 'was sett to þ<sup>e</sup> fupere, &<sup>1</sup> ferued in fale,  
 Vndir a seloure of fylke, 'fult daynetyuoufely<sup>2</sup> dighte;  
 W<sup>t</sup> atte the<sup>3</sup> wirchipe 'to welde, & wyne for to wale<sup>4</sup>;  
 'Birdis in brede, of brynt golde<sup>5</sup> bryghte.  
 Ther come 'two fetolers in<sup>6</sup>, w<sup>t</sup> a fymbale, 330  
 A lady, luffome of late<sup>7</sup>, ledande a knyghte;  
 'Scho rydes vp to þ<sup>e</sup> heghe deffe<sup>8</sup>, by-fore þ<sup>e</sup> royatte<sup>9</sup>,  
 And afkede<sup>10</sup> f Arthure, fult<sup>11</sup> hendely one highte.  
 Scho<sup>12</sup> faide to þ<sup>t</sup><sup>13</sup> fou<sup>9</sup>ayne, wlonkefte in wedis<sup>14</sup>,   
 [fol. 158.] "Ma<sup>15</sup>ne mo<sup>15</sup>fte of myghte,   
 Here 'es comy<sup>16</sup>ñ ane armed knyghte;— For thi manhede."   
 Now<sup>17</sup> do hym refo<sup>16</sup>ne, and ryghte,

<sup>2</sup> wyndes. <sup>3</sup> Om. <sup>4</sup> þe. <sup>5</sup> vnhides. <sup>6</sup> con fhene. <sup>7</sup> þe frith þei flokke<sup>9</sup> by-dene.

<sup>8</sup> And al þe riall'. <sup>9</sup> She fayer hem þe felcoupes, þat þai hadde þe feen. <sup>10</sup> wife  
of þe wede for-wondred þey. <sup>11</sup> Prince. <sup>12</sup> Rondoles halle. <sup>13</sup> þe.

XXVII.—<sup>1</sup> to fouper is fet. <sup>2</sup> dayntly. <sup>3</sup> Om. <sup>4</sup> and wele mewith þe walle.  
<sup>5</sup> Briddes brande<sup>9</sup>, and brad, i bankers. <sup>6</sup> in a foteler. <sup>7</sup> lote. <sup>8</sup> Ho raykes vp,  
in a res. <sup>9</sup> rialle. <sup>10</sup> halfed. <sup>11</sup> Om. <sup>12</sup> Ho. <sup>13</sup> þe. <sup>14</sup> wede. <sup>15</sup> makeles.  
<sup>16</sup> cōmes añ errant. <sup>17</sup> Om.

## XXVIII.

The<sup>1</sup> mane in his<sup>2</sup> mantyfl 'fytis at his<sup>3</sup> mete,  
 In 'paulle purede w<sup>t</sup> pane, full p<sup>o</sup>cyousely dyghte<sup>4</sup> ; 340  
 Trofelyte, and trauerfte, wyth trewloues in trete<sup>5</sup> ;  
 The 'tafee was<sup>6</sup> of topas, þat 'þer to was<sup>7</sup> tyghte.  
 He glyfte vpe with hys eghne, þat graye ware, & grete,  
 With his burely<sup>8</sup> berde, one þat birde bryghte ;  
 He was the sou<sup>9</sup>aynefte 'fir, sittande<sup>9</sup> in sette, 345  
 þat eu<sup>9</sup> any<sup>10</sup> fegge 'faughe, or fene was w<sup>t</sup> fyghte<sup>11</sup>.  
 'Thus the<sup>12</sup> kyng, crowned in kythe, carpis<sup>13</sup> hir tiff,—  
 " Welecome, worthyly wyghte !—  
 Thou<sup>14</sup> saff hafe refone, & ryghte ; — If it be thi wiff ?" —  
 Whytheñ es this<sup>15</sup> comly knyghte,—

## XXIX.

Scho<sup>1</sup> was the worthiliefte<sup>2</sup> wyghte, þ<sup>t</sup> any 'wy myghte welde<sup>3</sup> ;  
 Hir gyde was glorious, and gaye, 'alle of gyrse<sup>4</sup> grene ;  
 Hir beffe was of plonkete<sup>5</sup>, with birdis full baulde,  
 'Botonede w<sup>t</sup> besantes<sup>6</sup>, & bokellede full bene ; 355  
 Hir faxe in fyñ perrye 'frette was<sup>7</sup> in fowlde,  
 'The cont<sup>8</sup>felette in a<sup>8</sup> keffe, colourede full clene ;  
 With a crowne 'of cryftalle, and of clere<sup>9</sup> golde ;  
 Hir courchefes were coryoufe, w<sup>t</sup> many prowde pyñ.

XXVIII.—<sup>1</sup> Om. <sup>2</sup> þe. <sup>3</sup> þat fittes at þi. <sup>4</sup> pal pured to pay, prodly pight.  
<sup>5</sup> This line is omitted in MS. D. <sup>6</sup> taffes were. <sup>7</sup> were þereto. <sup>8</sup> beueren. <sup>9</sup> of al  
 fitting. <sup>10</sup> Om. <sup>11</sup> had feñ w<sup>t</sup> his eze-fight. <sup>12</sup> Om. <sup>13</sup> talkes. <sup>14</sup> He. <sup>15</sup> 3e.

XXIX.—<sup>1</sup> Ho. <sup>2</sup> worpieft. <sup>3</sup> wede wolde. <sup>4</sup> of a greffe. <sup>5</sup> blunket. <sup>6</sup> Branded  
 w<sup>t</sup> brende golde. <sup>7</sup> was fretted. <sup>8</sup> Contrefeled and. <sup>9</sup> craftly, al of clene.

[Her perre was prayfed, with prife men of might ;<sup>10</sup>]  
 The<sup>11</sup> bryghte byrdis, and balde,  
 Had 'note ynoghe<sup>12</sup> to by-halde, — And one þ<sup>t</sup>hende<sup>14</sup> knyghte.  
 One<sup>13</sup> þat freely to fawlde, —

## XXX.

That<sup>1</sup> knyghte in his coloures was armede full clene, 365  
 With his comly crefte, 'full clene<sup>2</sup> to by-holde ;  
 His brenyes<sup>3</sup>, and his bacenett, burnefchet full bene,  
 W<sup>t</sup> a bourdoure<sup>4</sup> a-bowte, alle of brynte golde ;  
 His mayles was<sup>5</sup> mylk-whytte, 'enclofede fo clene<sup>6</sup> ;  
 His horse trappede 'with the fame, als it was<sup>7</sup> me taulde. 370  
 The<sup>8</sup> schelde one his schuldir, of syluere full<sup>9</sup> fchene,  
 With 'bare-heuedis of blake, burely, and<sup>10</sup> baulde ;  
 His horfe 'withe sendale was teldede, and<sup>11</sup> trappede to þ<sup>e</sup> hele ;  
 And his<sup>12</sup> cheuarone by-forne, —  
 Stode als<sup>13</sup> ane vnycorne, — 'And mayles<sup>16</sup> of ftele. —  
 Als so<sup>14</sup> fcharpe als any<sup>15</sup> thorne, —

## XXXI.

In ftele 'was he<sup>1</sup> stuffede, þat 'fteryñ was one<sup>2</sup> ftede,  
 Afte of fternys of golde, 'þat ftekillede was one ftraye<sup>3</sup> ;  
 [fol. 158<sup>b</sup>.] 'He, and his gambefoũns, glomede als gledys<sup>4</sup>, 380

<sup>10</sup> *This line is wanting in MS. L.*    <sup>11</sup> *Om.*    <sup>12</sup> *i-nore (sic.)*    <sup>13</sup> *Of.*    <sup>14</sup> *pe.*

XXX.—<sup>1</sup> The.    <sup>2</sup> clere.    <sup>3</sup> brene.    <sup>4</sup> braudure.    <sup>5</sup> were.    <sup>6</sup> many hit seeñ.    <sup>7</sup> of  
 that ilke, as true mē.    <sup>8</sup> His.    <sup>9</sup> fo.    <sup>10</sup> bere-hedes of brake, browed ful.    <sup>11</sup> in fyne  
 fandel was.    <sup>12</sup> in his.    <sup>13</sup> as.    <sup>14</sup> *Om.*    <sup>15</sup> a.    <sup>16</sup> An anlas.

XXXI.—<sup>1</sup> he was.    <sup>2</sup> ftourne vppoñ.    <sup>3</sup> his pencell' displaied.    <sup>4</sup> His gloues, his  
 gamefons, glowed as a glede.

With graynes of 'rubyes, that graythede were<sup>5</sup> gaye ;  
 And his schene 'schynbawdes, fcharpe for<sup>6</sup> to schrede ;  
 [His pole<sup>9</sup> with pelicoc<sup>9</sup> were poudred to pay<sup>7</sup>.]  
 Pus<sup>8</sup> w<sup>t</sup> a lance appoñ<sup>9</sup> lofte, þat 'lady guñ he<sup>11</sup> lede ;  
 A swayne<sup>12</sup>, one a frefone, 'folowede hym<sup>13</sup>, in faye<sup>14</sup> ; 385  
 [The frefoñ<sup>15</sup> was a-fered, for drede of þat fare ;]  
 'He was feldoñ wounte<sup>16</sup> —  
 'To see the tabiſte at his frounte<sup>17</sup> ; — 'Full feldoñ to see<sup>19</sup>. —  
 'Swilke gañmenes was he wonte<sup>18</sup> —

## XXXII.

Arthure askede 'in hye, one-herande þañ<sup>1</sup> aſte,  
 " Whate woldeſt þ<sup>u</sup>, wy, 3if it were<sup>2</sup> thi witte?  
 Teſte me whate þ<sup>u</sup> ſekis, and 'whedir þ<sup>t</sup> þ<sup>u</sup><sup>3</sup> ſchaſte,  
 And why þ<sup>u</sup> ſtonyes<sup>4</sup> on thi ſtede, and<sup>5</sup> ſtondis ſo ſtiſte?"  
 He lyfte<sup>6</sup> vpe his 'veſage fro þ<sup>e</sup><sup>7</sup> ventaſte, 395  
 And<sup>8</sup> w<sup>t</sup> a knyghtly contenance he carpiſ hỹ tiſt :  
 " Be<sup>9</sup> þ<sup>u</sup> kayſere, or kynge, here I the be-caſte,  
 [fol. 158<sup>b</sup>.] To<sup>10</sup> fynde me a freke, to fyghte one<sup>11</sup> my fiſt ;  
 For<sup>12</sup> fyghtynge to frayſte, I fowndede fra hame." —  
 'The kynge carpede on heghte<sup>13</sup>, —  
 " 'Lyghte, & lende<sup>14</sup> aſte nyghte, — And telle me thi name." —  
 If thou be curtayſe knyghte<sup>15</sup>, —

<sup>5</sup> rebe, that graied beñ. <sup>6</sup> schynbandes, þat ſharp wer'. <sup>7</sup> This line, and line 9 of this stanza, are wanting in MS. L. <sup>8</sup> Om. <sup>9</sup> oñ. <sup>10</sup> louely coñ. <sup>12</sup> freke. <sup>13</sup> him folowed. <sup>14</sup> This and the preceding line are transposed in MS. L. <sup>15</sup> freke. <sup>16</sup> For he was felden wonte to ſe. <sup>17</sup> The tablet fluré. <sup>18</sup> Sic he gamen ne gle. <sup>19</sup> Sa3 he neuer are.

XXXII.—<sup>1</sup> oñ hi3t, herand hem. <sup>2</sup> be. <sup>3</sup> wheper þou. <sup>4</sup> ſturne. <sup>5</sup> Om. <sup>6</sup> wayned. <sup>7</sup> viſer fro his. <sup>8</sup> Om. <sup>9</sup> Wheper. <sup>10</sup> Fore to. <sup>11</sup> with. <sup>12</sup> Om. <sup>13</sup> Then ſeid the king vpoñ hight. <sup>14</sup> Late lenge. <sup>15</sup> This and the previous line are transposed in MS. D.

## XXXIII.

“ My name es f Gallerouñ, w<sup>t</sup> owttyñ any gyle ;  
 The grettefte of Galowaye, of greves & ‘of gyllis<sup>1</sup>, 405  
 Of Konyng<sup>2</sup>, ‘of Carryke<sup>3</sup>, of Conygame, ‘of Kytte<sup>4</sup>,  
 Of Lomonde, of Lenay<sup>5</sup>, of Lowthyane hillis ;  
 Thou hafe wonnē ‘thaym one<sup>6</sup> werre, w<sup>t</sup> owtrageoufe<sup>7</sup> wiſt,  
 And gyffeñ þaṁ<sup>8</sup> f Gawayne, and<sup>9</sup> þat myñ herte grilles.  
 [But he fhal wring his honde, and warry the wyle<sup>10</sup>,] 410  
 ‘Or he weldeñ my landes, at myñ vñ-thanks<sup>11</sup>.  
 By aſte þ<sup>e</sup> welthe of this<sup>12</sup> werlde, he ſaſt þaṁ<sup>13</sup> neu<sup>9</sup> welde,  
 ‘Whiſts I my<sup>14</sup> hede may bere ; —  
 ‘Bot he<sup>15</sup> wyñ ‘þaṁ one<sup>16</sup> werre, — Appone<sup>19</sup> a fair felde ! —  
 ‘Bothe w<sup>t17</sup> ſchelde, & w<sup>t18</sup> fpere, —

## XXXIV.

I wiſt fighte one a felde, &<sup>1</sup> þ<sup>9</sup> to ‘make I my<sup>2</sup> faythe,  
 Wiſt any freke ‘one the<sup>3</sup> foulde, þat frely es borne ;  
 To ‘loſſe ſwylike<sup>4</sup> a lordchipe, me ‘thynke it fuſt<sup>5</sup> laythe,  
 And ‘ilke a leueande lede<sup>6</sup> wolde laughe me to ſkorne.” — 420  
 “ We areñ<sup>7</sup> here<sup>8</sup> in the wode, walkande<sup>9</sup> one our wathe ;  
 We<sup>10</sup> hunte at the herdis<sup>11</sup>, w<sup>t</sup> hundes<sup>12</sup>, and w<sup>t</sup> horne ;  
 We ‘areñ one<sup>13</sup> owre gameñ, we ‘ne hafe no gude<sup>14</sup> graythe,

XXXIII.—<sup>1</sup> grylles. <sup>2</sup> Connok. <sup>3</sup> Om. <sup>4</sup> and alfo Kyle. <sup>5</sup> Loſex. <sup>6</sup> hem in.  
<sup>7</sup> a wrange. <sup>8</sup> hem to. <sup>9</sup> Om. <sup>10</sup> This line is omitted in MS. L. <sup>11</sup> Er he weld  
 hem, y-wys, agayñ myñ vmwyſles. <sup>12</sup> þe. <sup>13</sup> hem. <sup>14</sup> While I þe. <sup>15</sup> But if he.  
<sup>16</sup> hem in. <sup>17</sup> Wiſt a. <sup>18</sup> a. <sup>19</sup> On.

XXXIV.—<sup>1</sup> Om. <sup>2</sup> I make. <sup>3</sup> vppoñ. <sup>4</sup> leſe fuche. <sup>5</sup> wold thenke. <sup>6</sup> fiche  
 [iche?] lede opoñ lyue. <sup>7</sup> ar. <sup>8</sup> Om. <sup>9</sup> went, to walke. <sup>10</sup> To. <sup>11</sup> hertes. <sup>12</sup> houde.  
<sup>13</sup> ar in. <sup>14</sup> hafe no gome.

Bot ȝitt þ<sup>u</sup> saß be machede by middaye to morne.

And <sup>15</sup>for thi Irede the, 'þ<sup>u</sup> rathe mane, þ<sup>u</sup> riste the afte þ<sup>e</sup> <sup>16</sup>nyghte."

[fol. 159.] Than <sup>17</sup>Gawayne, gayeste <sup>18</sup>of afte, — } That prowdeley was pyghte.  
 Ledis hym owte of the haufte, — }  
 'Vn tiß <sup>19</sup>a paveleðne of pauße, — }

## XXXV.

Pighte was it<sup>1</sup> prowdeley, wiß purpure and pauße, 430

'And doßours, and qweßchyns, and bankowres fuß<sup>2</sup> bryghte;

'W<sup>t</sup> inñ<sup>3</sup> was a chapelle, a chambir, 'and ane<sup>4</sup> haufte,

A chymneye w<sup>t</sup> charecole, to 'chawffen þat<sup>5</sup> knyghte.

His ftede was fone<sup>6</sup> ftabillede, and lede to þ<sup>e</sup> ftaße,

'And haye hendly heuyde in hekket<sup>7</sup> one hyghte. 435

Sytheñ 'he braydes<sup>8</sup> vp a burde, and clathes guñ<sup>9</sup> caße;

'Sanapes, and falers, fuß<sup>10</sup> femly to fyghte,

Preketes<sup>11</sup>, and broketes, and ftandertis by-twene. —

Than <sup>12</sup>thay feruede þ<sup>t</sup> knyghte, — } In siluere fuß<sup>16</sup> fchene. —

And his worthy<sup>13</sup> wyghte, — }

W<sup>t</sup> fuß<sup>14</sup> riche daynteths<sup>15</sup> dyghte, — }

## XXXVI.

In silu<sup>9</sup> fa femly 'þay ferue þam<sup>1</sup> of the beße,

W<sup>t</sup> vernage, in verrys and cowppys fa<sup>2</sup> clene;

And thus 'thafe gleterande gōmes, gladdis þaire geftis<sup>3</sup>, 445

<sup>15</sup> Om. <sup>16</sup> penke reft al. <sup>17</sup> Om. <sup>18</sup> grapeft. <sup>19</sup> Into.

XXXV.—<sup>1</sup> Om. ° Birdes brandeñ aboue, in brend gold. ° Inwith. ° a. ° chaufe þe. ° Om. ° Hay hertly he had, in haches. ° þei braide. ° þei. ° Sanape, and faler. ° Torches. ° Thus. ° worȝely. ° Om. ° dayntes. ° fo.

XXXVI.—<sup>1</sup> were ferued. ° ful. ° Sir Gawayñ þe good, glades ho<sup>r</sup> geft.

With riche daynteths<sup>4</sup>, endorrede, in dyfches by-deñe.  
 Wheñ the ryañle renke was gone to his ryfte,  
 The kyng in<sup>5</sup> to conceñle hafe callede his knyghtis so kene ;  
 Sayfe<sup>6</sup>, “ lukes<sup>7</sup> nowe, ‘ 3e lordyngs<sup>8</sup>, oure lofe be noghte loft, 450  
 Who sañ encont<sup>9</sup> with 3one<sup>9</sup> knyghte, ‘ nowe lukes vs<sup>10</sup> by-twene.”  
 Thane faide ‘ f Gawayne, “ he sañ vs noghte<sup>11</sup> greue ; —————  
 Here my trouthe<sup>12</sup> I 3ow plyghte<sup>13</sup>,  
 I sañ<sup>14</sup> feghte with 3one<sup>15</sup> knyghte, ————— My<sup>17</sup> lord, with<sup>18</sup> 3owrelefe.” —  
 In þe<sup>16</sup> defence of my ryghte, —————

XXXVII.<sup>1</sup>

“ I leue wele,” quod the kyng, “ thi latis are l[i3t,  
 But I nolde, for no lordefhipþ, fe þi life lorne.”]  
 “ Late gaa,” quod f Gawayne, “ Gode ft[ond with þe ri3t,]  
 If he fkape skatheles, [hit were a foule fkorne.”]  
 In the dawynge of þe [day, þe doughti were dighit ;] 460  
 ‘Thaye herde<sup>2</sup> matyns [and maffe, erly oñ morne ;]  
 By that, one Plu[toñ land a palais was pi3t,]  
 Where neu<sup>3</sup> f[reke opoñ folde had fou3teñ biforne.  
 þei setteñ liftes by-lyue oñ þe lo3 lande ;] —————  
 Twa<sup>3</sup> sop[pes de mayn] —————  
 Was<sup>4</sup> b[rougt to f Gawayñ,] ————— þe king gared cōmaunde.] —  
 For [to confort his brayñ, —————

<sup>4</sup> dayntees. <sup>5</sup> Om. <sup>6</sup> Om. <sup>7</sup> loke. <sup>8</sup> lordis. <sup>9</sup> þe. <sup>10</sup> keftes you. <sup>11</sup> Gawayñ  
 þe goode, shal hit not. <sup>12</sup> honde. <sup>13</sup> hi3t. <sup>14</sup> woll’. <sup>15</sup> þe. <sup>16</sup> Om. <sup>17</sup> Om. <sup>18</sup> by.

XXXVII.—<sup>1</sup> A large portion of this and the commencement of the succeeding stanza  
 has been torn away in the Lincoln MS. and is here supplied from MS. D. <sup>2</sup> And  
 herdeñ. <sup>3</sup> Thre. <sup>4</sup> þei.



## XXXVIII.

The [king cōmaunded Krudely, þe erles soñ of Kent,]  
 Cur[tayfly in þis case, take kepe to þe knight.]  
 [fol. 159b.] With riche daynteths<sup>1</sup> þ<sup>t</sup><sup>9</sup> day, he dynede in his tente, 470  
 'With birdes bakeñ in brede, of brynte golde<sup>3</sup> bryghte ;  
 And<sup>4</sup> fytheñ 'vn to dame<sup>5</sup> Wayno<sup>6</sup> full<sup>6</sup> wyefely he wente,  
 'And leste with hir in<sup>7</sup> warde his worthily wyghte.  
 'And thañ thies hathell's full hendely þaire horffes hafe<sup>8</sup> hent,  
 'At the lycence of the lorde, þat lordely guñ<sup>9</sup> lyghte, 475  
 'Alle bot thir beryns<sup>10</sup>, bouldeste of blode. —————  
 The kynges chayere was<sup>11</sup> sette, —————  
 'A-bowne on a chaffelett<sup>12</sup> ; ————— For Gawayne the gude. —————  
 And<sup>13</sup> many a<sup>14</sup> gaylyarde grett, —————

## XXXIX.

Gawayne and Galleroñ 'dyghtis þaire<sup>1</sup> ftedis,  
 Alle of<sup>2</sup> glet<sup>2</sup> ande golde, full<sup>3</sup> gaye was þaire<sup>4</sup> gere ;  
 Twa<sup>5</sup> lordes be-lyfe 'to thaire lyftes thayñ<sup>6</sup> ledis,  
 With many sergeauntes<sup>7</sup> of mace ; it<sup>8</sup> was þ<sup>e</sup> manere. 485  
 The 'beryns broches þaire<sup>9</sup> blonkes, 'to þaire fydes<sup>10</sup> bledis ;  
 Aythire freke appoñ felde hafe 'fichede thaire<sup>11</sup> fpere ;  
 Schaftis 'of fchene<sup>12</sup> wode þay fcheu<sup>2</sup>ede<sup>13</sup> in fchides ;

XXXVIII.—<sup>1</sup> dayntees. <sup>2</sup> or. <sup>3</sup> After bufkes him in a brene, þat burneshed was.  
<sup>4</sup> Om. <sup>5</sup> to. <sup>6</sup> Om. <sup>7</sup> He laft in here. <sup>8</sup> After aither in high ho<sup>r</sup> horfes þei.  
<sup>9</sup> And at þe liftes, oñ þe lande, lordely doñ. <sup>10</sup> Bothe þes two burnes. <sup>11</sup> is.  
<sup>12</sup> Quene oñ a chacelet. <sup>13</sup> Om. <sup>14</sup> Om.

XXXIX.—<sup>1</sup> gurdeñ hef. <sup>2</sup> in. <sup>3</sup> Om. <sup>4</sup> here. <sup>5</sup> þe. <sup>6</sup> hom to lift. <sup>7</sup> feriant.  
<sup>8</sup> as. <sup>9</sup> burnes broched þe. <sup>10</sup> þat þe fide. <sup>11</sup> folde has faftned his. <sup>12</sup> in fhide.  
<sup>13</sup> fhindre.

So jolyly those<sup>14</sup> gentill meñ<sup>15</sup> iustede one were!

Schaftis thay 'scheu<sup>9</sup>, in schydes full<sup>16</sup> schene; —

Sythen<sup>17</sup>, w<sup>t</sup> brandes full<sup>18</sup> bryghte,

Riche mayles thay righte; —

'Thus enconterde<sup>19</sup> the knyghte—

W<sup>t</sup> Gawayne, one grene. —

# XL.<sup>1</sup>

Gawayne was graythely<sup>2</sup> graythede one<sup>3</sup> grene,

495

With griffons<sup>4</sup> of golde, engrelede full gaye;

'Trayfolede w<sup>t</sup> trayfoles<sup>5</sup>, and trewluffes by-twene;

One a stirtande<sup>6</sup> stede he<sup>7</sup> strykes one straye.

[þat oper in] his turnyge<sup>8</sup> he talkis with<sup>9</sup> tene;—

[" Whi drawes þ<sup>u</sup> þe] one dreghe, & makis 'fwilke delay<sup>10</sup>?"

500

[He swapped hi yñ at þe] schuldir<sup>11</sup>, w<sup>t</sup> a fwerde kene;

[That greued f Gawayñ, to] his dede<sup>12</sup> day.

[The dyntes of þat doughȝty were do]wttous by-dene; —

[Fyfte mayles, and mo, —

The fwerde swapt in two, —

And clef his] schelde schene. —

The canel-bone also, —

# XLI.<sup>1</sup>

[He clef þorgh þe cantell, þat couered þe kniȝt,

Thorgh þe shinand<sup>2</sup> shelde, a shaftmoñ, and mare;

<sup>4</sup> pes. <sup>15</sup> Om. <sup>16</sup> shindr in sheldes fo. <sup>17</sup> And sipeñ. <sup>18</sup> Om. <sup>19</sup> There encounters.

XL.—<sup>1</sup> The imperfections in MS. L. in this stanza are supplied from MS. D. as marked by brackets. <sup>2</sup> gaily. <sup>3</sup> in. <sup>4</sup> his griffons. <sup>5</sup> Trifeled with tranes. <sup>6</sup> stargand. <sup>7</sup> þat. <sup>8</sup> t'naying. <sup>9</sup> in. <sup>10</sup> fiche deray. <sup>11</sup> fwyre. <sup>12</sup> dep.

XLI.—<sup>1</sup> A leaf in the Lincoln MS. here appears unfortunately to be lost, and the stanzas from XLI. to XLVI. inclusive, with part of XLVII. are printed from the other copy. <sup>2</sup> shiand MS.

And þeñ þe lady loude lowe vppoñ high̃t, 510  
 And Gawayñ greches þ<sup>o</sup>w<sup>t</sup>, & gremed ful fare :—  
 “ I ſhal rewarde þe þi route, if I coñ rede right !”  
 He folowed in oñ þe freke, with a freſſh fare ;  
 Þorgñ blaſoñ, and brene, þ<sup>t</sup> burneſhed wer<sup>o</sup> briȝt,  
 With a burlich bronde, thorgñ him he bare ; 515  
 The bronde was blody, þat burneſhed was briȝt. —————  
 Then gloppened þat gay ; —————  
 Hit was no ferly, in fay ; ————— In ftiropes ftriȝt. —————  
 þe ſturne ſtrik̃e oñ ſtray, —————

## XLII.

Streyte in his ſteroppes, ſtoutely he ſtrikes,  
 And waynes at f Wawayñ, als he were wode ;  
 þeñ his lēmañ on lowde ſkirles, and ſkrikes<sup>1</sup>,  
 Wheñ þat burly burne blenket oñ blode ;  
 Lordes and ladies of þat laiike likes, 525  
 And þonked God fele fithe for Gawayñ the gode.  
 With a ſwap of a ſwerde, þat ſwaþel him ſwykes,  
 He ſtroke of þe ſtede hede, ſtreite þere he ſtode ;  
 The faire ſole fondred, and fel to the grounde. —————  
 Gawayñ gloppened in hert, —————  
 Of he were haſty and ſmert ; ————— Fro Griffett þe goode. —————  
 Out of ſterops he ſtert, —————

## XLIII.

“ Griffett,” q<sup>d</sup> Gawayñ, “ gon is, God wote !  
 He was þe burlokeſt blonke, that eu<sup>o</sup> bote brede ! 535

By him, þat in Bedeleem was borne, eu<sup>9</sup> to beñ o<sup>r</sup> bote,  
I ſhaſt venge þe to day, if I coñ right rede !

Go fecche me my freſoñ, faireſt oñ fote,

He may ſtonde þe in ſtoure, in as mekle ſtede ;

No more for þe faire ſole theñ for a riſſh rote,

540

But for doel of þe dombe beſt, þ<sup>t</sup> þus ſhuld be dede ;

I mo<sup>n</sup>e for no montur<sup>9</sup>, for I may gete mare.”—

Als he ſtode by his ſtede,

þat was ſo goode at neede,

So fiked he fare.

Ner Gawayñ wax wede,

## XLIV.

Thus wepus for wo, Wowayñ þe wight,

And wenys him to quyte, þat wonded is fare ;

þat oþer droȝ hī on dreȝt, for drede of þe kniȝt,

And boldely broched his blonk, oñ the bent bare.

550

þus may þei<sup>1</sup> dryve forthe þe day, to þe derke niȝt ;

The ſoñ was paſſed, by þat, mydday and mare ;

With in þe liſtes þe lede lordly doñ liȝt ;

Touard the burne, with his bronde, he buſked him þare.

To bataile þey bowe, with brondes ſo briȝt ;

Shene ſheldes wer<sup>9</sup> ſhred,

Briȝt brenes by-bled,

So ferfely þei fight !

Many douȝti were a-dred,

## XLV.

Thus þei feght oñ fote, oñ þat fair<sup>9</sup> felde,

560

As freſh as a lyoñ, þat fautes þe fille ;

XLIV.—<sup>1</sup> þ<sup>ui</sup>, MS.

R

Wilele þes wigh̃t meñ, þair<sup>9</sup> wepenes þey welde,

\* \* \* \* \*

He bronched him yñ with his bronde, vnder þe brode fhelde,  
þorgh̃ the waast of þe body, and wonded him ille ;  
þe fwerde stent for no stuf, hit was so wel steled ;  
þat oþer startis oñ bak, and stondis stoñ stille.

565

Though he were stonayed þat stonde, he strik̃ ful fare ;

He gurd̃s to f̃ Gawayñ,

Thorgh̃ ventaile, and þefayñ ;

He wanted noȝt to be flayñ

þe brede of añ hare.

#### XLVI.

Hardely þeñ þes haþelese on helmes þey hewe,

þei beteñ downe beriles, and bõdures bright ;

Shildes oñ fhildres, þ<sup>t</sup> fhene were to fhewe,

Fretted were in fyne golde, þei faileñ in figh̃t ;

575

Stones of iral þey strenkel, and strewe,

Stiþe stapeles of stele þey strike doñ stiz̃t ;

Burnes banneñ þe tyme þe bargañ was brewe,

The doug̃hti with dyntes so delfully were dight.

Theñ gretes Gayno<sup>r</sup>, w<sup>t</sup> bothe her<sup>9</sup> gray ene ;

For þo douȝti þat fiz̃t,

Were manly mached of might,

With oute resoñ, or right,

As al meñ fene.

#### XLVII.

Thus gretis Gayno<sup>r</sup>, with boþe her<sup>9</sup> gray yene,

585

For gref of f̃ Gawayñ, grifly was wounded ;

XLV.—<sup>1</sup> A line is wanting in the MS.

The knyght of corage was cruel and kene,  
 And with a ftele bronde, þat sturne oft<sup>1</sup> stonde;]  
 Al þe cost of [the<sup>2</sup>] knyght he carf downe clene,  
 þorgh þe riche mailes, þat ronke were, and rounde;] 590  
 [fol. 160.] 'Swylke a touche at þat tyme<sup>3</sup> he taughte hym in tene,  
 He girdede<sup>4</sup> & Galleroñ growelynge one grownde.  
 'Galleroñ full greuoufely granes on þe<sup>5</sup> grene; —  
 And<sup>6</sup> als wondede als<sup>7</sup> he was, —  
 'Swyftly vpe<sup>8</sup> he rafe, — Wt a fwerde schene<sup>10</sup>. —  
 And folowde 'in faste on his faas<sup>9</sup>, —

## XLVIII.

Clenly þat crewette cou<sup>9</sup>de hȳ<sup>1</sup> on highte,  
 And wt a caste<sup>2</sup> of þe<sup>3</sup> care, in kautette he strykes;  
 'Fult ȝerne he wayttis & Wawayne þe<sup>4</sup> wighte, 600  
 Bot hym lympeþe þe werse,—and þat me wele lykis.  
 He etylde with a flynge hafe flayne hym wt<sup>5</sup> fleghte;  
 The fwerde 'fleppis on flante<sup>6</sup>, & one the mayle flydys<sup>7</sup>;  
 And &<sup>8</sup> Gawayne by þe colere clekis<sup>9</sup> the knyghte;—  
 Than his lemane 'so lowde fkremes<sup>10</sup> and fkrykis. 605  
 'Scho grete<sup>11</sup> one dame<sup>12</sup> Gayno<sup>13</sup>, wt 'granes fo<sup>13</sup> grylfe, —  
 'And faide<sup>14</sup>, "lady! makles of myghte, —  
 Hafe now<sup>15</sup> mercy one ȝone<sup>16</sup> knyghte, — Giffe it be thi wilf." —  
 þat es so dulefully dyghte, —

XLVII.—<sup>1</sup> oft, *MS.*    <sup>2</sup> *This word is not in the MS.*    <sup>3</sup> With a teneful touche, *MS. D.*    <sup>4</sup> gurdēs.    <sup>5</sup> Grifly oñ gronde he groned oñ.    <sup>6</sup> *Om.*    <sup>7</sup> as.    <sup>8</sup> Sone buredely.    <sup>9</sup> fast oñ his tras.    <sup>10</sup> kene.

XLVIII.—<sup>1</sup> *Om.*    <sup>2</sup> scas.    <sup>3</sup> *Om.*    <sup>4</sup> And waynes at fir Wawyñ, þt worpely.    <sup>5</sup> in.    <sup>6</sup> fwapped oñ his fwange.    <sup>7</sup> flikes.    <sup>8</sup> *Om.*    <sup>9</sup> keppes.    <sup>10</sup> oñ loft fkrilles.    <sup>11</sup> Ho gretes.    <sup>12</sup> *Om.*    <sup>13</sup> gronyng.    <sup>14</sup> *Om.*    <sup>15</sup> *Om.*    <sup>16</sup> yondre.

## XLIX.

'Than wilfully<sup>1</sup> dame Waynō<sup>2</sup> 'vn to<sup>3</sup> þe kyng went,  
 Scho<sup>3</sup> caught of hir coronatfe, & knelyde hȳ tiſt ;—  
 “ Als þ<sup>u</sup> erte roye<sup>4</sup> ryafte, and<sup>5</sup> recheſte of rent,  
 And I thyñ<sup>5</sup> wyfe, weddid at myñ<sup>7</sup> aweñ wiſt,  
 'zone beryns in zone batetfe, þ<sup>t</sup> bledis one zone<sup>8</sup> bent, 615  
 þay are<sup>9</sup> wery, I wyffe, and wondide fuſt iſt ;  
 Thurgñ [her<sup>9 10</sup>] ſchene ſchildis þaire<sup>11</sup> ſchuldirs are ſchent ;  
 [The grones of f Gawayñ dos my hert grille. <sup>12</sup>]  
 The granes of f Gawayne greuys<sup>13</sup> me fuſt<sup>14</sup> fare ;  
 'Wolde þ<sup>u</sup>, luſly<sup>15</sup> lorde, —  
 'Gare the<sup>16</sup> knyghtis accorde, — Tilt<sup>18</sup> alle þ<sup>t</sup> here<sup>19</sup> ware.”  
 It ware grete<sup>17</sup> comforde —

## L.

'Bot þan hȳ fpake<sup>1</sup> Galleroñ to Gawayne þ<sup>e</sup> gude :  
 “ I wende no<sup>2</sup> wy, in this werlde, 'were haluendeſſe<sup>3</sup> fo wyghte.  
 Here I make the releſe 'in my rentis<sup>4</sup>, by þe rode !  
 And 'by-fore thiefe ryafte, reſynge<sup>5</sup> the my ryghte ;  
 And ſytheñ I<sup>6</sup> make the manredeñ, w<sup>t</sup> a mylde mode,  
 'Als to mane in this medilerthe<sup>7</sup> makles of myghte.”  
 [fol. 160<sup>b</sup>.] He talkes to-warde þ<sup>e</sup> 'knyghte, one heghte<sup>8</sup> þere he ftode, 630

XLIX.—<sup>1</sup> Wifly. <sup>2</sup> to. <sup>3</sup> Ho. <sup>4</sup> ioy (*sic.*) <sup>5</sup> Om. <sup>6</sup> pi. <sup>7</sup> pi. <sup>8</sup> þeſe burnes  
 in þe bataile, fo blede on þe. <sup>9</sup> arñ. <sup>10</sup> Omitted in MS. L. <sup>11</sup> her. <sup>12</sup> This line  
 is wanting in MS. L. <sup>13</sup> greueñ. <sup>14</sup> Om. <sup>15</sup> Woldeſt pou leve. <sup>16</sup> Make þeſ.  
<sup>17</sup> a grete. <sup>18</sup> For. <sup>19</sup> þeñ.

L.—<sup>1</sup> Theñ fpak fir. <sup>2</sup> neuer. <sup>3</sup> had beñ half. <sup>4</sup> renke. <sup>5</sup> by rial reyfoñ  
 releſe. <sup>6</sup> Om. <sup>7</sup> As mañ of medlert. <sup>8</sup> king, oñ hie.

He<sup>9</sup> bedde þ<sup>t</sup> burely his brande, þ<sup>t</sup> burnefchede was bryghte:—

“ Of renttis and reches I make the relefe.”

Dowñe 'knelis þat<sup>10</sup> knyghte,

And 'carpis thies<sup>11</sup> wordes one highte;— And 'cōmandis þ<sup>e12</sup> pefe.

The kyng ftude vp-ryghte,

## LI.

þ<sup>e</sup> kynge 'comandis þ<sup>e1</sup> pefe, and cryes<sup>2</sup> one highte ;

And Gawayne was gudly, and lefte for his fake ;

And<sup>3</sup> þañ 'to þ<sup>e</sup> lyftis þ<sup>e</sup> lordis leppis<sup>4</sup> full lyghte,

f 'Owayne fytz-Vryene, and Arrake, full rathe<sup>5</sup> ;

640

'Marrake, and Menegalle<sup>6</sup>, þat mafte were of myghte.

Bathe þafe trauelde 'knyghtes trewly þay taghte<sup>7</sup> ;

Vnnethes<sup>8</sup> myghte 'thofe knyghtes<sup>9</sup> ftande vp ryghte ;

'þay were for-bett, & for-blede, þaire wedis<sup>10</sup> wexe blake,

[Her<sup>9</sup> blees were brofed, for beting of brondes.<sup>11</sup>]

W<sup>t</sup> owtteñ more lettynge,

'Was dighte there thiere femblynge<sup>12</sup>;— And<sup>14</sup> helde vpe þair<sup>15</sup> handes.

By-fore þat<sup>13</sup> comly kynge,

## LII.

“ 'I gyffe to the<sup>1</sup>, f Gawayne,” 'quode þ<sup>e</sup> kynge, “ trefoure<sup>2</sup>, and golde,

'Glamorgans lañdis<sup>3</sup>, with greuys fo grene ;

þ<sup>e</sup> wirchipe of Wales, 'to welde and to<sup>4</sup> wolde,

<sup>9</sup> And. <sup>10</sup> kneled þe. <sup>11</sup> carped. <sup>12</sup> cōmaunded.

LI.—<sup>1</sup> cōmaunded. <sup>2</sup> cried. <sup>3</sup> Om. <sup>4</sup> lordes to liftes þey lopen. <sup>5</sup> Ewayñ f; Briañ, & Arrak f; Lake. <sup>6</sup> fir Drurelat, and Moylard. <sup>7</sup> meñ þey truly vp take.

<sup>8</sup> Vnneth. <sup>9</sup> þo fturme. <sup>10</sup> What for buffetes and blode, hef blees. <sup>11</sup> *This line is wanting in MS. L.* <sup>12</sup> Dizte was here fajtlynge. <sup>13</sup> þe. <sup>14</sup> þei. <sup>15</sup> hef.

LII.—<sup>1</sup> Here I gif. <sup>2</sup> w<sup>t</sup> gerfoñ. <sup>3</sup> Al þe Glamergañ londe. <sup>4</sup> at wil and at.



With Gryffoñs castelle<sup>5</sup>, kirnelde fo<sup>6</sup> clene ;  
 'And þ<sup>e</sup> Hufters Hauſte<sup>7</sup>, to haſe, and to holde,  
 'Wayfurthe, and Wakfelde, wallede<sup>8</sup>, I wene ; 655  
 Twa baronryſe in Burgoyne<sup>9</sup>, w<sup>t</sup> burghes fo balde,  
 That 'are moted<sup>10</sup> abowte, and byggede full bene.  
 I ſaſt 'endowe þe als<sup>11</sup> a duke, and dub the w<sup>t</sup> myñ<sup>12</sup> hande, —————  
 With þ<sup>i</sup>þ<sup>n</sup> ſaughtifw<sup>t</sup> 'zone<sup>13</sup> gentifknyghte, —————  
 That es ſo hardy and wyghte, ————— And graunte h̄y his lande." —  
 And releſe hym thi<sup>14</sup> ryghte, —————

## LIII.

"'Now, and here I gyffe h̄y," quod Gawayne<sup>1</sup>, "w<sup>t</sup> owttyñ ony gyle,  
 Aſſe þ<sup>e</sup> landes, & þ<sup>e</sup> lythes, fra Lowyke<sup>2</sup> to Layre ;  
 'Commoke, and Carrike<sup>3</sup>, Conyghame, and Kille, 665  
 'Als the cheualrous knyghte haſe chalandchede als ayere<sup>4</sup> ;  
 'The Lebynge, the Lowpynge, þ<sup>e</sup> Leveaſtre Ile<sup>5</sup>,  
 Bathe<sup>6</sup> frythes, and foreſtes, 'frely and<sup>7</sup> faire ;  
 [Vnder 30<sup>r</sup> lordefhip to lenge þe<sup>8</sup> while,  
 And to þe Rounde Table 'to make<sup>9</sup> repaire ; 670  
 I ſhal reſeff him in felde, ī foreſt<sup>9</sup> ſo fair<sup>10</sup>."] —————  
 Than<sup>11</sup> þ<sup>e</sup> kynge, and þ<sup>e</sup> quene, —————  
 And aſſe the doghety by-dene, ————— To Carlele þay kayre. —  
 Thorow þ<sup>e</sup> greuys ſo grene, —————

<sup>5</sup> caſtelles. <sup>6</sup> ful. <sup>7</sup> Eke Viſtur halle. <sup>8</sup> Wayford, and Waterforde, ī Wales.

<sup>9</sup> Bretayne. <sup>10</sup> arñ batailed. <sup>11</sup> diȝt þe. <sup>12</sup> Om. <sup>13</sup> þe. <sup>14</sup> his.

LIII.—<sup>1</sup> Here I gif fir Galeron, q<sup>d</sup> G. <sup>2</sup> Lauer. <sup>3</sup> Connoke, and Carlele. <sup>4</sup> *Originally in MS. D.* þet if he haſ cheualry, and chalange hit for are, *but altered by a ſecond hand to* þet if he of cheualry, chalange ham for aiñ. <sup>5</sup> þe Lother, þe Lēmok, þe Loynak, þe Lile. *In MS. L. the laſt word was at firſt written helle, then Ile, and laſtly I lee.* <sup>6</sup> With. <sup>7</sup> and foſſes, <sup>8</sup> *So written by the firſt hand, but altered to heren by a ſecond.* <sup>9</sup> *By the ſecond hand ; the firſt has only a.* <sup>10</sup> *The laſt word was originally written fare ; hence Pinkerton's text to fare. Theſe lines within brackets are wanting in MS. L.* <sup>11</sup> Boþe.

## LIV.

The kyng to Carelele es comeñ, w<sup>t</sup> knyghttis fo kene,  
 'To halde his<sup>1</sup> Rownde Tabiff, one ryaffe arraye ;  
 'Thofe knyghtes<sup>2</sup>, þ<sup>t</sup> were<sup>3</sup> wondede full<sup>4</sup> wathely, als<sup>5</sup> I wene,  
 [fol. 161.] Surgeoñs 'sanede thaym<sup>6</sup>, fothely to saye.  
 Bothe 'comforthede thaym thañ<sup>7</sup>, the kyng and the qwene , 680  
 Thay ware dubbyde dukes bothe one a daye ;  
 'And ther f<sup>8</sup> Galleroñ<sup>8</sup> weddid his wyfe, 'þ<sup>t</sup> femly & fchene<sup>9</sup>,  
 With gyftis, and 'gerfoñs, of f<sup>8</sup> Gawayne<sup>10</sup> the gaye.  
 'And thus thofe hathells<sup>11</sup> w<sup>t</sup> haldis that hende ;  
 And<sup>12</sup> wheñ he was faned<sup>13</sup>, and<sup>14</sup> fownde,  
 þay made 'hyñ fworne to f<sup>8</sup> Gawane i<sup>15</sup> þ<sup>t</sup> stownde, — 'Vn tiñ<sup>17</sup> his lyuesende. —  
 'And fythen<sup>16</sup>, a knyghte of þ<sup>e</sup> Tabiffe Rownde, —

## LV.

'Dame Gayno<sup>r</sup> garte befylly<sup>1</sup> wryte i<sup>2</sup> to þ<sup>e</sup> wefte,  
 To 'affe 'man<sup>3</sup> e of<sup>3</sup> relygeous, to rede and to synge ; 690  
 Prides with proceffyoñs<sup>4</sup> [to p<sup>a</sup>y were prest,  
 W<sup>t</sup> a mylioñ of<sup>5</sup>] meffis, to make hir<sup>6</sup> menyge ;  
 'Dukes, erles, barouns, and<sup>7</sup> bechoppes of<sup>8</sup> the beſte,  
 'Thurghe 'affe Yglande ſcho garte make menyng<sup>9</sup>.  
 'And thus this ferlyes by-ſette in a<sup>10</sup> foreſte, 695  
 Vndir an<sup>11</sup> holte ſo bare<sup>12</sup>, at an<sup>13</sup> hunttynge ;

LIV.—<sup>1</sup> And al þe. <sup>2</sup> þe wees. <sup>3</sup> wereñ. <sup>4</sup> fo. <sup>5</sup> Om. <sup>6</sup> ſone faued. <sup>7</sup> confortes þe knyghtes. <sup>8</sup> There he. <sup>9</sup> flonkeſt [*read* wlonkeſt], I wene. <sup>10</sup> garſons, fir Galeroñ. <sup>11</sup> þus þat hapel in hiȝ. <sup>12</sup> Om. <sup>13</sup> faued. <sup>14</sup> Om. <sup>15</sup> fir Galeroñ. <sup>16</sup> Om. <sup>17</sup> To.

LV.—<sup>1</sup> Wayno<sup>r</sup> gared wifely. <sup>2</sup> Om. <sup>3</sup> þe. <sup>4</sup> proceffioñ. <sup>5</sup> *The words within brackets are omitted in MS. L.* <sup>6</sup> þe. <sup>7</sup> Boke-lered meñ. <sup>8</sup> Om. <sup>9</sup> al Bretayne befely þe burde gared ryng. <sup>10</sup> þis ferely bifelle in Englonde. <sup>11</sup> a. <sup>12</sup> hore. <sup>13</sup> a.

Swylke<sup>14</sup> hunttynge in 'holtis sulde noghte beñ<sup>15</sup> hyde :—  
 Thus to 'þe forestes<sup>16</sup> þay fure, —  
 Steryñ<sup>17</sup> knyghttis 'and ftire<sup>18</sup>; —  
 And<sup>19</sup> in þe tym of Arthure —

This awntir by-tyd. —

This ferly by-felle, full fothely to fayne,  
 In Yggillwode foreste, at þe Ternwathelayne<sup>1</sup>.

EXPLICIT.

<sup>14</sup> Suche a. <sup>15</sup> haaft is nojt to be. <sup>16</sup> forest. <sup>17</sup> þes sterne. <sup>18</sup> in store. <sup>19</sup> Om.

<sup>1</sup> *These two lines are not in MS. D.*

**The Knightly Tale  
of  
Golagros and Gawane.**



# The Knightly Tale of Golagros and Gawane.

---

## I.

**I**N the tyme of Arthur, as trew men me tald,  
The king turnit on ane tyde towart Tufkane,  
Hym to feik our þe fey, that faiklefe wes fald,  
The fyre þat fendis all feill, futhly to fane ;  
With banrentis, barouïs<sup>1</sup>, and bernis full bald, 5  
Biggaft of bane and blude, bred in Britane.  
Thai walit out werryouris, with wapinnis to wald,  
The gayeft grumys on grund, with geir þat my<sup>t</sup> gane,  
Dukis, and digne lordis, douchty and deir ;  
Sembillit to his fūmovne, 10  
Renkis of grete renovne,                      Of gold þat wes cleir.  
Cumly kingis with crowne,

## II.

Thus the royale can remove, with his Round Tabill,  
Of all riches maist rike, in riall array ; 15

<sup>1</sup> barom̄s, *ed.* 1508.

Wes neuer fundun on fold, but fenzeing or fabill,  
 Ane farayr floure on ane feild of fresch men, in fay,  
 Farand on thair stedis, stout men and stabill ;  
 Mony sterne our the streit stertis on stray.  
 Thair baneris schane with the sone, of filuer and sabill, 20  
 And vthir glemyt as gold, and gowlis so gay ;  
 Of filuer and faphir schirly þai schane ;  
 Ane fair battell on breid,  
 Merkit our ane fair meid,                      Our fellis, in fane.  
 With spurris spedely þai speid, 25

## III.

The king faris with his folk, our firthis and fellis,  
 Feill dais or he fand of flynd or of fyre ;  
 Bot deip dalis bedene, dovnis and dellis,  
 Montains and marresse, with mony rank myre ; 30  
 Birkin bewis about, boggis and wellis,  
 Withoutin beilding of blis, of bern, or of byre ;  
 Bot torris, and tene wais, teirfull quha tellis.  
 Tuglit and travalit thus trew men can tyre,  
 Sa wundir wait wes the way, wit ye but wene ; 35  
 And all thair vittalis war gone,  
 That thay weildit in wone ;                      þ<sup>t</sup><sup>1</sup> fuld thair bute beñ.  
 Reffet couth thai find none,

## IV.

As thay walkit be the fyde of ane fair well, 40  
 Throu þe schynyng of the son ane ciete thai fe,

<sup>1</sup> T<sup>p</sup><sup>t</sup>, *ed.*

With torris and turatis, teirfull to tell,  
 Bigly batollit about with wallis fa he ;  
 The yettis war clenely kepit with ane castell ;  
 Myght none fang it with force, bot foullis to fle. 45  
 Than carpit king Arthur, kene and cruell,  
 “ I rede we fend furth ane faynd<sup>1</sup> to yone ciete,  
 And ask leif at the lord, yone landis fuld leid,  
 That we myght entir in his toune,  
 For his hie renoune,                      For money to meid.”  
 To by vs vittale boune<sup>2</sup>,

## V.

Schir Kay carpit to the king, courtes and cleir,  
 “ Grant me, lord, on yone gait graithly to gay,  
 And I fall boid-word, but abaid, bring to you heir, 55  
 Gif he be freik on the fold your freynd, or your fay.”—  
 “ Sen thi will is to wend, wy, now in weir,  
 Luke that<sup>3</sup> wifly thow wirk, Crifte were the fra wa !”  
 The berne bovnit to the burgh, with ane blith cheir ;  
 Fand the yettis vnclofit, and thrang in full thra ; 60  
 His hors he tyit to ane tre, treuly that tyde ;  
 Syne hynt to ane hie hall,  
 That wes aftalit with pall ;                      And payntit with pride. 65  
 Weill wroght wes the wall,

## VI.

The fylour deir of the deife dayntely wes dent,  
 With the doughtyest in thair dais dyntis couth dele ;

<sup>1</sup> fend, *ed.*<sup>2</sup> bonne, *ed.*<sup>3</sup> pot, *ed.*



Bright letteris of gold blith vnto blent,  
 Makand mēcioune quha maift of manhede couth<sup>1</sup> mele ;  
 He saw nane levand leid vpone loft lent, 70  
 Nouthir lord, na lad, leif ye the lele.  
 The renk raikit in the faill, riale and gent,  
 þ<sup>t</sup> wōdir wifly wes wroght, with wourſchip & wele ;  
 The berne befely and bane blenkit hym about ;  
 He ſaw throu ane entre, 75  
 Charcole in ane chymne, Birnand full ſtout.  
 Ane bright fyre couth he ſe,

## VII.

Ane duergh braydit about, befily and bane,  
 Small birdis on broche<sup>2</sup> be ane bright fyre ; 80  
 Schir Kay ruſchit to the roift, and reft fra the ſwane,  
 Lightly claught<sup>3</sup>, throu luſt, the lym fra the lyre ;  
 To feid hym of that fyne fude the freik wes full fane ;  
 Than dynnyt the duergh, in angir<sup>4</sup> and yre,  
 With raris, quhil the rude hall reirdit agane. 85  
 With that come girdand, in grief, ane wounder<sup>5</sup> grym fire ;  
 With ſtout contenance & ſture he ſtude thame beforne ;  
 With veſage luſfy and lang,  
 Body ſtalwart and ſtrang, Of berne that wes borne.  
 That ſege wald fit with none wrang, 90

<sup>1</sup> couh, *ed.*<sup>2</sup> brothe, *ed.*<sup>3</sup> clanght, *ed.*<sup>4</sup> augir, *ed.*<sup>5</sup> wound, *ed.*

## VIII.

The knyght carpit to fchir Kay, cruel and kene,  
 “ We think thow fedis the vnfair, freik, be my fay !  
 Suppose thi birny be bright, as bachiler fuld beñ,  
 Yhit ar thi latis vnluffum, and ladlike, I lay. 95  
 Quhy has thow marrit my mā, with maiftri to mene ?  
 Bot thow mend hym that mys, be Mary, mylde may,  
 Thow fall rew in thi rufe, wit thow but wen,  
 Or thou wend of this wane wemeles away !”  
 Schir Kay wes haifty, and hate, and of ane hie will ; 100  
 Spedely to hym fpak,  
 “ Schort amendis will I mak,                      Traift wele thair till.”  
 Thi fchore compt I noght<sup>1</sup> ane caik ;

## IX.

Thair with the grume, in his grief, leit gird to fchir Kay, 105  
 Fellit the freke with his fift, flat in the flure ;  
 He wes fa aſtonayt with the ftraik, in ftede quhare he lay  
 Stok ftill as ane ftane, the fterne wes fa fture !  
 The freik na forthir he faris, bot foundis away ;  
 The topir drew hym on dreigh, in derne to the dure ; 110  
 Hyit<sup>2</sup> hym hard throu the hall, to his haiknay,  
 And fped hym on fpedely, on the ſpare mure.  
 The renk reftles he raid to Arthour the king ;  
 Said, “ lord, wendis on your way,  
 Yone berne nykis yow with nay ;                      It helpis na thing.”  
 To prife hym forthir to pray,

<sup>1</sup> noghr, *ed.*<sup>2</sup> Byit, *ed.*

## X.

Than fpak fchir Gawane the gay, gracious and gude,  
 “ Schir, ye know that fchir Kay is crabbit of kynde ;  
 I rede ye mak furth ane man, mekar of mude, 120  
 That will with fairnes fraift frendſchip to fynd ;  
 Your folk ar febill and faynt, for falt of thair fude ;  
 Sum better boid-word to abide, vndir wod lynd.”—  
 “ Schir Gawyne, graith ye that gait, for the gude rude !  
 Is nane<sup>1</sup> fa bowfum ane berne, brith for to bynd.” 125  
 The heynd knight at his haift held to the tovne ;  
 The yettis wappit war wyde,  
 The knyght cā raithly in ryde ;                      Quhē he ves lightit<sup>2</sup> douñ.  
 Reynit his palfray of pryde,

## XI.

Schir Gawyne gais furth the gait, þ<sup>ts</sup> graithit wes gay,  
 The quhilk that held to the hall, heyndly to fe ;  
 Than wes the fyre in the faill<sup>4</sup>, with renkis of array,  
 And blith birdis hym about, that bright wes of ble.  
 Wourthy fchir Gawyne went on his way ; 135  
 Sobirly the fouerane faluſt has he,—  
 “ I am fend to your ſelf, ane charge for to fay,  
 Fra cumly Arthur, the king, corteſſe and fre ;  
 Quhilk prays for his faik, and your gentrice,  
 That he might cum this toun till, 140  
 To by vittale at will,                      Payand the price.”  
 Alfe deir as fegis will fell,

<sup>1</sup> naue, *ed.*<sup>2</sup> lighit, *ed.*<sup>3</sup> p<sup>e</sup>, *ed.*<sup>4</sup> faill, *ed.*

## XII.

Than said the fyre of the faill and the fouerane,  
 “ I will na vittale be fauld your fenyeour vntill.” 145  
 “ That is at your avne will,” said wourthy Gawane,  
 “ To mak you lord of your avne, me think it grete fkill.”  
 Than right gudly that grome anfuerit agane,  
 “ Quhy I tell the this taill, tak tent now thair till ;  
 Pafe on thi purpos, furth to the plane ; 150  
 For all the wyis I weild ar at his avne will,  
 How to luge, and to leynd, and in my land lent ;  
 Gif I fauld hym his awin,  
 It war wrang to be knawin, Baldly on bent.  
 Than war I wourthy to be drawin, 155

## XIII.

“ Thare come ane laithles leid air to this place,  
 With ane girdill ourgilt, and vthir light gere ;  
 It kythit be his cognifance ane knight that he wes,  
 Bot he wes ladlike of laitç, and light of his fere ; 160  
 The verray caufe of his come I knew noght the cace,  
 Bot wondirly wraighly he wroght, and all as of were.  
 Yit wait I noght quhat he is, be Goddis grete grace !  
 Bot gif it happin that he be ane knyght of youris here,  
 Has done my lord to difpleife, that I hym said ryght, 165  
 And his prefence plane,  
 I fay yow in certane<sup>1</sup>, As I am trew knight !”  
 He falbe fet agane,

<sup>1</sup> tertane, *ed.*

## XIV.

Schir Gavyne gettis his leif, and grathis to his fteid, 170  
 And broght to the bauld king boid-word of blis,—  
 “ Weill gretis yow, lord, yone lufy in leid,  
 And fays hym likis in land your langour to lis ;  
 All the wyis and<sup>1</sup> welth he weildis in theid  
 Sall halely be at your will, all that is his.” 175  
 Than he merkit with<sup>2</sup> myrth our ane grene meid,  
 With all the best, to the burgh, of lordis, I wis ;—  
 The knight kepit the king, cumly and cleir ;  
 With lordis and ladyis of estate,  
 Met hym furth on the gate,                      With ane blith<sup>3</sup> cheir.  
 Syne tuke him in at yate,

## XV.

He had that heynd to ane hall, hiely on hight,  
 With dukis, and digne lordis, doughty in deid ;—  
 “ Ye ar welcum, cumly king,” said the kene knyght, 185  
 “ Ay, quhil you likis and lift, to luge in this leid.  
 Heir I mak yow of myne maifter of myght,  
 Of all the wyis and welth I weild in this fteid ;  
 Thair is na ridand roy, be refoun and right,  
 Sa deir welcum this day, doutles but dreid. 190  
 I am your coufin<sup>4</sup> of kyn, I mak to yow knawin ;  
 This kyth and this castell,  
 Firth, forest, and fell,                      Reffaue as your awin. 195  
 Ay, quhill yow likis to duell,

<sup>1</sup> in, *ed.*<sup>2</sup> witht, *ed.*<sup>3</sup> bligh, *ed.*<sup>4</sup> cousing, *ed.*

## XVI.

“ I may refresch yow with folk, to feght gif you nedis,  
 With thretty thousand tald, and traistfully tight,  
 Of wise, wourthy, and wight, in thair were wedis,  
 Baith with birny and brand to strenth you ful stright,  
 Weill stuffit in steill, on thair stout stedis.”  
 Than said king Arthur hym self, feymly be fight,  
 “ Sic frendschip I hald fair, that forffis thair dedis ;  
 Thi kyndnes salbe quyt, as I am trew knight !”  
 Than thay bufkit to the bynke, beirnis of the best ;  
 The king crownit with gold,  
 Dukis deir to behold, Gladit his gefit.  
 Allyns the banrent bold,

200

205

## XVII.

Thair myght seruice be sene, with fegis in faill,  
 Thoght all felcought war foght, fra the son to the fee ;  
 Wynis went within þ<sup>t</sup> wane, maist wourthy to vaill,  
 In coupis of cleir gold, brichtest of blee ;  
 It war full teir for to tell, treuly in taill,  
 The feir courffis that war set, in that semblee ;  
 The meriest war<sup>1</sup> menfkit on mete, at the maill,  
 With menstralis myrthfully makand thame glee.  
 Thus thay solaiſt thame felvin, futhly to fay,  
 Al thay four dais to end ;—  
 The king thankit the heynd, And went on his way.  
 Syne tuke his leve for to wend,

210

215

4

220

<sup>1</sup> wai, *ed.*

## XVIII.

Thus refreschit he his folk, in grete fusioun,  
 With outin wanting in waill, wastell, or wyne ;  
 Thai turffit vp tentis, and turnit of toun,  
 The roy with his Round Tabill, richest of ryne. 225  
 Thay drive on the da deir, be dalis & down,  
 And of the nobillest be-name, noumerit of nyne ;  
 Quhen it drew to þe dirk nycht, and þe day yeid down,  
 Thai plantit doun pauillonis, proudly fra thine.  
 Thus iournait gentilly thyr cheualrouse knichtis, 230  
 Ithandly ilk day,  
 Throu mony fer contray, Holtis and hillis.  
 Our the mountains gay,

## XIX.

Thai paffit in thare pilgramage, þe proudest in pall, 235  
 The prince provit in prese, that prife wes and deir ;  
 Syne war þai war of ane wane, wrocht with ane wal,  
 Reirdit on ane riche roche, beside ane riveir,  
 With doubill dykis be-dene drawin our all ;  
 Micht nane þame note with invy, nor ny<sup>t</sup> þame to neir. 240  
 The land wes likand in large, and<sup>1</sup> luffum to call ;  
 Propir schene schane þe son, feymly and feir.  
 The king stude vesiand þe wall, maift vailyeand to fe ;  
 On þat river he saw,  
 Cumly towris to know ; Thretty and thre.  
 The roy rekinnit on raw,

<sup>1</sup> aud, *ed.*

## XX.

Apone þat riche river, randonit full evin,  
 The fide-wallis war fet, fad to ye fee ;  
 Scippis faland þame by, fexty and fevyn, 250  
 To fend, quhen þame felf lift, in feir cuntre ;  
 That al þai that ar wrocht vndir þe hie hevin,  
 Micht nocht warne þame, at wil to ifche, nor entre.  
 Than carpit þe cumly king, with ane lowd stevin,  
 “ Yone is þe feymliast ficht, þat euer couth I fe. 255  
 Gif þair be ony keyne knyght, þat can tell it,  
 Quha is lord of yone land,  
 Lufty and likand,                      Fayne wald I wit.” 260  
 Or quham of is he haldand,

## XXI.

Than fchir Spynagrose with fpeche fpak to ye king,—  
 “ Yone lord<sup>1</sup> haldis of nane leid, that yone land aw,  
 But euer-lefting but legiance, to his leving,  
 As his eldaris has done, enduring his daw.”  
 “ Hevinly god !” faid the heynd, “ how happynis this thing? 265  
 Herd thair euer ony fage fa felcouth ane faw !  
 Sal neuer myne hart be in faill, na in liking,  
 Bot gif I loiffing my life, or be laid law,  
 Be thè pilgramage compleit I pas for faull prow,  
 Bot dede be my deftenyng, 270  
 He fall at my agane cumyng,                      I mak myne avow !”  
 Mak homage and obliffing,

<sup>1</sup> lordis, *ed.*



## XXII.

“ A ! lord, fparis of fic speche, quhill ye fpeir more,  
 For abandonit will he noght be, to berne that is borne ; 275  
 Or he be ftrenyeit with ftrenth, yone fterne for to fchore,  
 Mony ledis falbe loiffit, and liffis forlorne.  
 Spekis na fuccseudry, for Criftis fone deir !  
 Yone knicht to fcar w<sup>t</sup> fkaitht, ye chaip nocht but fcorne.  
 It is full fair for to be fallow and feir 280  
 To the<sup>2</sup> beft that has bene brevit<sup>3</sup> you beforne ;  
 The myghty king of Maffidone, wourthieft but wene,  
 Thair gat he nane homage,  
 For all his hie parage, Nor neuer none fene.  
 Of lord of yone lynage, 285

## XXIII.

“ The wy that wendis for to were, quhen he wenys beft,  
 All his will in this warld, with welthis, I wys,  
 Yit fall be<sup>4</sup> licht as leif of the lynd left,  
 That welter<sup>c</sup> doun with the wynd, fa wauerand it is ;— 290  
 Your mycht and your maiefte mefure, but mys.”  
 “ In faith,” faid the cumly king, “ trou<sup>5</sup> ye full traift,  
 My hecht fall haldin be, for baill or for blis ;  
 Sall neuer my likame be laid vnlaiffit to fleip,  
 Quhill I haue gart yone berne bow, 295  
 As I haue maid myne auow, Ful wraithly fal weip !”  
 Or ellis mony wedou,

<sup>1</sup> wpt, *ed.*    <sup>2</sup> thee, *ed.*    <sup>3</sup> beevit, *ed.*    <sup>4</sup> he, *ed.*    <sup>5</sup> throu, *ed.*

## XXIV.

Thair wes na man that durft mel to the king,  
 Quhan<sup>1</sup> thai saw that mighty fa mouit in his mynde ; 300  
 The roy rial raid, withoutin resting,  
 And focht to the ciete of Criste, our the falt flude.  
 With mekil honour in erd he maid his offering,  
 Syne bufkit hame the famyne way, that he before yude ;  
 Thayr wes na spurris<sup>2</sup> to spair, spedely thai spring ; 305  
 Thai brochit blonkis<sup>3</sup> to thair fidis brift of rede blude.  
 Thus the roy and his rout, restles thai raid,  
 Ithandly ilk day,  
 Our the mountains gay<sup>4</sup> ;                      Withoutin mare abaid.  
 To Rome tuke the redde way, 310

## XXV.

Thai plantit doun ane pailyeoun, vpone ane plane lee,  
 Of pall and of pillour that proudly wes picht ;  
 With rapis of rede gold, riale to fee,  
 And grete ensenyes of the famyne, femly by ficht ; 315  
 Bordouris about, that bricht war of ble,  
 Betin with brint gold, burely and bricht ;  
 Frenyeis of fyne filk, fretit ful fre,  
 With deir dyamonthis bedene, þ<sup>t</sup> dayntely wes dicht.  
 The king cumly in kith, couerit with croune, 320  
 Callit knichtis fa kene,  
 Dukis douchty bedene,—                      How best is to done.”  
 “ I rede we cast ws betuene,

<sup>1</sup> Quhy, *ed.*<sup>2</sup> speirris, *ed.*<sup>3</sup> bloukis, *ed.*<sup>4</sup> pay, *ed.*

## XXVI.

Than fpak ane vight weriour, wourthy and wife, 325  
 “ I rede ane fayndis-man ye fend to yone fenyeour,  
 Of the proudest in pall, and haldin of prife,  
 Wife, vailyeing, and moift of valour.  
 Gif yone douchty in deid wil do your deuife,  
 Be boune at your bidding, in burgh and in bour, 330  
 Reffaue him reuerendly, as refoun in lyis ;  
 And gif he nykis you with nay, yow worthis on neid,  
 For to affege yone caftel,  
 With cant men and cruel, Euer quhill ye fpeid.”  
 Durandly for to duel, 335

## XXVII.

Than fhir Gauane the gay, grete of degre,  
 And fhir Lancelot de Lake, without lefing,  
 And auenand fhir Ewin, thai ordanit that thre,  
 To the fchore chiftane chargit fra the kyng. 340  
 Spynagros than fpekis ; faid, “ lordingis, in le,  
 I rede ye tent treuly to my teching ;  
 For I knaw yone bauld berne better than ye,  
 His land, and his lordfchip, and his leuing.  
 And ye ar thre in this thede, thriuand oft in thrang ; 345  
 War al your ftrenthis in ane,  
 In his grippis and ye gane, Yone fterne is fa ftrang.  
 He wald ourcum yow ilkane,

## XXVIII.

And he is maid on mold meik as ane child, 350  
 Blith and boufum that berne, as byrd in hir bour ;  
 Fayr of fell, and of face, as flour vnfeld,  
 Wondir ftaluart, and fttrang, to fttriue in ane ftfour.  
 Thairfore meikly with mouth mel to that myld,  
 And mak him na manance, bot al mefoure ; 355  
 Thus with trefy ye caft yon trew vndre tyld,  
 And faynd his frendfchip to fang, with fyne fauour.  
 It hynderis neuer for to be heyndly of fpeche ;  
 He is ane lord riale,  
 Ane<sup>1</sup> feymly fouerane in fale,                      Throu all this varld reche."  
 Ane wourthy wy for to wale,

## XXIX.

“ Thi counfale is convenabill, kynd, and courtefe,  
 Forthi ws likis thi lair liftin and leir.”—  
 Thai wyis, wourthy in weid, wend on thair ways, 365  
 And caryis to the caftell, cumly and cleir ;  
 Sent ane faynd to the fouerane fone, and hym fais,  
 Thre knichtis fra court cum thay weir.  
 Than the ledis belife the lokkis vnlaiffis ;  
 On fute frefchly thai frekis foundis, but feir ; 370  
 The renkis raithly can raik in to the round hald ;  
 Thair met thame at the entre,  
 Ladys likand to fe,                      That blith war and bald. 375  
 Thretty knichtis and thre,

<sup>1</sup> Has, *ed*

## XXX.

Thai war courtes, & couth, thair knyghthed to kyth,  
 Athir vthir wele gret, in gretly degre ;  
 Thai bowit to the bernys, that bright war and blith,  
 Fair in armys to fang, of figure fa fre ;  
 Syne thay fought to the chalmer, swiftly and fwith, 380  
 The gait to the grete lord femely to fe ;  
 And saluft the fouerane fone, in ane fith,  
 Courtesly inclinand, and kneland on kne.  
 Ane blithar wes neuer borne, of bane nor of blude ;  
 All thre in certane, 385  
 Saluft the fouerane,                      Hatles, but hude.  
 And he inclynand agane,

## XXXI.

Than fchir Gawayne the gay, gude and gracijs,  
 That euer wes beildit in blis, and bounte embrafit ; 390  
 Joly, and gentill, and full cheuailrus,  
 That neuer poynt of his prife wes fundin defafit ;  
 Egir, and ertand, and ryght anterus,  
 Illuminat vith lawte, and with lufe lafit,  
 Melis of the meffage to fchir Golagrus ; 395  
 Before the riale on raw the renk wes noght rafit ;  
 With ane clene contenance, cumly to knaw,  
 Said, “ our fouerane Arthour  
 Gretis the with honour,                      His meffage to fchaw.  
 Has maid ws thre as mediatour, 400

## XXXII.

He is the rialleft roy, reuerend, and rike,  
 Of all the rentaris to ryme, or rekin on raw ;  
 Thare is na leid on life of lordschip hym like,  
 Na nane fa doughty of deid, induring his daw ; 406  
 Mony burgh, mony bour, mony big bike,  
 Mony kynrik to his clame, cumly to knaw ;  
 Maneris full menfkfull, with mony deip dike ;  
 Selcouth war the fevint part to fay at faw<sup>1</sup>.  
 Thare anerdis to our nobill, to note, quhen hym nedis, 410  
 Tuelf crownit kingis in feir,  
 With all thair ftrang poweir,                      Worthy in wedis.  
 And mony wight weryer,

## XXXIII.

It has bene tauld hym with tong, trow ye full traift, 415  
 Your dedis, your dignite, and your doughtynes ;  
 Brevit throu bounte for ane of the best,  
 That now is namyt neir, of all nobilnes,  
 Sa wyde quhare wourfcip walkis be weft ;  
 Our feymly fouerane hym felf, forfuth, will noght cefe, 420  
 Quhill he haue frely fangit your frendfchip to fest ;  
 Gif pament, or praier, mught mak that purchese,  
 For na largefe my lord noght wil he neuer let,  
 Na for na riches to rigne ;  
 I mak you na lefing,                      Your grant for to get."  
 It war his maift yarynyng,

<sup>1</sup> faw, *ed.*

## XXXIV.

Than said the fyre of the fail, with fad fembland,  
 " I thank your gracious grete lord, and his gude wil ;  
 Had neuer leid of this land, that had bene leuand, 430  
 Maid ony feute before, freik, to fulfil,  
 I fuld fickirly myself be confentand,  
 And feik to your fouerane, feymly on fyll.  
 Sen hail our doughty elderis has bene endurand,  
 Thriuandly in this thede, unchargit as thril, 435  
 If I, for obeifance or boift, to bondage me bynde,  
 I war wourthy to be,  
 Hingit heigh on ane tre, To waif with þ<sup>e</sup> wind. 440  
 That ilk creature might fe,

## XXXV.

Bot fauand my fenyeoury fra fubiectioun,  
 And my lordſcip vn-lamyt, withoutin legiance,  
 All that I can to yone king, cumly with croun,  
 I fall preif all my pane, to do hym plefance ;  
 Baith with body and beild, bowfum and boun, 445  
 Hym to menfk on mold, withoutin manance.  
 Bot nowthir for his fenyeoury, nor for his fummoun,  
 Na for dreid of na dede, na for na diftance,  
 I will noght bow me ane bak, for berne that is borne ;  
 Quhill I may my wit wald, 450  
 I think my fredome to hald, Has done me beforne."  
 As my eldaris of ald

## XXXVI.

Thai luffly ledis at that lord thair leuis has laught ;  
 Bounit to the bauld king, and boidword him broght. 465  
 Than thai schupe for to affege segis vnfaught,  
 Ay the manlyeft on mold, that maift of myght mought ;  
 Thair wes reftling, and reling, but reft that raught,  
 Mony fege our the fey to the cite focht ;  
 Schipmen our the ftreme thai ftithil full ftraught, 470  
 With alkin wappyns, I wys, þ<sup>t</sup> wes for were wroght.  
 Thai bend bowis of bras, braithly within ;  
 Pellokis paifand to pafe,  
 Gapand gunnys of brafe,                      That maid ful gret dyn.  
 Grundin ganyeis thair wafe, 475

## XXXVII.

Thair wes blauing of bemys, braging, and beir ;  
 Bretynit doune braid wod, maid bewis full bair ;  
 Wrightis welterand doune treis, wit ye but weir,  
 Ordanit hurdys ful hie, in holtis fa haire, 470  
 For to greif thair gomys, grameft that wer ;  
 To gar the gayeft on grund<sup>1</sup> grayne vndir geir.  
 Thus thai schupe for ane falt, ilk fege feir ;  
 Ilka fouerane his enfenye fhewin has thair ;  
 Ferly fayr wes the feild, flekerit and faw 475  
 With gold, and goulis in greyne,  
 Schynand fcheirly & fcheyne ;                      In fcheildis thai fchaw<sup>2</sup>.  
 The fone, as cristall fa cleyne,

<sup>1</sup> grund, *ed.*<sup>2</sup> fchair, *ed.*



## XXXVIII.

Be it wes mydmorne and mare, merkit on the day, 480  
 Schir Golagros mery men, menfkful of myght,  
 In greis and garatouris, grathit full gay,  
 Seuyne score of fcheildis thai fchew at ane ficht ;  
 Ane helme fet to ilk fcheild, fiker of affay,  
 With fel lans<sup>1</sup> on loft, lemand ful light ; 485  
 Thus flourit thai the fore front, thair fays to fray,  
 The frekis, that war fundin ferse, and forffy in fight.  
 Ilk knyght his cunyfance kithit full cleir ;  
 Thair names wricin all thare,  
 Quhat berne that it bare,                      Might wit quhat he weir.  
 That ilk freke quhare he fare,

## XXXIX.

“ Yone is the warliest wane,” said the wise king,  
 “ That euer I vift in my walk, in all this warld wyde ;  
 And the straiteft of ftuf, with richese to ring, 495  
 With vnabafit bernys bergane to abide ;  
 May nane do thame na deir with vndoyng,  
 Yone houe is fa huge hie, fra harme thame to hide.  
 Yit fal I mak thame vnrufe, foroutin resting,  
 And reve thame thair rentis, with routis full ride, 500  
 Thocht I fuld fynd thame new notis for this ix yeir ;  
 And in his avne prefence,  
 Heir fall I mak refidenc,                      With ftrenth me to fteir !” 505  
 Bot he with force<sup>2</sup> mak defence,

<sup>1</sup> laus, *ed.*<sup>2</sup> forte, *ed.*

## XL.

“ Quhat nedis,” faid Spinagrus, “ fic notis to nevin  
 Or ony termis be turnit, I tell you treuly?  
 For thair is segis in yone fail<sup>1</sup> wil fet vpone fevin,  
 Or thay be wrangit, I wis, I warne you ilk wy ;  
 Nane hardiar of hertis vndir the hevin, 510  
 Or thay be dantit with dreid, erar will thai de ;  
 And thai with men vpone mold be machit full evin,  
 Thai falbe fundin right ferfe, and full of cheualrie.  
 Schir, ye ar in your maieste, your mayne, & your myght,  
 Yit within thir dais thre, 515  
 The ficker<sup>2</sup> futh fall ye fe,                      And how thai dar fight.”  
 Quhat kin men that thai be,

## XLI.

As the reuerend roy wes reknand vpone raw,  
 With the rout of the Round Tabill, that wes richeft, 520  
 The king crounit with gold, cumly to knaw,  
 With reuerend baronis, and beirnis of the best,  
 He hard ane bugill blast brym, and ane loud blaw,  
 As the feymly fone filit to the rest.—  
 Agane gais to ane garet, glifnand<sup>3</sup> to schaw, 525  
 Turnit to ane hie toure, that tight wes full trest ;  
 Ane helme of hard steill in hand has he hynt,  
 Ane scheld wrought all of weir,  
 Semyt wele vpone feir ;                      And furth his wais wynt.  
 He grippit to ane grete fpeir, 530

<sup>1</sup> fail, *ed.*<sup>2</sup> filker, *ed.*<sup>3</sup> glifnand, *ed.*

## XLII.

“ Quhat signifyis yone schene scheild ?” said the senyeour,  
 “ The luffy helme, and the lance, all ar away,  
 The brym blast that he blew, with ane stevin stour ?”  
 Thā said fir Spynagrus with speche, “ the futh<sup>1</sup> fall I fay. 535  
 Yone is ane freik in his forte, and fresch in his flour,  
 To se that his schire weid be ficker of affay ;  
 He thinkis provese to preve, for his paramour,  
 And prik in your prefence, to purchese his pray.  
 Forthi makis furth ane man, to mach hym in feild, 540  
 That knawin is for cruel,  
 Doughty dyntis to dell,                      With schaft and with scheild.”  
 That for the maistry dar mell,

## XLIII.

Than wes the king wondir glaid, & callit Gaudifeir ; 545  
 Quhilum in Britane that berne had baronyis braid ;  
 And he gudly furth gais, and graithit hif geir,  
 And buikit hym to battell, without mair abaid ;  
 That wy walit, I vis, all wedis of veir,  
 That nedit hym to note, gif he nane had. 550  
 Bery broune wes the blonk, burely and braid,  
 Wpone the mold, quhare thai met, before the myd-day ;  
 With luffy lancis and lang,  
 Ane faire feild can thai fang,                      Baith blanchart & bay.  
 On stedis stalwart and strang, 555

<sup>1</sup> fuch, *ed.*

## XLIV.

Gaudifeir and Galiot, in glemand steil wedis,  
 As glauis glowand on gleid, grymly thai ride ;  
 Wondir sternly thai steir on thair stent stedis,  
 Athir berne fra his blonk borne wes that tide. 560  
 Thai rufchit vp rudly, quha fa right redis ;  
 Out with fuerdis thai fwang fra thair schalk fide ;  
 Thair with wraithly thai wirk, thai wourthy in vedif,  
 Hewit on the hard steil, and hurt thame in the hide.  
 Sa wondir freschly thai frekis fruschit in feir, 565  
 Throw all the harnes thai hade,  
 Baith birny and breift-plade,                      Wit ye but weir.  
 Thairin wappynis couth wade,

## XLV.

Thus thai faught vpone fold, with ane fel fair, 570  
 Quhill athir berne in that breth bokit in blude ;  
 Thus thai mellit on mold, ane myle way and maire,  
 Wraithly wroht, as thei war witlese and wode ;  
 Baith thai fegis, forfuth, fadly and fair,  
 Thocht thai war astonait, in þ<sup>t</sup> stour stithly thai stude. 575  
 The feght fa felly thai fang, with ane fresch fair,  
 Quhil Gaudifeir and Galiot baith to grund yhude ;  
 Gaudifeir gat vp agane, throu Goddis grete mightis ;  
 Abone him wichtely he wan,  
 With þ<sup>e</sup> craft<sup>1</sup> that he can ;                      þ<sup>e</sup> king and his knightis.  
 Thai louit God and sanct An,

<sup>1</sup> craft, *ed.*

## XLVI.

Than wes Galiot the gome hynt in till ane hald ;  
 Golagrus grew in greif, grymly in hart,  
 And callit fchir Rigal of Rone, ane renk that wes bald,— 585  
 “ Quhill this querrell be quyt, I cover neuer in quert !  
 With wailit wapnis of were, evin on yone wald,  
 On ane fterand fteid, that fternly will ftert,  
 I pray the, for my faik, that it be deir fald ;  
 Was neuer fa vnfound fet to my hert !” 590  
 That gome gudly furth gays, and graithit his gere ;  
 Blew ane blaft of ane horne,  
 As wes the maner beforne ;                      Away with his fpere. 595  
 Scheld and helm has he borne.

## XLVII.

The king crovnit with gold this cumpas wele knew,  
 And callit fchir Rannald<sup>1</sup>, cruell and kene,—  
 “ Gif ony preffis to this place, for proves to perfew,  
 Schaip the evin to the fchalk, in thi fchrout<sup>2</sup> fchene.”  
 The deir dight him<sup>3</sup> to the deid, be the day dew ; 600  
 His birny, and his bafnet, burnift full bene ;  
 Baith his horfe, and his geir, wes of ane hale hew,  
 With<sup>4</sup> gold and goulis fa gay graithit in grene ;  
 Ane fchene fcheild, & ane fchaft, that fcharply was fched ;  
 Thre ber-hedis he bair, 605  
 As his eldaris did air,                      Of his blude bled.  
 Quhilk beirnis in Britane wair,

<sup>1</sup> Raunald, *ed.*<sup>2</sup> fchrond, *ed.*<sup>3</sup> hun, *ed.*<sup>4</sup> wich, *ed.*

## XLVIII.

Quhen the day can daw, deirly on hight,  
 And the fone in the fky wes schynnyng fo schir, 610  
 Fra the castell thair come cariland ane knight,  
 Clofit in clene steill, vpon ane courfyr.  
 Schir Rannald to his riche steid raikit full riht<sup>1</sup>,  
 Lightly<sup>2</sup> lap he on loft, that lufly of lyre ;  
 Athir laught has thair lance, that lemyt fo light, 615  
 On twa stedis thai straid, with ane sterne schiere.  
 Togiddir freschly thai frekis fruschit, in fay ;  
 Thair speris in splendris sprent,  
 On scheldis schonkit & schent, In feild fir away.  
 Euin our thair hedis went, 620

## XLIX.

Thai lufly ledis belife lightit on the land,  
 And laught out fuerdis, lufly and lang ;  
 Thair stedis stakkerit in þ<sup>e</sup> stour, and stude stūmerād,  
 Al to-stiffillit and stonayt, the strakis war sa strang ! 625  
 Athir berne braithly bet with ane bright brand ;  
 On fute freschly thai frekis feghtin thai fang ;  
 Thai hewit on hard steil, hartly with hand,  
 Quhil the spaldis, and the sparkis, spedely out sprang.  
 Schir Rannald raught to þ<sup>e</sup> renk ane rout wes vnryde ; 630  
 Clenely in the collair,  
 Fifty mailyeis & mair, Ane wound þ<sup>t</sup> wes wyde.  
 Euin of the schuldir he schair,

<sup>1</sup> rihht, *ed.*<sup>2</sup> lightly, *ed.*

## L.

Thus thai faucht on fute, on the fair feild ; 635  
 The blude famyt thame fra, on feild quhare thai foūd ;  
 All the bernys on the bent about that beheild,  
 For pure forow of that fight thai fighit vnfound ;  
 Schire teris schot fra schalkis, schene vndir scheild<sup>1</sup>,  
 Quhen thai foundrit ane fel fey to the grund ; 640  
 Baith thair hartis can brist, braithly but beild,  
 Thair wes na ftaluart vnstonait, so fterne wes þ<sup>e</sup> stoūd !  
 Schir Rannaldis body wes broght to the bright tent ;  
 Syne to the castel of stone,  
 Thai had schir Regal of Rone ;                      Away with him wēt.  
 With mekil murnyng and mone,

## LI.

Thus endit the auynantis, with mekil honour,  
 Yit has men thame in mynd, for thair manhede ;  
 Thair bodeis wes beryit baith in ane hour ; 650  
 Set fegis for thair faullis to fyng and to reid.  
 Thā Gologrus graithit of his mē, in glifnand<sup>2</sup> armour,—  
 Ane schir Louys the lele, ane lord of that leid ;  
 Ane vthir heght Edmond, that prouit paramour ;  
 The thrid heght schir Bantellas, the batal to leid ; 655  
 The ferd wes ane veryour, worthy and wight,  
 His name wes schir Sanguel,  
 Cumly and cruel ;                      Foundis to the feght. 660  
 Thir four, treuly to tell,

<sup>1</sup> fcheid, *ed.*<sup>2</sup> glifnand, *ed.*

## LII.

Schir Lyonel to schir Louys wes leuit, with ane lance ;  
 Schir Ewin to schir<sup>1</sup> Edmond, athir ful euin ;  
 Schir Bedwar to schir Bantellas, to enschew his chance,  
 That baith war nemmyt in neid, nobil to neuin ;  
 To schir Sangwel foght gude Gyromalance.— 665  
 Thus thai mellit, and met, with ane stout steuin,  
 Thir lufly ledis on the land, without legiance ;  
 With feymely scheildis<sup>2</sup> to schew, thai fet vpone seuin,  
 Thir cumly knightis to kyth ane cruel course maid.  
 The frekis felloun in feir, 670  
 Wondir stoutly can steir, Rudly thai raid.  
 With geir grundin ful cleir,

## LIII.

Thā thair hors vith thair hochis fic harmis couth hint,  
 As trafrit in vnquart quakand thai stand ; 675  
 The frekis freschly thai fure, as fyre out of flynt,  
 Thair lufly lancis thai loiffit, and lichtit on the land ;  
 Right styth, stuffit in steill, thai stotit na stynt,  
 Bot bufkit to bataille, with birny and brand ;  
 Thair riche birnys thai bet derfly with dynt, 680  
 Hewis down in grete haift, hartly with hand ;  
 Thai mighty men vpon mold ane riale course maid,  
 Quhill clowis of clene maill,  
 Hoppit out as the haill ; Sa bauldly thai baid !  
 Thai beirnys in the bataill, 685

<sup>1</sup> fhir, *ed.*<sup>2</sup> fcheidis, *ed.*



## LIV.

Thai bet on fa bryimly, thai beirnys on the bent,  
 Bristis birneis with brandis, burnift full bene ;  
 Throu thair fchene fcheildis thair fchuld<sup>o</sup>is var fchent,  
 Fra fchalkis fchot fchire blude, our fcheildis fo fchene ; 690  
 Ryngris of rank fteill rattillit, and rent,  
 Gomys grifly on the grund granis<sup>1</sup> on the grene.  
 The roy ramyt for reuth<sup>2</sup>, richift of rent<sup>3</sup>,  
 For cair<sup>4</sup> of his knightis, cruel and kene,  
 Sa wondir freschly thair force thai freft on the feildis ! 695  
 Sa huge wes the melle,  
 Wes nane fa futell couth fe,                      Bot God that al weildis.  
 Quhilk gome fuld gouern the gre<sup>5</sup>,

## LV.

The wyis wrought vthir grete wandreth and weuch, 700  
 Wirkand woundis full wyde, with wapnis of were ;  
 Helmys of hard fteill thai hatterit, and heuch,  
 In that hailfing thai hynt grete harmys & here ;  
 All to-turnit thair entyre, traiftly and tewch,  
 Burnift bladis of fteill throw birneis they bere ; 705  
 Schort fuerdis of fcheith fmerly thay dreuch,  
 Athir freik to his fallow, with fellonne affere ;  
 Throw platis of polift fteill thair poyntis can pafe,—  
 All thus thai threw in that thrang,  
 Stalvart<sup>6</sup> ftrakç, and ftrang ;                      Thai doughtyis on dase.  
 With daggaris derfly thay dang,

<sup>1</sup> grams, *ed.*<sup>2</sup> renth, *ed.*<sup>3</sup> reut, *ed.*<sup>4</sup> thair, *ed.*<sup>5</sup> gce, *ed.*<sup>6</sup> Scalvart, *ed.*

## LVI.

Schir Lyonell fchir Lowes laught has in hand,  
 And fefit is Sangwell with Giromalans<sup>1</sup> the gude ;  
 Schir Evin has fchir Edmond laid on the land, 715  
 Braithly bartynit with baill, bullerand in blude ;  
 Schir Bedwar to fchir Bantellas yaldis vp his brand,  
 In that stalwart ftour, thay styth men in ftude.  
 Wes nane forffy on fold, that wes feghtand,  
 Wnmāglit and marrit, myghtles in mude ; 720  
 Wes nane fa proud of his part, that prifit quhen he yeid ;  
 Bedwer and Lyonell  
 War led to the caftell ;                      To Arthour thay led. 725  
 The cumly knight Sangwell,

## LVII.

Schir Edmond loiffit has his life, and laid is full law<sup>2</sup> ;  
 Schir Evin hurtis has hynt, hidwife and fair ;  
 Knightis caryis to the corfe, wes cumly to knaw,  
 And had hym to the caftell, with mekill hard cair ;  
 Thai did to that doughty as the dede aw. 730  
 Wthir four of the folk foundis to the fair,  
 That wes dight to the dede, be the day can daw ;  
 Than faid bernys bald, brym as bair,—  
 “ We fal evin that is od, or end in the pane !”  
 Thai ftuffit helmys in hy, 735  
 Breift-plait and birny ;                      All geir that<sup>3</sup> myght gane.  
 Thay renkis maid reddy,

<sup>1</sup> Giromalaus, *ed.*<sup>2</sup> lay, *ed.*<sup>3</sup> that, *ed.*

## LVIII.

Schir Agalus, fchir Ewmond, honeft and habill,  
 Schir Mychin, fchir Meligor, men of grete eftait ; 740  
 Than ftertis out ane fterne knyght, ftalwart and ftabill,  
 Ane berne that heght fchir Hew, hardy and hait.  
 Now<sup>1</sup> wil I rekkyn the renkis of the Round Tabill,  
 That has traiftly thame tight, to governe that gait ;  
 Furth faris the folk, but fenyeing or fabill, 745  
 That bemyt war be the lord, luffum of lait ;  
 Schir Cador of Cornwel, cumly and cleir,  
 Schir Owales, fchir Iwell,  
 Schir Myreot, mighty emell ;                      Foundis in feir.  
 Thir four, treuly to tell, 750

## LIX.

Thair wes na trefy of treux, trow ye full traift,  
 Quhē thai myghty can mach, on mold quhair thai met ;  
 Thai brochit blonkis to thair fydis out of blude braift,  
 Thair lufly lancis thai loiffit, and lightit, but let ; 755  
 Sadillis thai temyt tyt, thir trew men and traift,  
 Braidit out brandis, on birnys thai bet ;  
 As fyre that fleis fra the flynt, thay fechtin fa faft,  
 With vēgeand wapnis of were throu wedis thai wet.  
 It war teirfull to tell treuly the tend 760  
 Of thair ftrife fa ftrang<sup>2</sup>,  
 The feght fo fellely thai fang ;                      Yit laght<sup>3</sup> it ane end.  
 poght it leftit neuer fo lang,

<sup>1</sup> Nov, *ed.*<sup>2</sup> ftcang, *ed.*<sup>3</sup> lāght, *ed.*

## LX.

Schir Oviles, fchir Iwill, in handis war hynt, 766  
 And to the luffly castell war led in ane lyng ;  
 Thair with the stalwartis in stour can stotin, and stynt ;  
 And baith fchir Agalus, & fchir Hew, wes led to the kyng.  
 Than fchir Golografe, for greif, his gray ene brynt,  
 Wod wraith as' the wynd his handis can wryng ; 770  
 Yit makis he mery magry, quhafa mynt,—  
 Said, “ I fal bargane abyde, & ane end bryng ;  
 To morne, fickirly, my self fall feik to the feild.”  
 He bufkit to ane barfray,  
 Twa fmal bellis rang thay ;                      Wes fchene vndir fcheild.  
 Than feymly Arthur can fay,

## LXI.

“ Quhat fignifyis yone rynging?” faid the ryale ;  
 Than faid Spynagros, with fpeche, “ fchir, fenf peir<sup>2</sup>,  
 That fall I tell yow with tong, treuly in taill ; 780  
 The wy þ<sup>t</sup> weildis yone wane, I warn you but weir,  
 He thinkis his aune felf fhall do for his dail ;  
 Is nane fa prouit in<sup>3</sup> this part of pyth is his peir.  
 Yow worthis wifly to wirk, ane wy for to wail,  
 That fal duchtely his deid do with yone deir ; 785  
 He is þ<sup>e</sup> forfieft freik, be fortoune his freynd,  
 That I wait leuand this day.”  
 Than fchir Gawine þ<sup>e</sup> gay                      þ<sup>t</sup> he myght furth weynd. 790  
 Prayt for þ<sup>e</sup> iournay,

<sup>1</sup> ad, *ed.*<sup>2</sup> fen fpeir, *ed.*<sup>3</sup> is, *ed.*

## LXII.

The king grantit þ<sup>e</sup> gait to fchir Gawane,  
 And prayt to þ<sup>e</sup> grete God, to grant him his grace,  
 Him to faue, and to falf, þ<sup>t</sup> is our fouerane,  
 As he is makar of man, and alkyn myght haife.  
 Than fchir Spynagros, þ<sup>e</sup> freik, wox ferly vnfane ;  
 Murnyt for fchir Gawyne, and mekil mayne maife ;  
 And faid, “ for his faik, þ<sup>t</sup> faiklefe wes flane,  
 Tak nocht yone keÿe knight to countir, in this hard cais.  
 Is nane fa ftalwart in ftour, with ftoutnes to ftand ;  
 Of al þ<sup>t</sup> langis to the king,  
 The mair is my murnyng,                      Hynt vpone hand.  
 Ye fuld this fell fechting,

795

800

## LXIII.

Sen ye ar fa wourfchipfull, and wourthy in were,  
 Demyt with the derrest, maift doughty in deid ;  
 Yone berne in the battale wil ye noght forbere,  
 For al þ<sup>e</sup> mobil on the mold, merkit to meid.”—  
 “ Gif I de doughtely, the les is my dere,  
 Thoght he<sup>1</sup> war Sampfone himfelf, fa me Crifte reid !  
 I forfaik noght to feght, for al his grete feir,  
 I do the weill for to wit, doutlefe but dreid.”  
 Than faid fchir Spynagrose, “ fen ye will of neid  
 Be bovn to the battale,  
 Wirkis with counfale,                      And do it in deid.  
 It fall right gret avale,

805

810

815

<sup>1</sup> the, *ed.*

## LXIV.

Quhen ye mach hym on mold, merk to hym evin ;  
 And bere ye your bright lance in myddis his fcheild ;  
 Mak that course cruel, for Cryftis lufe of hevin !  
 And fyne wirk as I wife, your vappins to weild. 820  
 Be he ftonayt, yone fterne, ftout beis his ftevin ;  
 He wourdis brym as ane bair, that bydis na beild ;  
 Noy you noght at his note, that nobill is to nevin,  
 Suppofe his dyntis be deip dentit in your fcheild.  
 Tak na haift vpone hād, quhat happunys may hynt, 825  
 Bot lat the riche man rage,  
 And fecht in his curage,                      Syne dele ye your dynt.  
 To fwyng with fuerd quhil he fuage ;

## LXV.

Quhen he is ftuffit, thair fstrike, and hald hym on fteir, 830  
 Sa fal ye ftonay yone ftowt, fuppofe he be ftrang ;  
 Thus may ye lippin on the lake, throu lair þ<sup>t</sup> I leir ;  
 Bot gif ye wirk as wife, you worthis that wrang.”  
 The king and his knihtis, cumly and cleir,  
 In armour dewly hym dight, be the day fprang ; 835  
 Than wes fchir Kay wondir wo, wit ye but weir,  
 In defalt of ane freik, the feghting to fang.  
 That gome gudely furth gais, and graithit his geir ;  
 Evin to the caftell he raid,  
 Huvit in ane dern flaid ;                      Anairmit of weir.  
 Sa come ane knight as he baid,

## LXVI.

That knight bufkit to fchir Kay, one ane fteid broune,  
 Braiffit in birneis and bafnet, full bene ;  
 He cryis his enfenye, and conteris hym full founne, 84.  
 And maid ane courfe curagioufe, cruell and kene ;  
 Thair luffly lancis thai loiffit, and lightit baith doune,  
 And girdit out fuerdis, on the grund grene,  
 And hewit on hard fteill, hartlie but hounne ;  
 Rude reknyng raife thai' renkis betuene. 860  
 Thair mailyeis with melle thay merkit in the medis ;  
 The blude of thair bodeis  
 Throw breift-plait & birneis,                      Our ran thair riche vedis. 865  
 As roife ragit on rife,

## LXVII.

Thus thai faught vpone fute, without fenyeing ;  
 The fparkis flaw in the feild, as fyre out of flynt ;  
 Thai luffly ledis in lyke, thai layid on in ane ling ;  
 Delis thair full doughtely mony derf dynt ;  
 Dufchand on deir wedis, dourly thai dyng ; 880  
 Hidwife hurtis, and huge, haiftely thai hynt.  
 That knight carpit to fchir Kay, of difcomforting,—  
 “ Of this ftonay, and ftour, I rede that ye ftynt.  
 I will yeild the my brand, fen na better may bene ;  
 Quhair that fortune will faille, 885  
 Thair may na befynes availle.”—                      That clofit wes clene.  
 He braidit vp his ventaill,

<sup>1</sup> thair, *ed.*

## LXVIII.

For to reffaue the brand the berne wes full blith,  
 For he wes byrfit, and beft, and braithly bledand ; 870  
 þoght he wes myghtles, his mercy can he thair myth,  
 And wald þ<sup>t</sup> he nane harm hynt, with hart, & with hād.  
 Thai caryit baith to the kynge<sup>1</sup>, cumly to kyth ;  
 Thair lancis war loiffit, and left on the land.  
 Than faid he loud vpone loft, “ lord, will ye lyth, 875  
 Ye fall nane torfeir betyde, I tak vpone hand ;  
 Na myfliking haue in hart, nor haue ye na dout ;  
 Oft in romanis I reid,  
 Airly fporne late fpeid.”— The knight that wes ftout.  
 The king to the pailyeouñ gart leid 880

## LXIX.

Thai hynt of his harnefe, to helyn his wound ;  
 Lechis war noght to lait, with fawis fa fle.  
 With that mony frefch freik can to the feild found,  
 With Gologras in his geir, grete of degre ; 885  
 Armyt in rede gold, and rubeis fa round,  
 With mony riche relikis, riale to fe ;  
 Thair wes on Gologras, quhair he glaid on the ground,  
 Frenyeis of fine filk, fratit full fre.  
 Apone fterand ftedis, trappit to the heill, 890  
 Sexty fchalkis full fchene,  
 Cled in armour fa clene, All ftuffit in fteill.  
 No wy wantit, I wene,

<sup>1</sup> kynde, *ed.*



## LXX.

That berne raid on ane blonk, of ane ble quhite, 895  
 Blyndit all with bright gold, and beriallis bright ;  
 To tell of his deir weid war doutles delite,  
 And alfe ter for to tell the travalis war tight.  
 His name, & his nobillay, wes noght for to nyte ;  
 Thair wes na hathill fa heich, be half ane fute hicht ; 900  
 He lanfit out our ane land, and drew noght ane lyte,  
 Quhair he fuld frastyn his force, and fangin his fight.  
 Be that schir Gawyne the gay wes graithit in his gere ;  
 Cummyng on the ta fyde,  
 Hovand battale to abyde, With schelde, and with spere.  
 All reddy famyne to ryde,

## LXXI.

Thir luffy ledis on the land left be þame allane,  
 Tuke nowthir frēmyt nor freyndis, bot found thaṁ fra ;  
 Twa rynnyng renkis raith the riolyſe has tane, 910  
 Ilk freik to his feir to freftin his fa.  
 Thai gird one tva grete horſe, on grund q'hil thai grane ;  
 The trew helmys, and traift, in tathis thai ta ;  
 The rochis reirdit vith the rafch, quhē thai famyne rañ ;  
 Thair ſperis in the feild in flendris gart ga. 915  
 The ſtedis ſtakerit in the ſtour, for ſtreking on ſtray ;  
 The bernys bowit abak,  
 Sa woundir rude wes the rak, Couth na leid fay ! 920  
 Quhilk that happynnit the lak,

## LXXII.

Thai brayd fra thair blonkis, befely and bane,  
 Syne laught out fuerdis, lang and lufly ;  
 And hewit on hard fteill, wondir hawtane,  
 Baith war thai haldin of hartis heynd and hardy.  
 Gologras grew in greif at fchir Gawane ; 925  
 On the hight of the hard fteill he hyt hym, in hy ;  
 Pertly put with his pith at his pefane,  
 And fulyeit of the fyne maill ma' pan fyfty.  
 The knight ftakrit with the ftraik, all ftonayt in ftoūd ;  
 Sa woundir fcharply he fchair, 930  
 The berne that the brand bair ;                      Can to his faa found.  
 Schir Gawyne, with ane fell fair,

## LXXIII.

With ane bitand brand, burly and braid,  
 Quhilk oft in battale had bene his bute, and his belde, 935  
 He leit gird to the grome, with greif that he had,  
 And claif throw the cantell of the clene fchelde ;  
 Throw birny, and breift-plait, and bordour, it baid ;  
 The fulye of the fyne gold fell in the feild.  
 The rede blude with the rout folowit the blaid, 940  
 For all the wedis, I wife, that the wy weild,  
 Throw clafpis of clene gold, and clowis fa cleir ;  
 Thair with fchir Gologras the fyre,  
 In mekill angir and ire,                      Leit fle to his feir.  
 Alfe ferfe as the fyre, 945

<sup>1</sup> may, *ed.*

LXXIV.

Sic dintis he delt to that doughty,  
 Leit hym deftanyt to danger, and dreid ;  
 Thus wes he handillit full hait, that hawtane, in hy,  
 The scheld in countir he keft our his cleir weid ; 950  
 Hewit on hard steill, woundir haiftely ;  
 Gart beryallis hop of the hathill, about hym on breid.  
 Than the king vnto Criste keft vp ane cry,  
 Said, “ Lord, as thow life lent to levand in leid,  
 As thow formit all frute, to foster our fude, 955  
 Grant me confort this day,  
 As thow art God verray!”— For Gawyne the gude.  
 Thus prais the king in affray,

LXXV.

Golagras at Gawyne in fic ane grief grew, 960  
 As lyounes, for falt of fude, faught on the fold ;  
 With baith his hādis in haift that haltane couth hew ;  
 Gart ftanys hop of the hathill, that haltane war hold ;  
 Birny and breift-plait, bright for to schew ;  
 Mony mailye and plait war marrit on the mold. 965  
 Knichtis ramyt for reuth, schir Gawyne thai rew,  
 þ<sup>t</sup> doughty delit with hym fa, for dout he war defold ;  
 Sa wondir fcharply he fchare throu his schene fchroud ;  
 His fcheild he chopit hym fra,  
 In tuenty pecis and ma ; Witlefe and woud.  
 Schir Wawane writhit for wa,

LXXVI.

Thus wourthit fchir Gawyne wraith, and wepand,  
 And ftraik to that ftern knight, but ftynt ;  
 All engreuit the grome, with ane bright brand,  
 And delt thairwith doughtely mony derf tynt ;  
 Throw byrny, and breiftplait, bordour, and band,  
 He leit fle to the freke, as fyre out of flynt ;  
 He hewit on with grete haift, hartly with hand ;  
 Hakkit throw the hard weid, to the hede hynt ;  
 Throw the ftuf with the ftraik, ftapalis and ftanis,  
 Schir Wawine, wourthy in wail,  
 Half ane fpan at ane fpail,                      He hewit attanis !  
 Quhare his harnes wes hail,

LXXVII.

Thus raithly the riche berne raffit his array ;  
 The tothir ftertis ane bak, the fterne that wes ftout ;  
 Hit fchir Gawayne on þ<sup>e</sup> gere, quhil greuit wes the gay,  
 Betit doune the bright gold, and beryallis about ;  
 Scheddit his fchire wedis fcharply away ;  
 That lufly lappit war on loft, he gart thame law lout.  
 The fterne ftakrit with the ftraik, and ftertis on ftray ;  
 Quhill neir his refoune wes tynt, fa rude wes the rout !  
 The beryallis on the land of bratheris gart light,  
 Rubeis, and fapheir,  
 Precious ftanis þ<sup>t</sup> weir ;                      That dantely wes dight.  
 Thus drese thai wedis fa deir,

## LXXVIII.

Thai gyrd on fa grymly, in ane grete ire,  
 Baith schir Gavine the grome, and Gologras the knight,  
 The sparkis flew in the feild, as fagottis of fire,  
 Sa wndir frely thai frely fangis the fight;  
 Thai lufchit and laid on, thai luflyis of lyre.  
 King Arthur Ihefu befoght, feymly with fight,—  
 “As thow art fouerane God, fickerly, and fynē,  
 That' thow wald warys fra wo Wauane the wight,  
 And grant the frekis on fold farar to fall,  
 Baith thair honouris to faif.”  
 At Crift with credēce thai craif,      And thus pray thay all.  
 Knight, wyar, and knaif;

## LXXIX.

Thai mellit on with malice, thay myghtyis in mude,  
 Mankit throu mailyeis, and maid thame to mer;  
 Wraithly wroght, as thai war witlese and wod,  
 Be that schir Wawane, the wy, likit the wer;  
 The blaw his bright weid wes bullerand in blude.  
 Thair with the nobill in neid nyghit hym ner,  
 Straik hym with ane fūnt brād, in stede quhare he stude;  
 The scheld in fardellis can fle, in feild away fer;  
 The toþir hyt hym agane with ane hard fwerd.  
 As he loutit our ane bra,  
 His feit founderit hym fra;      Grulingis to erd.  
 Schir Gologras graithly can ga

<sup>1</sup> At. ed.

## LXXX.

Or euer he gat vp agane, gude fchir Gawane 1025  
 Grippit to fchir Gologras, on the grund grene  
 Thair of gromys wes glaid, gudly and gane;  
 Lovit Crifte of that cafe, with hartis fa clene.  
 Ane daggar dayntely dight that doughty has drawne;  
 Than he carpit to the knight, cruel and kene, 1030  
 "Gif thou luffis thi life, lelely noght to layne,  
 Yeld me thi bright brand, burnift fa bene;  
 I rede thow wirk as I wife, or war the betide."  
 The toþir anfuerit fchortly,  
 "Me think farar to dee,                      Ane fclander to byde.  
 Than fchamyt be, verralie,

## LXXXI.

Wes I neuer yit defoullit, nor fylit in fame,  
 Nor nane of my eldaris, that euer I hard nevin;  
 Bot ilk berne has bene vnbundin with blame, 1040  
 Ringand in rialte, and reullit thame felf evin.  
 Sall neuer fege vndir fon fe me with fchame,  
 Na luke on my lekame with light, nor with levin<sup>1</sup>,  
 Na nane of the nynt degre haue noy of my name,  
 I fwere be futhfaft God, that fettis all on fevin! 1045  
 Bot gif that wourchip of were win me away,  
 I trete for na favour,  
 Do furth thi devoir;                      Doutles this day." 1050  
 Of me gettis thou na more,

<sup>1</sup> leme, *ed.*

## LXXXII.

Lordingis and ladyis in the castell on loft,  
 Quhen thai saw thair liege lord laid on the landis,  
 Mony fweithing of fware frownit full oft,  
 Wyis wourthit for wo to wringin thair handis ;  
 Wes nowthir solace, nor sang, thair forow to soft, 1055  
 Ane fayr stonay and stour at thair hartis standis ;  
 On Criste cumly thay cry, " on croce as thou coft,  
 With thi bliffit blude<sup>1</sup> to bring ws out of bandis,  
 Lat neuer our fouerane his cause with schame to ēcheif !  
 Mary, fareft of face, 1060  
 Beseik thi sone in this cace,                      He grant ws to geif !"  
 Ane drop of his grete grace,

## LXXXIII.

Thus the ledis on loft in langour war lent ;  
 The lordis on the toþir fide for liking thay leugh ; 1065  
 Schir Gowyne tretit the knight to turn his entent,  
 For he wes wondir wa to wirk hym mare wugh.  
 " Schir, say for thi self, thow feis thou art schent ;  
 It may nocht mend the ane myte to mak it so teugh.  
 Rife, and raik to our roy, richeft of rent ; 1070  
 Thow falbe newit at neid, with nobillay eneuch,  
 And dukit in our duchery, all the duelling."—  
 " Than war I woundir vnwis,  
 To purchese profit for pris,                      All my leuing.  
 Quhare schame ay euer lysis, 1075

<sup>1</sup> hlude, *ed.*

## LXXXIV.

þ<sup>e</sup> sege þ<sup>t</sup> schrenke for na schame, þ<sup>e</sup> schent might hȳ schēd,  
 That mære luffis his life than lois vpone erd ;  
 Sal neuer freik on fold, fremmyt nor freynde,  
 Gar me lurk for ane luke, lawit not lerd ; 1080  
 For quhafa with wourfchip fall of this world wāde,  
 Thair wil nane wyis, that ar wis, wary the werd.  
 For ony treti may tyde, I tell the the teynd,  
 I wil noght turn myn entent, for all this world brerd,  
 Or I pair of pris ane penny-worth in this place, 1085  
 For befandis, or beryell ;  
 I knaw myne avne quarrell,                      To dee in this cace !"  
 I dreid not the pereill,

## LXXXV.

Schir Gawyne rewit the renk, þ<sup>t</sup> wes riale, 1090  
 And said to þ<sup>e</sup> reuerend, riche, and rightuis,  
 " How may I succour þ<sup>e</sup> found, femely in fale,  
 Before this pepill in plane, and pair noght thy pris ?"  
 " That fall I tel þ<sup>e</sup> with tong, trewly in tale,  
 Wald yow denye þ<sup>e</sup> in deid to do my deuīs ; 1095  
 Lat it worth at my wil, þ<sup>e</sup> wourfchip to wale,  
 As I had wonnyn þ<sup>e</sup> of were, wourthy and wis ;  
 Syne cary to þ<sup>e</sup> castel, quhare I haue maist cure.  
 Thus may yow faif me fra fyte ;  
 As I am criftynit perfite,                      And fauf thyn honoure."  
 I fall thi kyndes quyte,



## LXXXVI.

"That war hard," said þ<sup>t</sup> heynd, "sa haue I gude hele!  
 Ane wounder peralous poynt, partenyng grete plight,  
 To soner in thi gentrice, but fignete or fele, 1105  
 And I before saw þ<sup>e</sup> neuer, fickerly, with fight<sup>1</sup>;  
 To leif in thi laute, and thow war vnlele,  
 Than had I caffin in cair mony kene knight.  
 Bot I knaw thou art kene, and alse cruell;  
 Or thow be fulyeit fey, freke, in þ<sup>e</sup> fight, 1110  
 I do me in thi gentrice, be Drightin sa deir!"  
 He lenyt vp in þ<sup>e</sup> place;  
 The topir raithly vpraife;                      In feild of his feir! 1115  
 Gat neuer grome fic<sup>2</sup> ane grace,

## LXXXVII.

Than thei nobillis at neid yeid to thair note new;  
 Freschly foundis to fecht, all fenye, and thair fair;  
 Tua schort fuerdis of sche<sup>3</sup> smertly thai drew,  
 Than thai mellit on mold, the myle way<sup>3</sup> and mare;  
 Wes newþir cafar, nor<sup>4</sup> king, thair quentance þ<sup>t</sup> knew, 1120  
 It femyt be thair contenance þ<sup>t</sup> kendillit wes care.  
 Syne thai traift in þ<sup>t</sup> feild, throu treti of trew;  
 Put up thair brandis sa braid, burly and bair.  
 Gologras and Gawyne, gracious and gude,  
 Yeid to the castel of itane, 1125  
 As he war yoldin & tane;                      Sair murnand in mude.  
 The king precious in pane

<sup>1</sup> fight, *ed.*<sup>2</sup> fit, *ed.*<sup>3</sup> wan, *ed.*<sup>4</sup> gor, *ed.*

## LXXXVIII.

The roy ramand ful raith, þ<sup>t</sup> reuth wes to fe,  
 And railit full redles to his riche tent ; 1130  
 The watter wet his chekis, þ<sup>t</sup> schalkis myght fe,  
 As all his welthis in warld had bene away went ;  
 And othir bernys, for barrat, blakynnit thair ble,  
 Braithly bundin in baill, thair breftis war blent.—  
 “ The flour of knighthede is caught throu his cruelte ! 1135  
 Now is þ<sup>e</sup> Round Tabil rebutit, richeft of rent,  
 Quhen wourfchipfull Wawane, þ<sup>e</sup> wit of our were,  
 Is led to ane prefoune<sup>1</sup> ;  
 Now failyeis gude fortune ! ”                      Grat mony falt tere. 1140  
 The king, cumly with croune,

## LXXXIX.

Quhen þ<sup>t</sup> Gawyne the gay, grete of degre,  
 Wes cummyn to þ<sup>e</sup> castel, cumly and cleir,  
 Gromys of þ<sup>t</sup> garifoune maid gamyn and gle,  
 And ledis lofit thair lord, lufly of lyere ; 1145  
 Beirdis beildit in blife, brightest of ble ;  
 The tothir knightis maid care, of Arthuris here ;—  
 Al thus with murnyng and myrth thai maid melle.  
 Ay, quhat þ<sup>e</sup> segis war fet to the suppere,  
 The feymly fouerane of þ<sup>e</sup> fail marfchel he wes ; 1150  
 He gart fchir Gawyne vpga,  
 His wife, his doghter alfua,                      War fet at þ<sup>e</sup> des.  
 And of þ<sup>t</sup> mighty na ma,

<sup>1</sup> prefoune<sup>ed</sup>.

## XC.

He gart at ane fete burd þ<sup>e</sup> ftrangearis begin, 1155  
 The maift feymly in fale ordanit thame fete ;  
 Ilk knyght ane cumly lady, þ<sup>t</sup> cleir wes of kyn ;  
 With kynde contenance the renk couth thame rehetē,  
 Quhen thai war machit at mete, þ<sup>e</sup> mare and þe myn,  
 And ay the meryeft on mold marſchalit at mete. 1160  
 Than ſaid he lowd vpone loſt, the lord of þ<sup>t</sup> in,  
 To al þ<sup>e</sup> beirnyſ about, of grē þ<sup>t</sup> wes grete,  
 “ Luſſy ledis in land, lythis me til ! ”  
 He ſtraik the burd with ane wand,  
 The quilk he held in hand ;                      Sa war thai<sup>1</sup> all ſtil.  
 Thair wes na word muuand,

## XCI.

“ Heir ye ar gaderit in groſſe, al the grēteſt,  
 Of gomys that grip has vndir my gouernyng<sup>2</sup> ;  
 Of baronis, and burowis, of braid land þ<sup>e</sup> beſt, 1170  
 And alſe the meryeft on mold has intrometting.  
 Cumly knightis, in this cace I mak you request,  
 Freyndfully, but falſſet, or any fenyeing,  
 That ye wald to me, treuly and traift,  
 Tell your entent, as tuiching this thing 1175  
 That now hingis on my hart, ſa haue I gude hele !  
 It tuichis myne honour ſa neir,  
 Ye mak me plane anſueir ;                      I may noght concele. 1180  
 Thairof I you requair,

<sup>1</sup> thair, *ed.*<sup>2</sup> goduernyng, *ed.*

## XCII.

Say me ane chois, þ<sup>e</sup> tane of thir twa,  
 Quhethir ye like me lord, laught in the feild,  
 Or ellis my life at þ<sup>e</sup> lest lelely forga,  
 And boune yow to sum berne, þ<sup>t</sup> myght be your beild ?”  
 The wourthy wyis, at þ<sup>t</sup> word vox woundir wa, 1185  
 Thā thai wift thair fouerane wes schent vnder scheild ;—  
 “ We wil na fauour here fenye, to frende, na<sup>1</sup> to fa ;  
 We like yow ay as our lord, to were, and to weild ;  
 Your lordschip we may noght forga, alfe lang as we leif ;  
 Ye fal be our gouernour, 1190  
 Quhil your dais may endure,            For chance þ<sup>t</sup> may cheif.”  
 In eife and honour,

## XCIII.

Quhen this auenand and honest had maid this anfuer,  
 And had tald thair entent trewly him till, 1195  
 Than schir Gologras the gay, in gudly maneir,  
 Said to thai fegis, femely on fyll,  
 How wourfchipful Wavane had wonnin him on weir,  
 To wirk him wandreth or wough, quhilk war his wil ;  
 How fair him fell in feght, fyne how he couth forbere ;— 1200  
 “ In fight of his fouerane, this did þ<sup>e</sup> gentill ;  
 He has me fauit fra fyte, throw his gentrice,  
 It war fyn, but recure,  
 þ<sup>e</sup> knightis honour fuld smure,            Quhilk maift is of p'ce.  
 That did me this honoure, 1205

<sup>1</sup> nar, *ed.*

## XCIV.

I aught as prynce him to prife, for his prouefe,  
 That wanty nought my wourfchip, as he þ<sup>t</sup> aī wan,  
 And at his bidding full bane, blith to obeife,  
 This berne full of bewte, þ<sup>t</sup> all my baill·blan; 1210  
 I mak þ<sup>t</sup> knawin, and kend, his grete kyndnes,  
 The countirpas to kyth to him, gif I can."  
 He raikit to fchir Gawine, right in ane race,  
 Said, " fchir, I know be conquest thou art ane kynd man ;  
 Quhen my life and my dede wes baith at thi will, 1215  
 Thy frendfchip frely I fand ;  
 Now wil I be obeyand,                      As right is, and fkill.  
 And make þ<sup>e</sup> manrent with hand,

## XCV.

Sen fortune cachis the cours, throu hir quentys ; 1220  
 I did it nought for nane dreid, þ<sup>t</sup> I had to de,  
 Na for na fauting of hart, na for na fantife ;  
 Quhare Criste cachis þ<sup>e</sup> cours, it rynnys quently ;  
 May nowthir power, nor pith, put him to prife.  
 Quhā on-fortone quhelmys þ<sup>e</sup> quheil, thair gais grace by, 1225  
 Quha may his danger endure, or deftanye dispife,  
 That led men in langour, ay lestand·inly,  
 The date na langar may endure na Drichtin deuinis ;  
 Ilk man may kyth, be his cure,  
 Baith knyght, king, & empriour,                      & mater maift mine is.  
 And mufe in his myrrour,

## XCVI.

Hectour, and Alexander, and Julius Cefar,  
 Dauid, and Jofue, and Judas the gent ;  
 Sampfone, and Salamon, þ<sup>t</sup> wife and wourthy war, 1235  
 And þ<sup>t</sup> ryngis on erd, richeft of rent ;  
 Quhen thai met at þ<sup>e</sup> merk, than might thai na mair,  
 To fpeid thame our þ<sup>e</sup> fpere-feild enfpringing thai fp'nt ;  
 Quhen fortune worthis vnfrende, thā failieis welefair,  
 Thair ma na trefour ourtak, nor twyn hir entent. 1240  
 All erdly riches, and rufe, is noght in thair garde ;  
 Quhat menis fortune be fkill,  
 Ane gude chance or ane ill ;                      Is worth his rewarde. 1245  
 Ilkane be werk, and be will,

## XCVII.

Schir Hallolkis, fchir Hewis, heynd and hardy,  
 Schir Lyonel luffly, and alfe fchir Bedwere,  
 Schir Wawane þ<sup>e</sup> wife knight, wicht and wourthy,  
 Carys furth to þ<sup>e</sup> king, cumly and clere ;  
 Alfe my felf fall pafe with yow reddy, 1250  
 My kyth, and my castel, compt his conquere."  
 Thai war arait ful raith, that ryale cumpany,  
 Of lordis and ladis, luffum to lere ;  
 With grete lightis on loft, þ<sup>t</sup> gaif grete leime ;  
 Sexty torcheis ful bright, 1255  
 Before fchir Gologras þ<sup>e</sup> knyght ;                      In ony riche reime.  
 That wes ane femely fyght,

## XCVIII.

All effrayt of þ<sup>t</sup> fair wes the fresch king ;  
 Wend the wyis had bene wrought all for the weir ; 1260  
 Lordis laught thair lancis, and went in ane lyng,  
 And graithit thame to þ<sup>e</sup> gait, in thair greif geir.  
 Spynok spekis with speche, faid, “ moue you na thing,  
 It femys faughtnyng thai feik, I fe be thair feir ;  
 Yone riche cūmis arait in riche robbing, 1265  
 I trow this deuore be done, I dout for na deir.  
 I wait schir Gawane þ<sup>e</sup> gay has grathit this gait ;  
 Betuix schir Gologras and he  
 Gude contenance I fe,                      Luffum of lait.”  
 And vthir knightis so fre, 1270

## XCIX.

The renk raikit to þ<sup>e</sup> roy, with his riche rout,  
 Sexty schalkis þ<sup>t</sup> schene, seymly to schaw ;  
 Of banrenttis, and baronis, bauld hym about,  
 In clathis of cleyne gold, cumly to knaw. 1275  
 To þ<sup>t</sup> lordly on loft þ<sup>t</sup> luffly can lout,  
 Before þ<sup>e</sup><sup>1</sup> riale renkis, richeft on raw ;  
 Saluft þ<sup>e</sup> bauld berne, with ane blith wout,  
 Ane furlenth before his folk, on feildis so faw.  
 The king crochit with croune, cumly and cleir, 1280  
 Tuke him vp by the hand,  
 With ane fair fembland ;                      Did to þ<sup>e</sup> deir.  
 Grete honour þ<sup>t</sup> auenand

<sup>1</sup> þ<sup>t</sup>, *ed.*

## C.

Than þ<sup>t</sup> feymly be fight faid to þ<sup>e</sup> gent, 1285  
 Wes vailyeand, and verteous, foroutin ony vice,  
 “ Heir am I cumyn at this tyme, to your present,  
 As to þ<sup>e</sup> wourfchipfullest in warld, wourthy, and wife ;  
 Of al þ<sup>t</sup> ryngis in erd richeft of rent,  
 Of pyth, and of proues, peirles of prife. 1290  
 Heir I mak yow ane grant, with gudly entent,  
 Ay to your prefence to perfew, with al my seruice ;  
 Quhare euer ye found or fair, be firth, or be fell,  
 I fal be reddey at your will,  
 In alkin refoune<sup>1</sup> and fkill, Treuly to tell.”  
 As I am haldin thairtill,

## CI.

He did the conquerour<sup>2</sup> to knaw all the caufe quhy,  
 That all his hathillis in þ<sup>t</sup> heir, hailly on hight ;  
 How he wes wonnyn<sup>3</sup> of wer with Wawane þ<sup>e</sup> wy, 1300  
 And al the fortoun<sup>4</sup> þ<sup>e</sup> freke befell in þ<sup>e</sup> fight ;  
 The dout, and þ<sup>e</sup> danger, he tauld him quently.  
 Than faid Arthur him feluin, femely by fight,  
 “ This is ane foueranefull thing, be Ihefu ! think I,  
 To leif in fic perell, and in fa grete plight ; 1305  
 Had ony preiudice apperit, in þ<sup>e</sup> partyce,  
 It had bene grete perell ;  
 Bot fen þ<sup>e</sup> lawte is lell, The mare is thi price. 1310  
 That thow my kyndness wil heill,

<sup>1</sup> refonne, *ed.*<sup>2</sup> conquer, *ed.*<sup>3</sup> wounen, *ed.*<sup>4</sup> fortonne, *ed.*



## CII.

I thank the mekill, fchir knight," faid the ryall,  
 " It makis me blythar to be than all thi braid landis ;  
 Or all the renttis fra thyne vnto Ronfiwall,  
 poght I myght reif thame with right, rath to my hādis."  
 Than faid the senyeour in fyth, femely in faill, 1315  
 " Because of yone bald berne, that broght me of bandis,  
 All that I haue wndir hewyne, I hald of you hail,  
 In firth, forest, and fell, quhare euer that it standis.  
 Sē vourfchipfull Wawane has wonnyn to your hādis  
 The fenying in gouernyng, 1320  
 Cumly conquerour, and kyng, As liege lord of lādis.  
 Heir mak [I] yow obeifing,

## CIII.

And fyne fewte I yow fest, without fenyeing,  
 Sa þ<sup>t</sup> the caufe may be kend, and knawin throw fkill ; 1325  
 Blithly bow and obeife to your bidding,  
 As I am haldin to tell treuly thair till."  
 Of fchir Gologras grant blith wes the king,  
 And thocht þ<sup>e</sup> fordward wes fair, freyndfchip to fulfil.  
 Thair fchir Gawane the gay, throu requiring, 1330  
 Gart þ<sup>e</sup> fouerane him felf, femely on faill,  
 Cary to þ<sup>e</sup> castel, cleirly to be hald,  
 With all þ<sup>e</sup> wourthy þ<sup>t</sup> were,  
 Erll, duke, and douch-spere, That blyth war & bald.  
 Baith banrent and bachilere, 1335

## CIV.

Quhen þ<sup>e</sup> femely fouerane wes fet in þ<sup>e</sup> faill,  
 It wes felcouth to se the feir feruice ;  
 Wynis wifly in wane, went full grete waill  
 Among the pryncis in place, peirles to price. 1340  
 It war teir for to tel, treuly in tail,  
 To ony wy in this warld, wourthy, I wife.  
 With reualing and reuay all the oulk hale,  
 Also rachis can ryn vndir the wod rise,  
 On þ<sup>e</sup> riche riuer of Rone ryot thai maid ; 1345  
 And fyne, on þ<sup>e</sup> nynte day,  
 The renkis rial of array,                      With outin mare baid.  
 Bownyt hame thair way,

## CV.

Quhen the ryal roy, maift of renoune, 1350  
 With al his reuerend rout wes reddy to ryde ;  
 The king, cumly with kith, wes crochit with croune,  
 To schir Gologras þ<sup>e</sup> gay, faid gudly þ<sup>t</sup> tyde,—  
 “ Heir mak I the reward, as I haue refoune,  
 Before thir<sup>1</sup> fenyeouris in fight, femely befide, 1355  
 As tuiching þ<sup>e</sup> tēporalite, in toure, and in toune,  
 In firth, forest, and fell, and woddis fo wide ;  
 I mak releifching of þin allegiance ;  
 But dreid I fall þ<sup>e</sup> warand,  
 Baith be fey and be land,                      With outin distance.”  
 Fre as I the first fand,

<sup>1</sup> their, *ed.*

Heir endis the Knighthly Tale of Golagros and Gawa  
 ne, in the south gait of Edinburgh, be Walter Chepman  
 and Androw Millar, the viii. day of Ap'le, the phere of  
 God, M.CCCCC. and viii. pheris.



## Appendix.



## Syre Gawene and the Carle of Carelyle.

[MS. Por-  
kington,  
fol. 12.]

**L**YSTENNYTH, lordyng<sup>o</sup>, a lyttyfl stonde,  
Of oñ þ<sup>t</sup> was sekor<sup>o</sup> and founde,  
And douȝty in his dede ;  
He was as meke as mayde in bour<sup>o</sup>,  
And þ<sup>o</sup> to ftyfe in eu<sup>o</sup>y ftour<sup>o</sup>,  
Was noñ fo douȝtty in dede.  
Ded<sup>o</sup> of arm<sup>o</sup>, wtt<sup>1</sup> out lefe,  
Seche he wolde in war<sup>o</sup> & pees,  
In mony a stronge lede ;  
Sertayfily wtt outtyñ fabufl,  
He was wtt Art<sup>o</sup> at þ<sup>e</sup> Rounde Tabufl,  
In romans as we reede.  
His name was fyr<sup>o</sup> Gawene,  
Moche worfchepe in Brettē he wañ,  
And hardy he was and wyȝte ;  
The yle of Brettayñ i-cleppyde ys,  
Betwyñ Skotlond & Ynglonde, I wys,  
In storry i-wryte a-ryȝte.  
Wallys ys añ angufl of þ<sup>t</sup> yle,  
At Cardyfe foiornde þ<sup>e</sup> kynge a whylle,  
Wtt mony a gentyfl knyȝte ;

5

10

15

20

<sup>1</sup> *Sic, for w<sup>t</sup> or with, passim.*

- That wolde to Ynglonde, to honte,  
 As grete lordys dothe, and be wonte,  
 [fol. 12b.] Wtt hardy lordys and wygȝte.  
 Kyng Arttor<sup>9</sup> to his lordis gañ faye, 25  
 As a lorde ryaff þ<sup>t</sup> weñt maye,  
 “ Do vs to haue a mafse ;  
 Byfchope Bawdewyñ fchañ hit doñ,  
 Thē to þ<sup>e</sup> forreft woll we goñ,  
 Añ that evyr<sup>9</sup> her<sup>9</sup> ys. 30  
 For nowe ys grece tyme of þ<sup>e</sup><sup>1</sup> ȝeer<sup>9</sup>,  
 That barūs bolde ſchulde hont þ<sup>e</sup> der<sup>9</sup>,  
 And reyfe heñ of her<sup>9</sup> reſte ;”—  
 Wöder<sup>9</sup> glad was fyr<sup>9</sup> Mewreke,  
 So was þ<sup>e</sup> knyȝt fyr<sup>9</sup> Key Cātocke, 35  
 And oþ<sup>9</sup> mor<sup>9</sup> and lafe.  
 Glade was Launccelet de Lacke,  
 So was ꝑ Percivañ, I vndor-take,  
 And Lanfalle, I wene ;  
 So was fyr<sup>9</sup> Eweyñ þ<sup>e</sup> Vytt yan, 40  
 And fyr<sup>9</sup> Lot of Laudyañ,  
 That hardy was & kene.  
 Syr<sup>9</sup> Gaytefer<sup>9</sup>, and fyr<sup>9</sup> Galerowne,  
 Syr<sup>9</sup> Coſtantyñ, and fyr<sup>9</sup> Raynbrowñ,  
 The knyȝt of arm<sup>9</sup> grene ; 45  
 Syr<sup>9</sup> Gaweñ was ſtwarde of þ<sup>e</sup> halle,  
 He was mañt<sup>9</sup> of heñ añt,  
 And buſkyde heñ be-dene.  
 [fol. 13.] The kyng<sup>9</sup> vncull fyr<sup>9</sup> Mordrete,  
 Nobuñ knyȝtt<sup>9</sup> wtt hyñ gañ lede, 50  
 In romans as meñ rede ;  
 Syr<sup>9</sup> Yngeles, þ<sup>t</sup> genttyle knyȝte,  
 Wtt hyñ he lede houndys wygȝt,  
 That well coude do her<sup>9</sup> dede.  
 Syr<sup>9</sup> Le Byus Dyſkonús was þare, 55

<sup>1</sup> þā, MS.

Wtt proude meñ les & mare,  
 To make þ<sup>e</sup> doune der<sup>9</sup> blede ;  
 Syr Petty-pas of Wynchylfe,  
 A nobuñ knyȝt of cheualre,  
 And ftout was oñ a ftede. 60  
 Syr Grandoñ, & fyr Ferr<sup>9</sup>-vncowþ<sup>e</sup>,  
 Meryly they fewyde wtt mouthe,  
 Wtt houndys þ<sup>t</sup> wer<sup>9</sup> wyȝt ;  
 Syr Blancheles, and Iron-fyde,  
 Mōny a doughty þ<sup>t</sup> day coñ ryde, 65  
 Oñ hors fayr<sup>9</sup> and lyȝte.  
 Irouñ-fyde, as I wene,  
 Gat þ<sup>e</sup> knyȝt of armus grene,  
 Oñ a lady brygȝt ;  
 Sertenly, as I wndur<sup>9</sup>-ftonde, 70  
 The fayr<sup>9</sup> may of Blanche-loñde,  
 [fol. 13<sup>b</sup>.] In bour<sup>9</sup>, þ<sup>t</sup> louely wyȝte.  
 Iroñ-fyde, as I wene,  
 I-armyd he wolde ryde fuñ clene,  
 Wer þ<sup>e</sup> fouñ nevyr<sup>9</sup> fo hoot<sup>1</sup> ; 75  
 In wyntt<sup>9</sup> he wolde arm<sup>9</sup> bere,  
 Gyantt<sup>9</sup> & he wer eu<sup>9</sup> at were,  
 And añt way at þ<sup>e</sup> de-bate.  
 Fabele-honde hyȝt ys ftede,  
 His armys and his odir<sup>9</sup> wede, 80  
 Fuñ fayr<sup>9</sup> and goode hit was ;  
 Of afur for<sup>9</sup> fothe he bare,  
 A gryffyñ of golde fuñ feyr<sup>9</sup>,  
 I-fet fuñ of golde flourr<sup>9</sup>.  
 He coude mor<sup>9</sup> of venery & of wer<sup>9</sup>, 85  
 Thē añ þ<sup>e</sup> kyng<sup>9</sup> þ<sup>t</sup> wer ther<sup>9</sup>,  
 Fuñ oft a-fay heñ he wolde ;  
 Brennynge dragons hade he flayñ,  
 And wylde bull<sup>9</sup> mony woñ,

<sup>1</sup> hate ?<sup>2</sup> knyȝtes ?



That grefely wer i-holde. 90  
 Byge barrons he hade i-bonde,  
 A hardyer knyȝt myȝt not be fonde,  
 Fuȝt herdy he was, and bolde ;  
 Therfor he<sup>1</sup> was callyd, as I hard ſay,  
 The kyng<sup>9</sup> fellowe, by his day, 95  
 [fol. 14.] Wtt worthy knyȝtt<sup>9</sup> i-tolde.  
 A lyoñ of golde was his creſte,  
 He ſpake reyfoñ out of reſte,  
 Lyftyñ, and ȝe may her<sup>9</sup> ;  
 Wher eu<sup>9</sup> he went, be eft or weſte, 100  
 He nold for<sup>9</sup> -ſake mañ nor<sup>9</sup> beſt,  
 To fyȝt fer or<sup>9</sup> ner<sup>9</sup>.  
 Knyȝtt<sup>9</sup> kene faſt they rane,  
 The kyng<sup>9</sup> followyd wtt mony a mā,  
 V. C. and moo, I wene ; 105  
 Folke followyd wtt fedyrt floñ<sup>9</sup>,  
 Nobuȝt archarr<sup>9</sup> for þ<sup>e</sup> nons,  
 To fell þ<sup>e</sup> fallow der<sup>9</sup> fo cleyñ.  
 Barrons gañ her hornn<sup>9</sup> blowe,  
 The der cam reykyng<sup>9</sup> oñ a rowe, 110  
 Bothe hert and eke heynde ;  
 Be that tyme was pryme of þ<sup>e</sup> day,  
 V. C. der<sup>9</sup> dede oñ a lond lay,  
 Alonge vndur<sup>9</sup> a lynde.  
 Thē fyr<sup>9</sup> Gaweñ & fyr<sup>9</sup> Key, 115  
 And beſchope Baydewyñ, as I yow ſay,  
 Aft<sup>9</sup> a rayñ-der<sup>9</sup> they rode ;  
 Frowe þ<sup>t</sup> tyñ was pryñ of þ<sup>e</sup> day,  
 [fol. 14<sup>b</sup>.] Tyl myde vndur<sup>9</sup> -noñ, as I yow ſaye,  
 Neu<sup>9</sup> ſtyll hit abode. 120  
 A myſt gañ ryſe in a mor<sup>9</sup>,  
 Barrons blowe her hornis ſtore,  
 Meche moñ fyr Key made ;

<sup>1</sup> he<sup>a</sup>, *MS.*

The reyne-der<sup>9</sup> wolde not dwelle,  
 Herkon what avēt<sup>9</sup> hem befelle, 125  
 Herbrow þey wolde fayn haue hade.  
 Thē sayde þ<sup>e</sup> gentyll knyȝt & Gawefi,  
 "Aft þis labur ys in wayne,  
 For certen trowe hit me ;  
 The dere ys passyde out of our<sup>9</sup> fyȝt, 130  
 We mete no mor<sup>9</sup> wtt hȳ to nyȝt,  
 Hende, herkoñ to me.  
 I reede þ<sup>t</sup> we of our hors a-lyȝt,  
 And byde in þis woode aft nyȝt,  
 And loge vndur þis tree ;"— 135  
 "Ryde we hens," quod Keye a-non,  
 "We schaff haue harbrowe or<sup>9</sup> we goñ,  
 Dar no mañ wern hit me."  
 Thē sayd þ<sup>e</sup> beschope, "I knowe hit well,  
 A carle her<sup>9</sup> in a castell, 140  
 A lyttyll her<sup>9</sup> ner honde ;  
 [fol. 15.] The Karl of Carlyll ys his nam,  
 He may vs herborow, be fent Jame !  
 As I vndur-fonde.  
 Was þ<sup>9</sup> nevyr<sup>9</sup> barū so bolde, 145  
 That eu<sup>9</sup> myȝt gayftyn in his holde,  
 But evyll harbrowe he fonde ;  
 He schall be bette, as I harde say,  
 And ȝefe he go wtt lyfe a-way,  
 Hit wer but godd<sup>9</sup> fonde. 150  
 Nowe ryde we þedyr<sup>9</sup> aft þre,"—  
 Ther to sayd Key, "I grant hit þ<sup>e</sup>,  
 Also mot I well far<sup>9</sup> !  
 And as þ<sup>u</sup> feyft hit schaff be holde,  
 Be þ<sup>e</sup> Carle neu<sup>9</sup> so bolde, 155  
 I count hȳ not worthe an har.  
 And ȝeyf he be neu<sup>9</sup> so stovte,  
 We woll hȳ bette aft a-bowt,  
 And make his beggynges bar<sup>9</sup> ;

Suche as he brewythe feche schaff he drenke,  
 He schaff be bette þ<sup>t</sup> he schaff stynke,  
 And a-zenft his wyll be ther<sup>9</sup>.  
 Syr Gawen fayd, "fo hav I blyfe,  
 I woll not geyftyn þ<sup>9</sup> magreys,  
 [fol. 15<sup>b</sup>.] Thow I myȝt neu<sup>9</sup> fo well ;  
 ȝefe āny fayr<sup>9</sup> word<sup>9</sup> may vs gayn,  
 To make þ<sup>e</sup> lorde of vs fuȝt fayn,  
 In his oun castell.  
 Key, let be thy boȝtfulȝ fare,  
 Thow goȝt a-bout to warke care,  
 I fay, fo haue I helle !  
 I woll pray þ<sup>e</sup> good lorde, as I yow faye,  
 Of herborow tyll to-morrow daye,  
 And of met & melle."  
 On her<sup>9</sup> way fast they rode,  
 At þ<sup>e</sup> castell-ȝat þey a-bode,  
 The portt<sup>9</sup> callyd þey schulde ;  
 Ther<sup>9</sup> hyngē a hōmyr by a cheyn,  
 To knocke þ<sup>9</sup> at fyr<sup>9</sup> Key toke dayn<sup>1</sup>,  
 The hōmyr<sup>9</sup> a-way he wold haue pold.  
 The portt<sup>9</sup> come wtt a p<sup>9</sup>wey fare,  
 And hem fonde he ther<sup>9</sup>,  
 He axid what they wolde ;  
 Thē fayd Gawen curttefly,  
 " We be-feche þ<sup>e</sup> lorde of herbory,  
 The good lorde of þis holde."  
 The portt<sup>9</sup> anwerd hē a-gayn,  
 " Your<sup>9</sup> meſſage wold I do fuȝt fayn,  
 [fol. 17.] And ȝe have harme, þanke hyt not me ;  
 ȝe be fo fayr<sup>9</sup>, lyme and lythe,  
 And þ<sup>9</sup> to cōly, glad þer<sup>9</sup> wtt,  
 That cēmely hyt ys to see.  
 My lorde can no cortteſſye,

<sup>1</sup> dedayn ?

3e schappyth notte w<sup>tt</sup> out a wellony,  
 Truly trow 3e mee;  
 Me rewyth for<sup>9</sup> 3e came þis waye,  
 And ar<sup>9</sup> 3e go so woll 3e fay,  
 But 3efe mor<sup>9</sup> grace be."  
 "Portt<sup>9</sup>," sayde Key, "let be thy care,  
 Thow feft we mey no forþ<sup>9</sup> fare,  
 Thow jappyft, as I wene;  
 But þ<sup>u</sup> wolt on our<sup>9</sup> meffage<sup>1</sup> goñ,  
 The kyng<sup>9</sup> keyis woll we tane,  
 And draw hem douñ c<sup>9</sup>teyn."  
 The portt<sup>9</sup> sayde, "fo mot I pryfe,  
 Ther<sup>9</sup> be not þre knyžtt<sup>9</sup> a-lyve,  
 That dorft do hit, I wene;  
 Wyft my lorde your<sup>9</sup> wordys grete,  
 Some your<sup>9</sup> lyvys 3e ſchold for<sup>9</sup>-lete,  
 Or ell<sup>9</sup> full faft to-ſlen."  
 The portt<sup>9</sup> went in to þ<sup>e</sup> hañt,  
 [fol. 17<sup>b</sup>.] Wtt his lord he mett wtt añt,  
 That hardy was & bolde;—  
 "Carl of Carllhyll, gode loke þ<sup>e</sup>!  
 At þ<sup>e</sup> 3att be barun<sup>9</sup> þre,  
 Semley arm<sup>9</sup> to welde.  
 To knyžtt<sup>9</sup> of Art<sup>9</sup>ys in,  
 A beſchope, & no mor<sup>9</sup> men,  
 Sertayn as they me tolde;"—  
 Thē fayd þ<sup>e</sup> Carle, be ſent Mygheñt,  
 That typing<sup>9</sup> lykyth me ryžt well,  
 Seyth þ<sup>i</sup> þis way wolde."  
 Whē they came be-for<sup>9</sup> þat fyr<sup>9</sup>,  
 They fond iiij. whelp<sup>9</sup> lay about his fyer<sup>9</sup>,  
 That grefly was for<sup>9</sup> to fee;  
 A wyld bole, & a fellow boor<sup>9</sup>  
 A lyoñ, þ<sup>t</sup> wold bytte for<sup>9</sup>,

<sup>1</sup> mffage, *MS*.

Ther<sup>o</sup> of they had grete ferly.

A bege ber<sup>o</sup> lay loufe vn-bounde,

Seche iiij. whelp<sup>o</sup> þ<sup>o</sup> þey foude,

230

A-bout þ<sup>e</sup> Carll<sup>o</sup> kne;

They rofe, & came þ<sup>e</sup> knyȝtt<sup>o</sup> a-gayn,

And sofi þ<sup>i</sup> wold hē haue fleyñ,

The Carle bade hē let bee.

[fol. 18.] “Ly down,” he fayd, “my whelpys four<sup>o</sup>,”

235

Thē þ<sup>e</sup> lyon be-gan to lour<sup>o</sup>,

And glowyd as a glede;

The ber<sup>o</sup> to ramy, þ<sup>e</sup> boole to groun,

The bor he whett his tofkos fouñ,

Fast and þat good spede.

240

Thē fayd þ<sup>e</sup> Carle, “ly ftyle, hardyñ!”

They feft a-doun for<sup>o</sup> fer<sup>o</sup> of hyme,

So for<sup>o</sup> þey gan hyme drede;

For a word þ<sup>e</sup> Carle gan fay,

Vnd<sup>o</sup> þ<sup>e</sup> tabuñ they crepyd a-way,

245

Ther<sup>o</sup> of fyr Key toke hede.

The Carle þ<sup>e</sup> knyȝtt<sup>o</sup> can be-holde,

Wtt a stout vefage & a bolde,

He femyd a dredfuñ mañ;

Wtt chek<sup>o</sup> longe, & vefage brade,

250

Cambur<sup>o</sup> nose, & aift fuñ made,

Be-twyne his brow<sup>o</sup> a large spane.

Hys moȝth moche, his berd graye,

Ou<sup>o</sup> his breft his lock<sup>o</sup> lay,

As brod as anny fane;

255

Betwen his schuldors, whos ryȝt cā rede,

He was ij. tayllors ȝard<sup>o</sup> brede,—

Syr Key merweld gretly þañ.

[fol. 18<sup>b</sup>.] ix. taylloris ȝerd<sup>o</sup> he was hyȝthēt,

And þ<sup>o</sup> to legg<sup>o</sup> longe and wyȝtht,

260

Or ell<sup>o</sup> wondor<sup>o</sup> hit wer;

Ther was no poft in þ<sup>t</sup> hañ,

Grettyft growand of hem aift,

But his þeys wer<sup>9</sup> pycker<sup>9</sup>.  
 His arm<sup>9</sup> wer<sup>9</sup> gret, wtt outyn lefe, 265  
 His fyng<sup>9</sup> is also, I wys,  
 As any lege þt we ber<sup>9</sup>;  
 Whos stond a stroke of his honde,  
 He was not wecke, I vndur<sup>9</sup>-stond,  
 That dar<sup>9</sup> I safly fwer<sup>9</sup>. 270  
 Then fyr<sup>9</sup> G. be-gan to cnele,  
 The Carle sayd he myȝt be knyȝt wylle,  
 And bad hyme stond vpe a-non ;  
 “ Lett be þi knellynge, gētyll knyȝt,  
 Thow logost wtt a carll to-nyȝt, 275  
 I fwer<sup>9</sup> by seint Johñ!  
 For<sup>9</sup> her<sup>9</sup> no cortteffy þu schalt have,  
 But carll<sup>9</sup> cortteffy, so god me save !  
 For<sup>9</sup> fertt<sup>9</sup> I can noñ ;”—  
 He bad brynge wyn, in gold so der<sup>9</sup>, 280  
 A-non hit cam i copp<sup>9</sup> cler<sup>9</sup>,  
 As āny souñ hit fchoñ.  
 [fol. 19.] iij. gallons held a cop, and more,  
 He bad brynge forthe a grettor<sup>9</sup>,—  
 “ What schaff þis lytyll cope douñ ? 285  
 This to lyttyff a cope for<sup>9</sup> me,  
 Whē I fytt by þe fyr<sup>9</sup> oñ hy,  
 By my self a-loun.  
 Brynge vs a grett<sup>9</sup> bolle of wynñ,  
 Let vs drenke, & play fethyñ, 290  
 Tyll we to fopp gown ;”  
 The butteler<sup>9</sup> brouȝt a cope of golde,  
 ix. gallons hit gane holde,  
 And toke hit þe Carle a-non.  
 ix. gallons he hyld, and mare, 295  
 He was not weke þt hit bare,  
 In his woñ honde ;  
 The knyȝtt<sup>9</sup> dronkon fast a-bout,  
 And fethe a-rofe, & went hē out,

To fe her<sup>o</sup> hors stond. 300  
 Corne and hey þ<sup>i</sup> had reydy,  
 A lyttyll folle stod hem bye,  
 Wtt her hors fast ettand ;  
 The beffchope put þ<sup>e</sup> fole a-way,—  
 “ Thow schalt not be fellow wtt<sup>1</sup> my palfray, 305  
 Whyft I am beschope in londe.”  
 [fol. 19<sup>b</sup>.] The Carll þē cam wtt a gret spede,  
 And afkyde “ who hathe doñ þis dede ?”  
 The beschope feyd, “ þ<sup>t</sup> was I ;”—  
 “ Ther<sup>o</sup> for<sup>o</sup> a bofett þ<sup>u</sup> schalt have, 310  
 I fwer<sup>o</sup>, so god me fave !  
 And hit schalt be fett wytterly.”  
 “ I ame a clarke of ordors hyȝe,”—  
 “ ȝett cannyft þ<sup>u</sup> noȝt of cortteffȝe,  
 I fwer<sup>o</sup>, so mott I tryue !” 315  
 He ȝafe þ<sup>e</sup> beffchope a boffett þ<sup>o</sup>,  
 That to þ<sup>e</sup> ground he gan goo,  
 In<sup>2</sup> sonynge he gann lyȝe.  
 Syr<sup>o</sup> Key came in þ<sup>e</sup> sam cas,  
 To fe his stede þer<sup>o</sup> he was, 320  
 The foll fond he hym by ;  
 Out att þ<sup>e</sup> dor<sup>o</sup> he drof hȝ out,  
 And oñ þ<sup>e</sup> backe ȝafe hȝ a clovt,  
 The Carle fe þ<sup>t</sup> wtt hys yȝe.  
 The Carll ȝaffe hym feche a boffett, 325  
 That smertly oñ þ<sup>e</sup> grond hȝ fett,  
 In sonynge gan he lyȝe ;  
 “ Euyll tavȝt knyȝtt<sup>o</sup>,” þ<sup>e</sup> Carl gan fey,  
 “ I schalt teche þ<sup>e</sup> or<sup>o</sup> þ<sup>u</sup> wend a-way,  
 [fol. 20.] Sum of my cortteffȝe.” 330  
 Thē þey a-rofe, and went to hałt,  
 The beschope, and f Key wtt ałt,  
 That worthy was i-wrogȝt ;

<sup>1</sup> fellowtt, *MS*.<sup>2</sup> I, *MS*.

Syr Gawē axyd w<sup>9</sup> þey had byne,  
 They feyd, “our<sup>9</sup> horffys we have sene,  
 And vs for<sup>9</sup> for<sup>9</sup>-thoght.” 335

Thē anffwerd G. fuß curttefly,  
 “Syr<sup>9</sup>, wtt your<sup>9</sup> leyf þē wyll I,”  
 The Carll knewe his thought ;  
 Hett reynnyd, & blewe storm<sup>9</sup> felle, 340  
 That well was hȳ, be bocke & belle,  
 The herborow hade cavȝt.

Wtt out þe stabuß dor<sup>9</sup> þe foll gā ftond,  
 G. put hyme in a-gayn wtt his honde,  
 He was aß wett, I wene ; 345  
 As þe foll had ftond in rayne,  
 Thē keu<sup>9</sup>yd he hym fyr Gawene,  
 Wtt his mättell of grene.

G.<sup>1</sup> “ftond vpe fooll, & eette thy mette,  
 We fpend her<sup>9</sup> þat thy maß<sup>9</sup> dothe gett,  
 Whyll þ<sup>t</sup> we her<sup>9</sup> byne ;” 350

The Carle ftode hym faß by,  
 And þankyð hȳ fuß curtteflye,

[fol. 20<sup>b</sup>.] Manny fythis, I wene.

Be þ<sup>t</sup> tyme her fop was redy dyȝt, 355  
 The tabull<sup>9</sup> w<sup>9</sup> hovfe vpe aß hyȝt,  
 I-cowert they wer<sup>9</sup> fuß tyte ;

Forth wtt þ<sup>i</sup> wolde not blȳne,  
 The beßchope gā þe tabull begynne,  
 Wtt a gret de-lytte. 360

ƒ Key was fett oß þe toþ<sup>9</sup> fyde,  
 A-3enß þe Carll<sup>9</sup> wyfe fo fuß of pryde,  
 That was fo feyr<sup>9</sup> & whytte ;  
 Her<sup>9</sup> arm<sup>9</sup> fmaß, her<sup>9</sup> mydyll gent,  
 Her<sup>9</sup> y3en grey, her<sup>9</sup> brow<sup>9</sup> bente, 365  
 Of curtteffy fche was pfette.  
 Her<sup>9</sup> roode was reede, her<sup>9</sup> chek<sup>9</sup> rounde,

<sup>1</sup> G. fayd?



A feyrror myȝt not goo of grounde,  
 Ne lowelyur<sup>9</sup> of fyȝte;  
 Sche was so gloryis & soo gay, 370  
 I can not rekon her<sup>9</sup> a-rye,  
 Sche was so gayly dyȝte.  
 Alas! thoug<sup>9</sup>ht Key, þ<sup>u</sup> lady fre,  
 That þ<sup>u</sup> schuldyst þus<sup>1</sup> i-peschde be,  
 Wtt feche a foulle weȝt!<sup>2</sup> 375  
 " Sytt styll," quod þ<sup>e</sup> Carl, " & eete þi mette,  
 [fol. 21.] Thow þinkost mor<sup>9</sup> þē þ<sup>u</sup> darst speke,  
 Sertten I the hyȝt."  
 I do yow all weſt to wette,  
 Ther<sup>9</sup> was noo mā bade G. fitte, 380  
 But in þ<sup>e</sup> halle flor<sup>9</sup> gān he ſtonde;  
 The Carle sayde, " fellowe, a-noſn,  
 Loke my byddynghe be well i-donſn,  
 Go take a ſper<sup>9</sup> in thy honde.  
 And at þ<sup>e</sup> bottre dor<sup>9</sup> goo take thy paſſe, 385  
 And hitt me evyn in the face,  
 Do as I the commande;  
 And ȝeyfe þ<sup>u</sup> ber<sup>9</sup> me a-ȝenſt þ<sup>e</sup> waſt,  
 Thow ſchalt not hort me wtt alle,  
 Whyll I am gyaūt in londe." 390  
 Syr<sup>9</sup> Gaweñ was a glade mān wtt þ<sup>t</sup>,  
 At þ<sup>e</sup> bottre dor<sup>9</sup> a ſper<sup>9</sup> he gatte,  
 And in his honde hit hente;  
 Syr G. came wtt a gret ire,  
 Doun he helde his hede þat fyre, 395  
 Tyll he hade geue his dentte<sup>2</sup>.  
 He ȝaſe þ<sup>e</sup> ſtoñ waſt feche a rappe,  
 That þe goode ſper<sup>9</sup> all to-brake,  
 The fyer<sup>9</sup> flewe out of þ<sup>e</sup> flente;  
 [fol. 21<sup>b</sup>.] The Carl ſayde to hym ful ſoñe, 400  
 " Gentyll knyȝt, þ<sup>u</sup> haſt weſt donne."

<sup>1</sup> pis, *MS.*<sup>2</sup> dette, *MS.*

And be þe honde hyme hente.

A cher<sup>9</sup> was fette, for<sup>9</sup> f Gawene,

That worthy knyȝt of Bryttayne,

Befor<sup>9</sup> þe Carll<sup>9</sup> wyfe was he fett;

405

So moche his love was on her<sup>9</sup> lyȝt,

Of aȝt þe fop he ne myȝt,

Nodyr<sup>9</sup> drynke nor<sup>9</sup> ette.

The Carle fayde, " G. comfort þe,

For fynn ys fwete, & þt I fe,

410

Serten I the hete;

Sche ys myn þu woldyft w<sup>9</sup> thynn,

Leve feche þoȝtt<sup>9</sup>, & drenke þe wynne,

For her<sup>9</sup> þu ſchalt nott geytt."

Syr G. was a-ſchēmyde ī his þowȝt,

415

The Carll<sup>9</sup> dovȝtt<sup>9</sup> forthe was brovȝt,

That was ſo feyr<sup>9</sup> and bryȝt;

As gold wyre ſchynyde her<sup>9</sup> here,

Hit coſt a Mli. and mar<sup>9</sup>,

Her<sup>9</sup> a-parreſt pertly pyȝte.

420

Wtt ryche ſtonn<sup>9</sup> her cloþ<sup>9</sup> w<sup>9</sup> fett,

Utt ryche perll<sup>9</sup> a-bout her<sup>9</sup> frete,

[fol. 22.] So ſemly was that ſyȝte;

Ouyr<sup>9</sup> aȝt þe haȝt gaȝ ſche leme,

As hit wer<sup>9</sup> a ſon<sup>9</sup>-beme,

425

That ſtonn<sup>9</sup> ſchone ſo bryȝt.

Then ſeyde þe Carle to þt bryȝt of ble,

" Uher ys þi harpe þu ſchuldift have broȝt wt þe,

Uhy haȝt þu hit for-gette?"

A-non hit was fett in to þe haȝt,

430

And a feyr<sup>9</sup> cher<sup>9</sup> wtt aȝt,

Be-for<sup>9</sup> her<sup>9</sup> fador was fett.

The harpe was of maſer<sup>9</sup> fyne,

The pȳnys wer<sup>9</sup> of golde, I wene,

Serten wtt out lett;

435

Furſt ſche harpyd, & ſethe ſonge,

Of love, & of Artorr<sup>9</sup> arm<sup>9</sup> a-monge,

How þey to-geydor<sup>9</sup> mett.  
 Uhē they hade fowpyde, & mad hemi glade,  
 The beſchope ī to his chambur<sup>9</sup> was lade, 440  
 Utt hym f Key þ<sup>e</sup> kene ;  
 They toke f G. wtt out leſſyngē,  
 To þ<sup>e</sup> Carl<sup>9</sup> chāb<sup>9</sup> þi gā h̄y bryngē,  
 That was ſo bryȝt and ſchene.  
 They bade f G. go to bede, 445  
 [fol. 22b.] Utt clothe of golde ſo feyr<sup>9</sup> ſprede,  
 That was ſo feyr<sup>9</sup> and bryȝt ;  
 Uhē þ<sup>e</sup> bed was made wtt wyne,  
 The Carle bade his oun lady go in,  
 That loufeſom was of fyȝte. 450  
 A ſquyer<sup>9</sup> came wtt a p<sup>9</sup>wey far<sup>9</sup>,  
 And he vn-armyde Gawen þer<sup>9</sup>,  
 Schaply he was vn-dyȝt ;  
 The Carle feyde, “ fyr Gawene,  
 Go take my wyfe ī þi arm<sup>9</sup> tweyne, 455  
 And kys her<sup>9</sup> in my fyȝte.”  
 Syr G. anſſwerde hyme a-non,  
 “ Syr, þi byddyngē ſchaft be donne,  
 Sertaynly in dede ;  
 Kytt, or fley, or laye a-doune,”— 460  
 To the bede he went full ſone,  
 Faſt and that good ſpede.  
 For ſoftniſ of þ<sup>t</sup> ladys fyde,  
 Made G. do his wytt þ<sup>t</sup> tyde,  
 Ther of G. toke þ<sup>e</sup> Carle goode hede ; 465  
 Uhē G. wolde haue doñ þ<sup>e</sup> p<sup>9</sup>vey far<sup>9</sup>,  
 Thē feyd þ<sup>e</sup> Carle, “ whoo ther<sup>9</sup> !  
 That game I þ<sup>e</sup> for-bede.  
 [fol. 23.] But G. ſethe þ<sup>u</sup> haſt do my byddyngē,  
 Som kyndniſ I moſt ſchewe þ<sup>e</sup> ī āny þinge, 470  
 As fer<sup>9</sup> forthe as I maye ;  
 Thow ſchaft haue wonn to ſo bryȝt,  
 Schaff play wtt þ<sup>e</sup> aſt þiſ nyȝte,

Tyff to-morrowe daye."  
 To his douȝtt<sup>o</sup> chambur he went fuȝt ryȝt, 475  
 And bade her<sup>o</sup> a-ryfe, & go to þ<sup>e</sup> knyȝt,  
 And wern hyme nott to playe;  
 Sche dorft not a-ȝenft his byddyng<sup>o</sup> doñ,  
 But to G. ſche cam fuȝt fone,  
 And ftyle doun be hyme laye. 480  
 "Now G." q' þ<sup>e</sup> Carle, "holft þ<sup>e</sup> well payde?"  
 "Ȝe, for gode, lorde," he fayde,  
 "Ryȝt weȝt as I myȝte;"  
 "Nowe," q' þ<sup>e</sup> Carle, "I woll to chambur<sup>o</sup> go,  
 My bleffing<sup>o</sup> I geyfe yow bouthe to, 485  
 And play to-geydor aȝt þis nyȝt."  
 A glad man was fyr Gawen,  
 Sertenly as I yowe ſayne,  
 Of þis lady bryȝt;  
 Serten ſothely for to fay, 490  
 So I hope was þat feyr<sup>o</sup> maye,  
 [fol. 23<sup>b</sup>.] Of þ<sup>t</sup> genttyff knyȝt.  
 "Mary, mercy!" þouȝt þ<sup>t</sup> lady bryȝte,  
 "Her come neu<sup>o</sup> fuche a knyȝt,  
 Of aȝt that her<sup>o</sup> hathe beñe;—" 495  
 Syr Key a-rose vppon þ<sup>e</sup> morrowñ,  
 And toke his hors, & wolde a-goñe,  
 Homwarde, as I wenne.  
 "Nay, f Key," þ<sup>e</sup> beſchope gañ ſeye,  
 "We<sup>1</sup> woll not ſo wende our<sup>o</sup> waye, 500  
 Tyff we f G. have ſene;"  
 The Carȝt a-rofe, oñ morrow a-noñ,  
 And fond his byddyng<sup>e</sup> redde dounne,  
 His dyner<sup>o</sup> i-dyȝt fuȝt cleyne.  
 To a mas they lett knelle, 505  
 Syr<sup>o</sup> G. a-rofe, & went þer<sup>o</sup> tyff,  
 And kyft þat lady bryȝt & cler<sup>o</sup>;

<sup>1</sup> Ne, MS.

"Mare, m<sup>a</sup>ce!" feyde þ<sup>t</sup> lady bryȝt,  
 "Uher<sup>9</sup> I schaff fe enny mor<sup>9</sup> þis knyȝt,  
 That hathe ley my body fo ner<sup>9</sup>?" 510  
 Uhē þ<sup>e</sup> mefe was doune to ende,  
 Syr<sup>9</sup> G. toke his leve to wende,  
 And þonkyde hym of his cher<sup>9</sup>;  
 "Furft," sayde þ<sup>e</sup> Carle, "ȝe schalt dynñ,  
 [fol. 24.] And on my bleffynge wende home fyne, 515  
 Homward al yn fere<sup>1</sup>.  
 Hit is xx<sup>ti</sup>. wynt<sup>9</sup> goñ," sayde þ<sup>e</sup> Karle, "nowe,  
 That god I make a-vowe,  
 Ther<sup>9</sup> fore I was fulle fad;  
 Ther<sup>9</sup> schulde neu<sup>9</sup> man logge i my won<sup>9</sup>, 520  
 But he scholde be flayne, I wys,  
 But he did as I hym bad.  
 But he wolde do my byddyng bowne,  
 He schulde be flayne, & layde a-downe,  
 Whedir<sup>9</sup> he wer<sup>9</sup> lorde or lad<sup>9</sup>; 525  
 Fonde I neu<sup>9</sup>, G. none but the,  
 Nowe gode of heuyn yelde hit the,  
 Ther<sup>9</sup> fore I am fulle glade.  
 He yelde þ<sup>e</sup>," sayde þ<sup>e</sup> Carle, "þ<sup>t</sup> þ<sup>e</sup> dere bouȝte!  
 For al my bale to blyffe is brouȝte, 530  
 Throuȝe helpe of Mary quene;"  
 He lade G. yn to a wilfome won<sup>9</sup>,  
 There as lay x. fodir<sup>9</sup> of dede meñ bonys,  
 Al yn blode, as I wene;  
 Ther<sup>9</sup> hyng many a blody ferke, 535  
 And eche of heme a dyuers marke,  
 Grete doole hit was to fee<sup>2</sup>.  
 [fol. 24<sup>b</sup>.] "This flowe I, G. and my helpis,  
 I and also my four<sup>9</sup> whelpis,  
 For sothe as I the say; 540

<sup>1</sup> This line is by a second, but coæval hand.

<sup>2</sup> fene?

Nowe wulle I forfakē my wykyd lawys,  
 þ<sup>o</sup> schaff no mo men her<sup>o</sup> be flawe, I wys,  
 As fer<sup>1</sup> forthe as I may.  
 G. for the love of the,  
 Al schal be welcome to me, 545  
 þ<sup>t</sup> comythe her<sup>o</sup> by this way;  
 And for alle these fowlys I vndirtake,  
 A chauntery her<sup>o</sup> wul I lete make,  
 x. preftis fyngyngē til domys-day.”  
 Be that tyme her<sup>o</sup> dyner<sup>o</sup> was redy dyȝte, 550  
 Tables wer<sup>o</sup> hovyn<sup>o</sup> vp an hyȝte,  
 I-keuerid þei were fulle clene;  
 Syr G. and þ<sup>s</sup> lady dere,  
 They were i-fuyd bothe i-fer<sup>o</sup>,  
 Myche myrthe was theme bytwene. 555  
 Ther<sup>o</sup> fore þ<sup>e</sup> Carle was full glade,  
 The byschop & f Kay he bad,  
 Mery þ<sup>t</sup> þei scholde bene;  
 He ȝaf þ<sup>e</sup> bischop to his bleffyngē,  
 A cros, a myter, & a rynge, 560  
 A clothe of golde, I wene;  
 He ȝaf f Kay, þ<sup>e</sup> angery knyght,  
 [fol. 25.] A blode-rede stede, and a whight,  
 Suche on had he neu<sup>o</sup> fene.  
 He ȝaf f G. sothe to fay, 565  
 His douȝter, & a whiȝte palfray,  
 A somer i-chargid w<sup>t</sup> golde;  
 Sche was so glorious & so gay,  
 I kowde not rekyn here a-ray,  
 So bryȝte was alle her<sup>o</sup> molde! 570  
 “Nowe ryde forþ<sup>e</sup>, G. on my bleffyngē,  
 And grete wel Artyr, þ<sup>t</sup> is yō kynge,  
 And pray hym þ<sup>t</sup> he wolde;  
 For his loue þ<sup>t</sup> yn Bedlem was borne,

<sup>1</sup> ferth, MS.

That he wull dyne w<sup>t</sup> me to-morne," 575  
 G. feyde he scholde.  
 Then þei rode fyngynge a-way,  
 W<sup>t</sup> þ<sup>s</sup> yonge lady on her<sup>9</sup> palfray,  
 þ<sup>t</sup> was so fayr<sup>9</sup> & brygh<sup>t</sup>;  
 They tolde kynge Artir wher<sup>9</sup> þei had bene, 580  
 And what wondirs þei had fene,  
 Serteynly in her<sup>9</sup> fyght.  
 "Nowe thonkyd be god, cofyn Gawyñ,  
 þ<sup>t</sup> þ<sup>u</sup> scapift a-lyve vn-flayne,  
 Serteyne, w<sup>t</sup> alle my myght;"— 585  
 "And I, & kynge," sayd & Kay a-gayne,  
 [fol. 25<sup>b</sup>.] "That eu<sup>9</sup> I scapid a-way vn-flayne,  
 My hert was neuyr<sup>9</sup> so lygh<sup>t</sup>.  
 þ<sup>e</sup> Carle p<sup>re</sup>yde you for his love þ<sup>t</sup> yn Bedlē was borne,  
 That ye wolde dyne w<sup>t</sup> hyñ to-morne,"— 590  
 Kynge Ar<sup>t</sup> fone hyñ hygh<sup>t</sup>;  
 In þ<sup>e</sup> dawnynge forþe þey rade,  
 A ryalle metynge þer<sup>9</sup> was i-made,  
 Of many a ientylle knygh<sup>t</sup>.  
 Trompettis mette hem at þ<sup>e</sup> gate, 595  
 Clarions of filuer<sup>9</sup> redy þer<sup>9</sup> ate,  
 Serteyne wythoutyn lette;  
 Harpe, fedylle, and fawtry,  
 Lute, geteroñ, & merely,  
 In to þ<sup>e</sup> halle knyghtis hem fett. 600  
 The Carle knelyd<sup>9</sup> downe on his kne,  
 And welcomyd<sup>9</sup> þe kynge wurthyly,  
 W<sup>t</sup> wordis ware and wyfe;  
 When þ<sup>e</sup> kynge to þe halle was brough<sup>t</sup>,  
 Nothyng þer<sup>9</sup> ne wantyd<sup>9</sup> nough<sup>t</sup>, 605  
 That any man kowde deuyfe.  
 The wallys glemyd as any glasse,  
 W<sup>t</sup> dyapir colour<sup>9</sup> wrouȝte hit was,  
 Of golde, asur<sup>9</sup>, and byfe;  
 W<sup>t</sup> tabernacles was þe halle a-bouȝte, 610

- [fol. 26.] W<sup>t</sup> pynnacles of golde, fterne and ftoute,  
 Ther<sup>9</sup> cowde no man hem preyfe.  
 Trompettys trompid vp in grete hete,  
 The kynge lete fey g<sup>ce</sup>, & wente to mete,  
 And was i-fuyde w<sup>t</sup> oute lette ; 615  
 Swannys, fefaütys, & cranys,  
 Partrigis, plouers, and curlewys,  
 Be-fore þe kynge was fette.  
 The Carle feyde to þe kynge, “ dothe gladly,  
 Here get ye no noþir<sup>9</sup> curtesy, 620  
 As I vndir-ftonde ;”  
 W<sup>t</sup> þat come yn bollys of golde fo grete,  
 Ther was no knyght fat at þe mete,  
 Myght lyfte hem w<sup>t</sup> his on honde.  
 The kynge fwore by feynte Myghelle, 625  
 “ This dyner<sup>9</sup> lykythe me as welle,  
 As any þat euyr<sup>9</sup> Y fonde ;”  
 A dubbyd hym knyght on the morne,  
 The contre of Carelyle he ʒefe hym fone,  
 To be lorde of þat londe. 630  
 “ Her<sup>9</sup> I make þe, yn þis ftownde,  
 A knyght of þe Table Rownde,  
 Karlyle þi name ſchalle be ;”  
 [fol. 26<sup>b</sup>.] On the morne, when hit was day-lyght,  
 Syr G. weddyd' þat lady bryght, 635  
 That femely was to fe.  
 Than þe Carle was glade and blythe,  
 And thonkyd þe kynge fele fythe,  
 For fothe as I yow ſay ;  
 A ryche feſte had' he i-dygh<sup>t</sup> <sup>1</sup>, 640  
 That laſtyd holy a fortenyght,  
 W<sup>t</sup> game, myrthe, and playe.  
 The mynſtrellis had yeſtys fre,  
 That þey myght þe better be,

<sup>1</sup> i-dygh, MS.



To fpende many a day ; 645  
 And when þe fefte was brouzte to ende,  
 Lordis toke here leve to wende,  
 Homwarde on her<sup>9</sup> way.  
 A ryche Abbey þe Carle gan make,  
 To fynge and rede<sup>1</sup> for goddis fake, 650  
 In wurfchip of our<sup>9</sup> lady ;  
 In the towne of mery Carelyle,  
 He lete hit bylde stronge & wele,  
 Hit is a byfchoppis fee.  
 And þer<sup>9</sup> yn monkys gray, 655  
 To rede and fynge tille domys-day,  
 [fol. 27.] As men tolde hit me ;  
 For the men þ<sup>t</sup> he had flayne, I wis,—  
 Jhū Cryfte, brynge vs to thy blis,  
 Aboue in heuyñ, yn thy fee ! AMEN. 660

<sup>1</sup> redee, *MS.*

No. II.

## The Ieaste of Syr Gawayne.



\* \* \* \* \*

[MS.  
Douce.  
fol. 15.]

And fayde, "I dreede no threte;  
I haue founde youe here in my chafe,"—  
And in hys armes he gan her brace,  
With kyfsynge of mowthes fweete.  
There Syr Gawayne made fuch chere,  
That greate frendefhpy he founde there,  
With that fayre lady fo gaye;  
Suche chere he made, and fuche femblaunce,  
That longed to loue he had her countenaunce,  
With oute any more delaye.  
He had not taryed with her longe,  
But there came a knyght tall and stronge,  
Vnto the paulyon he wente;  
He founde Syr Gawayne with that lady fayre,—  
"Syr knyght, thow makest an euyll repayre,  
That wyll make the fhente.  
Yt ys my doughter that thow lyst by,  
Thowe hast done me great vyllanye,  
Amende yt mayst thou nought;  
Thou haste greate fortune with that dame,

5

10

15

20

Tyll nowe neuer man coulde for fflame,  
 I fee, Syr knyght, that thou hast wrought.  
 Wherefore I fee fortune ys thy frynde,  
 But hastely vnto harnes nowe thou wynde,"  
 Than fayed that bolde knyght ; 25  
 "Thou hast done me mnche dyfhonoure,  
 And may not amende yt, by Mary floure !  
 Therefore hastelye the dyght."  
 Than bespake Syr Gawayne, and thus he fayde,  
 "I suppose I haue the loue of the mayde, 30  
 Suche grace on her haue I founde ;  
 But and youe be her father deere,  
 [fol. 15<sup>b</sup>.] Syr, amendes nowe wyll I make here, •  
 As I am to knyght-hode bounde.  
 Nowe all forewardes I wyll fullfyll, 35  
 And make amendes youe vntyll,  
 And lette me pafse quyte ;"  
 "Naye," fayed the olde knyght than,  
 "Fyrst wyll we afsaye oure myghtes as we can,  
 Or elfe yt were a dyspyte." 40  
 Nowe fayde Gawayne, "I graunte yt the,  
 Sythe yt none otherwise wyll be,  
 [Here is inserted a drawing.]  
 [fol. 16.] Nedes must that nedes ffall ;"  
 He toke hys stronge horfe by the brydle,  
 And lyghtly lepte in to the faddel, 45  
 As a knyght good and royall.  
 He toke a spere that was greate and stronge,  
 And forthe he wente, a large furlonge,  
 And turned hys horfe with mayne ;  
 They feutred theyr speares, these knyghtes good, 50  
 And russhed together with eger moode,  
 Aboue on the mountayne.  
 Gawayne smotte thys knyght so foore,  
 That hys horfe with strenght he ouerthrewe thore,  
 And on the grounde he laye vpright ; 55

Syr Gawayne turned hys horfe agayne,  
 And sayde, "fyr knyght, wyll ye any more fayne?"  
 "Naye," he sayed, for he ne myght.  
 "I yelde me, Syr knyght, in to thy hande,  
 For thou arte to styffe for me to stande, 60  
 My lyfe thou graunte me;"  
 "On thys couenaunte," Syr Gawayne fayde,  
 "That ye do no harme vnto the mayde,  
 I am a-greed that yt so be.  
 Also ye shall fwere on my fwerde here, 65  
 That none armes agaynst me ye shall beare,  
 Neyther to daye nor to nyght;  
 And then take your horfe, and wende your waye,  
 And I shall do the best that I maye,  
 As I am a trewe knyght." 70  
 There thys knyght fware, and dyd pafse,  
 Syr Gylbert called he was,  
 A ryche earle, styffe and<sup>1</sup> stoure;  
 He fayde, "Syr knyght, take good kepe,  
 [fol. 16<sup>b</sup>.] For better shalt thou be asayled or thou flepe, 75  
 With many a sharpe shoure."  
 Than sayd Gawayne, "I beleue right well,  
 Whan they come, youe shall here tell  
 Howe the game shall goo;  
 I am nowe here in my playnge, 80  
 I wyll not go awaye for no threatynge,  
 Or that I will feele more woo."  
 Than Syr Gylberte wente hys waye,  
 Hys horfe was gone downe the valaye,  
 On foote he must hym abyde; 85  
 He yode downe, without wordes more,  
 The strokes greaued hym full foore,  
 That bated muche hys pryde.  
 Syr Gawayne had smytten hym in the fholder-blade,

<sup>1</sup> in?

After hys walkynge the blode out fhade, 90  
 He rested hym vnder a tree ;  
 He had not rested hym but a lyttell fpace,  
 But one of hys fonnes came to that place,  
 Syr Gyamoure called was he.  
 " Father," he fayde, " what ayleth youe nowe ? 95  
 Hathe any man in thys forrest hurte youe ?  
 Me thynke full faste ye blede ;"  
 " Yea, fonne," he fayde, " by goddes grame !  
 A knyght hath done me fpyte and fhame,  
 And lost I haue my ftede. 100  
 Alfo he hath layne by thy syster, by the rode !  
 That greueth me more than fhedyng of my blode,  
 And the despyte was well more ;  
 And he hath made me to fweare,  
 That to daye none armes fhall I beare, 105  
 A-gaynst hym, by goddes ore !"  
 [fol. 17.] " Father, nowe be of good chere,  
 And I fhall rewarde hym, as ye fhall here,  
 As I am a trewe knyght !  
 He fhall beate me, or I fhall beate hym, 110  
 I fhall hym beate be he neuer fo grymme,  
 And hys death to-dyght."  
 " Lett be, fonne Gyamoure, nowe I the praye,  
 Thou fpeakest more than thou maye,  
 That fhalt thoue feele foone ; 115  
 There fhalt thoue mete with a knyght ftronge,  
 That wyl paye hys lyueray large and longe,  
 Or thy iourney be all done."

" **N**OWE farewell, father," Gyamoure fayde,  
 He toke the waye to hys fyster the mayde, 120  
 As fast as he myght on the gate ;  
 Vnto the paulyon he toke the waye,  
 There as Syr Gawayne and hys fyster laye,  
 That thought on no debate.

- "A-ryfe," he fayed, "thou knyght ftronge of hande,  
 And geue me battaylle on thys lande,  
 Hye the fast anone right;  
 Thou hast hurte my father to-daye,  
 And layne by my fyster, that fayre may,  
 Therefore thy deathe ys dyght."  
 Than sayde Gawayne, "though yt be fo,  
 A-mendes I wyll make or that I goo,  
 Yf that I haue myfdone;  
 Better yt ys nowe to accorde right,  
 Than we two nowe in battayll fhulde fyght,  
 Therfore go from me foone."  
 "Nay," fayed Gyamoure, "that fhall not bee,  
 [fol.17<sup>b</sup>.] That daye, knyght, fhalt thou neuer fee,  
 For to fuffer fuche a fkorne;  
 A-ryfe in haste, and that anone,  
 For with the wyll I fyght alone,  
 As god lett me be borne!"  
 Gawayne fawe no better bote,  
 And wyghtelye he lepte on foote,  
 Hys horfe was fast hym bye;  
 In to the faddle wightelye he fprente,  
 And in hys hande hys fpeare he hentte,  
 [Here is inserted a drawing.]  
 [fol.18.] And loked full egerlye.  
 Eyther turned hys horfe than a-waye,  
 A furlonges lenght, I dare well faye,  
 Aboue on the mountayne;  
 They ranne together, thofe knightes good,  
 That theyr horfes fydes ranne on bloode,  
 Eyther to other, certayne.  
 What nedeth nowe more tale to tell?  
 Gawayne smotte hym with hys fpeare fo well,  
 That he fell flatte to the grounde;  
 Hys horfe was fyers, and went hys waye,  
 And hurte was the knyght there as he laye,

Syr Gawayne asked hym in that ffounde. 160  
 "Syr knight, wyll ye any more?"  
 "Naye," he fayde, "I am hurte so fore,  
 I maye not my felfe welde ;  
 I yelde me, fyr knyght, and faue my lyfe,  
 For with the I wyll no more ftryffe, 165  
 For thowe hast wonne the felde."  
 "Syr, on thys couenaunte I the graunte,  
 So ye wyll make me faythe and warraunte,  
 To-daye agaynst me no armes to beare ;  
 Swear thys othe on my fwearde bright."— 170  
 "Yes," he fayde, "I wyll, as I am trewe knight,  
 That thys daye I wyll not youe deare.  
 Nowe fare well, knyght, so god me amende !  
 For I see fortune ys thy greate frende,  
 That sheowith in the to-daye ; 175  
 There ys no bote to ftryde<sup>1</sup> agayne,  
 For thou arte a knyght full stronge of mayne,  
 Fare well, and haue good daye."  
 Thus Gyamoure wente downe the mountayne hye,  
 [fol. 18<sup>b</sup>] On foote he wente full werelye, 180  
 Hys father soone hym spyed ;  
 "A ! wellcome," he fayde, "my fonne Gyamoure,  
 Me thynke thou hast not fpede well thys stoure,  
 That full well I see thys tyde.  
 Thou went on horfe-backe, lyke a good knyght, 185  
 And nowe I see thou arte dolefully dyght,  
 That maketh all my care ;"  
 "Father," he fayde, "yt wyll none otherwife be,  
 Yonder knyght hath wonne me in warre so fre,  
 And hathe wounded me full fore. 190  
 Forfothe," fayde Gyamoure, "I wyll not lye,  
 He ys a stronge knyght, bolde and hardye,  
 Of Arthures courte I trowe he ys ;

<sup>1</sup> ftryve ?

I suppoſe on of the Rounde Table,  
 For at nede he ys both ſtronge and hable, 195  
 So haue I founde hym, withouten myfſe."  
 Right fo as they ſpake the one to the other,  
 There came to them the ſeconde brother,  
 Syr Tyrry was hys name ;  
 He came rydyng on a iolye courfyer, 200  
 Dryvinge by leapes, as the wylde fyer,  
 The knyght was of good fame.  
 He was not ware of hys father deare,  
 But hys brother called hym neare,  
 And ſayde, " Syr, nowe abyde ;" 205  
 He than turned hys horſe, that knyght fo gaye,  
 By leapes out of ſtraye,  
 Hys hearte was full of pryde.  
 Than founde he hys father all blodye,  
 And hys brother was wounded fyckerlye, 210  
 In hys hearte he began to be fyke :  
 [fol.19.] " A! fyr, who hath wounded youe ?" quod he,  
 " A-vengeſ on hym nowe wyll I be,  
 That ſhall hym myflyke."  
 " I wys, ſonne, yt ys a knyght ſtronge, 215  
 That hath done vs thys wronge,  
 Aboue on the mountayne ;  
 He hath me wounded paſſyng ſoore,  
 And I trowe thy brother he hathe well more,  
 And by thy ſyſter he hathe layne. 220  
 Therefore go nowe, as a knyght good,  
 And auenge the fhedyng of thy fathers blood,  
 As faſte as euer thou maye ;  
 Loke that thou fayle not for no cowardyſe,  
 But mete hym in the myghtyeſt wyfe, 225  
 For he ys good at a-faye."  
 " I ſee well, father, he ys a knyght ſtronge,  
 But he hathe done youe greate wronge,  
 Yt woulde be harde hym to wynne ;



But neuer the later I shall do my myght, 230  
 Hys strenght afsaye nowe I shall in fyght,  
 Yf he were of the deuyls kynne."

**T**HYS knyght Syr Terry turned hys horfe,  
 And vp the mountayne he rode with force,  
 As fast as he myght dryue; 235  
 He came to the paulyon, with greate pryde,—  
 "Haue done, fyr knyght, thy horfe befryde,  
 For with the I am at fryue."  
 Syr Gawayne loked out at the paulyon doore,  
 And fawe thys knyght armed hym before, 240  
 To hym he fayed verelye;  
 "Sy., yf I haue ought to youe offended,  
 [fol. 19<sup>b</sup>.] I am ready to make yt to be amended,  
 By mylde mother Marye!"  
 "Naye, Syr knyght, yt maye not so be,  
 245 Therefore make the ready faste to me,  
 In all the haste that thou maye;  
 For be god that me dere bought,  
 Make a-mendes mayest thou nought,  
 Therefore nowe lett vs playe." 250  
 Gawayne fawe none other bote than,  
 Hys horfe he toke as a worthy man,  
 And into the faddle he sprete;  
 He toke hys horfe with a greate randone,—  
 "Nowe, Syr knyght, lette me haue done, 255  
 What in youre hearte ys mente."  
 "Lo! here I am," fayne Syr Terrye,  
 "For to the I haue greate enuye,"  
 And together gan they dafshe;  
 They russhed to-gether with fuche debate, 260  
 That marueyll yt was howe that they fate,  
 They gaue fuche a crafshe!  
 Syr Terrye spake in that place,  
 And Gawayne fought faste in that race,

And throughe the fholder hym pyght; 265  
 And caste hym ouer the horſe backe,  
 That in the earth hys helme ſtacke,  
 That nyghe hys death he was dyght.  
 Syr Gawayne than fayed on hyght,  
 “Syr knyght, wyll ye any more fyght?” 270  
 He aunſwered hym, “naye,  
 I am ſo ſoore hurte I may no more ſtande,  
 Therfore I yelde me in to thy hande,  
 Of mercye I the praye.”

[*Here is inserted a drawing.*]

[fol. 20.] “What,” ſayde Gawayne, “ys that youre boast greate? 275  
 I wende youe woulde haue foughten tyll ye had ſweate,  
 Ys youre ſtrenght all done?”  
 “Yea, fyr, in fayth, ſo god me nowe faue!  
 Of me thou mayſte no more craue,  
 For all my myght ys gone. 280  
 Thou haſte to-day wonne thre knyghtes,  
 The father, and two ſonnes, that well fyghtes,  
 Worſhyppfullye vnder thy ſhyelde;  
 And yf thou maye wynde our eldeſt brother,  
 [fol. 20<sup>b</sup>.] I call thee the beſt knyght, and none other, 285  
 That euer fought in fyelde.  
 For he ys full wyght, I warne youe welle,  
 He endureth better than<sup>1</sup> doth the ſteele,  
 And that ſhalte thou ſoone ſee;  
 But he be thy matche I can not knowe, 290  
 Of knyghthode thoue haſte no felowe,  
 On my fayth I enſure thee.”  
 “Nowe,” quod Gawayne, “lette hym be,  
 And, Syr knyght, make an othe to me,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> y<sup>s</sup> daye thou do me no greue; 295  
 And thou ſhalt paſſe fro me all quyte,  
 Where as ys nowe thy moſte delyght,

<sup>1</sup> that, *MS.*

With oute any moore repreue."  
 Syr Terrye sayde, "therto I graunte,  
 Fare well nowe, God be thy warrante,"— 300  
 Full weykelye he wente on foote;  
 He lefte neuer tyll he came there,  
 Where as hys father and Gyamoure were,  
 That carefull heartes had, god wote.  
 Than bespake Gyamoure, hys yongest brother, 305  
 "Syr, thou hast gotten as we haue, and non other,  
 That knewe I well yt shoulde fo be;"  
 "By god!" sayde Syr Terrye, "fo nowe yt ys,  
 He ys a deuyll, forfothe ywys,  
 And that ys proued on me." 310  
 "Yea," quod Syr Gylbart, that Earle fo olde,  
 "He ys a knyght bothe ftronge and bolde,  
 And fortune ys hys frende;  
 My doughters loue he hath clene wanne,  
 Therfore I dare well faye he ys a manne, 315  
 Where euer that he wende."  
 As they thre ftode thus talkynge,  
 [fol. 21.] They hearde a manne full loude fynge,  
 That all the woode ronge;—  
 "That ys my fonne Brandles fo gaye, 320  
 Whan he feeth vs in fuche araye,  
 He wyll leaue hys fonge."  
 By than they sawe the knight comynge,  
 A grene boughe in hys hande he dyd brynge,  
 Syttyng on a ioylye courfyere; 325  
 Hys horfe was trapped in redde veluett,  
 Many ouches of golde theron was fette,  
 Of knyghthode he had no peere.  
 Also hys horfe was armed before,  
 The headde and the brest, and no more, 330  
 And that in fyne fteele;  
 Hym felfe was armed pafsynge fure,  
 In harneys that woulde ftrokes endure,

That had bene proued right wele.

Thys knyght bare on hys hedde a pomell gaye, 335

Syttynge on hys horse, ftertynge oute of the waye,

By leapes he came aboute ;

A fhyelde he had, that was of renowne,

He bare theryn a blacke fawcowne,

The fhyelde was of syluer withoute. 340

Also in hys hande a spere he bare,

Bothe ftronge and longe, I make youe ware,

And of a truſtye tree ;

There was an headde theron of fteele wrought,

The best that myght be made or bought, 345

And well afsayed had be.

Theron of pleasaunce a kercheyf dyd honge,

I wote yt was more than thre elles longe,

Enbrodered all withe golde ;

[fol.21<sup>b</sup>.] He was a knyght of large and lenght, 350

And proued well of much strength,

Afsaye hym who fo woulde.

Spurres of golde also he had on,

And a good fwerde, that wolde byte a-bone,

Thus came he dryuynge; 355

Tyll he came there as hys father was,

Whan he all fawe, he fayde, "alas !

[Here is inserted a drawing.]

[fol. 22.] Thys ys an euyll tydyngge."

Whan he sawe hys father all blodye,

And hys two brethern hurte full fyckerlye, 360

"Alas!" sayde Brandles than,

“Who hath done youe fuche a dyfpite?”

Tell me in haste, that I maye yt quyte,

For my hearte ys wo begone."

Than faide the father, “sonne, I fhall the tell, 365

All thys hathe done a knyght full fell,

And layne by thy syster also ;

He beete me fyrst, and them all,

And made vs fwere that we ne fhall,  
 Thys daye do hym no wo." 370  
 Nowe faide Brandles, "thys ys yll come,  
 I enfure youe by my holydome,  
 I fhall proue hys myght;  
 Were he as stronge as Sampson was,  
 In fayth fhall I neuer from hym pas, 375  
 Tyll the one of vs to death be dyght."  
 "Yea, fonne Brandles, thou fhalt not foo,  
 Though he haue done wronge, lett hym goo,  
 The knyght ys paffynge fure;  
 I wyll not for more than I wyll fayne, 380  
 See the, Syr Brandels, there flayne,  
 For I warraunte the he wyll endure.  
 The knyght ys stronge, and well fight can,  
 And when he hathe at hande a man,  
 He wyll do hym none yll; 385  
 But gentle wordes fpeake agayne,  
 And do hym no harme ne mayne,  
 Thus gentyll he ys in fkyll."

[fol. 22<sup>b</sup>.] "N OWE lette hym be," fayde Brandles than,  
 "Sone fhall we fee yf he be a manne," 390  
 And fayed "haue good daye;"  
 Streyght to the paulyon he rode,  
 That fawe the mayden as fhe ftode,  
 That yt was her brother gaye.  
 "Syr knyght," fhe fayde, "here cometh one, 395  
 Yt wyl be harde hym to ouergone,  
 Beholde nowe and fee;  
 Yonder cometh one wyll dure in fyght,  
 I warraunte ye fawe neuer a better knight,  
 Than ye fhall fynde hym, fyckerlye. 400  
 Beholde nowe my brother, Syr Brandles,  
 He ys in warre full flye, y-wys,  
 And that thowe fhalt fynde;

Me thynke hym pafsynge lyke a knyght,  
 Hauē no drede ye fhall fynde hym wight, 405  
 Nowe vnder thys lynde."  
 "By god !" fayde Gawayne, "he ys full lyke,  
 To abyde a buffette, and to ftryke,  
 And of hys handes a man ;  
 I fawe not or nowe thys yeares thre, 410  
 A man more lyke a man to be,  
 By god and by Saynt Johan !"  
 Right fo Syr Brandles, the knyght gaye,  
 Spake on hyghe, and thus gan faye,  
 "Where arte thou, good Squyer ? 415  
 Come forthe in hafte," he fayde on hyght,  
 "For with the will I fyght,  
 A newe game thoue fhalt leere.  
 Thou haste done me dyfworship greate,  
 And mayst not nowe amendement gette, 420  
 [fol. 23.] Yt ys no tyme of peace to fpeake ;"  
 Syr Gawayne faide, "Syr, I the praye,  
 Let me make a-mendes, and youe maye,  
 Or thou begynne thys wreke.  
 Syr, and I haue ought myfdone, 425  
 Tell me, and it fhallbe amended foone,  
 All gentlenes to fullfyll ;  
 I haue bene be-ftad to daye full foore,  
 Shame yt were to proue me any moore,  
 But here I am at youre wyll." 430  
 "Ywys," quod Brandles, "that ys fothe,  
 But I must nedes holde myne othe,  
 Thou haste done fo yll ;  
 My father and my brethren thou hast beaten bothe,  
 To accorde with the I were therof lothe, 435  
 My worshippe to full-fyll."  
 Nowe fayed Gawayne, "fythe yt ys fo,  
 I muste nedes me dryue ther to,  
 Thys daye god lende me grace ;

For my worde fhall do none aduauntage, 440  
 Let vs see howe well we can outrage,  
 Yf I maye dare ought in thys trace."  
 "Gramarcy," fayde Brandles, "in good faye,  
 Nowe fhall youe see me make good playe,  
 Of knight-hode thou hast no peere ; 445  
 I am right gladde thou hast myght,  
 But forye I am we lacke the daye-lyght,  
 But a-mended ys my cheere."  
 They fought together, thofe knightes good,  
 Throughe theyr haburgeons ran out the redde blode, 450  
 That pytte yt<sup>1</sup> was to see ;  
 They fought together with fuche yre,  
 [Here is inserted a drawing.]  
 [fol. 23b.] That after flamed out the fyre,  
 They fpake of no mercye.  
 Thus full longe than gan they fyght, 455  
 Tyll at the laste they wanted lyght,  
 They wyste not what to done ;  
 Than fayde Syr Brandles, that knyght fo gaye,  
 "Syr knyght, we wante lyght of the daye,  
 Therefore I make my mone. 460  
 Yf we fyght thus in the darke together,  
 Throughe myfhappe the one myght fle the other,  
 [fol. 24.] And therefore by myne afsent ;  
 Lett vs fweare on oure fweardes bothe,  
 Where that we mete for leyfe or lothe, 465  
 Yf that we mete in prefent,  
 Neuer to leaue the battayll tyll the one be flayne,"—  
 "I afsent me therunto," than fayde Gawayne,  
 "And ye wyll that yt fo be ;"  
 Than fayde Syr Brandles, "I may none other do, 470  
 For fuche promefse I made my father vnto,  
 Therefore thys othe make we.

<sup>1</sup> ys, MS.

I wotte there ys no froke that thou gauest me,  
 But I fhall quyte yt full fyckerlye,  
 And thou arte not in my debte ; 475  
 Full large of lyueray thou arte, Syr knyght,  
 Neuer none that proued fo well my myght,  
 We bene euen as we mette.  
 Lett vs make an othe on our fwerdes here,  
 In that place we mete, farre or nere, 480  
 Euen there as ether other may fynde ;  
 Euen fo we fhall do the battayle vtterlye,"—  
 "I holde," fayde Gawayne, "by mylde Marye !  
 And thus we make an ende."  
 Syr Gawayne put vp hys fwerde than, 485  
 "Syr knight, be frende to that gentle woman,  
 As ye be gentle knyght ;"  
 "As for that," fayde Brandles than,  
 "She hathe caufed to day, 'pardye, much fhamel',  
 Yt ys pyttye fhe hathe her fyght." 490  
 "Syr knyght," fayde Gawayne<sup>2</sup>, "haue good daye,  
 For on foote I haue a longe waye,  
 And<sup>3</sup> horfe were wonders<sup>4</sup> deare ;  
 Some tyme good horfes I haue good wone,  
 [fol. 24b.] And<sup>5</sup> nowe on foote 'I muste nedes<sup>6</sup> gone, 495  
 God in haste amende my chere !"  
 Syr Gawayne was armed pafsyng heavy,  
 On fote myght he not endure, trewely,  
 Hys knyfe he toke in hande<sup>7</sup> ;  
 Hys armure good he cutte hym fro, 500  
 Els on foote myght he not goo,  
 Thus with care was he bande<sup>8</sup>.

[*Here is inserted a drawing.*]

<sup>1</sup> moch fhamel, parde, *ed. Petyt. fragm.*

<sup>2</sup> fyr Gawayne.

<sup>3</sup> an.

<sup>4</sup> me wonder.

<sup>5</sup> But.

<sup>6</sup> nedes muft I.

<sup>7</sup> honde.

<sup>8</sup> bonde.



[fol. 25.]

**L**EAUE we nowe of<sup>1</sup> Syr Gawayne in wo,  
 And speake we more of Syr Brandles tho,  
 When he with hys syster mette ; 505  
 He fayed, " fye on the harlot ftronge !  
 Yt ys pyttie thou<sup>2</sup> lyuest fo longe,  
 Strypes harde I wyll the<sup>3</sup> fette."  
 He<sup>4</sup> bete her<sup>5</sup> bothe backe and fyde,  
 And than woulde he not a-byde, 510  
 But to hys father streight he wentte ;  
 And<sup>6</sup> he asked<sup>7</sup> hym how he fared,  
 He fayde, " fonne, for the haue I cared,  
 I wende thou<sup>8</sup> haddest be<sup>9</sup> fhente."  
 Brandles fayde, " I haue beate my syster, 515  
 And the knyght, I made hym fweare,  
 Than<sup>10</sup> whan we mete a-gayne ;  
 He and I wyll together fyght,  
 Tyll that<sup>11</sup> we haue fpended our<sup>12</sup> myght,  
 And that one of vs be flayne." 520  
 So home they went all foure<sup>13</sup> together,  
 And eche of them helped other,  
 As well as they myght go ;  
 Than the lady gate her a-waye,  
 They sawe her neuer after that daye, 525  
 She went wandrynge to and fro.  
 Also Syr Gawayne on<sup>14</sup> hys partye,  
 On foote he went full werylye,  
 Tyll he to the courte came home ;  
 All 'hys aduentures<sup>15</sup> he fhewed the kinge, 530  
 That with those foure knyghtes he had fyghtynge,  
 And eche after other alone.

<sup>1</sup> *Om.*<sup>2</sup> that thou.<sup>3</sup> *Om.*<sup>4</sup> And.<sup>5</sup> the.<sup>6</sup> Then.<sup>7</sup> axed.<sup>8</sup> that thou.<sup>9</sup> ben.<sup>10</sup> That.<sup>11</sup> *Om.*<sup>12</sup> eche our.<sup>13</sup> *Om.*<sup>14</sup> in.<sup>15</sup> this aduenture.

And<sup>1</sup> after that tyme they neuer mette more,  
 Full gladde were thofe knyghtes<sup>2</sup> therfore,  
 [fol. 25<sup>b</sup>.] So 'there was<sup>3</sup> made the ende;— 535  
 I praye god geue vs<sup>4</sup> good reste,  
 And thofe that haue harde thys lyttell Jeste,  
 And in hys heauen to<sup>5</sup> be dwellynge;  
 And that we all maye<sup>6</sup>, vpon domes-daye,  
 Come to the blyfse that lasteth aye, 540  
 Where we maye here thy<sup>7</sup> Aungels fynge.  
 AMEN.

'Here endeth the Jeaste of  
 Syr Gawayne<sup>8</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> *Om.*<sup>2</sup> these partyes.<sup>3</sup> was there.<sup>4</sup> vs al.<sup>5</sup> for to.<sup>6</sup> *Om.*<sup>7</sup> the.<sup>8</sup> *Om.*

No. III.

## The Grene Knight.

---

[MS. Percy, p. 203.]

**L**IST, when<sup>1</sup> Arthur he was K :  
He had att all' his leading'

The broad Ile of Brittain ;  
England & Scotland one was,  
& Wales stood in the same case,  
The truth itt is not to layne.

5

He driue allyans<sup>2</sup> out of this Ile,  
Soe Arthur liued in peace a while,  
As man<sup>3</sup> of mickle maine ;  
K<sup>tes</sup> stronge of their degree,  
W<sup>ch</sup> of them hiest shold bee,  
Therof Arthur was not faine.

10

Hee made the Round Table for their behoue,  
Y<sup>t</sup> none of them shold sitt aboue,  
But all shold sitt as one ;  
The K : himselfe, in state royall,  
Dame Gueneuer, our Queene, w<sup>th</sup> all,  
Seemlye of body & bone.

15

<sup>1</sup> wen, *MS.*

<sup>2</sup> allyance, *MS.*

<sup>3</sup> men, *MS.*

Itt fell againe the Christmase,  
Many came to y<sup>t</sup> Lords place, 20

To y<sup>t</sup> worthye one ;  
W<sup>th</sup> helme, & head, & brand bright,  
All y<sup>t</sup> tooke order of k<sup>t</sup>,  
None wold linger att home.

There was noe Castle, nor man<sup>r</sup> free, 25  
Y<sup>t</sup> might harbour y<sup>t</sup> companye,  
Their puissance was soe great ;  
Their tent<sup>e</sup> vp they<sup>1</sup> pight,  
For to lodge there all y<sup>t</sup> night,  
Therto were sett to meate. 30

Messengers there came [&] went,  
W<sup>th</sup> much victualls, verament,  
Both by way & streete ;  
Wine & wildfowle thither was brought,  
W<sup>th</sup> in they spared nought, 35  
For gold, & they might itt gett.

Now of K : Arthur noe more I mell,  
But of a venterous k<sup>t</sup> I will yo<sup>n</sup> tell,  
Y<sup>t</sup> dwelled in the west Countrey ;  
S<sup>r</sup> Bredbeddle for sooth he hett, 40  
He was a man of mickle might,  
& Lo : of great bewtye.

He had a lady to his<sup>s</sup> wiffe,  
He loued her deerlye as his liffe,  
Shee was both blyth & blee ; 45  
Because S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine was stiffe in stowre,  
Shee loued him priuilye par amour,  
& shee neu<sup>9</sup> him see.

the, *MS.*

<sup>s</sup> wis, *MS.*

Itt was Aggteb y<sup>t</sup> was her mother,  
 Itt was witchcraft, & noe other, 50

Y<sup>t</sup> shee dealt w<sup>th</sup> all ;

*	*	*	*	*	*
*	*	*	*	*	*
*	*	*	*	*	* <sup>1</sup>

Shee cold transpose k<sup>t</sup> & swaine, 55  
 Like as in battaile they were slaine,  
 Wounded both lim & lighth ;  
 Shee taught her sonne the k<sup>t</sup> alsoe,  
 In transposed likenesse he shold goe,  
 Both by fell & frythe. 60

Shee said, " thou shalt to Arthurs hall,  
 For there great aduentures shall befall,  
 [p. 204.] That euer saw K : or k<sup>t</sup>.

*	*	*	*	*	*
*	*	*	*	*	*
*	*	*	*	*	* <sup>2</sup>

65

All was for her daughters sake,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> the witch<sup>3</sup> soe sadlye spake,  
 To her sonne in law the k<sup>t</sup>.  
 Because S Gawaine was bold & hardye, 70  
 & therto full of curtesye,  
 To bring him into her sight.

The knight said, " soe mote I thee,  
 To Arthurs court will I mee hye,  
 For to praise thee right ; 75  
 & to proue Gawaines points 3.  
 & y<sup>t</sup> be true y<sup>t</sup> men tell me,  
 By Mary, most of might !"

<sup>1</sup> Three lines are here wanting.   <sup>2</sup> Three lines again are missing.   <sup>3</sup> they w<sup>ch</sup>, MS.

Earlye soone as itt was day,  
 The k<sup>t</sup> dressed him full gay, 80  
     Vmstrode a full good steede ;  
 Helme & hawberke both he hent,  
 A long fauchion, verament,  
     To fend them in his neede.

Y<sup>t</sup> was a jolly sight to seene, 85  
 When horsse & armour was all greene,  
     & weapon y<sup>t</sup> hee bare ;  
 When y<sup>t</sup> burne was harnisht still,  
 His countenance he became right well,  
     I dare itt safelye sweare.

90

Y<sup>t</sup> time at Carleile lay our K :  
 Att a castle of Flatting was his dwelling,  
     In the Forrest of Delamore ;  
 For sooth he rode, the sooth to say,  
 To Carleile he came on Christmas day, 95  
     Into y<sup>t</sup> fayre countrie.

When he into y<sup>t</sup> place came,  
 The porter thought him a maruelous groome,  
     He saith, "S<sup>r</sup>, wither wold yee?"  
 Hee said, "I am a venterous k<sup>t</sup>. 100  
 & of yo<sup>r</sup> K: wold haue sight  
     & other Lo<sup>s</sup> : y<sup>t</sup> heere bee."

Noe word to him the porter spake,  
 But left him standing att the gate,  
     & went forth, as I weene ; 105  
 & kneeled downe before the K :  
 Saith, "in lifes dayes, old or younge,  
     Such a sight I haue not seene.

For yonder att yo<sup>r</sup> gates right,  
 He saith hee is a venterous k<sup>t</sup>, 110  
 All his vesture is greene ;”  
 Then spake the K : proudest in pall<sup>1</sup>,  
 Saith, “bring him into the hall,  
 Let vs see what hee doth meane.”

When the Greene K<sup>t</sup> came before the K : 115  
 He stood in his stirrops streching,  
 & spoke w<sup>th</sup> voice cleere ;  
 & saith, “ K : Arthur, god saue thee,  
 As thou sittest in thy prosperitye,  
 & maintaine thine honor. 120

Why thou wold me nothing but right,  
 I am come hither, a venterous [knight],  
 & kayred thorrow countryes farr ;  
 To proue poynts in thy pallace,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> longeth to manhood in eu ye case, 125  
 Among thy Lo<sup>s</sup> : deere.”

The K : he sate<sup>2</sup> full still,  
 Till he had said all his will,  
 Certain thus can he say ;  
 “ As I am true k<sup>t</sup> and K : 130  
 Thou shalt haue thy askinge,  
 I will not say thee<sup>3</sup> nay.

Whether thou wilt on foote fighting,  
 Or on steed-backe iusting,  
 For loue of ladies gay ; 135  
 If & thine armor be not fine,  
 I will giue thee pt of mine,”—  
 “ Godamercy Lo :” can he say.

<sup>1</sup> all, *MS*.<sup>2</sup> sayd, *MS*.<sup>3</sup> thy, *MS*.

" Here I make a challenging,  
 Among the Lords, both old & younge, 140  
     Y<sup>t</sup> worthy beene in weede ;  
 W<sup>ch</sup> of them will take in hand,  
 Hee y<sup>t</sup> is both stiffe & stronge,  
     & full good att need.

[p.205.] I shall lay my head downe, 145  
 Strike itt of, if he can,  
     W<sup>th</sup> a stroke to garr itt bleed ;  
 For this day 12 monthe another at his,  
 Let me see who will answer this,  
     A knight y<sup>t</sup> is doughtye of deed. 150

For this day 12 monthe, the sooth to say,  
 Let him come to me, & feith<sup>1</sup> his praye,  
     Rudlye, or eu<sup>9</sup> hee blin ;  
 Whither he come I shall him tell,  
 The readie way to the Greene Chappell, 155  
     Y<sup>t</sup> place I will be in."

The K : att ease sate full still,  
 & all his Lords said but litle,  
     Till he had said all his will ;  
 Vpp stood S<sup>r</sup> Kay, y<sup>t</sup> crabbed k<sup>t</sup>, 160  
 Spake mightye words y<sup>t</sup> were of height,  
     Y<sup>t</sup> were both loud & shrill.

" I shall strike his necke in tooe,  
 The head away the body froe,"  
     They<sup>2</sup> bade him all be still ; 165  
 Saith Kay, " of thy dints make noe rouse,  
 Thou wottest full litle what thou does,  
     Noe good but mickle ill."

<sup>1</sup> fetch ?<sup>2</sup> The, MS.



Eche man wold this deed haue done,  
 Vp start Sr Gawaine soone, 170  
     Vpon his knees can kneele ;  
 He said, "y<sup>t</sup> were great villanye,  
 W<sup>th</sup> out yo<sup>n</sup> put this deede to me,  
     My Leege, as I haue sayd.

Remember I am yo<sup>r</sup> sisters sonne," 175  
 The K: said, "I grant thy boone,  
     But mirth is best att meelee ;  
 Cheere thy guest, & giue him wine,  
 & after dinner to itt fine,  
     & sett the buffett well." 180

Now the Grene K<sup>t</sup> is set att meate,  
 Seemlye<sup>1</sup> serued in his seate,  
     Beside the Round Table ;  
 To talke of his welfare nothing he needs,  
 Like a k<sup>t</sup> himselfe he feeds, 185  
     W<sup>th</sup> long time reasnable.

When the dinner itt was done,  
 The K: said to Sr Gawaine soone,  
     W<sup>th</sup> outen any fable ;  
 He said, "an<sup>2</sup> yo<sup>n</sup> will doe this deede, 190  
 I pray Jesus be yo<sup>r</sup> speede,  
     This k<sup>t</sup> is nothing vnstable,"

The Greene K<sup>t</sup> his head downe layd,  
 Sr Gawaine to the axe he braid,  
     To strike w<sup>th</sup> eger will ; 195  
 He stroke the necke-bone in twaine,  
 The blood burst out in eu<sup>9</sup>ye vaine,  
     The head from the body fell.

<sup>1</sup> Seenlye, *MS.*<sup>2</sup> on, *MS.*

The Greene K<sup>t</sup> his head vp hent,  
 Into his saddle wightilye he sprent,  
     Spake words both loud & shrill ;  
 Saith, " Gawaine, thinke on thy couenant,  
 This day 12 monthes see thou ne want,  
     To come to the Greene Chappell."

200

All had great maruell y<sup>t</sup> they<sup>1</sup> see,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> he spake soe merrilye,  
     & bare his head in his hand ;  
 Forth att the hall dore he rode right,  
 & y<sup>t</sup> saw both K : and knight,  
     And Lords that were in land.

205

210

W<sup>th</sup> out the hall dore, the sooth to saine,  
 Hee sett his head vp on againe,  
     Saies, " Arthur, haue heere my hand ;  
 When soeu<sup>9</sup> the k<sup>t</sup> cometh to mee,  
 A better buffett sickerlye,  
     I dare him well warrand."

215

[p. 206.] The Greene K<sup>t</sup> away went,  
 All this was done by enchantment,  
     Y<sup>t</sup> the old witch had wrought ;  
 Sore sicke fell Arthur the K :  
 & for him made great mourning,  
     That into such bale was brought.

220

The Q : shee weeped for his sake,  
 Sorry was S<sup>r</sup> Lancelott du Lake,  
     & other were dreery in thought ;  
 Because he was brought in great pil,  
 His mightye manhood will not availe,  
     Y<sup>t</sup> before hath freshlye fought.

225

<sup>1</sup> the, *MS.*

S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine comfort K: and Q:  
 & all the doughtye there be-deene, 230  
 He bade they<sup>1</sup> shold be still;  
 Said, "of my deede I was neu<sup>2</sup> feard,  
 Nor yett I am nothing adread,  
 I swere, by S<sup>t</sup> Michael!

For when draweth toward my day, 235  
 I will dresse me in mine array,  
 My promise to fullfill;  
 S<sup>r</sup>" he saith, "as I haue blis,  
 I wott not where the Greene Chappell is,  
 Therefore seeke itt I will." 240

The royall Court<sup>2</sup>, verament,  
 All rought S<sup>r</sup> Gawaines intent,  
 They thought itt was the best;  
 They went forth into the feild,  
 K<sup>t</sup> y<sup>t</sup> ware both speare and sheeld, 245  
 They priked<sup>3</sup> forth full prest.

Some chuse them to justinge,  
 Some to dance, karoll<sup>4</sup>, & singe,  
 Of mirth they<sup>5</sup> wold not rest;  
 All they swore together in fere, 250  
 Y<sup>t</sup> and S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine ou<sup>2</sup>-come were,  
 They<sup>6</sup> wold bren all the west.

Now leaue wee the K: in his pallace,  
 The Greene K<sup>t</sup> come home is,  
 To his owne Castle; 255  
 His folke frend, when he came home,  
 What doughtye deeds he had done,  
 Nothing he wold them tell.

<sup>1</sup> the, *MS*.<sup>2</sup> Couett, *MS*.<sup>3</sup> The priced, *MS*.<sup>4</sup> keuell, *MS*.<sup>5</sup> the, *MS*.<sup>6</sup> the, *MS*.

Full well he wist in certaine,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> his wiffe loued S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine, 260  
     Y<sup>t</sup> comelye was vnder kell;  
 Listen Lo<sup>s</sup> & yee will sitt,  
 & yee shall heere the second Fitt,  
     What aduentures S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine befell.

## 2d. PARTE.

The day is come y<sup>t</sup> Gawaine must gone, 265  
 K<sup>tes</sup> & Ladyes waxed wann,  
     Y<sup>t</sup> were w<sup>th</sup> out in y<sup>t</sup> place;  
 The K: himselfe siked ill,  
 The Q: a swoounding almost fell,  
     To y<sup>t</sup> jarney when he shold passe. 270

When he was in armour bright,  
 He was one of the goodlyest k<sup>tes</sup>  
     Y<sup>t</sup> eu<sup>9</sup> in Brittain was borne;  
 They brought S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine a steed,  
 Was dapple gray, & good att need, 275  
     I tell, w<sup>th</sup> outen scorne.

His bridle was w<sup>th</sup> stones sett,  
 W<sup>th</sup> gold & pearle ou<sup>9</sup> frett,  
     & stones of great vertue;  
 He was of a furley kind, 280  
 His stirropps were of silke of Ynd,  
     I tell yo<sup>u</sup> this tale for true.

When he rode ou<sup>9</sup> the mold,  
 His geere glistered as gold,  
     By the way as he rode ; 285  
 Many furleys he there did see,  
 Fowles by the water did flee,  
     By brimes & bankes soe broad.

Many furleys there saw he,  
 Of wolues & wild beasts sikerlye, 290  
     On hunting hee tooke most heede ;  
 Forth he rode, the sooth to tell,  
 For to seeke the Greene Chappell,  
     He wist not where indeed.

[p. 207.] As he rode in an eueing late, 295  
 Riding downe a greene gate,  
     A faire Castell saw hee ;  
 Y<sup>t</sup> seemed a place of mickle pride,  
 Thitherward S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine can ryde,  
     To gett some harborrowe. 300

Thither he came in the twylight,  
 He was ware of a gentle k<sup>t</sup>,  
     The Lo : of the place was hee ;  
 Meekly to him S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine can speake,  
 & asked him for K : Arthurs sake, 305  
     Of harborrowe I pray thee.

“ I am a far labored knight,  
 I pray yo<sup>u</sup> lodge me all this night,”  
     He sayd him not nay ;  
 Hee tooke him by the arme, & led him to the hall, 310  
 A poore child can hee call,  
     Saith, “ dight well his palfrey.”

Into a chamber they<sup>1</sup> went, a full great speed,  
There they<sup>1</sup> found all thinge readye att need,

I dare safelye swere ; 315  
Fier in chambers burning bright,  
Candles in chandlers burning light,  
To supp they<sup>1</sup> went full yare.

He sent after his Ladye bright,  
To come to supp w<sup>th</sup> y<sup>e</sup> gentle kt, 320  
& shee came blythe w<sup>th</sup> all ;  
Forth she came then anon,  
Her maide following her eche one,  
In robes of rich pall.

As shee sate att her supp, 325  
Eu<sup>9</sup>more the Ladye clere,  
Sr Gawaine shee looked vpon ;  
When the supp it was done,  
Shee tooke her maids [euery one,]  
And to her chamber will gone. 330

He cheered the kt & gaue him wine,  
& said, " welcome, by St. Martine !  
I pray yo<sup>u</sup> take itt for none ill ;  
One thing, Sr, I wold yo<sup>u</sup> pray,  
What yo<sup>a</sup> make soe farr this way, 335  
The truth yo<sup>u</sup> wold me tell.

I am a kt, & soe are yee,  
Yo<sup>r</sup> concell an yo<sup>u</sup> will tell mee,  
Forsooth keepe itt I will ;  
For if itt be poynt of any dread, 340  
pchance I may helpe att need,  
Either lowd or still."

<sup>1</sup> the, *MS.*

For his words y<sup>t</sup> were soe smooth,  
 Had S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine wist the soothe,  
     All he wold not haue told; 345  
 For y<sup>t</sup> was the Greene K<sup>t</sup>,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> hee was lodged w<sup>th</sup> that night,  
     And harbarrowe in his hold.

He saith, "as to the Greene Chappell,  
 Thitherward I can yo<sup>u</sup> tell, 350  
     Itt is but furlong<sup>e</sup> 3.  
 The M<sup>r</sup> of it is a venterous k<sup>t</sup>,  
 & workes by witchcraft day & night,  
     W<sup>th</sup> many a great furley.

If he worke w<sup>th</sup> neu<sup>9</sup> soe much frauce, 355  
 He is curteous as he sees cause,  
     I tell yo<sup>u</sup> sikerlye;  
 Yo<sup>u</sup> shall abyde & take yo<sup>r</sup> rest,  
 & I will into yonder forrest,  
     Vnder the greenwood tree." 360

They plight their trutthes to be leele<sup>1</sup>,  
 Either w<sup>th</sup> other for to deale,  
     Whether it were siluer or gold;  
 He said, "we 2. both wilbe,  
 Whatsoeu<sup>9</sup> God send yo<sup>u</sup> & mee, 365  
     To be p<sup>t</sup>ed on the mold."

The Greene K<sup>t</sup> went on hunting,  
 S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine in the Castle beinge,  
     Lay sleeping in his bed;  
 [p. 208.] Vp rose the old Witche w<sup>th</sup> hast thowe<sup>2</sup>, 370  
 & to her dauhter can shee goe,  
     & said, "bee not a-dread."

<sup>1</sup> beleeeue, *MS.*<sup>2</sup> throwe, *MS.*

To her daughter can shee say,  
 "The man y<sup>t</sup> thou hast wisht many a day,  
 Of him thou maist be sped ;  
 For S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine, y<sup>t</sup> curteous k<sup>t</sup>,  
 Is lodged in this hall all night,"—  
 Shee brought her to his bedd.

375

Shee saith, "gentle k<sup>t</sup>, awake,  
 & for this faire ladies sake,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> hath loued thee soe deere ;  
 Take her body in thine armes,  
 There is noe man shall doe thee harm,"  
 Now beene they both heere.

380

The Ladye kissed him times 3.  
 Saith, "w<sup>th</sup> out I haue the loue of thee,  
 My life standeth in dere ;"  
 S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine blushed on the lady bright,  
 Saith, "yo<sup>r</sup> husband is a gentle k<sup>t</sup>,  
 By him y<sup>t</sup> bought mee deare !

385

390

To me itt were great shame,  
 If I schold doe him any grame,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> hath beene kind to mee ;  
 For I haue such a deede to doe,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> I can neyther rest nor roe,  
 Att an end till itt bee."

395

Then spake y<sup>t</sup> ladye gay,  
 Saith, "tell me some of your journey,  
 Yo<sup>r</sup> succour I may bee ;  
 If itt be poynt of any warr,  
 There shall noe man doe yo<sup>u</sup> noe darr,  
 & yee wilbe gou<sup>9</sup>ned by mee.

400



For heere I haue a lace of silke,  
 It is as white as any milke,  
     & of a great value ;” 405  
 Shee saith, “ I dare safelye sweare,  
 There shall noe man doe yo<sup>u</sup> deere,  
     When yo<sup>u</sup> haue it vpon yo<sup>u</sup>.”

S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine spake mildlye in the place,  
 He thanked the lady, & tooke the lace ; 410  
     & promised her to come againe ;  
 The k<sup>t</sup> in the forrest slew many a hind,  
 Other venison he cold none find,  
     But wild bores on the plaine.

Plentye of does & wild swine, 415  
 Foxes, & other ravine,  
     As I hard true men tell ;  
 S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine swore sickerlye,  
 “ Home to yo<sup>r</sup> owne welcome yo<sup>u</sup> bee,  
     By him y<sup>t</sup> harrowes hell !” 420

The Greene K<sup>t</sup> his venison downe layd,  
 Then to S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine thus he said,  
     “ Tell me anon in hight<sup>1</sup> ;  
 What noueltyes y<sup>t</sup> yo<sup>u</sup> haue won,  
 For heers plenty of venison”,— 425  
     S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine said full right.

S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine sware by St. Leonard,  
 “ Such as God sends yo<sup>u</sup> shall haue pt,”  
     In his armes he hent the k<sup>t</sup> ;  
 & there he kissed him times 3. 430  
 Saith, “ heere is such as God sends mee,  
     By Mary, most of might !”

<sup>1</sup> heght, *MS.*

Eu<sup>9</sup> priuilye he held the lace,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> was all the villanye y<sup>t</sup> eu<sup>9</sup> was,  
     Prooued by S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine the gay ; 435  
 Then to bed soone they<sup>1</sup> went,  
 & slepted there, verament,  
     Till morrow itt was day.

Then S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine soe curteous & free,  
 His leaue soone taketh hee, 440  
     At the ladye soe gaye ;  
 [p.209.] Hee thanked her, & tooke the lace,  
 & rode towards the Chappell apace,  
     He knew noe whitt the way.

Eu<sup>9</sup> more in his thought he had, 445  
 Whether he shold worke as the ladye bade,  
     Y<sup>t</sup> was soe curteous & sheene ;  
 The Greene K<sup>t</sup> rode another way  
 He transposed him in another array,  
     Before as it was greene. 450

As S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine rode ou<sup>9</sup> the plaine,  
 He hard one high vpon a mountaine,  
     A horne blowne full lowde ;  
     \*      \*      \*      \*      \*      \*  
     \*      \*      \*      \*      \*      \* 455  
     \*      \*      \*      \*      \*      \*<sup>2</sup>

He looked after the Greene Chappell,  
 He saw itt stand vnder a hill,  
     Couered w<sup>th</sup> euyes about ;  
 He looked after the Greene K<sup>t</sup>, 460  
 He hard him whett<sup>3</sup> a fauchion bright,  
     Y<sup>t</sup> the hills rang about.

<sup>1</sup> the, MS.<sup>2</sup> Three lines here are wanting.<sup>3</sup> wehett, MS.

The k<sup>t</sup> spake w<sup>th</sup> strong cheere,  
 Said, "yee be welcome, S[r] Gawaine heere,  
 It behoooueth thee to lowte ;"  
 He stroke, & litle perced the skin,  
 Vnneth the flesh w<sup>th</sup> in,  
 Then S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine had noe doubt. 465

He saith, "thou shoutest, why dost thou soe?"  
 Then S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine in hart waxed throe,  
 Vpon his feete con stand ;  
 & soone he drew out his sword,  
 & saith, "traitor, if thou speake a word,  
 Thy liffe is in my hand. 470

I had but one stroke att thee,  
 & thou hast had onother att mee,  
 Noe falshood in me thou found ;  
 \*       \*       \*       \*       \*       \*  
 \*       \*       \*       \*       \*       \*  
 \*       \*       \*       \*       \*       \* <sup>1</sup> 480

The k<sup>t</sup> said, "w<sup>th</sup> outen laine,  
 I wend I had S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine slaine,  
 The gentlest k<sup>t</sup> in this land ;  
 Men told me of great renowne,  
 Of curtesie thou might haue woon the crowne,  
 Aboue both free & bound. 485

& alsoe of great gentrye,  
 & now 3 poynt<sup>l</sup> be put for thee,  
 Itt is the moe pittye ;  
 S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine, thou wast not leele,  
 When thou didst the lace conceale,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> my wiffe gaue to thee. 490

<sup>1</sup> Three more lines are apparently deficient here.

For wee were both wist full well,  
 For thou hadst the halfe dele,  
     Of my venerye ;  
 If the lace had neu<sup>9</sup> beene wrought,  
 To haue slaine thee was neu<sup>9</sup> my thought,  
     I swere, by God verelye !

495

I wist it well my wiffe loued thee,  
 Thou wold doe me noe villanye,  
     But nicked her w<sup>th</sup> nay ;  
 But wilt thou doe as I bidd thee,  
 Take me to Arthurs court w<sup>th</sup> thee,  
     Then were all to my pay."

500

Now are the k<sup>tes</sup> accorded thore,  
 To the Castle of Hutton can they<sup>1</sup> fare,  
     To lodge there all y<sup>t</sup> night ;  
 Earlye on the other day,  
 To Arthurs court they<sup>1</sup> tooke the way,  
     W<sup>th</sup> harts blyth & light.

505

510

All the court was full faine,  
 Aliue when they saw S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine,  
     They thanked God abone ;  
 Y<sup>t</sup> is the matter & the case,  
 Why k<sup>tes</sup> of the Bathe weare the lace,  
     Vntill they haue wonen their shoen.

515

Or else a Ladye of hye estate,  
 From about his necke shall it take,  
     For the doughtye deeds y<sup>t</sup> hee hath done ;  
 It was confirmed by Arthur the K :  
 Thorrow S<sup>r</sup> Gawaines desiringe,  
     The K : granted him his boone.

520

<sup>1</sup> the, *MS.*

[p. 210.] Thus endeth the tale of the Greene K<sup>t</sup>,  
God y<sup>t</sup> is soe full of might,  
    To heauen their soules bring ;  
Y<sup>t</sup> haue hard this litle storye,  
Y<sup>t</sup> fell sometimes in the west Countrye,  
    In Arthurs days our king.

525

FINIS.

## The Turke and Gowin.

---

[p. 38.]

**L**ISTEN lords, great & small,  
What adventures did befall,  
In England where hath beene;  
Of knights that held the Round Table,  
W<sup>ch</sup> were doughty & profittable,  
Of kempys cruell & keene.

5

All England, both East & West,  
Lords & ladyes of the best,  
They bufked & made them bowne;  
& when the king fate in feate,  
Lords ferved him att his meate,  
Into the hall a burne there taite<sup>1</sup>.

10

He was not hye, but he was broad,  
& like a Turke he was made,  
Both legg & thye;  
& faid, "is there any will, as a brother,  
To give a buffett & take another,  
& iff any foe hardy bee?"

15

<sup>1</sup> *Sic MS.*

Then spake S<sup>r</sup> Kay, that crabbed kt,  
 & said, "man, thou seemest not foe wight, 20  
     If thou be not adread ;  
 For there beene k<sup>ts</sup> w<sup>th</sup> in this hall,  
 W<sup>th</sup> a buffett will garr thee fall,  
     & grope thee to the ground.

Gine thou be never foe ftalworth of hands, 25  
 I fhall bring thee to the ground,  
     Y<sup>t</sup> dare I safely fweare ;"  
 Then spake S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine, that worthy knight,  
 Saith, "cozen Kay, thou speakest not right,  
     Lewd is thy answere. 30

What & that man want of his witt,  
 Then litle worfhipp were to thee pitt,  
     If thou fhold him forefore ;"  
 Then spake the Turke w<sup>th</sup> words thraw,  
 Saith, "come the better of yo<sup>u</sup> tow, 35  
     Though ye be brenne<sup>1</sup> as bore<sup>2</sup>."

[*Half a page is here torn away.*]

[p. 39.] This buffett thou haft . . . . .  
 Well quitt that it fhall be ;  
     And yett I fhall make thee as feard,  
 As ever was man in middlearth, 40  
 This court againe ere thou fee."

<sup>1</sup> brene ?

<sup>2</sup> bord, *MS.*

Then said Gawaine, "my truth I plight,  
 I dare goe w<sup>th</sup> thee full right,  
     & never from thee flye;  
 I will never flee from noe adventure, 45  
 Justing, nor noe other turnament,  
     Whilest I may live on lee."

The Turke tooke leave of king w<sup>th</sup> crowne,  
 S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine made him ready bowne,  
     His armor, & his steed; 50  
 They rode northward 2 dayes and more;  
 By then S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine hungred fore,  
     Of meate & drinke he had great need.

The Turke wist Gawaine had need of meate,  
 & fpake to him w<sup>th</sup> words great, 55  
     Lawtinge<sup>1</sup> uppon hee;  
 Says, "Gawaine, where is all thy plenty?  
 Yesterday thou waft ferved w<sup>th</sup> dainty,  
     & noe<sup>2</sup> y<sup>t</sup> thou wold give me.

But w<sup>th</sup> buffett thou did me fore. 60  
 Therefore thou fhalt have mickle care,  
     & adventures fhall thou fee;  
 I wold I had K: Arthur heere,  
 & many of thy fellowes in fere,  
     That behaves<sup>3</sup> to try mastery." 65

He led S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine to a hill foe plaine,  
 The earth opened, & clofed againe,  
     Then Gawaine was adread;  
 The merke was comen, & the light is gone,  
 Thundering, lightning, fnow & raine, 70  
     Therof enough they had.

<sup>1</sup> Lawghinge?<sup>2</sup> none?<sup>3</sup> behoves?



Then spake Sr Gawaine, & fighed fore,  
 "Such wether faw I never afore,  
 In noe stead where I have beene ;

[*Half a page is here wanting.*]

[p. 40.] ..... noe answere, 75  
 But only unto mee."

To the Castle they then yode,  
 Sr Gawaine light befide his steed,  
 For horfe the Turke had none ;  
 There they found chamber, bower, & hall, 80  
 Richly rayled about w<sup>th</sup> pale,  
 Seemly to looke uppon.

A Bord was fpred w<sup>th</sup>in that place,  
 All manner of meates & drinkes there was,  
 For groomes that might it againe<sup>1</sup> ; 85  
 Sr Gawaine wold have fallen to y<sup>t</sup> fare,  
 The Turke bad him leave, for care,  
 Then waxt he unfaine.

Gawaine laid, "man, I marvell have,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> thou may none of these vittells<sup>2</sup> fpare<sup>3</sup>, 90  
 & here is foe great plentye ;  
 Yett have I more mervaille, by my fay,  
 That I fee neither man nor maid<sup>4</sup>,  
 Woman, nor child foe free ;

<sup>1</sup> gaine ?

<sup>2</sup> vittells, *MS.*

<sup>3</sup> crave ?

<sup>4</sup> may ?

I had lever now att mine owne will, 95  
 Of this fayre meate to eate my fill,  
 Then all the gold in chrestenty;"  
 The Turke went forth, & tarryed nought,  
 Meate & drinke he forth brought,  
 Was feemly for to fee. 100

He said, "eate, Gawaine, & make thee yare,  
 In faith or thou gett victalls more,  
 Thou fhalt both fwinke & fweat;  
 Eate, Gawaine, & spare thee nought,"—  
 Sr Gawaine eate as him good thought, 105  
 & well he liked his meate.

He dranke ale, & after wine,  
 He faith, "I will be att thy bidding baine,  
 Without boft or threat;  
 But one thing I wold thee pray, 110  
 Give me my buffett, & let me goe my way,  
 I wold not longer be hereatt."

[*Half a page wanting.*]

[p. 41.] There flood a . . . . .  
 Sr Gawaine left behind his steed,  
 He might noe other doe; 115  
 The Turke said to Sr Gawaine,  
 "He fhalbe here when thou comes againe,  
 I plight my troth to thee."

Within an hower, as men tell me,  
 They were failed over the fea, 120  
     The Turke said, "Gawaine, hoe<sup>1</sup>!  
 Here are we, withouten feath,  
 But now beginneth the great othe,  
     When he fhall adventures doe."

He lett him fee a castle faire 125  
 Such a one he never saw yare,  
     Noe where<sup>2</sup> in noe country;  
 The Turke said to Sr Gawaine,  
 "Yonder dwells the K: of Man,  
     A heathen foldan is hee. 130

With him he hath a hideous rout,  
 Of giants strong & stout,  
     & ugie to looke uppon;  
 Whosoever had fought farr & neere,  
 As wide as the world were, 135  
     Such a companye he cold find none.

Many adventures thou fhalt see there,  
 Such as thou never saw yare,  
     In all the world about;  
 Thou fhalt see a teniffe ball, 140  
 That never k<sup>t</sup> in Arthurs hall,  
     Is able to give it a lout;  
 & other adventures there are moe,  
 Wee fhall be affayled ere we goe,  
     Therof have thou noe doute. 145

But & yee will take to me good heed,  
 I fhall helpe yo<sup>u</sup> in time of need,  
     For ought I can see;

<sup>1</sup> hee, *MS.*<sup>2</sup> wherin, *MS.*

There fhall be none fo ftrong in ftower,  
But I fhall . . . . .

150

[*Half a page wanting.*]

[p. 42.] . . . . . Gawaine . . . . . & ftowre,  
    & all his company ;  
    & that Bifhopp, Sr Bodwine,  
    That will not let my goods alone,  
    But fpiteth them every day.

155

He preached much of a crowne of thorne,  
He fhall ban the time y<sup>t</sup> he was borne,  
    & ever I catch him may ;  
I anger more att the fpiritalty<sup>1</sup>,  
In England nor att the temporaltie,  
    They goe foe in their array.

160

And I purpofe, in full great ire,  
To brenn their clergy in a fire,  
    & punifh them to my pay ;  
Sitt downe, Sr Gawaine, at the bord,”—  
Sr Gawaine answered at that word,  
    Saith, “ nay, thatt may not be.

165

I trow not a venturous k<sup>t</sup> fhall  
Sitt downe in a kings hall,  
    Adventures or yo<sup>u</sup> fee ;”  
The K : faid, “ Gawaine, faire mot thou<sup>2</sup> fall !  
Goe feitch me forth my teniffe ball,  
    For play will I, and fee.”

170

<sup>1</sup> fpiritually, *MS.*

<sup>2</sup> then, *MS.*

They brought it out, w<sup>th</sup>out doubt,  
 W<sup>th</sup> it came a hideous rout, 175  
 Of gyants great & plenty ;  
 All the giants were there then,  
 Heire<sup>1</sup> by the halfe then S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine,  
 I tell yo<sup>u</sup>, withouten nay<sup>2</sup>.

There were ix. giants bold of blood, 180  
 & all thought Gawaine but litle good<sup>3</sup>,  
 When they thought w<sup>th</sup> him to play ;  
 All the giants thoughten then,  
 To have ftrucke out S<sup>r</sup> Gawaines braine,  
 Help him God, that beft may ! 185

The ball of braffe was made for the giants hand,  
 There was noe man in all England,  
 Were able to . . . . .

[*Half a page wanting.*]

[p. 43.] And ficked a giant in the hall,  
 That gryfly can hee grow<sup>4</sup> ; 190  
 The K : fayd, “bray away this axeltree,  
 For fuch a boy I never fee,  
 Yett he fhalbe aflayd<sup>5</sup> better ere he goe.

I told yo<sup>u</sup> foe mote I tho,  
 W<sup>th</sup> the 3 adventure, & then no more, 195  
 Be for me at this tide.”

Then there ftood amongft them all,  
 A chimney in the<sup>6</sup> K<sup>s</sup> hall,  
 W<sup>th</sup> barres mickle of pride ;

<sup>1</sup> *i. e.* higher ; heires, *MS.*

<sup>2</sup> may, *MS.*

<sup>3</sup> goods, *MS.*

<sup>4</sup> grone ?

<sup>5</sup> aflayd ?

<sup>6</sup> they, *MS.*

There was laid on in that ftond<sup>1</sup>, 200  
 Coales & wood that coft a pound,  
 That upon it did abide.

A giant bad Gawaine affay,  
 & faid, "Gawaine, begin the play,  
 Thou knoweft beft how it fhold be ; 205  
 & afterwards when thou haft done,  
 I trow yo<sup>u</sup> fhallbe answered foone,  
 Either w<sup>th</sup> boy or me."

A great giant, I underftand,  
 Lift up the chimney w<sup>th</sup> his hand, 210  
 & fett it downe againe fairly.

S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine was never foe adread,  
 Sith he was man on midle-earth,  
 & cryd on God in his thought ;  
 Gawaine unto his boy can fay, 215  
 "Lift this chimney, if yo<sup>u</sup> may,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> is foe worthily wrought."

Gawaines boy to it did leape,  
 & gatt itt by the bowler great,  
 & about his head he it flang ; 220  
 3<sup>s</sup> about his head he it fwang,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> the coales & the red brands,

[*Half a page wanting.*]

[p. 44.] "..... of mickle might,  
 & ftrong were in battell.

<sup>1</sup> ftone, *MS.*

I have flaine them thorow my maffery, 225  
 & now, Gawaine, I will flay thee,  
 & then I have flaine all the flower ;  
 There went never none againe no tale to tell,  
 Nor more fhalt thou, thoe thou be fell,  
 Nor none that longeth to K: Arthur." 230

The Turke was clad inviffible gay<sup>1</sup>,  
 No man cold fee him, withouten nay,  
 He was cladd in fuch a weede ;  
 He heares their talkings, leffe & more,  
 & yet he thought they fhould find him there, 235  
 When they fhould do that deed.

Then he led him into a fteddie<sup>2</sup>,  
 Wher as<sup>3</sup> was a boyling leade,  
 & welling uppon hie ;  
 & before it a giant did ftand, 240  
 W<sup>th</sup> an iron forke in his hand,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> hideous was to fee.

The giant y<sup>t</sup> looked foe keene,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> before S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine had never feene,  
 Noe where in noe country ; 245  
 The K: faid to his giant thoe,  
 "Here is none but wee tow,  
 Let fee how beft may bee."

When the giant faw Gawaines boy there was,  
 He leapt, & .threw, & cryed alas ! 250  
 Y<sup>t</sup> he came in that ftead ;  
 S<sup>r</sup> Gawines boy to him lept,  
 & w<sup>th</sup> ftrenght up him gett,  
 & caft him in the lead.

<sup>1</sup> in inviffible gray ?<sup>2</sup> stede ?<sup>3</sup> werhas, *MS.*

W<sup>th</sup> an iron forke made of steele, 255  
 He held him downe wonderous weele,  
 Till he was scalded to the dead;  
 Then S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine unto the K: can fay,  
 “W<sup>th</sup>out thou wilt agree unto our law,  
 Eaten is all thy bread.” 260

The K: spitt on Gawaine the k<sup>t</sup>,  
 W<sup>th</sup> y<sup>t</sup> the Turke hent him upright,  
 & into the fyer him flang;  
 & faid to S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine, at the laft,  
 “Noe force, M<sup>r</sup>, all the perill<sup>1</sup> is past 265  
 Thinke not we tarried too longe.”

[*Half a page wanting.*]

[p. 45.] He tooke forth a bafon of gold,  
 As an Emperour was he fhold,  
 As fell for his degree.

He took a fword of mettle free, 270  
 Saies, “if ever I did any thing for thee,  
 Doe for me in this ftead;  
 Take here this fword of steele,  
 That in battell will bite weele,  
 Therwith ftrick of my head.” 275

“Y<sup>t</sup> I forefend,” faid S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine,  
 “For I wold not have thee flaine,  
 For all the gold foe red;”  
 “Have done, S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine, I have no dread,  
 But in this bafon let me bleed, 280  
 Y<sup>t</sup> ftandeth here in this ftead.

<sup>1</sup> pill, *MS.*



And thou shalt see a new play,  
 With helpe of Mary, y<sup>t</sup> mild mayd,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> saved us from all dread ;”—  
 He drew forth the brand of steele, 285  
 That in battell bite wold weelee,  
 & there stroke of his head.

And when the blood in the bafon light,  
 He stood up a stalwortht k<sup>t</sup>,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> day, I undertake ; 290  
 & song *Te deum laudam's*,  
 “ Worhipp be to our lord Jefus,  
 That saved us from all wracke !

A ! S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine, bleffed thou be,  
 For all the service I have don thee<sup>1</sup>, 295  
 Thou haft well quitt it me ;”  
 Then he tooke him by the hand,  
 & many a worthy man they fand,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> before they never<sup>2</sup> see.

He faid, “ S<sup>r</sup> Gawine, w<sup>th</sup>outen threat,  
 Sitt downe boldly at thy meate,  
 & I will eate w<sup>th</sup> thee ;  
 Ladyes all, be of good cheere,  
 Eche ane shall wend to his owne deer,  
 In all haft that may be. 305

First we will to K : Arthurs hall,  
 & foone after yo<sup>r</sup> husbands fend we shall,  
 In country where they beene ;

[*Half a page wanting.*]

<sup>1</sup> there, *MS.*

<sup>2</sup> neve, *MS.*

[p. 46.] Thus we have brought 17 ladys cleere,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> there were left in great danger,  
 & we have brought them out.” 310

Then sent they for their hufbands fwithē,  
 & every one tooke his owne wife,  
 & lowlye can they lowte ;  
 And thanked the 2 k<sup>ts</sup> & the K : 315  
 & faid they<sup>1</sup> wold be at their bidding,  
 In all England about.

S<sup>r</sup> Gromer kneeld upon his knee,  
 Saith, “ S<sup>r</sup> K : & your<sup>2</sup> wilbe,  
 Crowne Gawaine K : of Man ;” 320  
 S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine kneeled downe by,  
 & faid, “ lord, nay not I,  
 Give it him, for he it wan.

For I never purposed to be noe K :  
 Never in all my livinge, 325  
 Whilest I am a living man ;”  
 He faid, “ S<sup>r</sup> Gromer, take it thee,  
 For Gawaine will never K : bee,  
 For no craft that I can.”

Thus endeth the tale that I of meane, 330  
 Of Arthur & his knights keene,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> hardy were & free ;  
 God give them good life, far and neere,  
 That fuch talking loves to heere,  
 Amen, for Charity ! FIN[1]s. 335

<sup>1</sup> the, *MS.*

<sup>2</sup> yo<sup>u</sup>, *MS.*

## Carle off Carlile.

---

[p. 448.]

**L**ISTEN to me a litle ftond,  
Yee fhall heare of one y<sup>t</sup> was fober & found ;  
Hee was meeke as maid in bower,  
Stiffe & ftrong in every ftoure.

Certes, w<sup>th</sup>outen fable,  
He was one of the Round Table ;  
The k<sup>ts</sup> name was S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine,  
Y<sup>t</sup> much worfhipp wan in Brittain.

5

The Ile of Brittain called is,  
Both England & Scotland, I wis ;  
Wales<sup>1</sup> is an angle to y<sup>t</sup> Ile,  
Where K: Arthur foiornd awhile.

10

W<sup>th</sup> him 24 k<sup>ts</sup> told,  
Befids Barrons & Dukes bold ;  
The K: to his Bifhopp gan fay,

15

[p. 449.]

“ Wee will have a Maffe to day.

Bifhop Bodwin<sup>2</sup> fhall itt done,  
After to the faireft wee will gone ;  
For now its grafs time of the yeere,  
Barrons bold fhall breake the deere.

20

<sup>1</sup> Vales, *MS.*

<sup>2</sup> Bodwim, *MS.*

Faine theroff was Sr Marroche,  
 Soe was Sr Kay the k<sup>t</sup> ftout ;  
 Faine was Sr Lancelott Du Lake,  
 Soe was Sr Percivall, I undertake.

Faine was Sr Ewaine, 25  
 & Sr Lott of Lothaine ;  
 Soe was the K<sup>t</sup> of armes greene,  
 & alfoe Sr Gawaine the fheene.

Sr Gawaine was fteward in Arthurs hall,  
 Hee was the curteous k<sup>t</sup> amongft them all ; 30  
 K : Arthur, & his cozen Mordred,  
 & other k<sup>ts</sup> w<sup>th</sup>outen lett.

Sr Lybius Disconyus was there,  
 W<sup>th</sup> proud archers, leffe & more ;  
 Blanch Faire, & Sr Ironfide, 35  
 & many k<sup>ts</sup> y<sup>t</sup> day can ryde.

& Ironfide, as I weene,  
 Gate the knight of armour greene ;  
 Certes, as I underftand,  
 Of a faire lady of Blaunch-Land. 40

Hee cold more of honor in warr,  
 Then all the k<sup>ts</sup> y<sup>t</sup> w<sup>th</sup> Arthur weare ;  
 Burning dragons he flew in land,  
 & wilde beafts, as I underftand.

Wilde beares he flew y<sup>t</sup> ftond, 45  
 A hardyer k<sup>t</sup> was never found ;  
 He was called in his dayes,  
 One of K: Arthurs fellowes.

Why was hee called Ironfyde,  
 For ever armed wold he ryde ; 60  
 Hee wold allwais armes beare,  
 For gyants & hee were ever att warr.

Dapple coulour was his fteede,  
 His armour, and his other weede ;  
 Azure of gold he bare, 55  
 W<sup>th</sup> a griffon, leffe or more.

& a difference of a molatt,  
 He bare in his creft algate ;  
 Wherefoever he went, east nor west,  
 He nev<sup>9</sup> forfooke man nor beaft. 60

Beagles keenely away they<sup>1</sup> ran,  
 The K: followed affter, w<sup>th</sup> many a man ;  
 The<sup>2</sup> grayhounds out of the leefhe,  
 They drew downe the deere of graffe<sup>3</sup>.

Fine tents in the feild were fett, 65  
 A merry fort there were mett ;  
 Of comely k<sup>ts</sup> of kind,  
 Uppon the bent there can they lend<sup>4</sup> ;  
 & by noone of the fame day,  
 A 100<sup>d</sup> harts on the ground they<sup>5</sup> lay ; 70

Then S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine & S<sup>r</sup> Kay,  
 & Bifhopp Bodwin, as I heard fay ;  
 After a redd deere they<sup>6</sup> rode,  
 Into a foreft, wyde & brode.

<sup>1</sup> the, *MS*.<sup>2</sup> they, *MS*.<sup>3</sup> greffe ?<sup>4</sup> lead, *MS*.<sup>5</sup> the, *MS*.<sup>6</sup> the, *MS*.

A thicke mist fell them among, 75  
 Y<sup>t</sup> caifed them all to goo wronge;  
 Great moane made then S<sup>r</sup> Kay,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> they fhold loofe the hart y<sup>t</sup> day.

Y<sup>t</sup> red hart wold not dwell,—  
 Hearken what adventures them beffell; 80  
 Full fore they<sup>1</sup> were adread,  
 Ere they<sup>1</sup> any lodginge had.

Then fpake S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine,  
 “ This labour wee have had in vaine;  
 This red hart is out of fight, 85  
 Wee meete w<sup>th</sup> him no more this night.

I rede<sup>2</sup> wee of our horffes do light,  
 & lodge wee heere all this night;  
 [p. 450.] Truly itt is best, as thinketh mee,  
 To lodge low under this tree.” 90

“ Nay,” said Kay, “ go wee hence anon,  
 For I will lodge wherforre<sup>3</sup> I come;  
 For there dare no man warne me,  
 Of whatt estate foever hee bee.”

“ Yes,” said the Bifhopp, “ y<sup>t</sup> wott I well, 95  
 Here dwelleth a Carle in a castell;  
 The Carle of Carlile is his name,  
 I know itt well, by S<sup>t</sup> Jame!

Was there nev<sup>9</sup> man yett foe bold,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> durft lodge w<sup>th</sup>in his hold; 100  
 But & if hee ftaye w<sup>th</sup> his liffe away,  
 Hee ruleth him well, I yo<sup>u</sup> fay.”

<sup>1</sup> the, *MS.*

<sup>2</sup> wede, *MS.*

<sup>3</sup> wherfoever?

Then said Kay, "all in fere,  
 To goe thither is my desire ;  
 For & the Carle be never foe bolde, 105  
 I thinke to lodge w<sup>thin</sup> his hold.

For if he iangle, & make itt stout,  
 I fhall beate the Carle all about ;  
 & I fhall make his bigging bare,  
 & doe to him mickle care. 110

& I fhall beate [him], as I thinke,  
 Till he both sweate & stinke ;"  
 Then said the Bifhopp, "so mote I fare,  
 Att his bidding I wilbe yare!"

Gawaine said, "lett be thy boftlye fare, 115  
 For thou doft ever waken care ;  
 If thou scape<sup>1</sup> with thy liffe away,  
 Thou ruleth thee well, I dare fay."

Then said Kay, "that pleaseth mee,  
 Thither let us ryde all three ; 120  
 Such as hee bakes, fuch fhall hee brew,  
 Such as hee fhapes, fuch fhall hee few.

Such as he breweth, fuch fhall he drinke,"—  
 "Y<sup>t</sup> is contrary," said Gawaine, "as I thinke ;  
 But if any faire speeche will he<sup>a</sup> gaine, 125  
 Wee fhall make him Lord w<sup>thin</sup> his owne.

If noe faire speech will avayle,  
 Then to karp on, Kay, wee will not faile ;"  
 Then said the Bifhopp, "y<sup>t</sup> tenteth mee,  
 Thither lett us ryde all three." 130

<sup>1</sup> ftape, *MS.*

<sup>2</sup> him ?

When they came to the Carles gate,  
 A hammer they found hanging theratt ;  
 Gawaine hent the hammer in his hand,  
 & curteouflye on the gates dange.

Forth came the Porter, w<sup>th</sup> still fare, 135  
 Saying, " who is foe bold to knocke there ?"  
 Gawaine answered him curteouflye,  
 " Man," hee said, " that is I.

Wee be 2 k<sup>ts</sup> of Arthurs inn,  
 & a Bifhopp, no moe to min ; 140  
 Wee have rydden all day in the forrest still,  
 Till horffe & man beene like to fpill.

For Arthurs sake, y<sup>t</sup> is our kinge,  
 Wee defire my Lo: of a nights lodginge ;  
 & harborrow till the day at morne, 145  
 Y<sup>t</sup> wee may scape<sup>1</sup> away w<sup>th</sup>out sorne."

Then fpake the crabbed k<sup>t</sup> S<sup>r</sup> Kay,  
 " Porter, our errand I reede the fay ;  
 Or elfe the caftle gate wee fhall breake,  
 & the keyes thereof to Arthur take." 150

The Porter fayd w<sup>th</sup> words throe,  
 " Theres no man alive, y<sup>t</sup> dares doe foe ;  
 If<sup>2</sup> a 100<sup>d</sup> fuch as thou his death had fworne,  
 Yett he wold ryde on hunting to-morne<sup>3</sup>."

Then answered Gawaine, y<sup>t</sup> was curteous aye, 155  
 " Porter, our errand I pray thee fay ;"  
 " Yes," said the Porter, " w<sup>th</sup>outen fayle,  
 I fhall fay yo<sup>r</sup> errand full well."

<sup>1</sup> ftape, *MS.*

<sup>2</sup> Of, *MS.*

<sup>3</sup> to-mornes, *MS.*



As foone as the Porter the Carle fee,  
 Hee kneeled downe upon his knee ;—  
 [p. 451.] “ Yonder beene 2 k<sup>ts</sup> of Arthurs in,  
 & a Bifhopp, no more to myn. 160

They have roden all day in the forrest still,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> horffe [and] man is like to fpill ;  
 They defire yo<sup>u</sup> for Arthurs fake, their K:  
 To grant them one nights lodginge ; 165  
 & herberrow till the day att morne,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> they may fcape<sup>1</sup> away w<sup>th</sup>out fcorne.”

“ Noe thing greeves me,” fayd the Carle, “ w<sup>th</sup>out doubt,  
 But y<sup>t</sup> the<sup>2</sup> k<sup>ts</sup> ftand foe long w<sup>th</sup>out ;” 170  
 W<sup>th</sup> y<sup>t</sup> the<sup>2</sup> Porter opened the gates wyde,  
 & the k<sup>ts</sup> rode in y<sup>t</sup> tyde.

Their fteeds into the ftable are tane,  
 The k<sup>ts</sup> into the hall are gone ;  
 Heere the Carle fate in his chaire on hye,  
 W<sup>th</sup> his legg caft over the other knee. 175

His mouth was wyde, & his beard was gray,  
 His lockes on his fhoulders lay ;  
 Betweene his browes, certaine,  
 Itt was large there a fpann. 180

W<sup>th</sup> 2 great eyen brening as fyer,  
 Lord ! hee was a lodlye fyer ;  
 Over his fholders he bore a bread,  
 3 taylors yards, as clarkes doe reade.

His fingars were like to tedder stakes,  
 & his hands like breads y<sup>t</sup> wives may bake ; 185

<sup>1</sup> ftape, *MS.*

<sup>2</sup> they, *MS.*

50 cubitts he was in height,  
Lo : he was a lothefome wight !

When Sr Gawaine y<sup>t</sup> Carle fee,  
He halfed<sup>1</sup> him full curteouflye ; 190  
& faith, “ Carle of Carlile<sup>2</sup>, God fave thee,  
As thou fitteth in thy prosperitye !”

The Carle faid, “ as cheif<sup>3</sup> me fave,  
Yee fhall be welcome for Arthurs fake ;  
Yet is itt not my p<sup>t</sup> to doe foe, 195  
For Arthur hath beene ever my foe.

He hath beaten my k<sup>ts</sup> & done them bale,  
& fend them wounded to my owne hall ;  
Yett the truth to tell I will not leane<sup>4</sup>,  
I have quitt him the fame againe.” 200

“ Y<sup>t</sup> is a kind of a knave,” faid Kay, “ w<sup>th</sup>out leasing,  
Soe to revile a noble King ;”  
Gawaine heard, & made anfwere,  
“ Kay, thou fayft more then meete were.”

W<sup>th</sup> y<sup>t</sup> they went further into the hall, 205  
Where bords were fpredd, & covered w<sup>th</sup> pall ;  
& 4 welpes of great ire,  
They found lying by the fire.

There was a beare y<sup>t</sup> did rome,  
& a bore, y<sup>t</sup> did whett his tufks fome ; 210  
Alfoe a bull, y<sup>t</sup> did rore,  
& a lyon, y<sup>t</sup> did both gape & rore.

<sup>1</sup> haltled, *MS.*

<sup>2</sup> Callile, *MS.*

<sup>3</sup> Crift ?

<sup>4</sup> leave, *MS.*

The lyon did both gape & gren,  
 "O! peace, whelpes," said the Carle then;  
 For y<sup>t</sup> word y<sup>t</sup> the<sup>1</sup> Carle did speake, 215  
 The 4 whelpes under the<sup>1</sup> bord did creepe.

Downe came a lady faire & free,  
 & fett her on the Carles knee;  
 One whiles fhee harped, another whiles fong,  
 Both of paramours & lovinge amonge. 220

"Well were y<sup>t</sup> man," said Gawaine, "y<sup>t</sup> ere were borne,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> might lye w<sup>th</sup> y<sup>t</sup> lady till day att morne;"  
 "Y<sup>t</sup> were great fhame," said the Carle free,  
 "Y<sup>t</sup> thou fholdeft doe me fuch villanye."  
 "Sr," said Gawaine, "I fayd nought,"— 225  
 "No, man," said the Carle, "more thou thought."

Then ftart Kay to the flore,  
 & faid hee wold fee how his palfrey fore;  
 Both corne & hay he found lyand,  
 & the Carles palfrey by his fteed did ftand. 230

Kay tooke the Carles palfrey by the necke,  
 & foone he thruft him out att the hecke;  
 Thus Kay put the Carles fole out,  
 & on his backe he fett a clout.  
 Then the Carle himfelfe hee ftood thereby, 235  
 And fayd, "this buffett, man, thou fhalt aby!"

[p. 452.] The Carle raught Kay fuch a rapp,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> backward he fell flatt;  
 Had itt not beene for a feald of ftrow,  
 Kayes backe had gone in 2. 240

' they, *MS.*

Then said Kay, “ & thou were w<sup>th</sup>out thy hold,  
 Man, this buffett fhold be deere fold.”  
 “ What ! ” sayd the Carle, “ doft thou menace me ?  
 I fwere by all foules, fikerlye,

Man, I fwere further thore, 245  
 If I heere any malice more,  
 For this one word y<sup>t</sup> thou haft fpoken,  
 Itt is but ernest thou haft gotten.”

Then went Kay into the hall,  
 & the Bifhopp to him can call ; 250  
 Saith, “ Brother Kay, where have yo<sup>u</sup><sup>2</sup> beene ? ” —  
 “ To looke my palfrey, as I weene.”

Then said the Bifhopp, “ itt falleth me,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> my palfrey I muft fee ; ”  
 Both corne & hay he found lyand, 255  
 & the Carles palfrey, as I underftand.

The Bifhopp tooke the Carles horffe by the necke,  
 & foone hee thruft him out att the hecke ;  
 Thus he turned the Carles fole out,  
 & on his backe he fett a clout. 260

Sais, “ wend forth, fole, in the devills way !  
 Who made the foe bold w<sup>th</sup> my palfrey ? ”  
 The Carle himfelfe he ftood thereby, —  
 “ Man, this buffett thou fhalt abuy<sup>3</sup> ! ”

He hitt the Bifhopp upon the crowne, 265  
 Y<sup>t</sup> his miter & he fell downe ;  
 “ Mercy,” said the Bifhopp, “ I am a clarke,  
 Somewhatt I can of Chrifts werke.”

<sup>2</sup> yo<sup>u</sup> have, *MS.*

<sup>3</sup> abay, *MS.*

He faith, "by the clergye I fett nothing,  
Nor yett by thy miter, nor by thy ringe ; 270  
It fitteth a clarke to be curteous & free,  
By the conning of his clergy."

W<sup>th</sup> y<sup>t</sup> the Bifhopp went into the hall,  
& S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine to him can call ;  
Saith, "brother Bifhopp, where have yo<sup>u</sup> beene?"— 275  
"To looke my palfrey, as I weene."

Then sayd S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine, "it falleth mee,  
Y<sup>t</sup> my palfreye I muft needs fee ;"  
Corne & hay he found enoughe lyand,  
& the Carles fole by his did ftand. 280

The Carles fole had beene forth in the raine,  
Therof S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine was not faine ;  
Hee tooke his mantle, y<sup>t</sup> was of greene,  
& covered the fole, as I weene.

Sayth, "ftand up, fole, & eate thy meate, 285  
Thy M<sup>r</sup> payeth for all y<sup>t</sup> wee heere gett ;"  
The<sup>1</sup> Carle himfelfe ftood thereby,  
& thanked him of his curtefye.

The<sup>1</sup> Carle tooke Gawaine by the hand,  
& both together in the<sup>1</sup> hall they wend ; 290  
The Carle<sup>2</sup> called for a bowle of wine,  
& foone they fettled them to dine.  
70 bowles<sup>3</sup> in y<sup>t</sup> bowle were  
He was not weake y<sup>t</sup> did itt beare.

Then the<sup>1</sup> Carle fett itt to his chin, 295  
& faid, "to yo<sup>u</sup> I will begin."

<sup>1</sup> they, *MS*.<sup>2</sup> Carles, *MS*.<sup>3</sup> gallons ?

15 gallons he dranke y<sup>t</sup> tyde,  
& raught to his men on every fide.

Then the<sup>1</sup> Carle faid to them anon,  
" Sirrs, to fupp gett yo<sup>u</sup> gone ;"  
Gawaine answered the Carle then,  
" S<sup>r</sup>, att yo<sup>r</sup> bidding wee will be ben." 300

" If yo<sup>u</sup> be bayne att my bidding,  
Yo<sup>u</sup> honor me, w<sup>th</sup>out leafinge ;"—  
They wafhed all, & went to meate,  
& dranke the wine y<sup>t</sup> was foe fweete. 305

The Carle faid to Gawaine anon,  
" A long fpeare fee thou take in thy hand ;  
Att the buttrye dore<sup>2</sup> take thou thy race,  
& marke me well in middeft the face." 310

A ! thought S<sup>r</sup> Kay, y<sup>t</sup> y<sup>t</sup> were I,  
Then his buffett he fhold deer abuy<sup>3</sup> !  
" Well," q<sup>th</sup> the Carle, " when thou wilt, thou may,  
When thou wilt thy ftrenght affay."  
" Well S<sup>r</sup>," faid Kay, " I faid nought,"— 315  
[p.453.] " Noe," faid the Carle, " but more thou thought."

Then Gawaine was full glad of y<sup>t</sup>,  
& a long fpere in his hand he gatt ;  
Att the buttery dore he tooke his race,  
& marked the Carle in the middft the face. 320

The Carle faw S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine come in ire,  
& caft his head under his fpeare ;  
Gawaine raught the wall fuch a rapp,  
The fyer flew out, & the fpeare brake.

<sup>1</sup> they, *MS.*

<sup>2</sup> doe, *MS.*

<sup>3</sup> a buy, *MS.*

He froke a foote into the wall of stone, 325  
 A bolder Barron was there never none ;  
 “ Soft,” said the Carle, “ thou was to radd,”—  
 “ I did but, Sr, as yo<sup>n</sup> me bade.”  
 “ If thou had hitt me, as thou had ment,  
 Thou had raught me a fell dint.” 330

The<sup>1</sup> Carle tooke Gawaine by the hand,  
 & both into a chamber they wend ;  
 A full faire bed there was fpred,  
 The Carles wiffe therin was laid.

The Carle<sup>2</sup> said, “ Gawaine, of curtesye, 335  
 Gett into this bedd w<sup>th</sup> this faire ladye ;  
 Kiffe thou her 3<sup>se</sup> before mine eye,  
 Looke thou doe no other villanye.”

The Carle opened the fheetes wyde,  
 Gawaine gott in by the ladyes fyde ; 340  
 Gawaine over he put his arme,  
 W<sup>th</sup> y<sup>t</sup> his flefh began to warme.

Gawaine had thought to have made in fare,  
 “ Hold !” q<sup>th</sup> the Carle, “ man, stopp there<sup>3</sup> ;  
 Itt were greet fhamme,” q<sup>th</sup> the<sup>4</sup> Carle, “ for me, 345  
 Y<sup>t</sup> thou fholdest doe me fuch villanye.

But arife up, Gawaine, & goe w<sup>th</sup> me,  
 I fhall bring thee to a fairer lady then ev<sup>9</sup> was fhee ;”  
 The<sup>4</sup> Carle tooke Gawaine by the hand,  
 Both into another chamber they wend. 350

<sup>1</sup> they, *MS.*

<sup>2</sup> Carles, *MS.*

<sup>3</sup> thee, *MS.*

<sup>4</sup> they, *MS.*

A faire bedd there found they fpred,  
 & the Carles daughter therin laid;  
 Saith, "Gawaine, now, for thy curtefye,  
 Gett thee to bedd to this faire lady."

The Carle opened the fheetes wyde, 355  
 Sr Gawaine gott in by the ladyes fide;  
 Gawaine put his arme over y<sup>t</sup> fweet thing,  
 "Sleepe, daughter," fais the Carle, "on my bleffing!"

The<sup>1</sup> Carle turned his backe, & went his way,  
 & lockt the dore w<sup>th</sup> a filver kaye; 360  
 On the other morning, when the Carle<sup>2</sup> rofe,  
 Unto his daughters chamber he goes.

"Rise up, Sr Gawaine, & goe w<sup>th</sup> mee,  
 A marvelous fight I fhall lett thee fee;"  
 The<sup>1</sup> Carle tooke him by the hand, 365  
 & both into another chamber they wend.

& there they found many a bloody ferke,  
 W<sup>ch</sup> were wrought w<sup>th</sup> curyous werke;  
 1500 dead mens bones<sup>3</sup>  
 They found upon a rooke att once. 370  
 "Alacke!" q<sup>th</sup> Sr Gawaine, "what have bene here?"  
 Saith, "I & my welpes have flaine all there."

Then Sr Gawaine, curteous & kind,  
 He tooke his leave away to wend;  
 & thanked the<sup>1</sup> Carle, & the ladyes there, 375  
 Right as they worthy were;  
 "Nay," faid the Carle, "wee will frst dine,  
 & then thou fhalt goe w<sup>th</sup> bleffing mine."

<sup>1</sup> they, *MS*.

<sup>2</sup> Carles, *MS*.

<sup>3</sup> a bones, *MS*.



After dinner, the footh to fay,  
 The Carle tooke Gawaine to a chamber gay ; 380  
 Where were hanginge fwords a-rowe<sup>1</sup>,  
 The Carle soone tooke one of tho.

& fayd to the k<sup>t</sup> then,  
 "Gawaine, as thou art a man,  
 Take this fword, & ftryke of my head," 385  
 "Nay," faid Gawaine, "I had rather be dead.  
 For I had rather fuffer pine & woe,  
 Or ev<sup>9</sup> I wold y<sup>t</sup> deede doe."

The Carle fayd to S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine,  
 "Looke thou doe as I thee faine ; 390  
 & therof be not adread,  
 But fhortly fmite of my head.

For if thou wilt not doe itt tyte,  
 Forfooth thy head I will of fmyte ;"  
 [p. 454.] To the Carle faid S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine, 395  
 "Sir, yor bidding fhall be done."

He froke the head the body froe,  
 & he ftood up a man thoe ;  
 Of the height of S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine,  
 The certaine foothe, w<sup>th</sup>outen laine. 400

The Carle fayd, "Gawaine, God blefs thee !  
 For thou haft deliv<sup>9</sup>ed mee ;  
 From all falfe<sup>2</sup> witchcraft  
 I am deliv<sup>9</sup> att the laft.

By nigromance thus was I fhapen, 405  
 Till a k<sup>t</sup> of the Round Table,

<sup>1</sup> swords rowe, *MS.*

<sup>2</sup> halfe, *MS.*

Had w<sup>th</sup> a sword fmitten of my head,  
If he had grace to doe y<sup>t</sup> deede.

Itt is 40 winters agoe,  
Since I was transformed foe ; 410  
Since then none lodged w<sup>th</sup>in this woom<sup>1</sup>,  
But I & my whelpes driven them downe,  
& but if hee did my bidding foone,  
I killed him, & drew him downe.

Every one but only thee, 415  
Chrift<sup>2</sup> grant thee of his mercye !  
He y<sup>t</sup> the world made, reward thee this,  
For all my bale thou haft turned to bliffe.

Now will I leave y<sup>t</sup> lawe,  
There fhall no man for me be flawe ; 420  
& I purpose for their sake,  
A chantrey in this place to make ;

& 5 preifts to finge for aye,  
Untill itt be doomes-day ;  
& Gawaine, for the love of thee, 425  
Every one fhall bee welcome to mee."

S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine & the young lady clere,  
The Bifhopp wedded them in fere ;  
The Carle gave him for his wedding,  
A ftaffe, miter, & a ringe. 430

He gave S<sup>r</sup> Kay, y<sup>t</sup> angry k<sup>t</sup>,  
A blood-red fteede & a wight ;  
He gave his daughter, the footh to fay,  
An ambling white palfrey.

<sup>1</sup> woone ?

<sup>2</sup> Thrift, *MS.*

The fairest hee was on the mold, 435  
 Her palfrey was charged w<sup>th</sup> gold ;  
 Shee was foe gorgeous, & foe gay,  
 No man cold tell her array.

The Carle comanded S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine to wend,  
 & fay unto Arthur our King, 440  
 & pray him y<sup>t</sup> hee wold,  
 For his love y<sup>t</sup> Judas fold,  
 & for his sake y<sup>t</sup> in Bethelam was borne,  
 If hee wold dine w<sup>th</sup> him to-morne.

S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine fayd the Carle unto, 445  
 “ Forffooth I fhall yo<sup>r</sup> meffage doe ;”  
 Then they rode finging by the way,  
 W<sup>th</sup> the ladye, y<sup>t</sup> was gay.

They were as glad of y<sup>t</sup> lady bright,  
 As ever was fowle of the day-lyght ; 450  
 They told K : Arthur where they had beene,  
 & what adventures they had feene.

“ I thanke God,” fayd the K: “ cozen Kay,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> thou didft on live p<sup>t</sup> away ;”  
 “ Marry !” fayd S<sup>r</sup> Kay againe, 455  
 “ Of my liffe<sup>1</sup> I may be faine.  
 For his love y<sup>t</sup> was in Bethlem borne,  
 Yo<sup>u</sup> muft dine w<sup>th</sup> the Carle to-morne.”

In the dawning of the day they<sup>2</sup> rode,  
 A merryer meeting was nev<sup>9</sup> made ; 460  
 When they together were mett,  
 Itt was a good thing, I yo<sup>u</sup> hett.

<sup>1</sup> lifte, *MS.*

<sup>2</sup> the, *MS.*

The trumpetts plaid att the gate,  
 W<sup>th</sup> trumpetts of filver theratt<sup>1</sup>;  
 There [was] all manner of minftrelfye, 455  
 Harpe, gyttorne<sup>2</sup>, & fawtrye.

Into the hall the king was fett<sup>3</sup>,  
 & royallye in feat was fett;  
 By then the dinner was readye dight,  
 Tables were covered all on height. 470

Then to wafh they wold not blinn,  
 & the feaft they can beginn;  
 There they were mached arright,  
 Every lady againft a knight.

[p.455.] & minftrells fate in windowes faire, 475  
 & playd on their instruments cleere;  
 Minftrells for worfhipp at every meffe,  
 Full lowd they cry Largeffe<sup>4</sup>!

The Carle bade the K: doe gladlye,  
 "For heere yee gett great curtesye;" 480  
 The K: faid, "by St Michael!  
 This dinner liketh me full well."

He dubd the Carle a k<sup>t</sup> anon,  
 He gave him the county of Carlile foone;  
 & made him erle of all y<sup>t</sup> land, 485  
 & after k<sup>t</sup> of the Table Round.  
 The K: faid, "k<sup>t</sup>, I tell thee,  
 Carlile fhall thy name bee."

<sup>1</sup> therott, *MS.*<sup>2</sup> gyttome, *MS.*<sup>3</sup> has fell, *MS.*<sup>4</sup> Largneffe, *MS.*

When the dinner was all done,  
Every k<sup>t</sup> tooke his leave foone ; 490  
To wend forward, foberlye,  
Home into their owne countrye.

He y<sup>t</sup> made us all w<sup>th</sup> his hand,  
Both the fea & the land,  
Grant us all, for his fake, 495  
This falſe world to forfake ;

& out of this world when wee fhall wend,  
To heavens bliffe our foules bringe ;  
God grant us grace itt may foe bee !  
Amen ! say all, for charitye. 500

FINIS.

## Fragment of the Ballad of King Arthur and the King of Cornwall.

---

[MS. Percy, p. 24.] “**C**OME here my cozen, Gawain, fo gay,  
My sisters sonne be yee ;  
For yo<sup>u</sup> shall see one of the fairest Round Tables,  
That ever yo<sup>u</sup> see w<sup>th</sup> yo<sup>ur</sup> eye.”

Then bespake [the] Lady Q. Guenever, 5  
& these were the words said fhee,  
“ I know where a Round Table is, thou noble K:  
Is worth thy Round Table & other such 3.

The trefle that stands under this Round Table,” she said, 10  
“ Lowe downe to the mould,  
It is worth thy Round Table, tho<sup>u</sup> worthy K:  
Thy halls, & all thy gold.

The place where this Round Table stands in,  
It is worth thy castle, thy gold, thy fee ;  
And all good Litle Britaine,”— 15  
“ Where may that table be, Lady ?” q<sup>th</sup> hee,

“Or where may all that goodly building be?”  
 “Yo<sup>u</sup> fhall it feeke,” fhee fayd, “till yo<sup>u</sup> it find,  
 For yo<sup>u</sup> fhall never gett more of me.”

Then befpoke him noble K: Arthur, 20  
 Thefe were the words faid hee ;  
 “ Ile make mine avow to God,  
 & alfoe to the Trinity,

Ile never fleepe one night, there as I doe another,  
 Till y<sup>t</sup> Round Table I fee ; 25  
 S<sup>r</sup> Marramiles, & S<sup>r</sup> Trifteram,  
 Fellowes y<sup>t</sup> ye fhall bee.

Weele be clad in palmers weede,  
 5 palmers we will bee ;  
 There is noe outlandifh man will us abide, 30  
 Nor will us come nye.”  
 Then they rived eaft & they<sup>1</sup> rived west,  
 In many a ftrange country.

Then they travelled<sup>2</sup> a litle further,  
 They faw a battle new fett ; 35  
 “ Now, by my faith,” faies noble K: Arthur,

[*Half a page is here torn away.*]

[p. 25.] But when he came that caftle to,  
 & to the palace gate ;  
 Soe ready was ther a proud porter,  
 & met him foone therat. 40

<sup>1</sup> the, *MS.*

<sup>2</sup> tranckled, *MS.*

Shooes of gold the porter had on,  
 & all his other rayment was unto the fame ;  
 " Now, by my faith," faies noble K: Arthur,  
 " Yonder is a minion fwaine."

Then befpace noble K. Arthur, 45  
 These were the words fays hee,  
 " Come hither, thou proud porter,  
 I pray thee come hither to me.

I have 2 poor rings of my finger,  
 The<sup>1</sup> better of them Ile give to thee ; 50  
 [To] tell who may be lord of this castle," he faies,  
 " Or who is lord in this cuntry?"

" Cornewall K:" the porter faves,  
 " There is none foe rich as hee ;  
 Neither in Chriftendome, nor yet in heathenneft, 55  
 None hath foe much gold as he."

& then befpace him noble K: Arthur,  
 Thefe were the words faves hee,  
 " I have 2 poore rings of my finger,  
 The better of them Ile give thee, 60  
 If thou wilt greete him well, Cornewall K:  
 & greete him well from me.

Pray him for one nights lodging, & 2 meales meate,  
 For his love that dyed uppon a tree ;  
 A bue<sup>2</sup> ghefting, & 2 meales meate, 65  
 For his love that dyed uppon a tree.

A bue<sup>2</sup> ghefting, &<sup>3</sup> 2 meales meate,  
 For his love that was of virgin borne,

<sup>1</sup> they, *MS.*

<sup>2</sup> *Sic, MS.*

<sup>3</sup> of, *MS.*



& in the morning y<sup>t</sup> we may scape away,  
 Either w<sup>th</sup>out scath or scorne.”

70

Then forth is<sup>1</sup> gone this proud porter,  
 As fast as he cold hye ;  
 & when he came befor Cornewall K:  
 He kneeled downe on his knee.

Sayes, “ I have beene porter, man, at thy gate,

75

[*Half a page is wanting.*]

p. 26.] . . . . . our Lady was borne,  
 Then thought Cornewall K: thefe palmers had beene in Britt.

Then befpake him Cornewall King,  
 Thefe were the words he faid there ;  
 “ Did yo<sup>n</sup> ever know a comely K:  
 His name was King Arthur?”

80

& then befpake him noble K: Arthur,  
 Thefe were the words faid hee ;  
 “ I doe not know that comly K :  
 But once my felfe I did him fee.”  
 Then befpake Cornwall K: againe,  
 Thefe were the words faid he.

85

Sayes, “ 7 yeere I was clad & fed,  
 In Litle Brittain, in a bower ;

<sup>1</sup> his, *MS.*

I had a daughter by K: Arthurs wife, 90  
 It now is called my flower ;  
 For K: Arthur, that kindly cockward,  
 Hath none fuch in his bower.

For I durst fweare, and fave my othe,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> fame lady foe bright, 95  
 That a man y<sup>t</sup> were laid on his death-bed,  
 Wold open his eyes on her to have fight."  
 "Now, by my faith," faves noble K: Arthur,  
 "& thats a full faire wight!"

& then befpoke Cornewall [King] againe, 100  
 & thefe were the words he faid<sup>1</sup>,  
 "Come hither, 5 or 3 of my knights,  
 & feitch me downe my steed ;  
 King Arthur, that foule cockeward,  
 Hath none fuch, if he had need. 105

For I can ryde him as far on a day,  
 As King Arthur can doe any of his on 3.  
 & is it not a pleafure for a K:  
 When he fhall ryde forth on his journey ?

For the eyes that beene in his head, 110  
 They<sup>2</sup> glifter as doth the gleed ;"—  
 "Now, by my faith," fays noble King Arthur,

[*Half a page is wanting.*]

[p. 27.] No body . . . . .  
 But one y<sup>ts</sup> learned to fpeake.

<sup>1</sup> faid he, *MS.*

<sup>2</sup> the, *MS.*

Then K: Arthur to his bed was brought, 115  
 A greeived man was hee ;  
 & foe were all his fellowes w<sup>th</sup> him,  
 From him they<sup>1</sup> thought never to flee.

Then take they did that lodly boome<sup>2</sup>,  
 & under thrubchandler<sup>3</sup> clofed was hee ; 120  
 & he was fet by K: Arthurs bed-fide,  
 To heere their talke, & their com'nye.

Y<sup>t</sup> he might come forth, & make proclamation,  
 Long before it was day ;  
 It was more for K: Cornwalls pleafure, 125  
 Then it was for K: Arthurs pay.

& when K: Arthur on his bed was laid,  
 These were the words said hee ;  
 " Ile make mine avow to God,  
 & alfoe to the Trinity, 130  
 That Ile be the bane of Cornwall kinge  
 Litle Brittain or ever I fee !"

" It is an unadvifed vow," faies Gawaine the gay,  
 " As ever K: hard make I ;  
 But wee y<sup>t</sup> beene 5 chriftian men, 135  
 Of the chriften faith are wee ;  
 & we fhall fight againft anynted K:  
 & all his armorie."

& then he fpake him noble Arthur,  
 & these were the words said he ; 140  
 " Why, if thou be afraid, S<sup>r</sup> Gawaine the gay,  
 Goe home, & drinke wine in thine owne country."

<sup>1</sup> the, *MS.*<sup>2</sup> goome ?<sup>3</sup> thrubchadler, *MS.*

## THE 3d. PARTE.

And then bespake Sr Gawaine the gay,  
 And these were the words said hee ;  
 “ Nay, feeling yo<sup>u</sup> have made such a hearty vow,  
 Heere another vow make will I. 145

Ile make mine avow to God,  
 & alsoe to the Trinity ;  
 Y<sup>t</sup> I will have yonder faire lady,  
 To Litle Brittain w<sup>th</sup> mee. 150

Ile hose her hourly to my hurt<sup>1</sup>,  
 & w<sup>th</sup> her Ile worke my will ;

[*Half a page is wanting.*]

[p. 28.] These were the words sayd hee ;  
 “ Befor I wold wrestle w<sup>th</sup> yonder feend,  
 It is better be drowned in the sea.” 155

And then bespake Sr Bredbeddle,  
 & these were the words said he;  
 “ Why, I will wrestle w<sup>th</sup> yon lodly feend,  
 God ! my governor thou fhalt bee.”

<sup>1</sup> hart ?

2 o

Then befroke him noble Arthur, 160  
 & these were the<sup>1</sup> words said he ;  
 " What weapons wilt thou have, thou gentle knight,  
 I pray thee tell to me ?"

He says, " Collen brand Ile have in my hand,  
 & a Millaine knife fast be my knee ; 165  
 & a Danish axe fast in my hands,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> a fure weapon I thinke wilbe."

Then w<sup>th</sup> his Collen brand, y<sup>t</sup> he had in his hand,  
 The bunge of the trubchandler he burft in 3.  
 W<sup>t</sup> that start out a lodly feend, 170  
 W<sup>th</sup> 7 heads, & one body.

The fyer towards the element flew,  
 Out of his mouth, where was great plentie ;  
 The knight stode in the middle, & fought,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> it was great joy to see. 175

Till his Collaine brand brake in his hand,  
 & his Millaine knife burft on his knee ;  
 & then the Danishe axe burft in his hand first,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> a fure<sup>2</sup> weapon he thought shold be.

But now is the knight left w<sup>th</sup>out any weapone, 180  
 & alacke ! it was the more pittie ;  
 But a furer weapon then had he one,  
 Had never L: in Chriftentye.  
 & all was but one litle booke,  
 He found it by the side of the fea. 185

He found it at the fea-side,  
 Wrucked upp in a floode ;

<sup>1</sup> they, *MS.*

<sup>2</sup> fur, *MS.*

Our L: had written it w<sup>th</sup> his hands,  
& fealed it w<sup>th</sup> his bloode.

[*Half a page is wanting.*]

- [p. 29.]    "That thou doe . . . . . 190  
               But ly still in that wall of stone;  
               Till I have beene w<sup>th</sup> noble K: Arthur,  
               & told him what I have done."
- And when he came to the K<sup>s</sup> chamber,  
               He cold of his curtefie; 195  
               Sayes<sup>1</sup>, "fleep yo<sup>u</sup>, wake yo<sup>u</sup>, noble K: Arthur?  
               & ever Jefus watch yee!"
- "Nay, I am not fleeping, I am waking,"  
               These were the words faid hee;  
               "For thee I have card, how haft thou fared, 200  
               O! gentle knight, let me fee."
- The knight wrought the K: his booke,  
               Bad him behold, reede, & fee;  
               & ever he found it on the backside of the leafe,  
               As noble Arthur wold wifh it to be. 205
- & then befpace him K: Arthur,  
               "Alas! thou gentle knight, how may this be,  
               That I might fee him in the fame lickneffe,  
               Y<sup>t</sup> he ftood unto thee?"

<sup>1</sup> Saye, *MS.*

& then bespake him the Greene Knight, 210  
 These were the words said hee ;  
 " If youle stand stify in the battell stronge,  
 For I have won all the victory."

Then bespake him the K: againe,  
 & these were the words said hee ; 215  
 " If we stand not stify in this battell strong,  
 Wee are worthy to be hanged all on a tree."

Then bespake him the Greene Knight,  
 These were the words said he ;  
 Saies, " I doe coniure thee, thou fowle feend, 220  
 In the same lickneffe thou stood unto me."

W<sup>th</sup> that start out a lodly feend,  
 W<sup>th</sup> 7 heads, & one body ;  
 The fier towarde the element flaugh,  
 Out of his mouth, where was great plenty. 225

The knight stood in the middle . . . . .

[*Half a page is wanting.*]

[p.30.] . . . . . the space of an houre,  
 I know not what they did.

And then bespake him the Greene Knight,  
 & these were the words said he ; 230  
 Saith, " I coniure thee, thou fowle feend,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> thou feitch downe the steed y<sup>t</sup> we see."

& then forth is gone Burlow-beanie,  
 As faft as he cold hie ;  
 & feitch he did that faire fteed, 235  
 & came againe by & by.

Then befpace him S<sup>r</sup> Marramile,  
 & thefe were the words faid hee ;  
 “ Riding of this fteed, brother Bredbeddle,  
 The maftery belongs to me.” 240

Marramiles tooke the fteed to his hand,  
 To ryd him he was full bold ;  
 He cold noe more make him goe,  
 Then a child of 3 yeere old.

He faid<sup>1</sup> uppon him w<sup>th</sup> heele & hand, 245  
 W<sup>th</sup> yard that was foe fell ;  
 “ Helpe ! brother Bredbeddle,” fays Marramile,  
 “ For I thinke he be the devill of hell.”

“ Helpe ! brother Bredbeddle,” fays Marramile,  
 “ Helpe ! for Chrifts pittye ; 250  
 For w<sup>th</sup>out thy help, brother Bredbeddle,  
 He will never be rydden for<sup>2</sup> me.”

Then befpace him S<sup>r</sup> Bredbeddle,  
 Thefe were the words faid he ;  
 “ I coniure thee, thou Burlow-beane<sup>3</sup>, 255  
 Thou tell me how this fteed was riddin in his country.”  
 He faith, “ there is a gold wand,  
 Stands in K: Cornwalls fudy windowe.

<sup>1</sup> fayed, *i. e.* efsayed ?

<sup>2</sup> p', *i. e.* pro or per, *MS.*

<sup>3</sup> leane, *MS.*



Let him take that wand in y<sup>t</sup> window,  
 & strike 3 strokes on that feed;  
 & then he will spring forth of his hand,  
 As sparke doth out of gleede.”

260

Then bespake him the Greene Knight,

[*Half a page is wanting.*]

[p. 31.] A lowd blaft . . . . .

& then bespake S<sup>r</sup> Bredbeddle,  
 To the feend these words said hee;  
 Says, “I coniure thee, thou Burlow-beanie,  
 The powder-box thou feitch me.”

265

Then forth is gone Burlow-beanie,  
 As fast as he cold hie;  
 & feich he did the powder-box,  
 & came againe by & by.

270

Then S<sup>r</sup> Tristeram tooke powder forth of y<sup>t</sup> box,  
 & blent it with warme sweet milke;  
 & there put it unto the horne,  
 & fwilled it about in that ilke.

275

Then he tooke the horne in his hand,  
 & a lowd blaft he blew;  
 He rent the horne up to the midft,  
 All his fellowes this they<sup>1</sup> knew.

280

<sup>1</sup> the, *MS.*

Then bespake him the Greene Knight,  
 These were the words said he ;  
 Saies, " I coniure thee, thou Burlow-beanie,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> thou feitch me the fword that I see."

Then forth is gone Burlow-beanie, 285  
 As fast as he cold hie ;  
 & feitch he did that faire fword,  
 & came againe by & by.

Then bespake him S<sup>r</sup> Bredbeddle, 290  
 To the K : these words said he ;  
 " Take this fword in thy hand, thou noble K :  
 For the vowes sake y<sup>t</sup> thou made Ile give it thee ;  
 And goe strike off K : Cornwalls head,  
 In bed where<sup>1</sup> he doth lye."

Then forth is gone noble K : Arthur, 295  
 As fast as he cold hye ;  
 & stricken he hath K : Cornwalls head,  
 & came againe by & by.

He put the head upon a fwords point,

[*The poem terminates here abruptly.*]

were, *MS.*

## Fragment of the Marriage of Sir Gawaine.

---

[MS. Percy, p. 46.] **K** INGE Arthur liues in merry Carleile,  
And feemely is to see ;  
And there he hath w<sup>th</sup> him Queene Genev<sup>r</sup>,  
Y<sup>t</sup> bride fo bright of blee.

And there he hath w<sup>th</sup> him Queene Genever, 5  
Y<sup>t</sup> bride foe bright in bower ;  
& all his barons about him stooode,  
Y<sup>t</sup> were both stiffe & stowre.

The K. kept a royall Christmaffe,  
Of mirth & great honor ; 10  
... when .....

[*About nine stanzas wanting.*]

[p 47.] “And bring me word what thing it is,  
Y<sup>t</sup> women<sup>1</sup> most desire ;  
This shalbe thy ransome, Arthur,” he sayes,  
“For Ile haue noe other hier.” 15

<sup>1</sup> Y<sup>e</sup> a woman, *MS.*

K. Arthur then held vp his hands,  
According thene as was the law ;  
He tooke his leaue of baron there,  
And homword can he draw.

And when he came to merry Carlile, 20  
To his chamber he is gone ;  
And ther came to him his cozen, Sr Gawaine,  
As he did make his mone.

And there came to him his cozen Sr Gawaine<sup>1</sup>,  
Yt was a curteous knight ; 25  
“ Why figh yo<sup>n</sup> foe fore, vnckle Arthur ?” he said,  
“ Or who hath done thee vnright ?”

“ O peace ! o peace ! thou gentle Gawaine,  
Yt faire may thee be-fall ;  
For if thou knew my fighing foe deepe, 30  
Thou wold not meruaile att all.

For when I came to Tearne-wadling,  
A bold barron there I fand ;  
W<sup>th</sup> a great club vpon his backe,  
Standing stiffe & strong. 35

And he asked me wether I wold fight,  
Or from him I fhold be gone ;  
Or<sup>2</sup> else I muft him a ranfome pay,  
& foe dept him from.

To fight w<sup>th</sup> him I faw noe caufe, 40  
Me thought it was not meet ;  
For he was stiffe & strong w<sup>th</sup> all,  
His ftrokes were nothing fweete.

<sup>1</sup> Cawaine, *MS.*

<sup>2</sup> O, *MS.*

Therfor this is my ranfome, Gawaine,  
I ought to him to pay ;  
I muſt come againe, as I am fworne,  
Vpon the Newyeers day.

And I muft bring him word what thing it is

[About nine stanzas wanting.]

[p. 48.]      Then King Arthur dreft him for to ryde,  
                 In one foe riche array ;  
Toward the forefaid Tearne-wadling,  
                 Y<sup>t</sup> he might keepe his day.

And as he rode over a more,  
Hee see a lady, where shee fate ;  
Betwixt an oke and a greene hollen,  
She was cladd in red scarlett.

Then there as fhould have ftood her mouth,  
Then there was fett her eye ;  
The other was in her forhead faft,  
The way that fhe might fee.

Her nose was crooked, and turnd outward,  
Her mouth stood foule a-wry ;  
A worfe formed lady then shee was,  
Neuer man saw w<sup>th</sup> his eye.

To halch vpon him, K. Arthur,  
This lady was full faine ;  
But K. Arthur had forgott his leffon,  
What he fhould fay againe.

“What knight art thou?” the lady sayd,  
 “That wilt not speake to me?” 70  
 Of me [be] thou nothing difmayd,  
 Tho I be vgly to fee.

For I haue halched yo<sup>u</sup> curteouflye,  
 & yo<sup>u</sup> will not me againe;  
 Yett I may happen, S<sup>r</sup> Knight,” fhee said, 75  
 “To ease thee of thy paine.”

“Giue thou ease me, lady,” he said,  
 “Or helpe me any thing,  
 Thou shalt haue gentle Gawaine, my cozen,  
 & marry him w<sup>th</sup> a ring.” 80

“Why if I helpe thee not, thou noble K. Arthur,  
 Of thy owne hearts defiringe,  
 Of gentle Gawaine . . . . .

[*About nine stanzas wanting.*]

[p. 49.] And when he came to the Tearne-wadling,  
 The baron there cold he finde<sup>1</sup>; 85  
 W<sup>th</sup> a great weapon on his backe,  
 Standing stiffe & stronge.

And then he tooke K. Arthurs letters in his hands,  
 & away he cold them fling;  
 & then he puld out a good browne fword, 90  
 & cryd himfelfe a K.

<sup>1</sup> frinde, *MS.*

And he fayd, " I haue thee, & thy land, Arthur,  
     To doe as it pleaseth me ;  
 For this is not thy ranfome fure,  
 " Therefore yeeld thee to me."

95

And then befpoke him noble Arthur,  
     & bad him hold his hands ;  
 " & give me leave to fpeake my mind,  
     In defence of all my land."

He<sup>1</sup> faid, " as I came over a more,  
     I fee a lady where fhee fate ;  
 Betweene an oke & a green hollen,  
     She was clad in red fcarlette.

100

And fhe fays a woman will haue her will,  
     & this is all her cheef defire ;  
 Doe me right, as thou art a baron of fckill,  
     This is thy ranfome, & all thy hyer."

105

He fayes, " an early vengeance light on her !  
     She walkes on yonder more ;  
 It was my fifter, that told thee this,  
     She is a miſfhappen hore.

110

But heer Ile make mine avow to god,  
     To do her an euill turne ;  
 For an euer I may thate fowle theefe get,  
     In a fyer I will her burne."

115

[*About nine stanzas wanting.*]

<sup>1</sup> The, *MS.*

THE 2d. PART.

[p. 50.] Sir Lancelott, & Sr Steven, bold,  
 They rode w<sup>th</sup> them that day ;  
 And the formost of the company,  
 There rode the steward Kay.

Soe did Sr Banier, & Sr Bore, 120  
 Sr Garrett w<sup>th</sup> them, foe gay ;  
 Soe did Sr Trifteram, y<sup>t</sup> gentle k<sup>t</sup>,  
 To the forrest, fresh & gay.

And when he came to the greene forrest,  
 Vnderneath a greene holly tree ; 125  
 Their fate that lady in red fcarlet,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> vnseemly was to fee.

Sr Kay beheld this ladys face,  
 & looked vpon her fuire ;—  
 “ Whosoeuer kiffes this lady,” he fayer, 130  
 “ Of his kiffe he stands in feare !”

Sr Kay beheld the lady againe,  
 & looked vpon her snout ;  
 “ Whosoeuer kiffes this lady,” he faies,  
 “ Of his kiffe he stands in doubt !” 135

“ Peace, coz. Kay,” then said Sr Gawaine,  
 “ Amend thee of thy life ;  
 For there is a knight amongst us all,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> must marry her to his wife.”



"What! wedd her to wiffe," then f<sup>d</sup> Sr Kay, 140  
 "In the diuells name anon ;  
 Gett me a wiffe where ere I may,  
 For I had rather be flaine !"

Then some<sup>1</sup> tooke vp their hawkes in haft,  
 & some tooke vp their hounds ; 145  
 & some fware they wold not marry her,  
 For citty nor for towne.

And then be-spake him noble K. Arthur,  
 & fware there, "by this day,  
 For a litle foule fight & mifliking, 150

[*About nine stanzas wanting.*]

[p. 51.] Then fhee faid, "choofe thee, gentle Gawaine,  
 Truth as I doe fay ;  
 Wether thou wilt haue me in this likneffe,  
 In the night, or elfe in the day."

And then befpace him gentle Gawaine, 155  
 W<sup>th</sup> one foe mild of moode ;  
 Sayes, "well I know what I wold fay,  
 God grant it may be good !

To haue thee fowle in the night,  
 When I w<sup>th</sup> thee fhold play ; 160  
 Yet I had rather if I might,  
 Haue thee fowle in the day."

<sup>1</sup> foome, *MS.*

“ What, when Lords goe w<sup>th</sup> ther feires<sup>1</sup>,” fhee faid,  
 “ Both to the ale & wine ;  
 Alas ! then I muft hyde my felfe, 165  
 I muft not goe withinne.”

And then befpace him gentle Gawaine,  
 Said, “ lady, thats but a fkill ;  
 And becaufe thou art my owne lady,  
 Thou fhalt haue all thy will.” 170

Then fhee faid, “ bleffed<sup>2</sup> be thou, gentle Gawaine,  
 This day y<sup>t</sup> I thee fee ;  
 For as thou fee me att this time,  
 From henceforth<sup>3</sup> I wilbe.

My father was an old knight, 175  
 & yett it chanced foe ;  
 That he marryed a younge lady,  
 Y<sup>t</sup> brought me to this woe.

She witched me, being a faire young lady,  
 To the greene forreft to dwell ; 180  
 & there I muft walke in womans likneffe,  
 Moft like a feeind of hell.

She witched my brother to a Carlift B . . . .

[*About nine stanzas wanting.*]

[p. 52.] That looked foe foule, & that was wont,  
 On the wild more to goe. 185

<sup>1</sup> feires, *MS.*

<sup>2</sup> blefed, *MS.*

<sup>3</sup> hencforth, *MS.*

“ Come kiffe her, brother Kay,” then said Sr Gawaine,  
     “ & amend thee<sup>1</sup> of thy liffe ;  
 I fweare this is the fame lady  
     Y<sup>t</sup> I marryed to my wiffe.”

Sr Kay kiffed that lady bright, 190  
     Standing vpon his feete ;  
 He fayes, as he was trew knight,  
     The spice was neuer foe fweete.

“ Well, coz. Gawaine,” faies Sr Kay, 195  
     “ Thy chance is fallen arright ;  
 For thou haft gotten one of the faireft maids,  
     I euer faw w<sup>th</sup> my fight.”

“ It is my fortune,” faid Sr Gawaine,  
     “ For my vnckle Arthurs fake ;  
 I am glad as graffe wold be of rain, 200  
     Great joy that I may take.”

Sr Gawaine tooke the lady by the one arme,  
     Sr Kay tooke her by the tother ;  
 They led her ftraight to K. Arthur,  
     As they were brother & brother. 205

K. Arthur welcomed them there all,  
     & foe did lady Geneuer, his queene ;  
 W<sup>th</sup> all the knights of the Round Table,  
     Moft feemly to be feene.

K. Arthur beheld that lady faire, 210  
     That was foe faire & bright ;  
 He thanked Chrift in Trinity,  
     For Sr Gawaine, that gentle knight.

<sup>1</sup> the, *MS.*

Soe did the knights, both more and leffe,

Reioyced all that day ;

215

For the good chance y<sup>t</sup> hapened was,

To Sr Gawaine & his lady gay.

FINIS.

# The weddynge of S<sup>r</sup> Galwen & Dame Ragnell.

[MS. Raw-  
linson, C.86,  
fol. 128<sup>b</sup>.]

**L**YTHE<sup>1</sup> and' listenyth the lif' of a lord' riche,  
The while that he lyvid' was none hym lichē,  
Nether in bowre ne in halle;—  
In the tyme of Arthour<sup>9</sup> thys adventure betyd,—  
And' of the greatt adventure that he hym self dyd',  
That kyng curteys & royall.  
Of alle kyngē Arture beryth the flowyr,  
And' of alle knyghtod' he bare away the hono<sup>r</sup>,  
Where soe<sup>l</sup> he wentt;  
In hys contrey was no thyng butt chyvalry,  
And' knyghtē were belovid' [by] that doughty,  
For cowardē were eumore shēnt.  
Nowe wyll ye lyft a whyle to my talkyng,  
I shaft you tell of Arthowre the kyng,  
Howe ones hym befett;  
Ofi huntynge he was in Inglefwod',  
With alle his bold' knyghtē good',—  
Nowe herkeñ to my speñ.  
The kyng was sett att his trestyfl-tree,  
With his bowe to fle the wylde ven<sup>9</sup>e,  
And' hys lordē were sett hym befyde;  
As the kyng stode, then was he ware,  
Where a greatt hartt was and' a fayre,

5

10

15

20

<sup>1</sup> Klythe, MS.

And' forth fast dyd' he glyde.  
 The hartt was in a braken ferne,  
 And' hard' the hounde, and' stode fust derne,  
 Alle that sawe the kyng;—  
 " Hold' you styff, eily man,  
 And' I wost goo my self, yf I cas,  
 With craft of stalkyng."

25

30

[fol. 129.] The kyng in hys hand' toke a bowe,  
 And' wodmanly he stowpyd' lowe,  
 To stalk' vnto that dere;  
 When that he cam the dere fust nere,  
 The dere lept forth into a brere,  
 And eu the kyng went nere & nere.  
 So kyng Arthure went a whyle,  
 After the dere, I trowe, half a myle,  
 And' no man with hym went;  
 And' att the last to the dere he lett flye,  
 And' smote hym fore and' fewerly,  
 Suche grace God' hym sent.  
 Douñ the dere tumblyd' so deron,  
 And' fell into a greatt brake of feron,  
 The kyng folowyd' fust fast;  
 Anon the kyng both ferce & fell  
 Was with the dere, and' dyd' hym fvest<sup>1</sup>,  
 And' after the graspe he taste.  
 As the kyng was with the dere alone,  
 Streyght ther ca to hym a quaynt grome,  
 Armyd' weft and' fure;  
 A knyght fust strong, and' of greatt myght,  
 And' grymly wordē to the kyng he sayd',—  
 " Weft i-mett, kyng Arthor!  
 Thou hast me done wrong many a yere,  
 And' wofully I shaft quytte the here,  
 I hold thy lyfe-days nygh done;

35

40

45

50

55

<sup>1</sup> ferre weft?

Thou haft gevyñ my lande, in certayñ,  
 With greatt wrong vnto þe Gaweñ,  
 Whate sayest thou, kyng alone?"

60

"Syr knyght, whate is thy name, with honor?"

"Syr kyng," he sayd, "Grom<sup>9</sup>fom<sup>9</sup> Jour<sup>9</sup>,

I tell the nowe with ryght."—

"A, þe Grom<sup>9</sup>fom<sup>9</sup>, bethynk<sup>9</sup> the well,

To fle me here honor getyft thou no deff,

65

[fol. 129<sup>b</sup>.] Be-bethynk<sup>9</sup> the thou artt a knyght.

Yf thou fle me nowe in thys case,

Alle knyghte woff refuse the in euery place,

That fhame fhalt neu<sup>9</sup> the froo;

Lett be thy wyff, and folowe wytt,

70

And<sup>9</sup> that is amys I fhalt amend<sup>9</sup> itt,

And<sup>9</sup> thou wolt, or that I goo."

"Nay," sayd<sup>9</sup> þe Grom<sup>9</sup>fom<sup>9</sup>, "by heuyn kyng!

So fhalt thou nott fkafe, withoute lefyng,

I haue the nowe att awayff;

75

Yf I fhold<sup>9</sup> lett the thus goo with mokery,

Anoder tyme thou wolt me defye,

Of that I fhalt nott fayff."

Now sayd<sup>9</sup> the kyng, "fo God<sup>9</sup> me faue,

Save my lyfe, and<sup>9</sup> whate thou wolt craue

80

I fhalt now graunt itt the;

Shame thou fhalt haue to fle me in ven<sup>9</sup>e,

Thou armyd<sup>9</sup>, and I clothyd<sup>9</sup> butt in grene, þe.

"Alle thys fhalt nott help the, fekyrly,

For I woff nother lond<sup>9</sup> ne gold<sup>9</sup> truly,

85

Butt yf thou graunt me att a certayñ day,

Suche as I fhalt fett, and<sup>9</sup> in thys fame araye."

"Yes," sayd<sup>9</sup> the kyng, "lo! here my hand<sup>9</sup>."

"Ye, butt a-byde, kyng, and<sup>9</sup> here me a ffound<sup>9</sup>.

Fyrft thou fhalt fwere, vpon my fword<sup>9</sup> brouñ,

90

To fhewe me att thy cōmyng whate wemeñ love beft in feld<sup>9</sup> and<sup>9</sup>

And<sup>9</sup> thou fhalt mete me here, with outeñ fend<sup>9</sup>,

[toweñ;

Evyñ att this day xij. monethes end<sup>9</sup>;

And' thou shalt fwere vpon my fwerd' good',  
 That of thy knyghte shalt none com w<sup>t</sup> the, by the rood', 95  
 Nowther frende<sup>1</sup> ne freynd'.

And' yf thou bryng nott answere, with oute sayff,  
 Thyne hed' thou shalt lose for thy travayff,—

[fol. \*129.] Thys shalt now be thyne oth.

Whate sayst thou, kyng, lett se, haue done."— 100

"Syr, I graunt to thys, now lett me gone,  
 Though itt be to me full loth.

I ensure the, as I am true kyng,  
 To com agayn att thys xij. monethes end',  
 And' bryng the thyne answere."— 105

"Now go thy way, kyng Arthure,  
 Thy lyfe is in my hand' I am full sure,  
 Of thy sorowe thou artt nott ware.  
 Abyde, kyng Arthure, a lytell whyle,  
 Loke nott to day thou me begyle, 110

And' kepe alle thyng in close;  
 For and' I wyft, by Mary mylde,  
 Thou woldyst betray me in the feld',  
 Thy lyf' fyrst sholdyst thou lose."

"Nay," sayd' kyng Arthure, "that may nott be,  
 Vntrewe knyght shalt thou neu<sup>1</sup> fynde me,  
 To dye yett were me lever;

Farwell, & knyght, and' evyff mett,  
 I wold com, and' I be on lyve, att the day sett,  
 Though I shold' scape neu<sup>1</sup>." 120

The kyng his bugle gan blowe,  
 That hard' evy knyght, and' itt gan knowe;  
 Vnto hyf can they rake;

Ther they fond' the kyng and' the dere,  
 With sembland' fad' and' hevy chere, 125  
 That had' no lust to layk'.

"Go we home now to Carlyff,

<sup>1</sup> fremde?



Thys huntynge lykys me nott weſt,"—  
 So ſayd' kyng Arthure;  
 Alle the lordes knewe by his countenance,  
 [fol.\*129b.] That the kyng had' mett with ſume dyſturbaunce. 130  
 Vnto Carlyſt then the kyng cam,  
 Butt of his hevynesse knewe no man,  
 His hartt was wonder hevye;  
 In this hevynesse he dyd' a-byde, 135  
 That many of his knyghtes m'velyd' that tyde.  
 Tyft att the laſt f Gawen  
 To the kyng he ſayd' than,  
 "Syr, me marvaylyth ryght fore,  
 Whate thyng that thou ſorowyſt fore." 140  
 Then anſweryd' the kyng as tyght,  
 "I ſhaſt the teſt, gentyft Gawen knyght.  
 In the foreſt as I was this daye,  
 Ther I mett with a knyght in his araye, 145  
 And' ſteyn wordes to me he gan ſayn,  
 And' chargyd' me I ſhold' hym nott bewrayne;  
 His counceſſ muſt I kepe therfore,  
 Or els I am forſwore."  
 "Nay, drede you nott, lord', by Mary flower', 150  
 I am nott that man that wold' you diſhono',  
 Nother by euyñ ne by moron'."—  
 "Forsoth I was on huntynge in Ingleſwod',  
 Thowe knoweſt weſt I flewe an hartt, by the rode,  
 Alle my fylf alon; 155  
 Ther mett I with a knyght armyd' fure,  
 His name he told' me was f Grom' ſom' Joure,  
 Therfor I make my mone.  
 Ther that knyght faſt dyd' me threte,  
 And' wold' haue flayn me with greatt heatt, 160  
 But I ſpak' fayre agayn;  
 Wepyns with me ther had' I none,  
 Alas! my worſhypp' therfor is nowe gone."—  
 "What therof?" ſayd' Gawen.

"What nedys more, I shaff nott lye, 165  
 He wold' haue flayn me ther with oute m<sup>o</sup>cy,  
 fol. 130.] And' that me was full loth;  
 He made me to fwere that att the xij. monethes end',  
 That I fhold' mete hym ther in the same kynde,  
 To that I plyght my trowith. 170  
 And' also I fhold' tell hym att the same day,  
 Whate wemen desyreñ moſte, in good faye,  
 My lyf' els fhold' I leſe<sup>1</sup>;  
 This oth I made vnto that knyght,  
 And' that I fhold' neu tell itt to no wight, 175  
 Of thys I myght nott cheſe.  
 And' also I fhold' coñ in none oder araye,  
 But euyñ as I was the same daye;  
 And' yf I faylyd' of myne anſwere,  
 I wott I ſhal be flayn ryght there. 180  
 Blame me nott though I be a wofull mañ,  
 Alle thys is my drede and' fere."  
 "Ye, &, make good' chere,—  
 Lett make yo<sup>r</sup> hors redy,  
 To ryde into ſtraunge contrey; 185  
 And' eu wher as ye mete owther mañ or womañ, in faye,  
 Ask' of theyñ whate thay therto ſaye.  
 And' I ſhañ also ryde a noder waye,  
 And' enquire of euy mañ and' womañ, and' gett whatt I may,  
 Of euy mañ and' womans anſwere, 190  
 And' in a boke I ſhañ theyñ wryte."  
 "I graunt," ſayd' the kyng, as tyte,  
 "Ytt is weñ advyſed, Gaweñ the good',  
 Euyñ by the holy rood'!"—  
 Sone were they<sup>2</sup> both redy, 195  
 Gaweñ and' the kyng, wytterly.  
 The kyng rode oñ way, and' Gaweñ anoder,  
 And eu enquyred' of mañ, womañ, and' other,

<sup>1</sup> leve, *MS.*<sup>2</sup> the, *MS.*

Whate wemen defyred' moſte dere.  
 Somme fayd' they lovyd' to be weſt arayd', 200  
 Somme fayd' they lovyd' to be fayre prayed';  
 [fol. 130b.] Somme fayd' they lovyd' a luſty mañ,  
 That in theyr armys cañ clypp' them and' kyſſe them thañ;  
 Somme fayd' one, ſomme fayd' other,  
 And' ſo had' Gawen' getyn' many añ anſwer'. 205  
 By that Gawen' had' geten' whate he maye,  
 And' come agayn by a certeyn daye;  
 Syr Gawen' had' goten' anſwerys ſo many,  
 That had' made a boke greatt, wytterly,  
 To the courte he cañ agayn; 210  
 By that was the kyng cōmyñ with hys boke,  
 And' eyther oñ others pamplett dyd' loke,—  
 "Thys may nott fayd'<sup>1</sup>," fayd' Gawen'.  
 "By God'," fayd' the kyng, "I drede me fore,  
 I caſt me to ſeke a lyteſt more, 215  
 In Yngleſwod' Foreſt;  
 I haue butt a moneth to my day ſett,  
 I may hapeñ oñ ſomme good' tydyngē to hytt,  
 Thys thynkyth me nowe beſt."  
 "Do as ye lyft," then Gawen' fayd', 220  
 "What ſo eñ ye do I hold' me payd',  
 Hytt is good' to be ſpyrryng;  
 Doute you nott, lord', ye ſhañ weſt ſpede,  
 Sūme of yo' ſawes ſhañ help att nede,  
 Els itt were yñ lykyng." 225  
 Kyng Arthoure rode forth oñ the other day,  
 In to Yngleſwod' as hys gate laye,  
 And' ther he mett with a lady;  
 She was as vngoodly a creature,  
 As eñ mañ ſawe, withoute meſure, 230  
 Kyng Arthure m<sup>o</sup>vaylyd' ſecurly.  
 Her face was red', her noſe ſnotyd' withañ,

<sup>1</sup> faylle?

Her mowith wyde, her teth yalowe ou<sup>i</sup> aſt,  
 With bleryd' eyeñ gretter theñ a baſt,  
 Her mowith was nott to lak' ; 235  
 [fol. 131.] Her teth hyng ou<sup>i</sup> her<sup>1</sup> lyppel,  
 Her chekys fyde as wemens hyppel,  
 A lute ſhe bare vpon her bak'.  
 Her nek' long and' therto greatt,  
 Her here cloteryd on añ hepe, 240  
 In the ſholders ſhe was a yard' brode,  
 Hangyng pappys to be añ hors-lode,  
 And' lyke a bareñ ſhe was made ;  
 And' to reherſe the fowlneſſe of that lady,  
 Ther is no tung may teſt, ſecurly, 245  
 Of lothlyneſſe inowgh ſhe had'.  
 She ſatt on a palfray was gay begoñ,  
 With gold beſett, and many a precious ſtone,  
 Ther was añ vnſemely fyghit ;  
 So fowit a creature, with oute meſure, 250  
 To ryde ſo gayly, I you enſure,  
 Ytt was no reaſon ne ryght.  
 She rode to Arthoure, and thus ſhe ſayd',  
 " God' ſpede, kyng, I am weſt payd',  
 That I haue with the mett ; 255  
 Speke with me, I rede, or thou goo,  
 For thy lyfe is in my hand', I warñ the ſoo,  
 That ſhalt thou fynde, and' I itt nott lett."  
 " Why, what wold' ye, lady, nowe with me ?"  
 " Syr, I wold' fayñ nowe ſpeke with the, 260  
 And teſt the tydyngel good' ;  
 For alle the anſwerys that thou canſt yelpe,  
 None of theym alle ſhañ the helpe,  
 That ſhalt thou knowe, by the rood' !  
 Thou wenyſt I knowe nott thy counceñt, 265  
 But I warñ the I knowe itt eu<sup>i</sup> deañ,

<sup>1</sup> he, *MS.*

Yf' I help the nott thou art butt dead';  
 Graunt me, & kyng, butt one thyng,  
 [fol. 131<sup>b</sup>.] And' for thy lyfe I make warrauntyng,  
 Or ellē thou shalt lofe thy hed'.<sup>270</sup>  
 "Whate meafi you, lady, tell me tyght,  
 For of thy wordē I haue great difpyte,  
 To you I haue no nede.  
 Whate is yo<sup>r</sup> defyre, fayre lady,  
 Lett me wete fhortly,<sup>275</sup>  
 Whate is yo<sup>r</sup> meanyng;  
 And' why my lyfe is in yo<sup>r</sup> hand',  
 Tell me, and' I shaft you warraunt,  
 Alle yo<sup>r</sup> ouñ afkyng?"  
 "For foth," fayd' the lady, "I añ no qued',<sup>280</sup>  
 Thou muft graunt me a knyght to wed',  
 His name is & Gawēñ;  
 And' fuche couenñt I woff make the,  
 Butt thorowe myne anfwere thy lyf' fauyd' be,  
 Ellē lett my defyre be in vayne.<sup>285</sup>  
 And' yf myne anfwere faue thy lyf',  
 Graunt me to be Gawens wyf',  
 Advyfe the nowe, & kyng;  
 For itt muft be fo, or thou artt butt dead',  
 Chofe nowe, for thou mayfte fone lofe thyne hed'.<sup>290</sup>  
 Tell me nowe in hying."  
 "Mary," fayd' the kyng, "I maye nott graunt the,  
 To make warrant & Gawēñ to wed' the,  
 Alle lyeth in hym aloñ;  
 Butt and' itt be fo, I woff do my labor,<sup>295</sup>  
 In favyng of my lyfe to make itt seco<sup>r</sup>,  
 To Gawēñ woff I make my mone."  
 "Well," fayd' ſhe, "nowe go home agayñ,  
 And' fayre wordē ſpeke to & Gawēñ,  
 For thy lyf' I may faue;<sup>300</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In the MS. part of the previous line is carelessly repeated.

Though I be foult, yett aȝ I gaye,  
 Thourgh me thy lyfe faue he maye,  
 Or fewer thy deth to haue."  
 "Alas!" he sayd, "now woo is me,  
 That I fhold' cause Gaweñ to wed' the, 305  
 [fol. 132.] For he wol be loth to faye naye;  
 So foult a lady as ye ar nowe one  
 Sawe I neu' in my lyfe oñ ground' gone,  
 I nott whate I do may."  
 "No force, & kyng, though I be foult, 310  
 Choyse for a make hath aȝ owlt,  
 Thou getest of me no more;  
 Wheñ thou cōmyft agayñ to thyne answer,  
 Ryght in this place I shaft mete the here,  
 Or ellſ I wott thou artt lore<sup>1</sup>." 315  
 "Now fareweft," sayd' the kyng, "lady,  
 "Ye, &," she sayd, "ther is a byrd' meñ caſt aȝ owlt<sup>2</sup>,  
 And' yett a lady I am;"—  
 "Whate is yo<sup>r</sup> name, I pray you teſt me?"  
 "Syr kyng, I hight dame Ragneſt, truly, 320  
 That neu' yett begyld' mañ."  
 "Dame Ragneſt, nowe haue good' daye,"—  
 "Syr kyng, God' ſpede the oñ thy way,  
 Ryght here I shaft the mete."  
 Thus they departyd' fayre and' weſt, 325  
 The kyng full ſone com to Carlyſt,  
 And' his hartt hevy and' greatt.  
 The fyrſte mañ he mett was & Gaweñ,  
 That vnto the kyng thus gañ fayñ,  
 "Syr, howe haue ye ſped'?" 330  
 "Forſoth," sayd' the kyng, "neu' ſo yll,  
 Alas! I aȝ in poynt my ſelf to ſpyll,  
 For nedely I moſt be ded'."  
 "Nay," sayd' Gaweñ, "that may nott be,

<sup>1</sup> lore ſowlt, *MS.*<sup>2</sup> *Sic MS.*

I had' lever my felf be dead', fo mott I the, 335  
 Thys is itt tydand'."

"Gawen, I mett to day with the fowlyft lady  
 That eu I fawe, ftenly;  
 She fayd' to me my lyfe fhe wold' faue,  
 Butt fyrft fhe wold' the to husbond' haue; 340  
 Wherfor I aſn wo begon,  
 Thus in my hartt I make my mone."

[fol. 132<sup>b</sup>.] "Ys this aft?" then fayd' Gawen,  
 "I fhaſt wed' her and' wed' her agayn,  
 Thowgh fhe were a fend'; 345  
 Thowgh fhe were as foult as Belſabub,  
 Her fhaſt I wed', by the rood',  
 Or ellſ were not I yo<sup>r</sup> frende.  
 For ye ar my kyng with hono<sup>r</sup>,  
 And' haue worfhyppt me in many a ftowre, 350  
 Therfor fhaſt I nott lett;  
 To faue yo<sup>r</sup> lyfe, lord', itt were my parte,  
 Or I were<sup>1</sup> falſe and' a greatt coward',  
 And' my worfhypp' is the bett."

"I-wys, Gawen, I mett her in Inglyfwod', 355  
 She told' me her name, by the rode,  
 That itt was dame Ragneſſ;  
 She told' me butt I had' of her anfwere,  
 Ellſ alle my laboure is neu the nere,  
 Thus fhe gaſſ me teſt. 360  
 And butt yf her anſwer<sup>9</sup> help me weſt,  
 Ellſ lett her haue her defyre no dele,  
 This was her coven<sup>nt</sup>;  
 And' yf her anfwere help me, and' none other,  
 Then wold' fhe haue you, here is alle to-geder, 365  
 That made fhe warraunt."

"As for this," fayd' Gawen, "[it] fhaſt nott lett,  
 I woll wed' her at whate time ye woll fett,

<sup>1</sup> were I, *MS*.

I pray you make no care ;  
 For and' she were the moſte ſowlyſt wyght, 370  
 That eu' meñ myght ſe with ſyght,  
 For yo' loue I wot nott ſpare."  
 "Garam'cy, Gaweñ," theñ ſayd' kyng Arthor,  
 "Of alle knyghte thou bereſt the flowre,  
 That eu' yett I fond' ; 375  
 My worſhypp' and' my lyf' thou ſavyſt for eu',  
 Therefore my loue ſhaſt nott frome the dyſſevyr,  
 [fol. 133.] As I am kyng in lond'."  
 Theñ within v. or vj. days,  
 The kyng muſt nedys goo his ways, 380  
 To bere his anſwere ;  
 The kyng and' f' Gaweñ rode oute of touñ,  
 No mañ with theñ, butt they alone,  
 Neder ferre ne nere.  
 Wheñ the kyng was with in the Foreſt,— 385  
 "Syr Gaweñ, fareweſt, I muſt go weſt,  
 Thou ſhalt no furder goo ;"  
 "My lord', God' ſpede you oñ yo' jorney,  
 I wold' I ſhold' nowe ryde yo' way,  
 For to departe I aĩn ryght wo." 390  
 The kyng had' ryddeñ butt a while,  
 Lyteſt more theñ the ſpace of a myle,  
 Or he mett dame Ragneſt ;—  
 "A, f' kyng, ye arre nowe welcū here,  
 I wott ye ryde to bere yo' anſwere, 395  
 That wot' awayt' you no dele."  
 Nowe ſayd' the kyng, "ſith itt wot' none other be,  
 Tell me yo' anſwere nowe, and' my lyfe ſaue me,  
 Gaweñ ſhaſt you wed' ;  
 So he hath pmyſed' me my lyf' to ſaue, 400  
 And' yo' deſyre nowe ſhaſt ye haue,  
 Boti in bowre and' in bed'.  
 Therefore teſt me nowe alle in haſt,  
 Whate wot' help now att laſt,



Haue done, I may nott tary ;"— 405  
 "Syr," quod' dame Ragneſt, "nowe ſhalt thou knowe,  
 Whate wemeñ deſyreñ moſte, of high and' lowe,  
 Froñ this I woſt not varaye.  
 Summe meñ ſayñ, we deſyre to be fayre,  
 Alſo we deſyre to haue repayre, 410  
 Of diuſe ſtraunge meñ ;  
 Alſo we loue to haue luſt in bed',  
 [fol. 133<sup>b</sup>.] And' oſteñ we deſyre to wed',  
 Thus ye meñ nott keñ<sup>1</sup>.  
 Yett we deſyre a noder man<sup>9</sup> thyng, 415  
 To be holdeñ nott old', but freſſhe and' yong ;  
 With flatryng, and' glosyng, and' quaynt gyñ,  
 So ye meñ may vs wemeñ eñ wyñ,  
 Of whate ye woſt crave.  
 Ye goo full nyſe, I woſt nott lye, 420  
 Butt there is one thyng is alle oure fantaſye,  
 And' that nowe ſhaſt ye knowe ;  
 We deſyreñ of meñ, aboue alle man<sup>9</sup> thyng,  
 To haue the ſoueynte, w<sup>t</sup>oute leſyng,  
 Of alle, both hygh and' lowe. 425  
 For where we haue ſoueynte alle is ourys,  
 Though a knyght be neu<sup>1</sup> ſo ferys,  
 And' eñ the maſtry wyne ;  
 Of the moſte manlyeſt is oure deſyre,  
 To haue the ſoueynte of ſuche a fyre, 430  
 Suche is oure craſte and' gynne.  
 Therfore wend', & kyng, on thy way,  
 And' teſt that knyght, as I the ſaye,  
 That itt is as we deſyreñ moſte ;  
 He wol be wroth and' vnfought, 435  
 And' curſe her faſt, that itt the taught,  
 For his laboure is loſt.  
 Go forth, & kyng, and' hold' pmyſe,

<sup>1</sup> *Sic MS.*

For thy lyfe is fure nowe in alle wyfe,  
 That dare I weſt vndertake.” 440  
 The kyng rode forth a greatt fhake,  
 As faſt as he myght gate;  
 Thorowe myre, more, and’ fenne,  
 Where as the place was fygnyd’ and’ ſett theñ,  
 Evyñ there with ꝑ Grom’ he mett. 445  
 And’ ſterñ wordꝑ to the king he ſpak’ with that,—  
 “ Coñ of, ꝑ kyng, nowe lett fe,  
 Of thyne anfwere whate itt ſhal be,  
 For I am redy grathyd’.”  
 The kyng pullyd’ oute bokꝑ twayne,— 450  
 “ Syr, ther is myne anſwer’, I dare ſayñ,  
 For ſomme woſt help at nede.”  
 Syr Grom’ lokyd’ oñ theym eũchoñ,—  
 “ Nay, nay, ꝑ kyng, thou artt but a dead’ mañ,  
 Therfor nowe ſhalt thou blede.” 455  
 “ Abyde, ꝑ Grom’,” ſayd’ kyng Arthoure,  
 “ I haue one anfwere ſhalt make att<sup>1</sup> fure,” —  
 “ Lett fe,” theñ ſayd’ ꝑ Grom’;  
 “ Or els, ſo God’ me help as I the fay,  
 Thy detñ thou ſhalt haue w<sup>t</sup> large paye, 460  
 I teſt the nowe enſure.”  
 Now ſayd’ the kyng, “ I fe, as I geſſe,  
 In the is butt a lyteſt gentilneſſe,  
 By God’, that ay is helpand’!  
 Here is oure anfwere, and’ that is alle, 465  
 That wemeñ defyreñ moſte ſpeciatt,  
 Both of fre and’ bond’.  
 I ſaye no more, butt aboue al thyng  
 Wemeñ defyre ſouleynte, for that is theyr lykyng,  
 And’ that is ther moſt defyre; 470  
 To have the rewñ of the manlyeſt meñ,  
 And’ then ar they weſt, thus they me dyd’ keñ,

<sup>1</sup> ale, *MS.*

To rule the, Grom<sup>9</sup> fyre.”  
 “ And’ she that told’ the nowe, & Arthoure,  
 I pray to God’, I maye se her breñ on a fyre, 475  
 For that was my fuster dame Ragneß;  
 [fol. 134<sup>b</sup>.] That old’ scott, God’ geve her<sup>1</sup> shame!  
 Elle had’ I made the full tame,  
 Nowe haue I loſt moche travayß.  
 Go where thou wolt, kyng Arthoure, 480  
 For of me thou maiſte be eu<sup>1</sup> ſure,  
 Alas! that I eu<sup>1</sup> ſe this day;  
 Nowe, weß I wott, myne enime thou wolt be,  
 And’ att fuche a pryk’ ſhaß I neu<sup>1</sup> gett the,  
 My ſong may be weß-awaye!” 485  
 “ No,” ſayd’ the kyng, “ that make I warraunt,  
 Sōme harnys I woß haue to make me defendaunt,  
 That make I God’ avowe!  
 In fuche a plyght ſhaß thou neu<sup>1</sup> me fynde,  
 And’ yf thou do, lett me bete and’ bynde, 490  
 As is for thy beß prouf<sup>2</sup>.”  
 “ Nowe haue good’ day,” ſayd’ & Grom<sup>9</sup>,  
 “ Farewell,” ſayd’ & Arthoure, “ ſo mott I the,  
 I am glad’ I haue ſo ſped’.”—  
 King Arthoure turnyd’ hys hors into the playñ, 495  
 And’ ſone he mett with dame Ragneß agayñ,  
 In the ſame place and’ ſtede.  
 “ Syr kyng, I am glad’ ye haue ſped’ weß,  
 I told’ howe itt wold’ be, eu<sup>1</sup>y deß,  
 Nowe hold’ that ye haue hyght; 500  
 Syñ I haue ſauyd’ yo<sup>r</sup> lyf’, and’ none other,  
 Gaweñ mußt me wed’, & Arthoure,  
 That is a full gentiß knyght.”  
 “ No, lady, that I you hight I ſhaß not ſayß,  
 So ye wol be rulyd’ by my cownceß, 505  
 Yo<sup>r</sup> wiß theñ ſhaß ye haue;”—

<sup>1</sup> he, *MS.*<sup>2</sup> prow?

"Nay, & kyng, nowe woff I nott foo,  
 Openly I wol be weddyd' or I parte the froo,  
 [fol. 135.] Elle fhame woff ye haue.  
 Ryde before, and' I woff coñ after, 510  
 Vnto thy courte, & kynge Arthoure,  
 Of no mañ I woff fhame ;  
 Be-thynk' you howe I haue fauyd' yo<sup>r</sup> lyf',  
 Therfor with me nowe shaft ye nott ftryfe,  
 For and' ye do, ye be to blame." 515  
 The kyng of her had' greatt fhame,  
 But forth she rood', though he were grevyd' ;  
 Tyff they cañ to Karlyle forth they mevyd'.  
 In to the courte she rode hyñ by,  
 For no mañ wold' she spare, securly, 520  
 Itt likyd' the kyng full yff.  
 Alle the contraye had' wonder greatt,  
 Fro whens she coñ, that foule vnfwete,  
 They fawe neu<sup>n</sup> of fo fowff a thyng ;  
 In to the shaft she went, in certen,— 525  
 "Arthoure kyng, lett fetche me & Gaweyñ,  
 Before the knyghte, alle in hyng.  
 That I may nowe be made felyr,  
 In welle and' wo trowith plyght vs togeder,  
 Before alle thy chyvalry ; 530  
 This is yo<sup>r</sup> graunt, lett fe, haue done,  
 Sett forth & Gaweñ, my love, anofñ,  
 For lenger taryng kepe nott I."  
 Theñ cañ forth & Gaweñ the knyght,—  
 "Syr, I am redy of that I you hyght, 535  
 Alle forwarde to fulfyff ;"  
 "Godhauem<sup>cy</sup>," fayd' dame Ragneñ theñ,  
 "For thy sake I wold' I were a fayre womañ,  
 [fol. 135b.] For thou art of fo good' wyff."  
 Ther & Gaweñ to her his trowth plyght, 540  
 In well and' in woo, as he was a true knyght,  
 Theñ was dame Ragneñ fayñ ;

"Alas!" theñ sayd' dame Gayno<sup>r</sup>,  
 So sayd' alle the ladyes in her bower,  
 And' wept for ƒ Gaweyñ. 545  
 "Alas!" theñ sayd' both kyng and' knyght,  
 That eñ he fhold' wed' such a wyght,  
 She was so fowff and' horyble;  
 She had' two teth on euy fyde,  
 As borys tusk, I woff nott hyde, 550  
 Of length a large handfuff.  
 The one tusk' went up, and the other douñ,  
 A mowth fuff wyde, and' fowff igrowñ,  
 With grey herys many oñ;  
 Her lyppē lay lumpryd' on her chyñ, 555  
 Nek' forsoth on her was none ifeñ,  
 She was a lothly oñ!  
 She wold' nott be weddyd' in no man<sup>o</sup>,  
 Butt there were made a krye in alle the fhyre,  
 Both in towñ and' in borowe; 560  
 Alle the ladyes nowe of the lond',  
 She lett kry to coñ to hand',  
 To kepe that brydalle thorowe.  
 So itt befytt after oñ a daye,  
 That maryed' fhold' be that fowff [lady]  
 Vnto ƒ Gaweyñ; 565  
 The daye was cōmyñ the daye fhold' be,  
 Therof the ladyes had' greatt pitey,  
 "Alas!" theñ gañ they fayñ.  
 The queē prayd' dame Ragneñ, sekerly, 570  
 [fol. 136.] To be maryed' in the mornyng erly,  
 As pryvaly as we may;  
 "Nay," she sayd', "by hevyñ kyng!  
 That woff I neu<sup>o</sup>, for no thyng,  
 For ought that ye cañ saye. 575  
 I wol be weddyd' alle openly,  
 For with the kyng fuche coven<sup>a</sup>nt made I,  
 I putt you oute of dowte;

I wolt nott to church tyll high masse tyme,  
 And' in the open halle I wolt dyne, 580  
 In myddys of alle the rowte."  
 "I am greed'," sayd' dame Gaynor,  
 "Butt me wold' thynk' more hono<sup>r</sup>,  
 And yo<sup>r</sup> worfhypp' moſte;"—  
 "Ye, as for that, lady, God' you faue, 585  
 This daye my worfhypp' wolt I haue,  
 I tell you withoute boſte."  
 She made her redy to church to fare,  
 And' alle the Stat<sup>e</sup> that there ware,  
 Syrs, withoute leſyng; 590  
 She was arayd' in the richeſt man<sup>o</sup>, }  
 More freſſher than dame Gayno<sup>r</sup>. }  
 Her arayment was worth iij m' mark',  
 Of good' red' nobles ſtyff and' ſtark',  
 So rychely ſhe was begoñ; 595  
 For alle her rayment ſhe bare the beſt  
 Of fowlneſſe, that eu<sup>e</sup> I hard' tell,  
 So fowll a fowe ſawe neu<sup>e</sup> mañ.  
 For to make a ſhortt conſcluſion,  
 [fol. 136<sup>b</sup>.] When ſhe was weddyd', they hyed' theym home, 600  
 To mete alle they went;  
 This fowll lady bygañ the high deſe,  
 She was full fouff, and' nott curteys,  
 So ſayd' they alle, verament.  
 When the ſuyce cañ her before, 605  
 She ete as moche as vj. that ther wore,  
 That m<sup>o</sup>vayld' many a mañ;  
 Her naylys were long ynychys iij<sup>e</sup>,  
 Therwith ſhe breke her mete vngoodly,  
 Therefore ſhe ete alone. 610  
 She ette iij<sup>e</sup>. capons, and' alſo curlues iij<sup>e</sup>,  
 And' greatt bake met<sup>e</sup> ſhe ete vp, pde,  
 Al meñ therof had' m<sup>o</sup>vayll;  
 Ther was no mete cā her before,

Butt she ete itt vp, leffe and' more, 615  
 That praty fowll damefess.  
 All men theñ that eu<sup>n</sup> her sawe,  
 Bad' the devill her bonys gnawe,  
 Both knyght and squyre;  
 So she ete tyll mete was done, 620  
 Tyll they drewe clothes, and' had' waffheñ,  
 As is the gyfe and' man?  
 Meny men wold' speke of diñse fuice,  
 I trowe ye may wete inowgh ther was,  
 Both of tame and' wylde; 625  
 In king Arthours courte ther was no wontt,  
 That myght be gotteñ with mannys hond',  
 Noder in forest ne in feld'.  
 Ther were mynstrall<sup>e</sup> of diñse contrey

\* \* \* \* \*

[*A leaf here is wanting.*]

\* \* \* \* \*

[fol. 137.] "A, f Gawen, fyñ I haue you wed', 630  
 Shewe me yo<sup>r</sup> cortesy in bed',  
 With ryght itt may nott be denyed'.  
 I-wyfe, f Gawen," that lady sayd',  
 "And' I were fayre, ye wold' do a noder brayd',  
 Butt of wedlok' ye take no hed'; 635  
 Yett for Arthours sake, kyffe me att the leste,  
 I pray you do this att my request,  
 Lett se, howe ye cañ spede."  
 f Gawen sayd', "I wott do more  
 Theñ for to kyffe, and' God' before!" 640  
 He turnyd' hyñ her vntill;  
 He sawe her the fayrest creature,  
 That eu<sup>n</sup> he sawe, withoute mesure,—

She fayd', "whatt is yo<sup>r</sup> wyf'?"  
 "A, Ihu!" he<sup>1</sup> fayd', "whate ar ye?" 645  
 "ƒ, I aĩn yo<sup>r</sup> wyf', securly,  
 Why ar ye so unkynde?"  
 "A, lady, I aĩn to blame,  
 I cry you m<sup>2</sup>cy, my fayre madame,  
 Itt was nott in my mynde. 650  
 A lady ye ar fayre in my fyght,  
 And' to day ye were the foulȝft wyght,  
 That eu<sup>3</sup> I fawe with myne ie<sup>2</sup>;  
 Wele is me, my lady, I haue you thus,"—  
 And' brafyd' her in his armys, and' gaĩ her kyffe, 655  
 And' made greatt joye, fycurly.  
 "Syr," ſhe fayd', "thus ſhałt ye me haue,  
 Chefe of the one, ſo God' me faue,  
 My beawty wolt nott hold';  
 Wheder ye wolt haue me fayre oĩn nyghte<sup>3</sup>. 660  
 And' as foult oĩn days to alle meĩn fighte;  
 [fol. 137<sup>b</sup>.] Or els to haue me fayre oĩn days,  
 And' oĩn nyghte on the fowlyft wyfe,  
 The one ye muſt nede haue;  
 Chefe the one or the oder, 665  
 Chefe oĩn, ƒ knyght, which you is leu<sup>4</sup>,  
 Yo<sup>r</sup> worfhypp' for to faue."  
 "Alas!" fayd' Gaweyĩ, "the choyfe is hard',  
 To chefe the beſt itt is froward',  
 Wheder choyfe that I chefe; 670  
 To haue you fayre on nyghte and' no more,  
 That wold' greue my hartt ryght fore,  
 And' my worfhypp' ſhold' I lefe<sup>4</sup>.  
 And' yf I deſyre oĩn days to haue you fayre,  
 Theĩn oĩn nyghte I ſhold' haue a fymple repayre, 675  
 Now fayĩ wold' I choſe the beſt;  
 I ne wott in thys world' whate I ſhałt faye,

<sup>1</sup> ſhe, *MS.*<sup>2</sup> ieĩn, *MS.*<sup>3</sup> nyght, *MS.*<sup>4</sup> lofe, *MS.*



Butt do as ye lyft nowe, my lady gaye,  
 The choyse I putt in yo<sup>r</sup> fyft.  
 Euyñ as ye wolt I putt itt in yo<sup>r</sup> hand', 680  
 Lofe me when ye lyft, for I aſñ bond',  
 I putt the choyſe in you ;  
 Both body and' goodē, hartt, and' eūy dele,  
 Ys alle yo<sup>r</sup> ouñ, for to by and' feſt,  
 That make I God' avowe !" 685  
 " Garam<sup>o</sup>cy, corteys knyght," ſayd' the lady,  
 " Of alle erthly knyghtē blyffyd' mott thou be,  
 For now aſñ I worfhyppyd' ;  
 Thou ſhaſt haue me fayre both day and' nyght,  
 And' eū whyle I lyve as fayre and' bryght, 690  
 Therefore be nott greuyd'.  
 For I was ſhapeñ by nygramancy,  
 With my ſtep dame, God' haue oñ her m<sup>o</sup>cy !  
 And' by enchauntement ;  
 And' ſhold' haue bene oderwyſe vnderſtond', 695  
 Euyñ tyll the beſt of Englonde'  
 [fol. 138.] Had' wedyd' me, verament.  
 And' alſo he ſhold' geve me the ſoueynte,  
 Of alle his body and' goodē, ſycurly,  
 Thus was I difformyd' ; 700  
 And' thou, & knyght, curteys Gawēñ,  
 Has gevyñ me the ſoueynte, ſteyn,  
 That wolt not wroth the erly ne late.  
 Kyſſe me, & knyght, euyñ now here,  
 I pray the, be glad', and' make good' chere, 705  
 For weſt is me begoñ"—  
 Ther they made joye, oute of mynde,  
 So was itt reaſoñ and' co<sup>r</sup>s of kynde,  
 They two theyñ ſelf alone.  
 She thankyd' God' and' Mary mylde, 710  
 She was recoūd' of that that ſhe was defoyld',  
 So dyd' & Gawēñ ;  
 He made myrth alle in her boure,

And' thankyd' of alle oure Sauyoure,  
 I telt you, in certeyn. 715  
 With joye & myrth they wakyd' tyll daye,  
 And' thañ wold' ryfe that fayre maye<sup>1</sup>,  
 "Ye shaft nott," & Gawen fayd';  
 "We woff lye, & flepe tyll pryme,  
 And' theñ lett the kyng caſt vs to dyne,"— 720  
 "I am greed'," theñ fayd' the mayd'.  
 Thus itt paſſyd' forth tyll mid-daye,—  
 "Syr<sup>2</sup>," quod' the kyng, "lett vs go and' afaye,  
 Yf & Gawen be on lyve;  
 I am full ferd' of & Gawen, 725  
 Nowe leſt the fende haue hyñ flayn,  
 Nowe wold' I fayñ preve.  
 Go we nowe," fayd' Arthoure the kyng,  
 "We woff go ſe theyr vpryſyng,  
 [fol. 138<sup>b</sup>.] Howe weſt that he hath ſped' ;"— 730  
 They cañ to the chambre, alle in certeyn,  
 "Aryſe," fayd' the kyng to & Gawen,  
 "Why flepyſt thou ſo long in bed' ?"  
 "Mary," quod' Gawen, " & kyng, ſicurly,  
 I wold' be glad' and' ye wold' lett me be, 735  
 For I am full weſt att eas;  
 Abyde, ye shaft ſe the dore vndone,  
 I trowe that ye woff fay I am weſt goon,  
 I am full loth to ryfe."  
 Syr Gawen roſe, and' in his hand' he toke 740  
 His fayr lady, and' to the dore he ſhoke,  
 And' opynyd' the dore full fayre;  
 She ſtod' in her ſmok' alle by that fyre,  
 Her her<sup>3</sup> was to her knees as red' as gold' wyre,—  
 "Lo ! this is my repayre. 745  
 Lo !" fayd' Gawen Arthoure vntill,  
 "Syr, this is my wyfe, dame Ragneſt,  
 That ſauyd' onys yo<sup>r</sup> lyfe ;"—

<sup>1</sup> mayd, *MS*.<sup>2</sup> Syr, *MS*.<sup>3</sup> hed, *MS*.

He told' the kyng and' the queeñ heñ beforñ,  
 Howe sodenly froñ her shap she dyd' torne, 750  
 " My lord', nowe be yo' leve."  
 And' whate was the cause she forshapeñ was,  
 Syr Gaweñ told' the kyng, both more and' lesse,  
 " I thank' God'," sayd' the queeñ;  
 " I wenyd', & Gaweñ, she wold' the haue myscaryd', 755  
 Therefore in my hartt I was fore agrevyd',  
 Butt the contrary is here seeñ."  
 Ther was game, reveñ, and' playe,  
 And' euy mañ to other gañ saye,  
 " She is a fayre wyght;" 760  
 Thañ the kyng theyñ alle gañ tef,

How did' held' hyñ att nede dame Ragneñ,  
 " Or my detñ had' bene dyght."  
 Ther the kyng told' the queeñ, by the rood',  
 Howe he was bestad' in Inglefwod', 765  
 [fol. 139.] With & Grom' som' Joure;  
 And' whate othe the knyght made hyñ fwere,  
 " Or ellç he had' slayñ me ryght there,  
 Wtoute m'cy or mesure.  
 This same lady, dame Ragneñ, 770  
 Froñ my detñ she dyd' help me ryght weñ,  
 Alle for the love of Gaweñ;"—  
 Theñ Gaweñ told' the king alle to-geder,  
 Howe forshapeñ she was with her stepmoder  
 Tyff a knyght had' holpeñ her agayñ. 775  
 Ther she told' the kyng fayre and' weñ,  
 How Gaweñ gave her the soueynte euy deñ,  
 And' whate choyse she gave to hyñ;—  
 " God' thank' hyñ of his curtesye,  
 He favid' me froñ chaunce and' vilony, 780  
 That was fult fouff and' gryñ.  
 Therefore, curteys knyght and' hend' Gaweñ,  
 Shañ I neu' wrath the, fteyñ,  
 That pmyse nowe here I make;  
 Whille that I lyve I shal be obayfaunt, 785

To God' aboue I shaft itt warraunt,  
 And' neu' with you to debate."  
 " Garam<sup>o</sup>cy, lady," theñ sayd' Gawen,  
 " Wt you I hold' me full weñ content,  
 And' that I trust to fynde ;"— 790  
 He sayd', " my loue shaft she haue,  
 Therafter nede she neu' more craue,  
 For she hath bene to me so kynde."  
 The queen sayd', and' the ladyes alle,  
 " She is the fayrest nowe in this halle, 795  
 I swere by Seynt John !—  
 My loue, lady, ye shaft haue eu',  
 For that ye favid' my lord' Arthoure,  
 As I añ a gentilwomañ."  
 Syr Gawen gatt on her Gyngolyñ, 800  
 [fol. 139<sup>b</sup>.] That was a good' knyght of strenght and' kynñ,  
 And' of the Table Round';  
 Att eu' greatt fest that lady fhold' be,  
 Of fayrnesse she bare away the bewtye,  
 Wher she yed' on the ground'. 805  
 Gawen louyd' that lady, dame Ragneñ,  
 In alle his lyfe he louyd' none so weñ,  
 I tell you, withoute lefyng;  
 As a coward' he lay by her both day and' nyght,  
 Neu' wold' he haunt justyng aryght, 810  
 Ther att m<sup>o</sup>vaylyd' Arthoure the kyng<sup>1</sup>.  
 She prayd' the kyng, for his gentilnes,  
 To be good' lord' to þ Grom<sup>o</sup> i-wyffe,  
 Of that to you he hath offendyd';—  
 " Yes, lady, that shaft I nowe, for yo<sup>r</sup> fake, 815  
 For I wott weñ he may nott amend<sup>e</sup> make,  
 He dyd' to me full vnhend'."  
 Nowe for to make you a short conclusyoni,  
 I cast me for to make añ end' full sone,  
 Of this gentyñ lady; 820

<sup>1</sup> kyng Arthoure, MS.

She lyvyd' with f Gawen butt yerys v.  
 That grevyd' Gawen alle his lyfe,  
 I tell you, securly.  
 In her lyfe she grevyd' hym neu,  
 Therfor was neu woma to hym lever, 825  
 Thus leves my talkyng;  
 She was the fayrest lady of all<sup>1</sup> Englonde',  
 When she was on fyve, I vnderstond',  
 So fayd' Arthoure the kyng.  
 Thus endyth the aduenture of kyng Arthoure, 830  
 That oft in his days was grevyd' fore,  
 And' of the weddyng of Gawen;  
 Gawen was weddyd' oft in his days,  
 Butt so well he neu lovyd' woma always,  
 As I haue hard' men sayn. 835  
 This aduenture befell in Inglefwod',  
 [fol. 140.] As good' kynge Arthoure on huntynge yod',  
 Thus haue I hard' men tell;  
 Nowe, God', as thou were in Bethleme born,  
 Suffer neu her foules be forlorne, 840  
 In the brynnyng fyre of hell!  
 And', Ihu, as thou were borne of a virgyn,  
 Help hym oute of forowe, that this tale dyd' devyne,  
 And' that nowe in alle hast;  
 For he is be-fett with gaylours many, 845  
 That kepen hym full sewerly,  
 With wyles wrong & wraсте.  
 Nowe, God', as thou art veray kyng ryoast,  
 Help hym oute of daunger that made this tale,  
 For therin he hath bene long; 850  
 And' of greatt pety help thy fuint,  
 For body & soull I yeld' into thyne hand',  
 For paynes he hath strong.

*Here endyth the weddyng of Syr Gawen and Dame Ragnell, for  
 helpyng of Kyng Arthoure.*

<sup>1</sup> ale, MS.

## NOTES.

---

### Syr Gawayn and the Grene Knyzt.

---

THIS curious poem is printed for the first time from a manuscript, believed to be unique, preserved in the Cottonian Collection, and marked Nero, A. x. The volume had undoubtedly been seen by Warton, since he quotes some other pieces contained in it<sup>1</sup>, and it is singular he should not have noticed the poem in question, which he seems to have confounded with a preceding one, on a totally different subject. The same error, indeed, pervades the Cottonian Catalogues compiled by Smith in 1696, and by Planta in 1802; and to this cause, in all probability, may be ascribed the oblivion in which for so long a period such a remarkable composition should have remained. Accident, however, threw it in the way of Mr. Price, the able editor of Warton, who extracted a passage in illustration of his argument against the Scottish authorship of Sir Tristrem, and announced his intention of publishing the entire Romance, under the designation of "*Aunter of Sir Gawaine*," in an octavo volume, to be intitled "*Illustrations of Warton's History of English Poetry*;" but which he relinquished some time previous to his decease<sup>2</sup>. Price, however, omitted all reference to the MS. containing the poem, and the same chance which had brought it under his notice subsequently made it known to myself and to Mr. Stevenson, the latter of whom frequently quotes it in his additions to

<sup>1</sup> *History of English Poetry*, vol. iii. pp. 107, 108, ed. 4to, 1781; and vol. iii. p. 393, ed. 8vo, 1824.

<sup>2</sup> See H. E. P. *Preface*, p. 17, vol. i. p. 187; and *Advertisement* annexed at the end of vol. iv.

Boucher's *Glossary*<sup>1</sup>. A transcript was made by me shortly after the discovery, and the subject of the romance communicated in October, 1829, to Sir Walter Scott, who with his well-known courtesy, and zeal in the cause of ancient Scottish literature, at once proposed to have it edited, together with the similar poems of *The Awntyrs of Arthure*, and *Golagros and Gawane*, by subscription. I subsequently received from Sir Walter, during his visit to London, in October, 1831, permission to dedicate the work to himself; and a prospectus was circulated<sup>2</sup> containing proposals of publication, which circumstances afterwards prevented being carried into effect. To those noblemen and gentlemen who on that occasion sent me their names, I have never hitherto had an opportunity of expressing my thanks, and although tardy they are not the less sincere.

Having said thus much to account for the non-appearance of the poem in print, previous to its being so liberally taken under the patronage of the Bannatyne Club, I shall proceed to discuss briefly the questions which arise respecting the age of this composition, its author, and the sources whence it was derived.

Warton, in quoting two poems in the same volume, written by the same hand as the present, assigns them to the age of Minot, *i. e.* to the middle of the fourteenth century, and adds, that the writing cannot be later than the reign of Edward III. But the historian of English poetry is too poor a critic in matters of this kind to cause any weight to be attached to his opinion, unless supported by other evidence. His editor, Price, was evidently inclined to give the poem a much greater antiquity, and the whole scope of his argument would refer it to the thirteenth century, previous to the time of Robert de Brunne. "It abounds," says this ingenious writer, in those "seleouth names which in the fourteenth century were rapidly growing into disuse, and which were only retained by the writers in alliterative metre." To refute this notion, which has been adopted too hastily by the Rev. W. Conybeare<sup>3</sup> and Mr. Laing<sup>4</sup>, there is abundant evidence in the poem itself, independent of the proofs afforded by the language and metrical structure. Stevenson merely notices that the poem was "probably written about the end of the fourteenth century<sup>5</sup>," and Guest, who is the latest writer on the subject, says, that the MS. "certainly belongs to the latter half of the fourteenth century," which he modifies in another

<sup>1</sup> This new edition of Boucher, under the superintendence of the Rev. Joseph Hunter, and Joseph Stevenson, Esq., came out in 1832. Only two parts, extending to the middle of letter B, have hitherto appeared.

<sup>2</sup> The work had previously been proposed to Messrs. Longman and Co., and Mr. Murray. The former party civilly declined it, but the latter never even took the trouble to answer the letter!

<sup>3</sup> *Illustrations of A. S. Poetry*, p. lxix, 8vo, 1826.

<sup>4</sup> *Poems of Dunbar*, vol. i. p. 38, 8vo, 1834.

<sup>5</sup> Add. to Boucher, voce *Balze*.

passage to "about the year 1400<sup>1</sup>." It will not be difficult from a careful inspection of the manuscript itself, both in regard to the writing and illuminations, to assign it to the reign of Richard the Second; and the internal evidence, arising from the peculiarities of costume, armour, and architecture, would lead us to assign the romance to the same period, or a little earlier. There are three other metrical pieces in the volume<sup>2</sup>, all most unquestionably composed by the author of the romance, and these I have carefully read over with the hope of detecting some more direct indication of the age, but without success. Jean de Meung is indeed referred to, in fol. 71<sup>b</sup>, under his surname of *Clopinel*, in the following lines :

For *Clopyngnel* in the compas of his clene *Rose*,  
 Ther he expoune; a speche to hym that spede wolde,  
 Of a lady to be loued, loke to hir sone,  
 Of wich beryng that ho be, & wych ho best louyes. *etc.*

But as this writer completed, before the year 1300, the *Roman de la Rose*, commenced by Guillaume de Lorris, it will only prove the popularity of the work in Scotland as well as in England, during the course of the fourteenth century. In another passage the author alludes to a proverbial phrase,

Thay blwe a boffet in blande, that banned peple,  
 That thay blustered *as blynde as Bayard wat; euer*.—fol. 69.

Yet since this proverb is also found in Chaucer's *Canterbury Tales*, nothing can be inferred from the contemporaneous use of a saying, of which the origin is too obscure to assist our inquiry.

In regard to the author of these poems much uncertainty also exists. There is sufficient internal evidence of their being *Northern*, although the manuscript containing them appears to have been written by a scribe of the midland counties, which will account for the introduction of forms differing from those used by writers beyond the Tweed.

It is, I think, certain, that the writer of the romance must have been a man of birth and education, for none but a person intimately versed in the gentle science of *wode-craft* could so minutely describe the various sports of the chase, nor could any but an educated individual have been so well acquainted with the early French

<sup>1</sup> See *History of English Rhythms*, vol. ii. pp. 159, 171, note, 8vo, 1838.

<sup>2</sup> These all possess great merit, and deserve to be printed as the remains of one of the earliest existing Scottish poets.



literature. Of his poetical talent the pieces contained in the manuscript afford unquestionable proofs, and the descriptions of the change of the seasons<sup>1</sup>, the bitter aspect of winter<sup>2</sup>, the tempest which preceded the destruction of Sodom and Gomorra<sup>3</sup>, and the sea-storm occasioned by the wickedness of Jonas<sup>4</sup>, are equal to any similar passages in Douglas or Spenser. The individual who has the best claim to be recognised as the author, is "*Huchowne of the Awle Ryale*," mentioned by Wyntown<sup>5</sup>, who writes of him thus :

. . . . Men of gud dyscretiowne  
 Suld excuse and loue *Huchowne*,  
 That cunnand wes in literature ;  
 He made the *Gret Gest of Arthure*,  
 And the *AWNTYRE OF GAWANE*,  
 The *Pystyl als of swete Susane*.  
*He wes curyws in hys style*,  
*Fayre of facund, and subtile*,  
 And ay to plesans and delyte  
 Made in metyre mete his dyte<sup>6</sup>.

Mr. Chalmers was of opinion, that this Huchowne and the *Sir Hugh of Eglington*, mentioned by Dunbar in his "*Lament for the Makkaris*," who flourished in the middle of the fourteenth century, and died it is supposed about the year 1381, were one and the same person ; but there are so many difficulties in this supposition, as justly to prevent our yielding assent to it without some additional evidence<sup>7</sup>. Admitting, however, *Huchowne* to be the author of the romance<sup>8</sup>, we are sin-

<sup>1</sup> p. 21.

<sup>2</sup> pp. 28, 74.

<sup>3</sup> MS. Cott. Nero A. x. f. 70.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.* f. 85.

<sup>5</sup> Wyntown was elected Prior of St. Serf's, in Loch Leven, in 1395, so that he must have been contemporary with *Huchowne*. His Chronicle was not finished till the year 1420-1424.

<sup>6</sup> *Cronykil of Scotland*, vol. i. p. 122. ed. Macpherson, 1795.

<sup>7</sup> See the notices of this Sir Hugh collected in the admirable edition of Dunbar's poems by my friend Mr. Laing, vol. ii. p. 355 ; and his remarks, vol. i. p. 38. Consult also the *Select Remains of the Popular Poetry of Scotland*, pref. to *Pystyl of Susan*, 4to, 1822 ; *Lyndsay's Works*, by Chalmers, vol. i. p. 132, note, 8vo, 1806 ; and Tytler's *History of Scotland*, vol. ii. p. 367, 8vo, 1829.

<sup>8</sup> Mr. Guest regards as the most decisive proof of what is here assumed, the fact, that in the void space at the head of the poem in the MS., a hand of the fifteenth century (Mr. G. says, "not much later than the year 1500,") has scribbled the name *Hugo de*, as shown in the fac-simile annexed to the description of this MS., but, I confess, to this I do not attach much weight. Mr. Guest's wish to regard any signature as the name of the author, has led him into some awkward mistakes, particularly in the case of the English lives of Saints, composed probably in the early part of the thirteenth century, and contained in a MS. written not long after, MS. Reg. 17 A. xxvii., which Mr. Guest

gularly fortunate in possessing probably *all* the pieces written by him noticed by Wyntoun, together with three others on allegorical or scriptural subjects, hitherto not pointed out. It is very evident on the chronicler's authority, that the *Gret Gest of Arthure*, the *Gest Hystoryale*, and the *Gest of Broyttys auld story*, are one and the same poem, and relate to the exploits of Arthur and his knights against the Romans. In this work Huchowne makes *Lucius Hiberius* emperor, in the time of Arthur, whereas Wyntoun, following other authorities, names *Leo* as emperor. He first defends himself, and then good-naturedly excuses his predecessor, by saying that in the *Brute*, (by which he here means Geoffrey of Monmouth,) Lucius is called *Procurator*, which was more correct, but that had Huchowne done so,

That had mare greuyd the cadens,  
Than had releuyd the sentens.

Had Sir Walter Scott ever read through the *Arthour and Merlin* of the Auchinleck MS., he would have known that it could *not* be the *Gest* referred to in the above passage by Wyntoun; and Mr. Turnbull, the editor of this romance, is less excusable on this account in repeating the error without correction<sup>1</sup>. But of what in all probability *is* the veritable *Gest of Arthure* composed by Huchowne, and written in alliterative metre, I possess a transcript, from a MS. in Lincoln Cathedral Library, which may, probably, at some future period be given to the press.

It is, perhaps, too much to assume positively with Mr. Guest, that Huchowne "is certainly the oldest English poet, born north of the Tweed, whose works have reached us," since Barbour, who wrote between 1370-1380, possesses equal claims to be so considered; but we have this remarkable fact before us, that the oldest manuscripts containing *genuine* Scottish poetry, are the Cotton MS., Nero, A. x., the Vernon MS. in the Bodleian library, and a MS. formerly in the possession of Dr. Whitaker, and afterwards of Mr. Heber, all of which are of the reign of Richard the Second, all apparently written in England, and all contain poems of Huchowne<sup>2</sup>. Now if it be supposed that some time must necessarily elapse to account for the transmission of poems composed on the other side of the Tweed to

attributes to "one John Thayer" [Theyer], whose name occurs at the commencement, and who was the possessor in the reign of Charles the Second! The whole of Theyer's MSS. were subsequently purchased for the Royal Library. See *History of Rhythms*, ii. 139, *note*. In the same page for "*Latin original*," read "*Latin version*," as may be proved, perhaps, on some future occasion.

<sup>1</sup> Preface to *Romance of Arthour and Merlin*, 4to, 1838; printed for the Maitland Club. I have no doubt that the author is the same who wrote the *English* romance of *Alexander*, printed in Weber.

<sup>2</sup> The MS. of Barbour's Bruce, followed by Jamieson, is dated in 1489; and is in the Advocate Library. Another copy, dated one year earlier, is at Cambridge.

the southern counties, we must then with Mr. Guest give Huchowne the priority over Barbour, and he will stand first in the list of Scottish "makkaris." Of course by this I shall be understood to range myself on the side of those who consider Thomas of Erceldoune's claim to Sir Tristrem as apocryphal. To discuss this subject at length here would take me too much out of my way, therefore I shall only observe in passing, from a passage in the *inedited* portion of Robert de Brunne's Chronicle, that *Kendal's* christian name was also *Thomas*, and that he wrote a "tale" about *Flayn*, the brother of the giant *Skardying*, the lord of Scarborough castle; a piece of information which I believe to be new to all the writers on the subject.

In regard to the peculiarity of Huchowne's stanza and style, it cannot fail to excite observation how well it corresponds with the character given by the chronicler. It has also been ingeniously remarked by Mr. Guest, that the form of the stave, with its abrupt *bob-line* preceding the *wheel*, distinguishes the romance of *Syr Gawayn* and the *Pystyl of Sussan* from other somewhat similar productions of the fifteenth century, and fairly intitles them to be considered of earlier date<sup>1</sup>. The question of the introduction of alliteration into Scotland is a difficult one, as well as the period of its being first used; but I should be glad to have pointed out to me *any* poem in that metre, previous to the year 1350, composed unquestionably by a native of North Britain. As far as we can at present judge, it must have been borrowed from their southern neighbours, and retained subsequently to the middle of the sixteenth century. Mr. Guest is inclined to place among the earliest specimens the portion of the romance of Alexander, inserted in the splendid copy of the French romance in the Bodleian Library<sup>2</sup>, which he places about the middle of the fourteenth century<sup>3</sup>. But the writing of this portion is of the reign of Henry the Sixth, nor is there any reason to believe the poem itself very much earlier than the year 1400. A larger portion of the same romance is in a MS. in the Ashmolean Library<sup>4</sup>, and I possess a transcript of a fragment of an English alliterative romance on the same subject, which would appear from internal evidence to have been composed by the author of *William and the Werwolf*.

Of the sources whence the author has availed himself in composing *Syr Gawayn and the Grene Knyzt*, it now remains to say something. It is professedly not of his own invention, nor founded upon popular tradition, for he expressly refers at

<sup>1</sup> Vol. ii. p. 172.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Bodl. 264.

<sup>3</sup> The Rev. W. Conybeare assigns it to so early a period as the end of the thirteenth. *Illustr.* p. lxx. This and many other similar statements by eminent writers, prove that a critical history of English poetry is still a *desideratum*.

<sup>4</sup> No. 44 paper, fifteenth century. It contains 27 *passus*, the 18, 19, 20 and 21 of which are in MS. Bodl. 264.

the commencement to written authority, "in stori stif and strong with lel letteres loken<sup>1</sup>," and again at the end,

Thus in Arthurus day this aunter bitidde,  
*The Brutus bokes ther of beres wyttensesse.*

To my knowledge no English romance of an earlier period than the one before us exists, in which the writer might have found the story he has so ingeniously converted to his own purpose; but on turning to the early Anglo-Norman literature,—an extensive knowledge of which was undoubtedly at this period diffused over Scotland,—I have been more successful. The immediate original of the *Grene Knyzt* appears to exist in the *Roman de Perceval*, one of the most celebrated of Arthur's knights, whose adventures were written in verse by Chrestien de Troyes, at the close of the twelfth century, and continued after his death by Gautier de Denet and Manessier, at the beginning of the thirteenth<sup>2</sup>. This romance was translated into prose in the sixteenth century, and printed in 1530. In this it is related, that king Carados of Vaigue came to Arthur's court to ask for a wife, and receives from the suzerain a lady named Ysenne de Carahais. During the ceremonial of the nuptials an enchanter named Eliaures falls in love with the bride, and by magical delusion contrives to take the husband's place. The issue of this intercourse is a son, also named Carados, who is subsequently sent to the court of Arthur by his supposed father, to acquire a knowledge of chivalrous exercises. After a time the monarch resolves to hold a *court plenièr*e in the city of Carlisle (*Cardeuil*), for the purpose of conferring the order of knighthood on his young nephew, and communicates his intention to Gawayne, who highly approves of it. The feast is kept at Pentecost with extraordinary splendor, the ceremony of knighthood takes place, and Arthur, according to his usual practice, is only awaiting some adventure before he proceeds to the banquet, when at this moment a knight hastily rides up, singing an air "*bien doucement*," whose appearance is thus described:—"et avoit dessus le bonnet ung cercle, ou pendoit ung chapeau de fleurs, et estoit vestu de satin verd, fourré de erminnes; et avoit une espée sainte, dont puis eust la teste couppée, et en estoient ses renges ou sainture de fine soie, batue en or, et force perles semées par

<sup>1</sup> p. 4, l. 34. See also p. 27, l. 690.

<sup>2</sup> Copies of the metrical romance are rare in Great Britain. I have only been able to discover one, in the College of Arms, MS. Arund. 14; but this is imperfect, and does not proceed beyond f. xlvi. of the edition. There is said to exist a second perfect copy in the Advocates Library. In a copy of this romance among the MSS. of the *Bibliothèque du Roi* at Paris, Suppl. Français, No. 430; the Episode of *Carados* and *Elaures* occurs at fol. 89<sup>b</sup>.

*dessus*." The knight comes to the king, and begs to have a request granted,—to exchange blow for blow. "How is that?" said Arthur. "Sire, I will tell you," replied the stranger, "I will deliver my sword to a knight, before your majesty and all the assembly, and if he is able to cut off my head with it at a blow, in case I should afterwards recover, I will then return him the stroke." Keux, the seneschal, declares he would not accept the proffer for all the world, and brands with the name of fool any one hardy enough to attempt it. The knight, however, persists, and drawing his sword presents it first on one side and then on the other, much to the displeasure of the king, who sees his bravest champions draw back. At last young Carados starts forward, and seizes the weapon. The knight then lays down his head on a block, and Carados, persisting in the enterprise against the wishes of the whole court, raises the sword, and at a blow sends the stranger's head rolling off the length of a lance. The headless trunk immediately rises and takes up the head, which unites as well as ever, and the knight now claims the fulfilment of the conditions, but defers it for one twelvemonth, and on leaving the court reminds Carados strictly to observe the agreement. The court is much troubled at so strange an adventure, and many tears are shed for Carados, who, however, does not seem to regard the peril, but passes the time in feats of arms. At length the prescribed term arrives, and he returns to Carlisle at Pentecost day, when Arthur and his Round Table are assembled as before. The stranger knight again makes his appearance, and demands the accomplishment of the covenant. Carados lays his head on the block, and tells the knight to do his worst. Arthur and his queen both make an effort to save Carados from what appears certain death, but in vain; and the stranger having sufficiently kept them all in suspense, raises his sword, and strikes the neck of Carados, but with the flat side only of the weapon. He then tells him to rise, and reveals to him that he is Eliaures, the enchanter, his real father, and how it was brought about. He afterwards mounts his horse and departs, leaving Arthur and his knights to celebrate their feast in gladness<sup>1</sup>.

From a comparison of this narrative with the Scottish romance, we may be better able to judge fairly of the merit of the author of the latter, and how far he has drawn on his own inventive powers for the changes and embellishments of the story.

We meet with an incident of the same kind in the *fabliau* of *La Mule sans Frein*, probably of the thirteenth century. In this Gawayne is the hero, and on behalf of a damsel undertakes a perilous adventure. He arrives at the castle of a giant, sur-

<sup>1</sup> Edit. 1530, ff. 76<sup>b</sup>—79<sup>b</sup>. Southey in his notes to the preface to the *Morte d'Arthur*, gives an analysis of this story, p. xxxv., and refers it to a Welsh or Breton original. It is most surprising he should have been ignorant of the existence of the metrical French text. See *ibid.*, p. xxvi.

rounded by a paling, on which are fixed four hundred human heads. The giant receives him civilly, but when he is about to retire to rest, he is ordered to strike off the giant's head, who warns him at the same time, that on the following morning he will have to suffer a similar blow. Gawayne is nothing daunted, and smites the giant's head off, but is infinitely astonished to see the body rise, take it up, and replace it. He goes to bed, and, strange to say, sleeps tranquilly. The next morning the giant comes with his axe, and awaking Gawayne, reminds him of the disagreeable conditions made the previous evening. The knight holds forth his neck, but it proves to be only a trial of his courage, and the giant praises and embraces him<sup>1</sup>. This is evidently the same story as the preceding one, but diversified according to the fancy or memory of the minstrel. A third adventure of a similar description occurs in the second part of the *Roman du Saint Graal*, ascribed to Helie de Borron, and manifestly composed subsequent to the romance of Perceval. It is there related of Lancelot du Lac, that in one of his rambles he entered the *Gaste Cité*, from which issues a knight richly clad, holding a huge axe in his hands. Lancelot cuts his head off with the weapon, on the same conditions as Carados. At the appointed time he returns, and a strong and tall knight, brother of the one beheaded, approaches him, habited "*de court, comme celluy qui veult faire office*," and holding the fatal *glayve*, which he had just whetted to make it cut sharper. Lancelot prepares to fulfil the conditions, makes a cross on the earth, and kneels down on it. The sole thought that troubles him is of his mistress, queen Guenever. He regrets he had not seen her once more to bid her adieu, and fears death only because it will separate him from her. His tears flow for the first time in his life. He extends his neck, and the tall knight steps back, and aims a blow. Lancelot sees the shadow of the weapon, and eludes it. "Ha!" cried the knight, "my brother, whom you killed, did not act thus, but held his head firm, and so must you do." At this crisis Lancelot is saved by the interference of two ladies from the castle, and the two enemies become friends<sup>2</sup>.

Some points of resemblance will here also be remarked with the Scottish Romance, and it is highly probable that the author may have mingled together several narratives for the purpose of rendering his own more attractive. The series of temptations to which Gawayne is exposed, undoubtedly connects it with another traditionary story of his exploits, which I shall have occasion to speak of when I come to the romance of the *Carle of Carelyle*.

To one of the preceding sources, in all probability, was Ariosto indebted for his

<sup>1</sup> In Meon's *Nowv. Rec. des Fabliaux*, t. i. p. l. 8vo, 1823; and Le Grand d'Aussy, *Fabliaux ou Contes*, vol. i. p. 79, ed. 1829.

<sup>2</sup> *Roman du St. Graal*, ff. 149<sup>b</sup>, 181, 4to, 1516.

episode of the necromancer Orrilo, whose powers in replacing his limbs when cut off exceed those of Eliaures :—

Se gli spiccano il capo, Orrilo scende,  
Nè cessa brancolar fin che lo truovi ;  
Et or pel crine et or pel naso il prende,  
Lo salda al collo, e non so con che chiovi :  
Pigial talor Grifone, e 'l braccio stende,  
Nel fiume il getta, e non par ch' anco giovi ;  
Chè nuota Orrilo al fondo come un pesce,  
E col capo salvo alla ripa esce<sup>1</sup>.

In the Appendix to the present volume will be found a modern *rifacimento* of this romance of *Syr Gawayn and the Grene Knyzt*, printed from the well-known Percy manuscript.

P. 3, l. 1. *Sithen the sege & the assaut wat, sesed at Troye, etc.*

Respecting the claim of the Britons and other nations to a *Trojan descent*, see the remarks of Thompson, in the preface to his translation of Geoffrey of Monmouth, 8vo, 1748 ; Warton's *Hist. Engl. Poetr.*, vol. i. p. 131, *note*, and *Diss. on Rom. Fict.*, p. xi. ed. 1824 ; Ritson's *Life of Arthur*, p. 6, 8vo, 1825 ; and Panizzi's *Essay*, prefixed to his edition of Boiardo and Ariosto, p. 49, 12mo, 1830. It is adopted by all the romancers, French and English, and introduced into Spenser's *Faerie Queen*, b. iii, c. 9, st. 38, 41. Thus also the author of the alliterative *Morte Arthur*, in the Lincoln MS. A. 1. 17.

Thus endis kyng Arthure, as auctors alegges,  
That was of Ectores blude, the kyng sone of Troye,  
And of sir Pryamous, the prynce, praysede in erthe ;  
Fro thethene broghte the Bretons all his bolde eldrys  
In to Bretayne the brode, as the Bruytte tellys.

*Ibid.* l. 5. *Hit wat, Ennias the athel, & his highe kynde.*

The authority for this assertion was doubtless the Latin history ascribed to Dares

<sup>1</sup> *Orlando Furioso*, canto xv. st. 71.

Phrygius, cap. 39, 174, ed. Delph. 1702, although it is corroborated by the more classical names of Dionysius of Halicarnassus and Strabo. Joseph of Exeter in his poem *De bello Trojano*, composed in the twelfth century, thus versifies Dares :

Interea questique diu, bellumque perosi,  
In fœdus coiere Phryges ; juratur in usum  
Perfidiã perjura fides, Antenore dirum  
Parturiente nefas ; hujus consulta secuti  
Ucalegon atque Amphidamas, nec justior ipso  
Polydamante Dolon, *patriæque in damna ruentis*  
*Impius et tantis Æneas consonus ausis.*—lib. vi. v. 705.

The *immediate* source, however, made use of by the Scottish poet, may have been the popular Latin romance of Guido de Colonna, compiled in the thirteenth century, which subsequently was translated by Lydgate into English verse.

*Ibid.* l. 11. *Ticius to Tuskan* [turnes,] & *teldes bigynnnes*.

Unless *Ticius* is here a mistake altogether for *Antenor*, the name may possibly have been derived from *Titus Tatius*, king of the Sabines, and afterwards the colleague of Romulus at Rome. The word supplied is obvious, and rendered certain by several other passages, but I shall only quote one,

In to Tuskane he *tournez*, whenne thus well tymede,  
Takes townnes fulle tyte, withe towrres fulle heghe, etc.  
*Morte Arthur*, f. 80<sup>b</sup>.

*Ibid.* l. 13. *Felix Brutus*.

This surname seems to be an invention of the writer for the sake of alliteration. I have not met with it elsewhere.

P. 4, l. 31. *As tit as I in toun herde*.

A phrase by no means unusual. Compare ll. 614, 1049. We may hence reject the emendation of Chalmers, in reading *roun* for *toun* in the first stanza of Sir Tristrem. See *Works of Sir David Lyndsay*, vol. i. p. 128, 8vo, 1806.

*Ibid.* l. 37. *This kyng lay at Camylot*, etc.

In Malory's *Morte d' Arthur*, compiled in 1469, Camelot is expressly declared to be the same as Winchester, b. 12, ch. x. vol. ii. p. 193 ; but this is contradicted



by the *Roman de Lancelot*, vol. iii, f. cxliv<sup>b</sup>, 4to, 1513, where the two cities are clearly distinguished from each other. Ritson supposes it may have been *Caer-Went* in Monmouthshire, and afterwards confounded with *Caer-Wynt* or Winchester; *Life of Arthur*, p. 82. But popular tradition here seems the best guide, which assigned the site of *Camalot* to the ruins of a castle on a hill, near the church of South Cadbury, in Somersetshire. See Leland's *Itin.* ii. 75, and *Collectan.* v. 28. In the *Roman de Tristan* we read, "*Le roy Artus y sejournoit souvent, pour ce que la cité estoit aisée de toutes choses qu'il convenoit à corps de homme aysier.*" vol. 1, f. xxxvii. fol. 1520. So also the author of the *Roman du St. Graal*, 2nd part, in speaking of another Camylot, the residence of the mother of Perceval, says, "*Seigneurs, ne cuydez pas que ce soit de celluy Kamelot dont ces jogleurs vont chantant la chanson, ou le roy Artus tenoit si souvent sa court. Cestuy Kamelot, que fut à la vefue dame, est assyz au plus beau chef, et en la plus belle isle, et en la plus sauvage de Galles, prez de la mer vers occident. Et l'autre Kamelot est a l'entrée du royaulme de Logres, qui est peuplé de gens, et est assiz au chef de la terre au roy Artus, pour ce que il tient à toutes les terres qui de celle part marchissoyent à la sienne.*" f. clxxxvii, 4to, 1516. See a passage likewise in the *Roman de Lancelot*, vol. i, f. lxxxvi, and Southey's note on *Morte d'Arthur*, ii. 487.

*Ibid.* l. 40. The revels at Christmas are more than once described with a zest, which would induce us to believe that the feasting and jollities of that season were kept up in the fourteenth century in Scotland in a manner not to be excelled by English pageantry. Besides the tourney, or amicable joust, we have carols, dancing, shouts of *Noel*, gifts decided by lot, interludes, songs, and other amusements. See ll. 472, 983, 1007, 1026, 1654. With regard to *carols* and *Noel*, Sandys's work on the subject may be consulted, 8vo, London, 1833. In the *Roman de Lancelot*, vol. i. f. xxxvi, it is stated, that Arthur was accustomed to hold a court and wear his crown five times in the year; namely, at Easter, Ascension-day, Pentecost, All Saints, and Noel. Of these the feast at Easter was more honoured, but that of Pentecost the most joyous. See some lines describing a *court plenièrre* at Christmas, in the *Lai du Conseil*, p. 85, of *Lais Inédits*, by Fr. Michel, 8vo, Paris, 1836. On the popular Christmas play, as at present preserved in various parts of Scotland and England, see Davies Gilbert's *Christmas Carols*, 8vo, 1823, pref. p. iv; Mac-taggart's *Scottish Gallovidian Encyclopedia*, (a work but little known, and very curious), 8vo, London, 1824, in v. *Yule-boys*; *Gentleman's Magazine*, 1830, part i. p. 505; Hone's *Every-day Book*, vol. ii. p. 18, 8vo, 1831; and Sandys's *Carols*, pp. 110, 174. This play has been separately printed, but made up, without judgement, from various sources, 8vo, Portsmouth, 1836.

P. 6, l. 81. *The comlokest to descrye,  
Ther glent with yzen gray.*

The beauty of Queen Guenever is a constant theme with the old romancers, and appears to rest on historical tradition. In the Welsh version of the romance of Ywaine and Gawaine, (recently edited with so much taste by Lady Charlotte Guest as Part I. of the *Mabinogion*,) the expression "more lovely than Gwenhwyvar" occurs, p. 42, (see l. 945 of the present poem), and the editor remarks, that this was the highest compliment it was possible to pay, since Gwenhwyvar is celebrated in the Triads as one of the three fair ladies of Arthur's court, p. 102.

So also in the Latin Chronicle of Geoffrey, lib. ix. cap. 9, the queen is equally praised for her beauty and courteous manners, and this is repeated by Wace and his translators or imitators. But the most naïve and elaborate personal description of her appearance, whilst yet at the court of Leodagan her father, is given in the very rare *Roman de Merlin*, vol. i. f. cxxxvii, in these words:—" *Ny oncques en Bretagne n' en nasquit point de plus belle pour lors. Son visage estoit cler et luy-sant, et bien coulouré blanc et vermeil; si belle estoit que Nature avoit mis en elle toute son estudié, qu'il ne luy en failloit ne plus ne moins. Elle estoit haulte et droicte, et bien polie, le corps long, et gresle par les flans, les hanches basses, vestue d' abiz qui moult bien luy advenoient; les bras avoit gros et longs, les piedz plains et voutiz, les mains grassetes, blanches comme neige. Si luy commençoient encores à croistre les mamelles dures, blanches, et rondes comme pommettes; ne fut trop grasse ne trop maigre.*" etc. See also another passage quoted by Southey in his Notes on *Morte d'Arthur*, vol. ii. p. 462. It need only be remarked in addition, that the "yzen gray," *des yeux vaires*, were considered in the times of romance as the undoubted characteristic of beauty. See examples (out of many) in the *Erle of Tolous*, ap. Ritson, *Met. Rom.* iii. 107. *Launfal*, ib. i. 205. *Thomas of Ersyldoune*, ap. Laing, *Pop. Poetr.* l. 89; and *Syre Gawene and the Carle of Carelyle*, in the present volume, p. 197, l. 365.

*Ibid.* l. 90. *And also another maner meued him eke  
That he thurȝ nobelay had nomen, he wolde neuer etc.*

This is borrowed by the author immediately from the *Roman de Perceval*, fol. lxxviii.—" *Keux, faict le Roy, ne vous hastez, car vous sçavez long temps y a que quant court planière ay tenue, que jamais ne voullus menger ains que nouvelles ou merveilles ne fussent devers moy venues; et encores ne veuil coustume laisser ne abolir.*" So also in the *Roman de Lancelot*, vol. iii. f. lxxxii; and *Roman de Merlin*, vol. ii. f. lvi<sup>b</sup>, which narrates the establishment of this custom of Arthur, and is

probably the authority whence the other romances borrowed. Cf. Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*, ii. 203, 462. The same usage appears in the earlier German romance-writers, who, in truth, only translate the metrical French authorities. Consult *Wigalois*, p. 12, 12mo, Berlin, 1819; and the notes of the editor Benecke, p. 436.

P. 7. l. 110. *And Agrauayn a la dure mayn.*

One of the brothers of Gawayne, by Belisent, half-sister of Arthur. I know not whence the author of the poem derived the epithet of *à la dure main*, which is never applied to him in the romances. His constant appellation there is *l'Orgueilleux*. His character is drawn in a few words in the *Roman de Lancelot*, ii. f. lxix.—“*Il fut sans pitié et sans amour, ne il n'eut oncques bonne grace fors que de chevalerie, et de beaulté, et la langue eut à delivré.*” There is an amusing episode of his haughty behaviour in *Merlin*, ii. f. lxxxvi, at which his father, old king Lot, is so enraged, that he cries out to Gawayne to slay him. His death, however, was reserved for Sir Launcelot, after the latter had been surprised by him in queen Guenever's chamber. *Morte d'Arthur*, ii. 395.

*Ibid.* l. 112. *Bischof Bawdewyn.*

This personage, who figures also in *Sir Gawene and the Carle of Carelyle*, and in *The Turke and Gowin*, occurs nowhere in the early French metrical and prose romances; and his name seems to have been substituted by the English or Scottish poets in the fourteenth century, for that of Bishop Brice or Dubricius. There was an Archbishop of Canterbury named Baldwin, who held the See from 1184 to 1191, from whom the name may have been taken.

*Ibid.* l. 113. *Ywan, Yryn son.*

Is the celebrated Ywain or Owain, sometimes surnamed *Le Grand*, son of Urien king of Moray, according to Geoffrey, or of Rheged, according to the Welsh authorities. His exploits were celebrated in French verse by Chrestien de Troyes, and thence translated into the German, Icelandic, Welsh, and English languages, for which consult Benecke's edition of *Iwein der Riter mit dem Lewen*, 8vo, Berlin, 1827; Von der Hagen's *Grundriss zur Geschichte der Deutschen Poesie*, 8vo, Berlin, 1812, p. 118; Ritson's *Metrical Romances*, vol. i. and Notes, vol. iii. 8vo, 1802; and Lady C. Guest's *Mabinogion*, part i, 8vo, 1838. He must not be confounded (as Ritson has done) with Ywain *l'Avoultre*, a base son of Urien by his seneschal's wife, who was killed by Gawayne without knowing him, *Roman de Lancelot*, iii. f. cxvii. There

are also others of this name mentioned in the *Roman de Merlin*, i. f. ccviii<sup>b</sup>, and in the *Roman d'Erec et d'Enide*. Cf. *Arthour and Merlin*, p. 306, 4to, 1838. The name of this hero of the Round Table, somewhat disguised, again occurs in l. 551 of the present poem; in the *Awntyrs of Arthure*, st. li. l. 4; and *Golagros and Gawane*, l. 662.

P. 22, l. 551. *Aywan, and Errik, and other ful mony,  
Sir Doddinaual de [le] Sauvage, the duk of Clarence,  
Launcelot, and Lyonel, and Lucan the gode,  
Sir Boos, and Sir Byduer, big men bothe,  
And mony other menskful, with Mador de la Port.*

Of Aywan or Ywain I have already spoken. The second on the list is Erec, son of king Lac, of whom the romance of *Erec et d'Enide*, by Chrestien de Troyes, exists in MS. *Bibl. du Roi*, No. 7498<sup>4</sup>. The third is Dodinel le Sauvage, son of Belinans, king of Estrangegorre, by a daughter of king Matheu "de l'isle perdu." "*Cestuy Dodinel*," says the *Roman de Merlin*, "*fut surnommé Sauvaige, pource qu'il ne bougeoit des forestz et des bois, à chasser bestes sauvaiges*," i. f. cxlviii. He is delivered by Gawayne out of prison in the *Roman de Perceval*, f. xcii<sup>b</sup>. The fourth, here named by his title of Duke of Clarence, was Galachin, son of Neutres, king of Garlot, by a sister of Arthur, and cousin of Dodinal. The duchy was given to him by Arthur, after his marriage with Guenever. The author of *Merlin* says of him, "*Cest enfant fut le meilleur chevalier de deux centz cinquante chevaliers qui furent de la Table Ronde*," i. f. cxi<sup>b</sup>. His exploits in the *Val sans retour* are narrated in the *Roman de Lancelot*, i. f. cxc<sup>b</sup>. The fifth on the list is the redoubtable son of king Ban of Benoit, whose amours with queen Guenever have made him more conspicuous even than his valor. The readers of his romance, or of Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*, need not be reminded that he became the destroyer, mediately or immediately, of Gawayne and his brothers. Lyonel de Gauves or Gannes, son of king Boort, was the cousin of Lancelot, and received the kingdom of Gaul from his hand. In the *Roman de Lancelot*, i. f. lxxxvi, it is said of him, "*Et le varlet avoit à nom Lyonnell pource que une grande merveille advint à son naistre. Car sy tost comme il yssit du ventre Helayne, sa mere, l'en trouva au meillieu de son pis une tasche vermeille en forme de lyon, et avoit l'enfant embrassé parmy le col, ainsi comme pour l'estrangler*." He is stated to have been killed in a battle against the sons of Mordred, and buried at Winchester. Sir Lucan was Arthur's butler, and died with the king in the fatal engagement with Mordred. Sir Boort or Bors de Gauves or Gannes, was brother of Lyonel, and inherited the territories of king Claudas. Sir

Beduer, usually styled the Constable, from his filling that office in Arthur's court, is characterized in the romance of Erec and Enide as one "*Qui molt sot d'eschas et tables.*" His attendance on Arthur in his last moments, with the adventure of the sword Escalibor, forms an interesting chapter in the *Morte d'Arthur*, ii. 440. The last knight in the list, Mador de la Port, is introduced into the romance of Lancelot and the *Morte d'Arthur*, as the accuser of queen Guenever, on behalf of his cousin Sir Patryse, who had been poisoned by some apples at a banquet instead of Gawayne, for whom the fruit had been treacherously prepared. See *Roman de Lancelot*, iii. f. clix<sup>b</sup>; *Morte d'Arthur*, ii. 321.

P. 23, l. 567. *Askez erly his arme3, and alle were thay broyt, etc.*

This entire stanza and the following one are valuable for the minute description they contain of the mode of completely arming a knight at the close of the fourteenth century. The order was as follows:—A carpet was first brought, on which the various pieces of gilt armour were laid. The knight then was clad in a doublet of expensive Tarsic silk, (which was, doubtless, padded, to protect the body,) and next a skilfully made hood (*capados*), closed above, and bound within with some soft material (*blauumer*). The steel shoes were then placed on his feet, and his legs covered to the knee with steel greaves, to which were affixed knee-pieces (*poleyms*) well-polished, and fastened with knots of gold. After this, fair cuisses were affixed to his brawny thighs, and tied beneath with thongs, and afterwards the byrny or haubergeon of mail, consisting of steel rings sewed on a fair stuff. Well-burnished braces then are placed on his arms, with good elbow-pieces (*cowters*), and gloves of plate. Above all he wore his coat-armor, or jupon; his gold spurs were fixed; and his sword attached about him by a silken girdle. Thus accoutred he hears mass, and afterwards, before mounting his horse, puts on his helmet, or bacinet, which was strongly stapled, and lined within; it sat high on his head, and was hasped behind; with a light *urisoun* over the *aventaile*, or part protecting the face, embroidered with gems on broad silken borders, with birds and truelove-knots interspersed so thick, as if it had been the labor of many ladies for seven years.<sup>1</sup> Around the helmet was a circle of diamonds. The shield and spear complete the knight's equipment. Compare with this the passage in p. 75, and plate 14 of Skelton's *Illustrations of Antient Armour*, 4to, 1830.

*Ibid.* l. 572. *A crafty capados, closed aloft.*

I have met with no other instance of this term except in the present poem, but

its derivation is clear, from the French *cap-à-dos*, and, doubtless, means a hood or close cap, descending low in the neck. Compare ll. 186 and 1930.

*Ibid.* l. 574. *Thenne set thay the sabotounz, etc.*

These were steel shoes or clogs to protect the feet, from the French *sabot*, Spanish *sapato*, and were at an earlier period termed *sollerets*. They are mentioned in a poem quoted in Sir Walter Scott's Notes to *Sir Tristrem*, p. 374, ed. 1833.

And some also dempte most sureste  
To arme them for battel of areste,  
And dyd on first, after their desires,  
*Sabatons*, greves, cusses with voyders.

The poem is cited as "*Clariodes, MS.*", but as these lines do not occur in the romance of *Clariodus*, published by the Maitland Club, it would be very desirable to know where Sir Walter's authority is preserved. The term again occurs in a curious MS. in the Lansdowne collection, No. 285, written for Sir John Paston, in the reign of Edward IV, and subsequently the property of Sir Thomas Wriothesley, the elder, Garter. "First ye muste set on *sabatynes*, and tye them vpon the shoo, w<sup>t</sup> smalle poyntes that wille [not] breke; and than *griffus*, and than *quysshews*, and than the *breche of maile*, and than *towlettes*; than the *breste*; than the *vambrace*; than the *rerebrace*, than the *gloovis*," etc., fol. 9. See *Archæologia*, vol. xvii. p. 295, where the whole passage is copied, but not very accurately; and vol. xx. p. 496.

*Ibid.* l. 576. *With polaynez picked ther to.*

This term for *genouillieres* or knee-pieces of plate, is as old as the reign of Edward the First, in whose household-book it is found. See Du Cange, v. *Polena*, and Dissert. on Joinville, p. 184, fol. 1668. The word is preserved in the *Wallace*, viii. 1203, and *Rauf Coilgear*, ap. Laing, sign. B. iv.; and Jamieson is clearly mistaken in his explanation of *pullaine greis*, which mean *greaves furnished with knee-pieces*. See also MS. Harl. 6149, fol. 46.

*Ibid.* l. 583. *With gode cowers and gay.*

From the French *coudière*, la partie qui couvre la *coude*. In the inedited romance of *Morte Arthure* is a curious passage, which as it refers to a combat between Sir Gawayne and Sir Priamus, I may be excused quoting here.

And gyrdes at Syr Gawayne, as he by glentis,  
 And awkwarde egerly sore he hym smythes;  
 An alet enamelde he ochis in sondire,  
 Bristes the rerebrace with the bronde ryche,  
 Kerues of at the *coutere* with the clene egge,  
 Ane[n]tis the awawmbrace, vrayllede w<sup>t</sup> siluer,  
 Thorowe a double vesture of veluett ryche;  
 W<sup>t</sup> the venemous swerde a vayne has he towchede,  
 That voydes so violently, that alle his witte changede;  
 The vesere, the auentaile, his vestures ryche,  
 With the valyant blode was verrede alle ouer.

MS. Linc., A. 1, 17, f. 80<sup>b</sup>.

*Ibid.* l. 592. *So harnayst as he wat3 he herknez his masse.*

Thus in the *Roman du Saint Graal*, f. clxi<sup>b</sup>, 4to, 1516, it is said of Gawayne, "*Ne jamais Gauvain ne parloit d'ung logis sans ouyr messe, s'il pouoit, ny oncques ne trouva damoiselle qu'il ne secourust.*" See also Ritson's *Metr. Rom.*, iii. 241.

P. 24, l. 597. *Bi that wat3 Gryngolet grayth, etc.*

The name of this celebrated horse furnishes an additional proof of the acquaintance possessed by the author of the early French romances. In the *Roman de Merlin*, pt. ii. f. lxxii<sup>b</sup>—lxxiv, is the account of his acquisition by Gawayne from the Saxon king Clarion, who rode "*le Gringalet, ung cheval qui ainsi avoyt à non, pour la grant bonté de quoy il estoit plain; car le compte dit, que pour dix lieues courir il n'en faisoit que le cerf, à tout ung chevalier armé de toutes pieces, ne si ne le faillloit point picquer ne petit ne grant, ne jamais poil ne luy sua.*" We meet with the same steed in the Conte of *Le Chevalier à l'Espée*,

Les armes reçut un vaslet,  
 Uns autres prist lou *Gringalet*.

Meon's *Fabliaux*, i, 134.

Again, in the metrical *Roman de Perceval*,

Trestoz fors le *Gringalet*;  
 Plorant s'en revont li valet.

MS. Coll. Arm. f. 199.

which in the prose text (4to, 1530, f. xxxiii<sup>b</sup>) is thus rendered, "*et remenassent ses chevaulx, fors ung bien petit palefroy,*" evidently shewing that the later writer did

not understand his original. In the old German version of Wolfram von Eschenbach, who appears to have followed Guiot, a Provençal author, rather than Chretien de Troyes, we find the lines,

Dô was ouch *Gringuljetan* gegurt,  
daz in mangel angestlichên furt  
gein strite was zer tjoste brâht,  
des wart och dâ hin zim gedâht.

*Parzival*, ed. Lachmann, 8vo, 1833, p. 167.

In *The Awntyrs of Arthure*, Gawayne's steed is simply named *Grisselle*, st. xlii. l. 13.

*Ibid.* l. 607. *Hit watȝ hyȝe on his hede, hasped bihynde,  
Wyth a lyȝth vrisoun ouer the aventayle,  
Enbrawdē and bounden, etc.*

Much time has been spent, but without success, in endeavouring to find other instances of the term *urisoun*, which would seem to have been the same as the *cointisse*, or "kerchief of plesaunce," such as it appears on the effigy of Aymer de Valence, who died in 1323. See Stothard's *Monum. Effigies*, fol., 1817, and Sir S. Meyrick's *Critical Inquiry*, ii. 57. But in the former work, p. 12, in describing the *bacinet*, Stothard writes, "The camail, and what was called by the French a *hourson*, to which may be added a strap, was to attach the whole by means of a buckle, to the haubergeon or plates." Whence did Stothard derive this term? I answer, in all probability from MS. Harl. 6149, in which at fol. 46, are regulations "*How a knyght suld be armyt in tournay*;" and among them occurs, "Item, *bacynet à tout le hourson*, and ane *escussone* of *balayne* apone the nek, couerit w<sup>t</sup> *ledder*, etc. And apone ye *bacynet* a *coife* of mail, and a faire *offroy* befor on ye front, quha will." These regulations are printed at length in the *Archæologia*, vol. xx. p. 510, and in the *Critical Inquiry*, vol. i. p. 155, but, I regret to add, very incorrectly; and the explanation of the terms used is very wide of the truth, as may appear by comparing the original French text, printed in Du Cange's seventh Dissertation on Joinville, p. 184. It is a curious circumstance, which must have escaped the notice of the author of the *Inquiry*, that the same regulations were previously printed more accurately by Leyden in his rambling preface to the *Complaynte of Scotland*, 4to, Edinb., 1802, p. 57, and there given as an extract from an heraldic MS., written and therefore conjectured to have been composed by Sir David Lyndsay, in 1586; and on such doubtful grounds large excerpts were made, and an argument drawn to prove the author of the *Complaynte* and the writer of the heraldic MS.



to have been one and the same! But the fact is, that the contents of this Heraldic MS. (now in the Advocates Library, marked W. 4. 13.) were literally transcribed by Lyndsay from the Harleian MS. 6149, which latter volume, as appears by several entries in it, was translated out of French into Scottish at the command "of anne wirschipfulle man, Weljim Cumyn of Inverellochquy, alias Marchemond Herald, be his obedient sone in the Office of Armes, Kintyre purseuant," in the year 1494. In Lyndsay's time the Harleian MS. was no doubt preserved in the Scottish Office of Arms, which easily accounts for its transcription, and at once destroys all the superstructure raised by Leyden on its contents. In the French text, the word which occasioned this note is written *houson*; in Leyden it is printed *howson*, and in Meyrick *housson*, and interpreted *housing*. I am, however, inclined to believe that *hourson*, the reading of the Harleian MS., is correct, as established by the line in the romance cited above.

*Ibid.* l. 615. *The cercle wat; more o prys.*

This is not the padded wreath worn from the time of Richard II. to Henry IV. on the bacinet, but the more splendid band of goldsmiths' work, enriched with jewels. It is called "bourdoure" in the *Awntyrs of Arthure*, st. xxx. l. 4, and said to be "alle of brynte golde." See numerous examples in Stothard's excellent work; and also consult Du Cange, v. *Bacinetum*; Roquefort's *Glossaire*, Suppl. v. *Helme*; Meyrick's *Inquiry*, Gloss., v. *Helmus*; and Planché's *Hist. of Costume*, p. 160.

*Ibid.* l. 620. *Wyth the pentangel de-paynt,—  
Hit is a symgne that Salomon set sum quyle, etc.*

Those who may wish to know the efficacy of this figure, as devised by Solomon, are referred to "*Lemegeton*, Clavicula Salomonis, or The Little Key of Solomon the King, which containeth all the names, orders and offices of all Spirits, with the seales belonging to each," &c., MS. Sloane, 3825. At f. 221<sup>b</sup>, is the Pentagonal Figure of Solomon, comprising a pentangle within a circle; in the outer triangles is inscribed the name TETRAGRAMMATON, and names of Spirits in the inner divisions. It is directed to be made in ☉ or ♀, and worn upon the breast, with the seal of the Spirit on one side of it, etc.

P. 25. l. 636. *For thy the pentangel nwe  
He ber in schelde and cote.*

This appropriation of arms to Sir Gawayne is purely imaginary on the part of

the author, and borne out by no romance authority. In the *Devise des Armes des Chevaliers de la Table Ronde*, prefixed to the *Roman de Gyron la Courtois*, fol., his arms are thus blasoned, "*Gauvain d'Orcanie portoit de purpre à ung aygle d'or à deux testes, membrées d'azur*;" and this is copied by all the writers on the (pretended) armorial bearings of the Round Table, down to Richard Robinson, who in that very scarce book, "*The Auncient Order, etc., of Prince Arthure*," 4to, Lond., 1583, tells us in his doggerel lines,

In purple shield an Aegle spled  
All golde Sir Gawayne gaue;  
One of the knights most conquerous,  
Hee merits fame to haue.

Amongst them which the Table Rounde  
Enobled with Renowne  
By deeds of Arms in Contreyes cause,  
To bring her foes a-downe.

It is certain, however, that the earlier romancers do not uniformly countenance these arms. In the *Roman du St. Graal*, indeed, pt. ii. ff. cxxxvi<sup>b</sup>, clxii, Gawayne's shield is said to be *de sinople, à ung aigle d'or*, which device was probably bestowed on him from winning the shield of Judas Maccabeus (*ibid.* f. cxxx.), bearing the same insignia; but in the *Roman de Merlin*, vol. i. f. clxiv, Gawayne's banner is described "*de cendal d'Inde, à ung lyon d'argent*," and vol. ii. f. lxxxiii<sup>b</sup>, his shield, "*au lion de sinople, rampant*." So also in the *Roman de Lancelot*, i. f. xcv<sup>b</sup>, his shield is blasoned, "*le champ de l'escu estoit d'or, et ung lyon de gueules*." Again in the German romance of *Wigalois*, l. 5618, his arms are represented to be "*ein wizzer hirtz uf einem berge guldin*," and on an ivory carving of the thirteenth century, representing Sir Gawayne reposing on the enchanted bed, (see *Roman de Perceval*, f. xl.) we find on his shield a *lion's jamb*. Consult Ferrario, *Storia ed Analisi degli antichi romanzi di Cavalleria*, vol. ii. p. 101, 8vo, 1828. By way of adding to this variety, the author of the *Awntyrs of Arthure*, st. xl. tells us his arms were "*griffones of golde, engrelede fulle gaye*," with whom agrees the author of the metrical *Morte Arthure* in the Lincoln MS., fol. 93<sup>b</sup>.

*Ibid.* l. 648. *At this cause the knyzt comlyche hade*  
*In the more half of his schelde hir ymage depaynted.*

The author has introduced the Virgin on Gawayne's shield in imitation of *Pridwen*, the famous shield of Arthur, on which her image was similarly depicted. The

passage in Geoffrey of Monmouth, lib. ix. c. 3, appears thus in the early English version of *Lazamon*.

He heng an his sweore  
 ænne sceld deore;  
 his nome wes on Bruttisc  
*Pridwen* ihaten;  
 ther wes innen igrauen,  
 mid rede gold stauen,  
 an on-licnes deore  
 of Drihtenes Moder.

See my edition of this valuable old poet, now in the press, vol. ii. p. 464, and Notes on the passage. A curious tradition or legend on the subject, evidently composed by the Monks at Glastonbury, and intitled "*Quedam narracio de nobili rege Arthuro, in sacramento altaris non plene credente, qualiter confirmatus fuit in fide, factus vere credens, et quare mutavit arma sua,*" is preserved in the Bodleian Library, and together with several other Latin legends relating to the heroes of the Round Table, may hereafter be published by me, accompanied by translations and notes.

P. 27. l. 691. *The realme of Logres.*

In the *Roman de Merlin*, ff. xcvi<sup>a</sup>, cxvii<sup>b</sup>, Logres is merely the name of London, "*la maitresse cité*" of Arthur's kingdom, but in the present instance it means England in general. Supposing Gawayne to set out on his expedition from *Camelot* in Somersetshire, he must have proceeded (in case he did not cross the Severn) through Gloucestershire and adjoining counties into Montgomeryshire, and thence by a very circuitous route to Holyhead, adjoining the isle of Anglesea, from which he passes into the long narrow peninsula of Wirral in Cheshire, the uninhabited and waste state of which in the sixteenth century is borne out by historical facts. (See Ormerod's *Cheshire*, vol. ii. p. 187.) The knight thence pursues his way over hill and moor, until he arrives at an immense forest, the locality of which would lead us to presume it to be Inglewood forest in Cumberland, which is elsewhere celebrated in romance. The object of his search, "*the grene chapel,*" is stated to be but two miles distant from a castle in this forest, in which Gawayne takes up his abode. Although in cases of this sort the imagination of the romance-writer generally is the sole guide of his pen, yet I cannot help thinking some allusion may be made to the "*Chapel of the Grune,*" which in the older maps of Cumberland is marked as existing on

the point of land on the western coast running into the æstuary of the Wampool, not far from Skinburness, which forms part of Allerdale ward, below Derwent, but its history I have in vain searched for in various topographical works. Close to this was *Woltsty* or *Vulstey* castle, said to have been built by the Abbots of Holm Cultram, to secure their treasures; and here also are said to have been preserved the magic books of the wizard Michael Scott. Hutchinson's *Cumberland*, i. 329, ii. 327, 340, 4to, 1794.

P. 30, l. 774. *Jesus and say [saynt] Gilyan.*

The latter is Saint *Julian*, who in his character of "the gode herberjour," was noted for supplying way-worn travellers with lodgings in a time of need. See Tyrwhitt's Note on Chaucer, C. T. v. 342.

P. 36, l. 957. *That other with a gorger was gered over the swyre.*

The gorger or wimple is stated first to have appeared in Edward the First's reign, and an example is found on the monument of Aveline, countess of Lancaster, who died in 1269. The fashion continued partially during the fourteenth century, for Chaucer's Wife of Bath is so dressed, and the usage may have lasted longer in Scotland than in England. It makes its appearance again in the reign of Henry the Sixth, as appears by the monument of Elizabeth, wife of John de la Pole, duke of Suffolk. It may be observed, however, that from the poem the usage of the *gorger* would seem to have been confined to the elderly ladies.

P. 39, l. 1022. *The ioye of sayn Joneȝ day watȝ gentyle to here.*

This is the 27th of December, and the last of the feast. Sometimes the Christmas festivities were prolonged to New Year's Day.

P. 43, l. 1126. This and the succeeding stanza are quoted by Mr. Guest in his "*History of English Rhythms*," vol. ii. p. 166, accompanied by a translation, which is often faulty, as will be occasionally pointed out in the Glossary. The minute particulars given here and elsewhere of "wode-crafte," may seem to have been suggested by the similar passage in the romance of Sir Tristrem; but whether this be so or not, the present poem has greatly the superiority, both in the extent of the details and the more graphic character given to them.

The plan of hunting the deer here described may be explained as follows. On assembling at the kennel, the hounds were called out and coupled, and the hunters blew on their bugles three short *moots* or notes, which was responded to by the

baying of the dogs. The *veuters*, or men who judged of the game by the *fewte* or scent, then proceeded to the stations (*trysteres*) marked out, and the dogs were cast off. The deer, roused from the dale by the cry, seek refuge in the heights (*the hyze*), but are there driven back by the parties (*stablye*) appointed, who allow the male deer and bucks to pass, but drive back the hinds and does with shouts; and as they fly, followed by the dogs, they are pierced with arrows, or should they escape the bowmen, are pulled down and killed by the greyhounds at the stations below. Compare the passages in the *Awntyrs of Arthure*, st. iv. v.; Romance of *Clariodus*, p. 246; and *Wyntoun*, vi. 16, 15, vii. 1, 46.

P. 50, l. 1327. *And didden hem derely vndo, as the dede askez.*

The process here described may be compared with that in *Sir Tristrem*, p. 158, and in Dame Juliana Berner's *Book of St. Albans*, sign. e. i. edit. 1496. See also *La Venerie de Jaques de Fouilloux*, 4to, Paris, 1585, cap. 44; and *A Jewell for Gentry*, [by T. S.] 4to, Lond., 1614, sign. F. 2. The description runs thus, as far as the obscurity of the technical terms used enables me to interpret it. After taking the *assay*, or depth of the fat, they slit the *slot* (the hollow above the breast-bone, or, according to others, the pit of the stomach), and take out the *erber* (the conduit leading to the stomach), cut it with a sharp knife, and tie up the severed parts; then rip the four limbs, and rend off the hide. They next open the belly, and take out the bowels, cutting away lustily, and bear away the *knot*; then grasping the *gargulun*, they quickly divide the *weasand* or gullet from the wind-hole, and throw out the small guts. Afterwards they proceed to carve out the shoulders, by a small aperture, so as to keep the sides whole, and divide the breast in halves. Then beginning again at the *gargulun*, the deer is slit up to the fork; the *avancers* are voided out, and the fillets cut away by the ribs, and so by the ridge-bone even to the haunch, all of which form the *noumbles*, and are taken away together. By the fork of the thighs they lance the flaps behind, and hew it in two parts by the back-bone. After this the head and neck are cut off, and next the sides severed from the chine; the raven's bone or fee is cast on a bush, and the sides pierced through and hung upon the houghs of the haunches(?), as the fee of those who were entitled to them. Lastly, they feed their hounds on the hide, with the liver, lights, and skin of the paunch, mingled with bread dipt in blood, and blow *prys*, consisting of "two longe notes and the rechate." The latter part of this ceremony, then considered so important, is amply described in the *Mayster of the Game*, a treatise compiled for king Henry the Fifth, when prince; but the details are passed over as belonging "moor to wodemannys craft than to hunters." See MS. Cott.

Vesp. B. xii. f. 94. The modern practice of breaking a deer may be found in "*L'école de la Chasse*," par M. le Verrier de la Conterie, 8vo, Rouen, 1763, part ii. p. 182.

P. 54, l. 1440. *Long sythen for the sounder that wist for olde.*

The meaning of this line is obscure, but it seems to be, that the boar from its age had long since quitted the *sounder* or herd; according to the Book of St. Alban's,

Now to speke of the boore, the fyrste year he is  
A pygge of the *sounder* callyd, as haue I blys;  
The seconde yere an hogge, and soo shall he be,  
And an hoggestere, whan he is of yeres thre;  
And when he is foure yere, a boore shall he be,  
From the *sounder* of the swyne thenne departyth he;  
A synguler is he soo, for alone he woll go.

*Edit.* 1496, *Sign.* d. i.

See also the treatise on hunting, by Twety, MS. Cott. Vesp. A. xii. f. 3<sup>b</sup>, and the chapter in the *Mayster of the Game*, on the wild boar, f. 33.

P. 60, l. 1605. *Thenne a wyȝe that watȝ wys vpon wod-crafteȝ, etc.*

This process of *unlacing* or *undoing* the boor is told more at length in the Book of St. Alban's, sign. e, i, and the reward given to the hounds is especially noticed in another passage.

Through your houndys by strengthe yf that he be dede,  
They shall haue the bowelles boylyd wyth the brede.

*Sign.* d. i<sup>b</sup>.

And so also in the treatise ascribed to Twety, written originally in French, in the time of Edward the Second. "And whanne the boor is itake, he be deffetyd al value, and he shal haue xxxii hasteletys; and ye shal ȝif your houndys the bowellis boyled w<sup>t</sup> breed, and it is callyd reward, for cause that it is etyn on the erthe, and not on the skynne."—f. 6<sup>b</sup>.

P. 63, l. 1699. *Summe fel in the fute, ther the fox bade, etc.*

That the hunting of the fox was an accustomed sport as early as the beginning of the thirteenth century we have the authority of Lazamon, who in his translation of the *Brut* inserts a passage not in his original, in which king Arthur compares the position of Cheldric, in the forest of Caledon, to that of bold Reynard after a chase,

when he is fain to take to his hole, and is unearthed by his pursuers. See vol. ii. p. 451. A drawing on this subject executed soon after the year 1300, is copied by Strutt in his *Sports and Pastimes*, from MS. Reg. 2 B. vii. In the *Mayster of the Game* it is said, "The huntynge for the foxe is faire for the good crie of the houndis that folowene hym so nye, and with so good a wille; alway thei senten of hym, for he fleth by thik spoies, and also for he stinketh euermore, and with gret payne he wil leeue a couert whan he is therinne," etc., f. 42<sup>b</sup>. Yet notwithstanding this commendation, fox-hunting seems to have been but in little repute in the fifteenth century, and is almost wholly passed over in the *Book of St. Alban's*. The description of the fox-chase given in stanzas xxiii, xxiv, and xxxi, forms one of the most spirited parts of the poem, and are certainly the earliest extant on the subject among Scottish writers.

P. 64, l. 1738. *No hwez goud on hir hede, bot the hazer stones  
Trased aboute hir tressour, etc.*

The fret in which the hair was confined forms a remarkable feature of the female coiffure in the reigns of Richard the Second and Henry the Fourth, and was composed of gold wire studded with precious stones. See Chaucer's *Floure and the Leafe*, l. 152; Kempe's Introd. to Stothard's *Monumental Effigies*, p. 15; and Planché's *Hist. of Costume*, p. 166. Compare also the tracing of the rude illumination in the original MS. of the poem, representing the lady's visit to Sir Gawayne.

P. 75, l. 2015. *Fyrst he clad hym in his clothez, etc.*

The process of arming is not so minutely described here as in p. 23, but consists merely in putting on the ordinary apparel, and then the armour, namely, a hauberk (*paunce*), a pair of plates for the back and breast, and a byrny or haburgeon of steel rings, which would almost seem superfluous. Over all these was cast the surcoat of velvet, embroidered with the knight's conisance in precious stones, and furred.

P. 77, l. 2081. *Vch hille had a hatte, a myst-hakel huge.*

In Chalmers's *Caledonia*, vol. iii. p. 211, a local proverb is quoted, which bears the same phraseology,

When cloudy Cairnmuir hath a *hat*,  
Pilnour and Skairs laugh at that.

Fuller in his *Worthies*, preserves a similar saying in Cumberland, vol. i. p. 234, 4to, 1811.

P. 89, l. 2419. *Wat, blended w<sup>t</sup> Barsabe.*

By *Barsabe* the writer means *Bath-sheba*, the wife of Uriah the Hittite. See 2 Sam. cap. xi.

P. 90, l. 2446. *Thur, myzt of Morgne la Faye, that in my hous lenges,  
In koyntyse of clergye bi craftes wel lerned ;  
The maystres of Merlyn, etc.*

The fame of this lady is known to all readers of romance, and more particularly of the *Romance of Merlin*, in which a minute description of her personal appearance and accomplishments is given. See Southey's Notes on *Morte d'Arthure*, ii. 468. It is acknowledged on all sides that she received her instruction in the art of magic from the "conable klerk" Merlin, and from her proficiency was called "*Morgain la fée*," which our author has rendered "*Morgne the goddess*." Yet he seems by calling her "*the maystres of Merlyn*," and speaking of her amours with that sage personage, to have unwittingly confounded her with her rival in the science of necromancy, Vivienne, the Lady of the Lake. Merlin's love for the latter, and her deception of him by means of the art he had taught her, are related in various places; but there is no authority, as far as my reading extends, for the assertion in the poem, beyond that of the writer himself. The cause of Morgain's hate to queen Guenever, alluded to in the text, l. 2460, was occasioned by an intrigue between the former and a knight named Guyomars, which was discovered and revealed by the queen. *Roman de Merlin*, i. f. clxxx<sup>b</sup>; *Roman de Lancelot*, i. f. cxevi; Le Grand's *Fabliaux*, i. 152, ed. 1829. In the romance of "*Ywaine and Gawin*," printed in Ritson, a lady says she has a precious ointment, given to her by "*Morgain the Wise*." This undoubtedly refers to the enchantress, and Ritson in his Notes, vol. iii. p. 239, interprets it erroneously. The *Prophecies* of Merlin attribute to the Lady of the Lake a deeper knowledge of magic than Morgain, and a curious story is related of a trial of skill between Morgain, the Lady of Avalon, Sibille, the enchantress, and the queen of North Wales. If, says the compiler, the Lady of the Lake had been there, "*toute la subtilité du monde y seroit*." Morgain conjures up a legion of devils to carry away the Lady of Avalon, but they are repulsed, and Morgain herself comes in person, reading her magical book as she advances. Her opponent, however, is prepared for her, and having on a ring, the power of which is such as to obtain instantly whatever the possessor demands, she comes forward to Morgain, and asks for all her clothes, which of course immediately leave the wearer, and Merlin's pupil, to her extreme surprise, finds herself "*al so naked as she was borne*" in the midst of her attendants! The Lady of Avalon laughs



at her confusion, but in pity takes off her surcoat, and gives it to the vanquished and angry enchantress.—“*‘Ha !’ dame, ‘fait Morgain, vous m’avez honnye, car l’on cuidoit que je fusse de jeune aage, et ilz ont veu ma chair nue et ridée, et mes mamelles pendans, et aussi la peau de mon ventre, dont la nouvelle sera comptée en maint lieu.’ ‘Morgain,’ fait la Dame d’Avallon, ‘je sçay certainement que par maintes fois avez esté en vostre lict toute nue avec maint beau chevalier.’ ‘En nom Dieu,’ fait Morgain, ‘se je y ay esté, aussi me suys-je baignée, et oings tous mes membres, dont les chevaliers les troverent toutes fresches et dures,’*” fol. cxxxi<sup>b</sup>. The author of the poem had therefore good authority for his description of the “auncian” lady. See l. 961.

---

## The Awntyrs of Arthure at the Terne Wathelyne.

---

**T**WO Manuscripts of this romance exist. Of these one is at present in the Bodleian Library, which previously belonged to Baynes, Ritson and Douce, and from a transcript of this MS. the poem was first printed (“surreptitiously,” says Ritson,) by Pinkerton, in his “*Scotish Poems*,” vol. iii. p. 197, 12mo, 1792, under the title of “SIR GAWAN AND SIR GALARON OF GALLOWAY.” He divided it into two parts, and prefixed an argument to each, but his text is extremely incorrect, and, as he was confessedly ignorant of the language, his Glossary exhibits many errors. From this edition, bad as it is, the first twenty-six stanzas were transferred to Sibbald’s “*Chronicle of Scotish Poetry*,” 8vo, 1802, vol. i. p. xvii. Another transcript of this MS., made about the middle of the last century, was in the library of Heber (Sale Cat. No. 1121, where it is stated to have been copied “from a MS. penes Nickols,”) and was purchased subsequently by Sir Thomas Phillipps, Bart. The second

copy of the poem is preserved in the library of Lincoln Cathedral, marked A. i. 17, but is, unfortunately, not quite perfect. From this MS. the romance was again printed by Laing, in his "*Select Remains of the Ancient Popular Poetry of Scotland*," 4to, 1822, and the deficiencies supplied from Mr. Douce's manuscript. The age of the latter MS. is assigned by Pinkerton and Laing to the reign of Henry the Sixth, but I do not think it can claim a higher antiquity than the period of his successor, or about the years 1460-1480. The Lincoln copy is undoubtedly earlier, being written, with many other pieces in the same volume, between the years 1430-1440.<sup>1</sup> It has therefore been judged advisable, in printing this curious poem for the third time, to take the Lincoln MS. for the ground-work of the text, and where defective, inserting the lines from the later copy, the variations of which throughout are very carefully noted. There are many clerical errors in both manuscripts, which were no doubt written in England, and therefore do not present a genuine Scottish text, yet enough remains to prove the romance to be of Northern original. The readings of the Douce MS. are sometimes preferable, but as it is a dangerous practice to attempt to unite copies written at different periods and in different parts of the kingdom, the variations of the later copy have been kept quite distinct. Both the MSS. having been placed by the liberality of the owners, the Dean and Chapter of Lincoln and the late Francis Douce, Esq., for a considerable period in the hands of the editor, an opportunity was thereby afforded of transcribing and collating them more minutely than had previously been possible, and it is believed that the present edition may on that account lay claim to greater accuracy than its predecessors.

The authorship of this poem has been generally ascribed to *Clerk of Tranent*, who is believed, with every appearance of probability, to have lived in the early part of the fifteenth century. The authority on which this supposition rests is a passage in the poem of Dunbar, intitled "*Lament for the deth of the Makkaris*," written about the year 1507, in which he says,

*Clerk of Tranent eik he hes tane,  
That maid the awnteris of Gawane.*<sup>2</sup>

The Maitland MS. reads *The clerk*, which has occasioned Macpherson<sup>3</sup>, and, after him, Sibbald and Heber, to conjecture, that *Hucheon* or Hugh may have been his christian name, and consequently that the *Huchowne* of Wyntoun and the *Clerk* of Dunbar were the same individual. But this conjecture has no probability in it, and is satisfactorily refuted by the internal evidence of the poem itself. From the simi-

<sup>1</sup> See the description of this MS. annexed to the *Introduction* of the present volume.

<sup>2</sup> Edit. Laing, vol. i. p. 214.

<sup>3</sup> Notes on *Wyntoun*, ii. 364.

larity of style, the peculiar construction of the stanza, and the subject, it is almost certain, that the writer of the *Awntyrs of Arthure* must also have been the author<sup>1</sup> of *Golagros and Gawane*, and it will hence appear how inconsiderately the composition of these poems has been assigned by Sir Walter Scott<sup>2</sup>, Ellis<sup>3</sup>, Sibbald<sup>4</sup>, and Tytler<sup>5</sup> to the thirteenth century! The language alone, had it been studied, would prove the error of such an hypothesis, which is more completely demonstrated by the *costume* of these pieces, and by the structure of the *wheel* attached to each stanza. Another feature of these poems consists in the repetition of a leading thought or expression, which served to knit the lines together and assist the memory, but this is not confined to poems of the fifteenth century, nor indeed to Scottish poetry; for the usage occurs in Minot's poems, composed in the middle of the fourteenth century, and was borrowed from the middle-age Latin writers, among whom such verses were called *serpentine*.

The sources from which the Scottish writers derived their romance poems has been too hastily referred by Sir Walter Scott to the floating British traditions of Arthur's cycle<sup>6</sup>; an opinion repeated by Leyden<sup>7</sup>, Laing<sup>8</sup>, and Tytler<sup>9</sup>. This assertion I hold to be true to a very limited extent. Allowing even *Sir Tristrem* to be the work of a native of Scotland, (which I do not,) nothing is more certain than its derivation from an Anglo-Norman text; and the same fact is indisputable in the instances of the romances of *Sir Gawayne and the Grene Knyzt*, and *Golagros and Gawane*. In regard to the poem which these remarks more particularly apply to, the author refers to "the buke," but whether this is, as often, a mere form of words, I have met with no evidence to prove. It is, however, not to be doubted, that the groundwork of the first portion of the poem is taken from a very popular religious legend among the Latin writers of the middle-age, which is found in various forms, but with the same general outline,—the appearance of a female in torments, who has been punished for her want of chastity, pride, and vanity, and whose salvation is procured by a certain number of masses said for her soul. In my edition of the old English versions of the *Gesta Romanorum*, printed for the Roxburghe Club, 4to, 1838, will be found several notices on the subject, Notes, p. 528. There is an inedited English poem of the fifteenth century, called "*The Trental of St. Gregory*," MS. Cott.

<sup>1</sup> Ellis commits a grievous error in ascribing the *English* romance of *Ywain and Gawin* to Clerk. See *Met. Rom.* i. 345.

<sup>2</sup> Preface to *Sir Tristrem*, p. 57, ed. 1833.

<sup>3</sup> Ellis, *Met. Rom.*, i. 129.

<sup>4</sup> *Chron. of Sc. Poetr.*, i. p. xvi.; but he also assigns the years 1341—1371 as its æra.

<sup>5</sup> *Hist. of Scotland*, ii. 359, 8vo, 1829.

<sup>6</sup> Pref. *Sir Tristr.* p. 57.

<sup>7</sup> *Compl. Scotl.* p. 208.

<sup>8</sup> *Pop. Poetr. Scotl.*, pref. to *The Awntyrs*.

<sup>9</sup> *Hist. Scotl.* ii. 359.

Calig. A. II. f. 84<sup>b</sup>, founded on the same story, in which Pope Gregory plays the part that queen Guenever does in the Scottish romance. It may be worth while to quote a few lines to shew the similarity of the tales.

The pope as he at hys masse stode  
 Vpon hys modur he hadde throwȝt goode,  
 Praying to god w<sup>t</sup> conciens clere,  
 The sothe to knowe as hit were;  
 And sodenly yn myddes hys masse  
 Ther throwȝ to hym suche a derkenesse  
 Th<sup>t</sup> he lakkede ner the dayes lyȝt,  
 For hit was derke as mydnyȝt.  
 In th<sup>t</sup> derkenes was myste among,  
 Alle astonyed he stode, so hit stongke!  
 Be syde he loked vnthur hys lere;  
 In th<sup>t</sup> derknes a thyng threw hym nere,  
 A wonthurfulle gryselly creature,  
 Aftur a fend fyred, w<sup>t</sup> alle here feture;  
 Alle ragged & rente, both elenge & euelle,  
 As orrybulle to beholde as any deuelle;  
 Mowthe, face, eres, and yes  
 Brenned alle fulle of brennyng lyes.  
 He was so agast of th<sup>t</sup> grysyly goste  
 That yn a sownyng he was almoste.

He accosts the spirit, who answers him thus:

I am thy modur th<sup>t</sup> the beere,  
 Th<sup>t</sup> for vnschryuen dedes so derne  
 In byttyr paynes thus Y brenne.

He inquires the cause, and is told it is the consequence of her living in lusts and refusing to confess.

The pope lette teres adown renne,  
 And to hys modyr he sayde then,  
 Telle me now, modur, for loue of Mary, flour,  
 If any thyng may the help or sokour,  
 Bedes or masse thy penaunce to bye,  
 Or ony fastyng thy sorowe to aleye?

She requires a *trental* of masses, and then departs.

It need scarcely be remarked how immeasurably the Scottish poet has the advantage over the English writer.

Of the second part of the romance I have not been so fortunate as to find the prototype, but in the *Morte d'Arthur* of Malory, professedly compiled from the French, *Syr Galleron of Galway* is introduced as a knight of the Table Round, "the whiche was a noble knyghte, and had done many dedes of armes, and he was a large knyght of flesshe and boone," vol. ii. p. 197. Of his "many dedes of armes" scarcely any information is given, but we find him again included among the knights who watch together for the purpose of surprising Lancelot du Lac in queen Guenever's chamber. "And these were their names: Syr Colgreuaunce, Syr Mador de la Porte, Syre Gyngalyne, Syr Melyot de Logrys, Syre Petypase of Wynchelse, Syr *Galleron of Galway*, Syr Melyon of the Montayne, Sir Astamore, Syre Gromore Somor joure [*read Grummors sone*], Syr Curselayne, Syr Florence, Syr Louel. So these twelue knyghtes were with Sir Mordred and Sir Agrauiayne, and *al they were of Scotland, outhur of Syr Gawayn's kynne*, outhur well willers to his bretheren."—*Morte d'Arthur*, vol. ii. p. 392.

P. 95, st. i. l. 2. *By the Terne Wahethelyne.*

This is still the name of a small *tarn* or lake, which covers about an hundred acres of land in the forest of Inglewood, near Hesketh in Cumberland. Towards the north-east end were the remains, in 1794, of an ancient castle, called popularly *Castle Hewin*. Hutchinson's *Cumberland*, i. 491. The spot is again alluded to in the romance-tale or ballad on the Marriage of Sir Gawayne, printed by Percy, *Reliques*, iii. 351, ed. 1794, and reprinted in the Appendix to the present volume. Consult Ritson's *King Arthur*, p. 93.

*Ibid.* st. i. l. 3. *Carelele.*

Carlisle in Cumberland is here evidently intended, but in the French romances we always find *Cardueil*, which is represented to be "*en la marche de Galles*" in the *Rom. de Perceval*, f. lxxvi<sup>b</sup>, where we may conclude that Caerleon on Usk, in Monmouthshire, may be meant. See Lady C. Guest's Note on the *Mabinogion*, pt. i. p. 87.

P. 96, st. iii. l. 4. *That borne was in Burgoyne.*

This must refer to the birth-place of Gawayne's steed, since neither himself nor the Queen were born in Burgundy. Perhaps, however, it is a poetical license, for the sake of the alliteration.

P. 99, st. viii. l. 5. *Sir Cadore, Sir Caduke, Sir Costarde, Sir Kaye.*

*Cador* was earl of Cornwall, and acts a conspicuous part in the *Brut*. He was slain with the flower of the knights of the Round Table in the battle against *Mordred*, and his son *Constantine* succeeded *Arthur* in the kingdom. Mr. Douce's MS. reads *Sir Cleges*, whose name occurs several times in the *Morte d'Arthur*, and of whom exists a romance printed by Weber, vol. i. p. 331. *Sir Caduke* is doubtless *Sir Cradock* (the *Carados* of French romance,) who is the hero of the amusing tale of *The Boy and the Mantle*, in Percy, vol. iii. p. 3. *Sir Costarde* is probably a false reading for *Constantyne*, *Cador's* son; and *Sir Kaye* is the well-known *Senechal* of *Arthur*.

P. 102, st. xii. l. 2. *Than Beryke or Brangwayne.*

*Brangwayne* is sufficiently well known as the accommodating attendant of *La belle Iseult*, (see Scott's Notes on *Sir Tristrem*, pp. 418, 450, and Michel's *Tristan*, ii. 163, 12mo, 1835); but of the other lady, *Beryke*, or *Berelle* (as Douce's MS. reads,) no mention has been found, either in French or English romancers.

P. 103, st. xiii. l. 11. *Nowe moyse one this mirroure, etc.*

Compare some corresponding lines in *Golagros and Gawane*, l. 1230.

P. 104, st. xvi. l. 7. *My modir.*

The name of queen *Gayenour's* or *Guenever's* mother is not here expressed, nor have I met with it elsewhere. According to romance authority she must have been the wife of *Leodegan*, king of *Carmelide*. The vices she accuses herself of are imaginary, and introduced from the old religious legend, invented for the purpose of shewing the efficacy of confession and mass.

P. 108, st. xxii. l. 2. *The Frolo and the Farnaghe.*

*Arthur's* combat with, and victory over *Frolo*, the *tribune* or governor of *Gaul* under the Romans, is related by *Geoffrey*, lib. ix. cap. 11, and amplified afterwards by *Wace* and *Lazamon*. The same personage is introduced into the *Roman de Merlin*, p. ii. f. ix, and *Roman de Lancelot*, ii. f. lxiv<sup>b</sup>. Who is meant by the *Farnaghe*, I am at a loss to discover, and from the reading of Douce's MS. one would suspect some error here. In the inedited *Morte Arthure*, *Fortune* says to the British monarch,

Fownde abbayes in Fraunce, the froyte; are thyne awene,  
Fore *Frolle*, and for *Feraunt*, and for thir ferse knyghttis,  
That thowe fremydly in Fraunce has faye be-leuede.

*MS. Linc. f. 89.*

This *Sir Feraunt* was slain by Sir Florent, in a battle between Sir Gawayne and the Lorainers and Lombards, *ib. f. 82<sup>b</sup>*. Compare Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*, book v. cap. 11. It may be remarked that the reading of the Douce MS. in the latter part of the line is fully confirmed by the passage quoted above.

P. 109, st. xxiii. l. 1. *A knyghte salle kenly*, etc.

Few readers of romance will have to be reminded that the traitor Mordred, generally termed Arthur's nephew, but in reality his bastard son by the wife of king Loth, is here intended. According to Malory, book xxi. cap. 1, he was crowned at Canterbury. For a personal description of Mordred, see *Roman de Lancelot*, ii. f. lxix. His treason was first communicated to Arthur, after the final defeat of the Romans, in Tuscany.

*Ibid.* st. xxiii. l. 8. *Be-syde Ramessaye, fulle ryghte at a rydyng; And at Dorsett salle dy doghetyeste of alle.*

The scene of the fatal battle with Mordred is placed by Geoffrey of Monmouth and his followers near the river Camel in Cornwall, which by French writers and many of our modern historians is called *Camlan*. Lazamon, the translator of Wace in the reign of King John, adds from himself, that the precise spot was at *Camelford*. See my edition of that writer, vol. iii. p. 141. The author of a short metrical *Brut*, in the MS. Red Book of Bath, calls it Camelerton. It is therefore difficult to explain the statement in the passage above cited, which is manifestly erroneous, and opposed to the stanza immediately following, in which the writer says "upponne Cornewayle coste." Sir Thomas Malory, apparently without any authority, removes the action to "a doune besyde Salysbury," vol. ii p. 436.

*Ibid.* st. xxiv. l. 7. . . . . *that beris of sabille  
A sawtire engrelede, of siluer fulle schene.*

This is also an invention of the poet, and not in accordance with the romance authorities, which state Mordred's arms to have been similar to his half-brothers, "*de*

*pourpre à un aigle à deux testes d'or, membrées de mesmes, à un chef d'argent."* See *La Devise*, etc., *des Chevaliers de la Table Ronde*.

P. 110, st. xxv. l. 9. In the Lincoln MS. the scribe has negligently inserted in the place of this line the last five lines of st. xviii., but with some variations from his previous text, as follows:

To mene me w <sup>t</sup> meffes grete mede to the it were ;	
Bot for hym þ <sup>t</sup> raghte was one rode,	
Gyffe fatte of thi gude	Whilles þ <sup>t</sup> þou arte here.
To þam' þat fayles the fude,	

P. 111, st. xxvi. l. 12. *To Rondolfe sett haille.*

Of *Randulphs*, or *Randals Hall*, I have been unable to fix the locality. It may be, as in other instances, an imaginary spot.

P. 113, st. xxx. l. 12. *And his cheuarone by-forne*  
*Stode als ane vnycorne*, etc.

*Cheuarone* is here used for the *chanfron* or *chanfrain*, i. e. the piece of armour which protected the horse's head. Sir S. Meyrick states, *Critical Inquiry*, vol. ii. p. 143, that the invention of a spike in front of the chanfron is to be assigned to the end of Henry the Sixth's reign; and Planche, in his *Hist. of Costume*, p. 205, says "chanfrons, with spikes projecting from them, were adopted about 1467." Were this true, the date of the poem before us would be brought lower than the period we are from other circumstances justified in considering it to belong to. In an inventory dated 1316, I find mention made of two "chanfrains dorez, et un de cuir," and in the *Assisæ Hierosolymitanæ*, which Sir S. Meyrick considers to belong to the reign of Edward the Third, we have in cap. 95, the following passage, "Et le cheval doit estre couvert de couverture de fer (as in the present poem, st. xxx. l. 6,) et avoir une testiere de fer, et enmi la testiere une broche de fer, telle come celle de l'escu." See *Crit. Inq.* i. 124.

P. 115, st. xxxiii. l. 3. *Of Konynge, of Carryke, of Conynghame, of Kyll,*  
*Of Lomonde, of Lenay, of Lowthyane hillis.*

For *Konynge* the Douce MS. reads *Connok*, which is right, as confirmed by st. liii, l. 3. The parishes of Old Cumnock and New Cumnock, in Ayrshire, were formerly comprehended in one, and constituted a barony, which in the fourteenth cen-



ture belonged to the earls of March. See Chalmers's *Caledonia*, iii. 521. The same writer says it is difficult to decide when the Celtic districts of Carrick, Cunningham, and Kyle were formed into the present county of Ayrshire, and that in the time of Henry the Third Carrick was described as being in Galloway, a name applied loosely to the whole peninsula between the Solway and the Clyde, including Annandale and Ayrshire. By the ancient division of this county *Carrick* occupied the southern side of the Doon; *Kyle*, the space between the rivers Doon and Irvine; and Cunningham the whole territory on the north of the last-mentioned river. *Ibid.* iii. 249, 446. *Lomonde* is in Dumbartonshire, and for *Lenay*, or, as MS. Douce reads, *Losex*, we should probably read *Lenaux*, Lennox, an ancient district now partitioned between the counties of Stirling and Dumbarton.

P. 117, st. xxxvii. l. 7. *By that, one Plutone land a palais was piȝt.*

Perhaps Plumpton Park or Land is alluded to, situate in the parish of Lazenby, Leath ward, Cumberland, about six miles from Penrith.

P. 118, st. xxxviii. l. 1. *Krudely, the erles sone of Kent.*

I can find no such person among the knights of Arthur's court.

P. 119, st. xl. l. 2. *Griffones of golde.*

See Note on the previous poem, l. 686.

P. 122, st. xlv. l. 5. *Stones of iral they strenkel and strewe.*

The absence of this and of numerous other terms which occur in the present and following poems from Jamieson's Dictionary, induces me unwillingly to believe, that his work was executed but carelessly. The Doctor, had he pleased, might have found the word repeated in another piece he professes to have consulted.

Hir peytrelle was of *irale* fyne,  
Hir cropoure was of orpharé,  
And als clere golde hir brydille it schone;  
One aythir syde hange bellys three.

*Thomas off Eresyldoune*, MS. Linc., A. 1. 17, f. 149<sup>b</sup>.

The meaning of the term, I confess, I am ignorant of. This practice of wearing precious stones on the armour became very general during the fourteenth

and fifteenth centuries, and the allusions to it in this and the succeeding poem are extremely frequent. So in a curious passage in the inedited *Morte Arthure*:

Thane ryse; the riche kynge, and rawghte one his wedys ;  
 A reedde actone of Rosse, the richeste of floures,  
 A pesane, and a paunsone, and a pris girdelle,  
 And one he henttes a hode of scharlette fulle riche ;  
 A Pauys pillione hatt, that pighte was fulle faire  
 W<sup>t</sup> perry of the oryent, and precyous stones ;  
 His gloues gayliche gilte, and grauene by the hemmys,  
 W<sup>t</sup> graynes of rubyes, fulle gracious to schewe.

MS. Linc. A. 1, 17, f. 89<sup>b</sup>.

P. 125, st. li. l. 4. *Syr Owayne fyt; Uryene, and Arrake, fulle rathe,  
 Marrake, and Menegalle, that maste were of myghte.*

The reading of the Douce MS. *Arrak fi; Lake*, is the more preferable. See with regard to this hero and Sir Owayne, the notes on the previous poem, ll. 113, 551. The third on the list is called *Syre Mewreke* in the romance of *Syre Gawene and the Carle of Carelyle*, l. 34, and appears to be the same as "Sir *Marrok*, the good knyghte, that was bitrayed with his wyf, for she made him seuen yere a werwolf," in Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*, ii. 385, and on a similar story is founded the *Lai de Bisclaveret* of Marie, ed. Roquefort, tome i. p. 179. For *Menegalle* (*Moylard*, MS. Douce,) we should perhaps read *Menadeuke*, a knight of Arthur's table frequently joined to the former, as in the following passage :

Sir *Ewayne* and Sir *Errake*, and othire gret lordes ;  
 Demenys the medilwarde menskefully thare aftyre,  
 With *Merrake* and *Menyduke*, myghtly of strengthes.

MS. Linc., 95<sup>b</sup>.

Both of these heroes were slain in the battle against Mordred. *Ibid.* f. 97<sup>b</sup>.

P. 126, st. lii. l. 4. *Gryffons castelle, etc.*

I must leave the illustration of this and the two following lines to those who may be more able to give it than myself. The readings of the Douce MS. make the localities still more perplexing than in the text.

P. 126, st. liii. l. 2. *Alle the landes and the lythes, fra Lowyke to Layre,*

. . . . .  
*The Lebynge, the Lowpynge, the Leveastre Ile.*

To elucidate the names of places probably disfigured by the English scribes of the MSS. requires more local knowledge than I possess, and no assistance has been derived from Macpherson's *Geographical Illustrations*, 4to, 1796, who ought to have had the passage before him. I heartily recommend the task to some Scottish antiquary.

P. 128, end. *In Yggillwode foreste, at the Ternwathelayne.*

Inglewood forest in Cumberland was of great extent, being sixteen miles long and ten broad, lying between the rivers Shawk and Eden, and reaching from Carlisle to Penrith. It formerly abounded with deer, wild swine, and other beasts of the chase. In the Chronicle of Lanercost, under the year 1280, it is said that king Edward the First hunted there, and killed two hundred harts and hinds. The writer of the poem therefore in making this the scene of Arthur's adventure, renders his romance authority of greater credit, by its being supported by historical probability.

---

## Golagros and Gawane.

---

THE present poem is so intimately connected with the preceding one in subject and style, that the authorship of both has been almost by general consent ascribed to one and the same writer, and consequently to the same period. Unfortunately no manuscript of the work is now known to exist, either in Scotland or England, and the only copy that can be traced is the one formerly contained in the Asloan MS. in the Auchinleck library, written about 1515, but sub-

sequently, together with many other pieces of interest, severed from the volume. In the index of contents still remaining it is entered as "*Sir Golagrus and Sir Gawane*." For its preservation from total oblivion we are indebted to the earliest efforts of the Scottish press, established at Edinburgh, in 1508, by Chepman and Myllar, and it is, perhaps, owing to the popularity of their edition, that we find *Gauen and Gollagras* mentioned among the tales enumerated in the *Complaynte of Scotland*, 1549. In Lyndsay's *Historie of Squyer Meldrum*, composed about the same period, we also read,

Rolland with Brandwell, his bricht brand,  
Faucht never better, hand for hand,  
Nor *Gawin aganis Gologras*,  
Nor Olyver with Pharambras.

*Vol. ii. p. 296, ed. 1806.*

From the unique copy of the black-letter 4to edition of 1508, preserved in the Advocates' Library, it was negligently reprinted by Pinkerton in his *Scottish Poems*, vol. iii. pp. 67-123, who divided it into four parts, and added an argument to each; and it appeared again, together with other pieces of Chepman and Myllar, in a limited fac-simile impression at Edinburgh in 1827. From this volume (which is now become extremely scarce, owing to a fire having destroyed most of the copies,) it is here reproduced in ordinary type, with no other changes than a substitution of the Saxon þ for its inadequate representative y, the rejection of obvious errors of the press (which are, however, retained at the foot of the page), and the use of regular punctuation, which is wholly omitted in the original.

I have already had occasion to advert to the error of Scott and others, in assigning these poems to the thirteenth century; an opinion chiefly founded "on the comparative absence of French words and phraseology, so fashionable in Scotland after the time of Robert Bruce." [1306-1329.] Now we learn from a curious passage in the inedited Latin chronicle attributed to Walter of Coventry, that as early as the reign of William the Lion the Scottish court had adopted the manners, dress, and even *language* of France<sup>1</sup>, and this taste continued to prevail more or less to a comparatively recent period, and must have had considerable influence on Scottish literature in general. That such was the case at the close of the fourteenth century we have abundant proof in the various poems presumed to have been com-

<sup>1</sup> "Moderniores enim Scottorum reges magis se Francos fatentur, sicut genere, ita moribus, *lingua*, cultu, Scotisque ad extremam servitutem redactis, solos Francos in familiaritatem et obsequium adhibent."—*Memor. Histor. ad ann. 1212*, MS. C.C.C.C.

posed by Huchowne, which exhibit not only a familiar acquaintance with French compositions, but abound with words and phrases borrowed from that language. Yet, as it is nearly certain on other grounds that the present poem was composed in the first half of the fifteenth century, the argument of Scott necessarily falls to pieces. But the author of the prefatory remarks to the fac-simile reprint, in 4to, 1827, writes thus, "Had this romance, like so many of the English metrical romances, been a translation, it is unlikely that the author would have encumbered himself with such an intricate mode of versification; and therefore, it may be entitled to claim the praise of an original composition."—p. 8. To this it may be replied, that there is no reason why a Scottish writer, even when translating or imitating a foreign original, should not use whatever form of verse was popular in his own country (as in the case of *Rauf Coilgear*), and that this peculiar alliterative stanza was the most cultivated is evident from the numerous poems still remaining in it, even so late as the sixteenth century. But without further "fending and proving," the plain fact is this; that the author of *Gologras and Gawane* has borrowed the entire outline of his romance from the French *Roman de Perceval*. An abridgement of the original, as it appears in the prose version, printed in 1530, will best serve to shew the close imitation of the Scottish writer, and the fallacy of believing in "floating Celtic traditions."

King Arthur sets out with fifteen knights, amongst whom was Sir Gawayne, to undertake the delivery of Girflet, son of Do, from the Chateau Orgueilleux, where he had lain prisoner for three years. They issue from a forest into a plain of great extent, where the king is so fatigued with his journey and fasting, that he requires both meat and repose. They stop under a tree, by the side of a fountain, and Gawayne points out to Kay (Keux), the Seneschal, a mansion in a valley, to which the latter at once proceeds, in the hope of procuring some provisions. He finds only an old woman in the house, and no eatables of any sort; but the old woman tells him, that at no great distance was a castle, built by the Seigneur de Meliolant, where he generally amused himself with his hawks. She points it out to him, and Kay perceives that it is well environed with fish-ponds, woods, meadows, windmills, and orchards, in the midst of which stood a fair tower. Kay spurs his horse, rides up, and passes the drawbridge, but encountering nobody, he enters a spacious hall, and perceives a chimney with a large fire burning in it, at which a dwarf is diligently roasting a fat peacock on a spit made of apple-tree wood. The Seneschal inquires if any other person is within, but the dwarf does not deign to answer him, at which Kay is so angry, that he is near killing the dwarf on the spot. He restrains himself however, and merely says, he will take the peacock for his dinner, and for the king's repast. The dwarf swears he shall not have it, and tells him he will fare ill, if he does not depart quickly. After some more mutual ill language Kay strikes the dwarf such a blow, that he falls against the pillar of the chimney. He cries out lustily, and at the noise a door opens, and a tall fair knight enters the hall, not

yet thirty years of age. He wore a robe of white *samit*, furred with ermine, and fastened by a girdle of gold, of great value. He led a greyhound by a green silk lace, and when he saw his dwarf bleeding, he asks of Kay why he had thus mal-treated his servant? The Seneschal replies rudely, on which the knight inquires his name. On being told, he says, that he would easily have been known by his manner of speaking, (a direct allusion to *Kay the crabbed*) and adds, that as it is not the custom of his house to refuse any viands asked for, Kay shall certainly have his share of the peacock. He then takes the bird, and strikes the Seneschal with it on the neck so violently, that he falls flat on the floor. The peacock is broken by the force of the blow, and the hot gravy runs in between the rings of Kay's hauberk, and scalds him cruelly, so that he bore the mark about his neck the remainder of his life. The knight then throws the remains to his greyhounds, and tells the Seneschal to leave the place; two attendants turn him out, and he returns much mortified to Arthur, to whom he relates what had taken place. Arthur does not credit Kay's representation, but sends Gawayne. He is received courteously by the knight, who invites the king and his companions to the mansion. They are entertained sumptuously, and Kay is ridiculed by all, the dwarf not excepted. The knight then discloses his name, which is Ydier le Bel, and offers to accompany Arthur to the Chateau Orgueilleux, but this is declined, and on the following day they take their leave.—fol. 103<sup>b</sup>—105.

The above analysis comprehends the first eighteen stanzas of the poem before us. Let us now proceed to another portion of the same romance.

Arthur and his knights, accompanied by Brandelis (who will figure also in the *Jeaste of Syr Gawayne*), proceeds to the siege of the Chateau Orgueilleux (which is clearly identical with the castle of Gologrus). Soon after their arrival a horn is sounded from the castle, and on Arthur's inquiring the cause of Brandelis (who here takes the part of Spynagros), he is told, it is to warn the country of the approach of their forces. Knights approach on all sides to succour the lord of the castle, and three thousand shields and gonfanons are displayed from the walls. Lucan, the royal butler, asks to have the honour of jousting on the first day, which is granted. The place of combat is marked out by four olive trees, and the conditions are such, that whoever passed the bounds, was to be accounted recreant, and detained. Lucan forces his adversary from his horse, but contents himself with bringing back the steed as a proof of his victory, leaving the knight in the field. He is blamed by Brandelis for so doing, and on returning to the field, is encountered by another knight, wounded severely, and taken prisoner. Brandelis goes out the following day, and brings back his opponent prisoner to Arthur's camp. On the third day Kay undertakes the joust, and conquers his opponent, but violates the rules by going beyond the boundaries. The bells of the churches in the castle now sound, and Arthur is informed that the besieged are about to celebrate a festival in honour of the Virgin. Arthur therefore spends the day in hunting, and Gawayne rides out by himself, and meets the *Riche Souldoyer*, who is lord of the castle, and who had an appointment with a lady. The night is passed in great joy by the besieged—"grand bruit feirent menestriers, de cors, tabours, fleuttes et trompes à jouer,"—until midnight. The

succeeding day Ywain has the joust, and takes his adversary prisoner, the son of Count Blandigant of Ireland. Gawayne inquires of him who will joust on the next day, on the part of the besieged. He is assured that the *Riche Souldoyer* himself means to come forth. Gawayne asks of Arthur to be allowed the combat. It is granted, and Arthur lends him his famous sword Escalibor. On Gawayne's coming into the field, a horn is heard to sound four times, and is explained by Brandelis to signify by the first blast, that the *Riche Souldoyer* was about to arm himself; by the second and third, that his jambes, cuisses, hauberk, and helm were adjusted; and by the fourth, that he was mounted. The combat between this redoubtable knight and Gawayne is conducted with great strength and valour on both sides, and lasts till midday had passed. Gawayne sees his adversary's strength is failing, and deals him such a blow, that both combatants fall prostrate on the earth. Gawayne, however, recovers himself first, and commands the knight to yield, who refuses, and only utters some lamentations touching his mistress. Gawayne takes off the knight's helmet, who inquires his conqueror's name, and on learning it, he prays him for the sake of preserving the life of his *amie*, to accompany him to the castle, promising that he would afterwards be at the king's pleasure. Gawayne consents, and they return together. Arthur is utterly disconsolate, thinking his nephew is made prisoner,—“*tel courroux en a le Roy pris, que plus ne le peult regarder, ains s'en va sur ung lict gesir, ou de son manteau le chief se couvrit.*” On the approach of the knight and Gawayne, the lady is summoned, and Gawayne pushes his complaisance so far, as to give up his sword into her hands, and declares himself vanquished. She is then sent away, under the pretence of furnishing the chambers above, and as soon as she has left them, the knight causes Girflet, son of Do, and Lucan to be freed from their imprisonment, and the four, having arrayed themselves in rich robes, ride to Arthur's camp, to the great astonishment of the king and his barons. The *Riche Souldoyer* then states the circumstances of his defeat, and concludes by doing homage to Arthur for his lands, which is repeated by the knights his retainers. They feast and revel for a fortnight, and Arthur then takes his departure for Britain.—fol. 113—118<sup>b</sup>.

It will readily be seen that this adventure occupies the remainder of the Scottish poem, from the nineteenth stanza to the end.

P. 136, l. 119. *Schir Kay is crabbit of kynde.*

This is the constant character of Kay, both in the French and English romances of the Round Table, and *crabbed* seems to have been the epithet peculiarly appropriated to him. See *The Grene Knight*, l. 160; *The Turke and Gowin*, l. 19; and *Carle of Carlile*, l. 147. This character of him is also alluded to in the interlude of Thersites, (written in 1537,) in the passage,

Where art thou, Gawayne the curtesse, and Cay the crabbed?  
*Brit. Bibl. i. 172.*

For further information respecting this worthy, see the *Mabinogion*, part i. p. 97 ; and Southey's Notes to *Morte d'Arthur*, ii. 459, 486.

P. 141, l. 261. *Than schir Spynagrose with speche spak to the king.*

This name is not an invention, for among the knights of Arthur's court is mentioned "Syr Epynogrys that was the kynges sone of Northumberland," *Morte d'Arthur*, vol. ii. p. 385. He is mentioned in the *Roman de Tristan*, ii. f. xc., under the name of "*Espinogres né de Sorolois*," and in the *Roman de Perceval*, f. clxviii. A knight of the same name occurs in the *Conte de l'Atre Perilleux*, one of Sir Gawayne's adventures. *Bibl. des Romans*, Juillet, 1777.

P. 143, l. 302. *And socht to the ciete of Criste.*

I do not recollect any other authority for this expedition of Arthur to Jerusalem, which seems to have been intended by the author as an imitation of Charlemagne's equally imaginary but better known travels to the same city ; on which subject may be consulted M. Michel's Preface to "*Charlemagne, an Anglo-Norman poem of the twelfth century*," etc., 12mo, Lond., 1836.

*Ibid.* l. 310. *To Rome tuke the reddy way.*

So reads the edition, but falsely. It should be *Rone*, as is evident by comparing ll. 585, 1345.

P. 144, l. 339. *And auenand schir Ewin.*

See a previous note, p. 312.

P. 146, l. 395. *Schir Golagrus.*

Whence this name? Can it be recognised in the Sir *Galagars* of Malory? vol. i. p. 95.

P. 149, l. 464. *Gapand gunnys of brase.*

If we may believe Barbour, (who died in 1396,) the Scots first became acquainted with the use of artillery in the year 1328, but this requires confirmation.

Twa noweltyis that day thai saw,  
That forouth in Scotland had been nane ;  
Tymmeris for helmys war the tane  
That thaim thought thane off gret bewte ;



And al sua wondyr for to se;  
 The tothyr, *crakys war aff wer*,  
*That thai befor herd neuir er.*

*The Bruce*, xiv. 168, ed. Jamieson.

P. 152, l. 545.

. . . . . *Gaudifeir* ;

*Quhilum in Britane that berne had baronyis braid.*

Intended, apparently, for the personage who occurs in the romance of *Perceforest*, as the hero's brother, and who was himself made king of Scotland by the conqueror Alexander. See cap. xxviii. ed. fol. Par. 1531. I do not find his name among Arthur's knights.

P. 153, l. 557, *Galiot*.

This name as well as the remainder of those given to the knights on the side of Golagros seem to have been invented by the writer.

P. 154, l. 597. *Schir Rannald*.

He is mentioned in Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*, vol. i. p. 175 ; ii. 384.

P. 157, l. 661. *Schir Lyonel*, etc.

For the first three of these knights, see a previous note, p. 313. The fourth, *Gyromalance* (printed erroneously *Siromelans* in the prose edition of 1530), occurs frequently in the *Roman de Perceval*. He fights with Sir Gawayne, and afterwards marries Clarissant, the sister of his opponent, fol. liii<sup>b</sup>.

P. 160, l. 747. *Schir Cador of Cornwel*, etc.

Consult note, *ante* p. 331. Although all termed "renkis of the Round Tabill," I have looked unsuccessfully for Schir *Owales*, or *Oviles*, Schir *Iwell*, or Schir *Myreot*, unless the latter be Syr *Melyot de Logres*, in Malory's work, vol. ii. p. 383.

P. 165, l. 878. *Oft in romanis I reid*,  
*Airly sporne, late speid.*

If by *romanis* we are here to understand the French language, we have a proverb equivalent to "*Mauvaise haste n'est preus*," in *Renart le Nouvel*, v. 1034, written by Jacquemars Gielée at the end of the thirteenth century. But there is

a homely Scottish and English saying to the same effect,—“Mair haste *the waur speed*, quoth the tailor to the lang threed.” See Ramsay’s Poems, vol. ii. p. 60, 12mo, Glasg., 1797.

P. 167, l. 934. *With ane bitand brand, burly and braid,  
Quhilk oft in battale had bene his bute and his belde.*

It is stated in the *Roman de Merlin*, f. ccix<sup>b</sup>, that on occasion of the ceremony of knighthood conferred on Sir Gawayne, Arthur girded his nephew with his famous sword *Escalibor*, vol. i. f. ccix<sup>b</sup>, and we find the weapon remaining for a period in Gawayne’s hands, for one of his exploits with it is to cut down his father Loth, whom he does not recognise till he alights to cut off his head. *Ibid.* vol. ii. f. liii. So also in the *Roman de Lancelot*, i. f. cxxxi<sup>b</sup>, Gawayne is represented as fighting with *Escalibor* against Hector des Mares. At what period this sword was returned to Arthur we are not informed, but we find it borrowed again at the time Sir Gawayne is about to encounter the *Riche Souldoyer*. See *Roman de Perceval*, f. cxvii. Instances of the fanciful epithets given by heroes to their swords abound in old romances, and Warton tells us in a note on Spenser’s *Fairy Queen*, B. v. c. 3, st. 4, that Sir Gawayne’s sword was named *Galantine*. What authority he had for this I am not aware, but I find something like it in the inedited *Morte Arthure*.

Then Syr Gawayne was glade, agayne hymne he ryde;  
Wythe *Galuthe*, his gude swerde, graythely hymne hytte;  
The knyghte one the coursere he cleuede in soudyre,  
Clenlyche fro the croune his corse he dyuydyde,  
And thus he kille; the knyghte w<sup>t</sup> his kydd wapene.

*MS. Linc., A. 1, 17, f. 68.*

In a MS. which formerly belonged to Dr. Macro, No. 18, and is now in the possession of Hudson Gurney, Esq., written in the reign of Edward the First, I was the first to discover the following curious memorandum at f. 42<sup>b</sup>, relative to the sword of Gawayne:—“*Hec est forma gladii Wahryn militis: a puncto usque ad hilte 53 pollices; hyfte continet, ii. pollices et dimidii; manicle prope, ii. pollices; pomes continet prope 8 pollices; latitudo 5 pollices; longitudo in toto continet 66 pollices et dimidii. Unde scribere in canello gladii:*

LEO SU FORTH, TRENCHAUNT & DURE,  
GALAAN ME FYTH PAR MULT GRANT CURE.  
• CATORSE ANZ IHESU CRISTH,  
QUANT GALAAM ME TREMPA & FYTH.

SAGE FELOUN DEYT HOMME DUTYR  
 & FOLH FELOUN ESCHWER ;  
 FOLH DEBONEYRE DEPORTER,  
 & SAGE DEBONER AMER."

In the *Roman du St. Graal*, vol. ii. f. cxli., may also be found an account of Gawayne's winning the famous sword with which John the Baptist was decollated, which is afterwards presented to king Pescheor, the professor of the holy vessel. And the reader may now decide for himself which sword it is that the author of the poem alludes to.

P. 179, l. 1233. *Hectour, and Alexander, etc.*

Six out of the eight names here mentioned are taken out of the number of the nine worthies. The remaining three are *Charlemagne, Godfrey of Boulogne*, and king *Arthur*. They are separately enumerated in the metrical *Morte Arthure*, MS. Linc., A. 1. 17, f. 89, and "*Ane ballet of the Nine Nobles*," printed in Laing's *Popular Poetry of Scotland*, 4to, 1822. They made a figure not only in poetry, but in pageantry and tapestry.

P. 182, l. 1313. . . . *fra thyne vnto Ronsiwall.*

I presume the allusion here refers to the fatal scene of Charlemagne's overthrow at Roncevalles.

---

## Syre Galwene and the Carle of Carelyle.

---

THIS romantic tale is here printed for the first time from an unique copy discovered in one of the MSS. of the Porkington Library, No. 10, belonging to William Ormsby Gore, Esq., M.P., written at the close of the reign of Henry the Sixth. It is more particularly interesting from its being the original from which

the modernised copy in the Percy MS. was taken. The question, therefore, of the genuineness and antiquity of the *romance-poems* (as distinguished from the longer and better known *romances*,) in this celebrated MS. would seem to be decided, for as *two* of these poems, namely, *The Grene Knight* and *The Carle of Carlile*, have been preserved in MSS. of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, it is not too much to suppose, that the rest of the tales in the volume of a similar description, although written at so late a period as the latter half of the seventeenth century, were derived from ancient texts, which may yet be lurking in the unexplored treasures of some cathedral, collegiate, or private library.

The original of this story must be sought for in the literature of the continent, and we find it in the beautiful *fabliau* of *Le Chevalier à l'Epée*, printed in Meon's *Recueil*, tome i. p. 127, 8vo, 1823, and previously analysed by Le Grand. Both works are so well known as to render any repetition of it here unnecessary.

P. 188, l. 34. *Syre Mewreke*.

See previous note, p. 335.

*Ibid.* l. 35. *Syre Key Cantoche*.

I do not understand the meaning of this appellation added to the name of Kay. In Malory, we have "Kay the Straunger," vol. ii. p. 403, but this is a corruption of *Keux d'Estraux*, who repeatedly occurs in the French romances, and who was a different personage from the Seneschal.

*Ibid.* l. 38. *Syre Percivalle*.

The nephew of king Pescheor, guardian of the *Sangreal*, whose adventures occupy a quarto volume, printed in 1530. In the Thornton MS. at Lincoln is an English metrical abridgement of this romance, but so indifferently executed, as scarcely to be worth printing.

*Ibid.* l. 39. *Lanfalle*

Is the hero of a lay by Marie de France, printed in Roquefort's Edition, tome i. p. 202, of which an English translation, made in the fifteenth century, is inserted in Way's *Fabliaux*, vol. iii. p. 233, 8vo, 1815, and Ritson's *Metrical Romances*, vol. i.

*Ibid.* l. 40. *Syre Eweyne the Vytt yan.*

There is some blunder here. Perhaps we should read *Wytt hand*, which would express the epithet given to Ywain as *Blanches Mains*. See *Morte d'Arthur*, i. 231.

*Ibid.* l. 41. *Syre Lot of Laudyane.*

The father of Gawayne, and king of Lothian and Orkney. *Geoffr. Monm.* lib. ix. cap. 9.

*Ibid.* l. 43. *Syre Gaytefere and Syre Galerowne.*

The first of these is probably the *Gaudifeir*, previously mentioned, p. 342, and the latter is the *Galeron of Galloway*, whose exploits are commemorated in the *Awentyrs of Arthure*.

*Ibid.* l. 44. *Syre Costantyne, and Syre Raynbrowne,*  
*The knyzt of armus grene.*

Sir Constantyne has occurred before, p. 331. Of the latter I know nothing as one of Arthur's knights, but it would appear from l. 68, that he was the son of Iroune-syde by the maiden of Blauncheland. A knight of the same name occurs in the romance of Guy of Warwick.

*Ibid.* l. 49. *The kyngus vncull Syre Mordrete.*

For *uncle* we should read *nephew*. In the modern version of this romance, p. 257, and in the *Marriage of Sir Gawaine*, p. 289, he is called Arthur's *cousin*, but this is a general term of relationship.

*Ibid.* l. 52. *Syre Yngeles.*

Of this personage, any more than of *Syre Grandone*, or *Syr Ferre-unkowthe*, l. 61, I have found no record.

*Ibid.* l. 55. *Syre Le Byus Dyskonus was thare.*

This is no less a person than Giglan, the son of Gawayne, who received the surname of *Le Beau Desconu* from king Arthur, on his first arrival at that monarch's court. According to the *Roman de Perceval* he was the illicit offspring of an amour between Gawayne and Guinalorete, the sister of Brandelys; and an inter-

esting scene occurs, in which the mother interposes her child between her brother and lover, whilst struggling in mortal combat, fol. cxi. He is committed to the care of the *Pucelle Envoisie*, and achieves various adventures, from one of which he obtains the surname of *Lyoncel*. At length he encounters his father (who is unknown to him,) and after a fierce combat, Gawayne recognises his son, and yields himself. The young hero is then taken to Arthur's court at Caerleon, and receives instructions in all chivalrous exercises from Ywain. *Ibid.* ff. cxxiv, cxxv. The adventures of Giglan form the subject of a very rare distinct prose French romance, which was printed at Paris without date, and afterwards at Lyons, in 1530. In this he is said to be the son of Gawayne by the fairy *Blanchevallée*. There is also an English romance, on the same subject, expressly stated to be borrowed from the French, but differing almost entirely from the prose work. It is printed by Ritson in vol. ii. of his *Metrical Romances*, and many of the incidents seem to have been supplied by the romance of *Erec et Enide*, composed by Chrestien de Troyes. That there existed, however, a French metrical romance as early as the twelfth century on the exploits of Giglan, is proved by the German romance of *Wigolais mit dem Rade*, translated from the French by Wirnt von Gravenberch, about the year 1212. In this poem the name of Wigolais is intended to represent *Gui le Galois*, l. 1574. In the English romance (l. 7) his name is written *Geynleyn*, and in Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*, vol. i. p. 337, ii. pp. 383, 392, *Gyngalyn*. For further information concerning the versions of this romance, see Benecke's preface to his edition of *Wigolais*, 12mo, Berl. 1819.

P. 189, l. 58. *Syr Petty-pas of Wynchylse*

Is mentioned in the *Morte d'Arthur*, vol. ii. p. 383, and elsewhere, and occurs also in the list of knights given in Robinson's "*Auncient ordre of Prince Arthur*," etc., 4to, 1583, No. 54.

*Ibid.* l. 64. *Syr Blancheles and Iron-side.*

In the modern version, p. 257, *Blanch Faire* is substituted for *Blancheles*, but as no knight of that name occurs, in all probability we should read *Brandelys*, of whom more hereafter. The second knight is mentioned in Malory's compilation as "Syre Ironsyde, that was called the noble knyȝte of the reed laundes, that Syre Gareth [brother of Gawayne] wanne for the loue of dame Lyones," vol. ii. p. 384. The narrative of the combat may be read in vol. i. p. 211.

*Ibid.* l. 71. *Blanche-londe.*

The *Seigneur de la Blaunche londe* is noticed as one of Arthur's knights, in the *Roman de Perceval*, f. lxxi. Cf. f. clxxi<sup>b</sup>. See in regard to this territory a note of M. Michel on *Tristan*, ii. 173.

P. 205, l. 631. *A knyghte of the Table Rownde.*

No knight of this name occurs in the French romances of the Round Table, nor in the *Morte d'Arthure* of Malory.

P. 206, l. 655. *And there yn monkys gray.*

A house of Gray or Franciscan friars existed at Carlisle before the year 1390. See Tanner's *Notit. Monast.* edit. Nasmith, fol. 1787.

---

## The Ieaste of Syr Galwayne.

---

THIS imperfect poem is taken from a small quarto MS. which was purchased at the Fairfax sale at Leeds castle in 1831, and subsequently came to the hands of Mr. Douce, who bequeathed it with the rest of his books to the Bodleian Library. The volume was written in 1564, as appears by a date at the end, and contains several other romances, all unfortunately more or less imperfect, and all, apparently, transcribed from early black-letter editions. Each romance is illustrated with rude drawings, and from their style, as well as the age of the MS. it is evident that the collection was made by the same hand which transcribed the romance of *Roberte the Deuyll*, printed by J. Herbert in 1798. No copy of the original, from which the present poem was copied, is now known to exist; but it appears from the Stationers books, that in 1557 or 1558 John Kynge had a license to print “A

*Jeaste of Syr Gawayne*," and among Bagford's Collections, MS. Harl. 5927, art. 32, is preserved the last leaf of another edition in black letter, "Imprynted at London in Paule church ye yerde, at the sygne of the maydens heed, by Thomas Petyt," containing fifty-three lines, which have been collated with the text in the MS., and the variations, which are trifling, noted in the margin. It is no doubt this romance which is alluded to, under the title of "*Sir Gawyn*," by Laneham, in his letter describing the entertainment of the Queen at Kenilworth in 1575. Of what antiquity the story may have been in an English dress, it is difficult to form an opinion, but I should be inclined to refer it to the fifteenth century. The original author, however, in this instance, as in so many others, is French, and in the *Roman de Perceval*, f. lxxiv<sup>b</sup>, we meet with the entire story. As the commencement of the adventure is wanting in the MS., a short analysis of the French narrative may not be out of place.

Gawayne leaves king Arthur at the siege of the city of Branlant, at which he had himself been severely wounded. He crosses a deep river, and rides along a beautiful plain to a wood, on emerging from which he finds himself in a spacious *launde*, on which he perceives, by the side of a fountain, a magnificent pavilion raised. The valances were of fine silk of different colours, richly embroidered in gold and silver with flowers, foliage and birds, whilst above the ball on the summit was a golden eagle. He dismounts and enters the pavilion, where he sees a sumptuous bed, on which lay a lovely girl, "*qui si formellement belle estoit, que pour ce temps n'eust été trouvé la pareille.*" Gawayne is exceedingly surprised at her beauty, and accosts her courteously. In reply she says, "*Dieu qui fist soir et matin doint honneur au chevalier Gauvain ; puis à vous qui estes icy !*" He inquires why she expresses herself thus, and in explanation learns, that from the fame of Gawayne's great prowess, courtesy, and other qualities, she has long been accustomed to use such terms. The knight then discloses himself, and unlaces his helmet, to shew his features, on which the lady retires to an adjoining room, and calls to her a Saracen damsel, who had been *fille de chambre* to queen Chambres, and who had portrayed in embroidery the portrait of Gawayne so exactly, as to be recognised by all who saw it. Whilst she is contemplating his features, Sir Gawayne disarms himself, and puts on a splendid mantle. On the lady's return she at once acknowledges the original of her picture, and runs to embrace him, kissing his eyes "*par grant amour*," and saying, "*Sire, la pucelle, comme voyez, du tout se met à vostre bandon, et de son corps vous faict present, tout par amours et en honneur, si vous plaist à la recevoir.*" Of course the knight is not insensible of the value of such a gift,—"*et puis se mirent à deviser du jeu d'amours, sans villennie, et apres s'entrejouerent, en ensuivant le doux parler, que le nom de pucelle perdist.*" Gawayne at length takes leave of her, and immediately after his departure arrives her father, the king of Lys, and on learning what had occurred, pursues the knight, and accuses him of the death of his brother, and the violation of his daughter. Gawayne overthrows him with a mortal blow, and pursues his way. Shortly after, Brandelys



the lady's brother, makes his appearance at the pavilion, and on hearing the same story, rides after and overtakes the author of the injury. They encounter each other fiercely, and are both thrown to the ground, but continue the combat with their swords until they are both weary. Gawayne at length proposes a cessation of arms, and to renew the combat whenever they should again meet. This is agreed to, and the combatants separate. Brandelys carries the corpse of his father to an abbey, to be honourably interred; and Gawayne returns to Arthur's host at the siege of Branlant, but is so enfeebled by his wounds as to require the attendance of physicians for six months before he was perfectly recovered.

At a subsequent part of the romance (f. cv.), the continuation of Gawayne's adventure is thus related.

Arthur and his court arrive at a stately castle, which proves to be the residence of Brandelys. They find a sumptuous banquet prepared for some guest, and no less than a hundred wild-boars' heads provided! Whilst at the feast Gawayne discovers the shield of Brandelys hanging up, and recollecting the terms of their agreement, hastens to replace his helmet on his head, which he had laid aside. On being questioned as to the cause, he relates his adventure at the pavilion, which differs so considerably from the preceding narrative, as justly to excite the surprise of Southey, *Pref. to Morte d'Arthur*, p. xxvi. In this version of the story Gawayne states, that on arriving at the pavilion he found the lady asleep, and struck by her beauty, he took off his helmet, and kissed her several times so softly, as not to awaken her, except a faint remonstrance of "*Beau sire, laissez moy dormir.*" At last she awoke, and inquired who he was. He says, her *amy*, but she bids him fly, for fear of the vengeance of her father and brothers. He tells his name, and is then courteously welcomed. Gawayne afterwards disarmed himself, and proceeds with his tale thus,—"*Puis m'allay coucher aupres d'elle, comme pour faire mon delict; les yeuls luy baise et le visaige, qu'elle plus blans que lys avoit, et depuis feis si grand oultraige, qu'à force la despucellay, quelque deffence qu'elle sceust faire.*" The lady was in the utmost grief, and fainted in Gawayne's arms, when Melians de Lys, one of her brothers, arrived, and bursting into the pavilion, loaded Gawayne with reproaches. The knight made every submission, and offered to marry the lady, but Melians reviled them both, and insisted on having recourse to arms. They fought, and the brother was struck dead on the first encounter. The father then came up, and shared the same fate, much to the grief of Gawayne. Lastly arrived Brandelys, and having refused the conciliatory offers of the offender, a combat took place, as previously narrated.

It is evident that the author of the English romance has adopted the latter narrative, merely changing the names of the parties, and introducing a few additions of his own. The sequel of the adventure, omitted by the English writer, is thus told in the original text.

Brandelys, on hearing that his foe was within his castle, hastens to take revenge. As it was now late in the evening, candles are sent for, and a furious combat ensues by their light

between Gawayne and his opponent. At this juncture the lady (whose name we subsequently learn to be Guinalorete,) makes her appearance with her child Giglain, whom she interposes between its father and uncle. Brandelys, so far from being softened by the sight, brutally kicks the child away, which excites the indignation of Arthur. The fight is resumed, and Brandelys is at length struck down. The lady again interposes, and her entreaties being seconded by the interference of the king and his nobles, Brandelys is persuaded to yield, and the adventure terminates by his being made a knight of the Round Table, and granting forgiveness to the penitent Gawayne, who begs it on his knees.

The compiler of the *Morte d'Arthur* does not insert this episode in his work, but has a distinct allusion to the circumstance, when he says, "Thenne came in Syr Gawayne, with his thre sones, Syr *Gyngleyne*, Syr *Florence*, and Sir *Louel*; these two were begoten upon Sir *Brandyles syster*; and al they fayled."—Vol. ii. p. 383. Sir Brandelys was subsequently, together with Florence and Louel, slain by Lance-lot du Lac and his party, at the rescue of queen Guenever. *Ibid.* ii. 401, 403.

P. 217, l. 347. *Theron of pleasaunce a kercheyf dyd honge.*

See Meyrick's Glossary to his *Critical Inquiry*, in v. *Kercheff of Plesaunce*. It was sometimes worn on the arm. But a lady's favour was occasionally in another shape, as we learn from the *Roman de Perceval*, f. lxxxiii. "*Et pour secretement faire cete chose assçavoir à Alardin par signe, luy donna la manche de sa cotte, que nous appellons mancherons, de quoy il feist ung gonfunon ou banerolle à sa lance.*" Cf. Malory, ii. 332.

P. 219, l. 422. *Syr Gawayne saide, "Syr, I the praye, etc.*

So also in the original text, "*Il me semble, franc chevallier, respond Gauvain, que vous deussiez plus honestement ou plus prudemment parler, car se je vous ay faict nul dommaige, je suis tout prest de l'amender, au loz de tous noz bons amys, mais que n'y perde mon honneur; mais quant à la trahison que vous me mettez sus, je m'en veulx contre vous deffendre.*"—f. lxxv<sup>b</sup>.

## The Grene Knight.

---

COPIED in 1831 by permission of the late Mrs. Samuel Isted of Ecton Hall, Northamptonshire, (eldest daughter of the Bishop of Dromore,) from the *Percy Manuscript*. It is noticed in the list of Romances prefixed to the third volume of the "*Reliques of Ancient Poetry*," p. xxxvii. ed. 1794, and was considered of sufficient interest by the Bishop to be transcribed, for the purpose of insertion in a subsequent edition. The singular volume which contains it may be assigned to the latter half of the seventeenth century, and abounds with inaccuracies of the scribe or compiler. It is here, however, printed *literatim* from the MS., except in cases where correction is absolutely necessary, and the corrupt readings are then thrown to the bottom of the page. Had Bishop Percy adopted the same plan, when printing his Ballads, even the hypercriticism of Ritson might have been satisfied. It will readily be admitted, I presume, that the Scottish romance at the beginning of the present volume is the original from which the later tale has been borrowed; but that it may have existed in some intermediate shape, is rendered highly probable by an entry in the inventory of English books belonging to John Paston of Norfolk, made in the reign of Edward the Fourth, in which occurs "*The Greene Knight*." *Orig. Letters*, vol. ii. p. 300, 4to, 1787.

The changes made in the story, in its recent form, are very remarkable, and serve to shew the extent and character of the license assumed by minstrels and poetasters, in reciting the compositions of their predecessors, or in borrowing from foreign sources. The fairy *Morgana* of the ancient romance is here changed into *Aggteb*, a witch, who is endowed with the power of transposing human forms; and instead of the *Grene Knight's* visit to Arthur's court being made for the purpose of annoying Guenever, it is here designed by the old witch as a means of alluring Gawayne to her daughter's arms. The general outline is, however, precisely the same, but the narrative much abridged in the *rifacimento*. It is somewhat remarkable, that the latter places the scene "in the *West Countrie*," instead of the *North*, as one would have expected to find it.

P. 224, l. 13. *He made the Round Table for their behoue,  
Y<sup>t</sup> none of them shold sitt aboue.*

The earliest authority for this tradition is Wace, who inserts it in his translation of Geoffrey, and adds, that the Round Table was instituted by Arthur for the purpose of avoiding disputes of precedence among his knights. See the passage in Le Roux de Lincy's edition, tome ii. p. 74, 8vo, 1836. Robert of Brunne translates this literally in the inedited portion of his Chronicle, f. 62<sup>b</sup>, MS. Inner Temple Library, No. 511. 7. Lazamon goes further, and not only gives the history of the table at much greater length, but adds from some source at present unknown, a narrative of a quarrel which was the more immediate cause of the institution. In an inedited romance on the subject of Arthur, preserved in the Red Book of Bath, of the fifteenth century, I find the following lines on the subject :

At Cayrloun, w<sup>t</sup> oute fable  
He let make the Rounde Table,  
And why th<sup>t</sup> he maked hyt thus  
This was the resoun y-wyss,  
That no man schulde sytt aboue other,  
Ne haue indignacioun of hys brother.  
And alle had oo seruyse,  
For no pryde scholde aryse,  
For any degree of syttyngge,  
Other for any seruyngge.

P. 225, l. 40. *Sir Bredbeddle.*

On what authority the Green Knight is thus named I am ignorant, but in this case it is no mistake of the scribe, for we meet with the same personage again in the ballad of *Arthur and the King of Cornwall*. He can scarcely be meant for the individual who is surnamed also the *Grene Knyght* in the *Morte d'Arthur*, and whose real name was *Pertilope*, the brother of Sir Persaunt and Sir Perymore, all of whom were defeated by Sir Gareth, younger brother of Sir Gawayne. See vol. i. pp. 196, 223 ; ii. p. 385.

P. 227, l. 92. *Att a castle of Flatting was his dwelling,  
In the Forrest of Delamore.*

The forest of Delamere is an immense tract of wood and waste in Cheshire, and was formerly well stocked with deer. Of the Castle of *Flatting* I have found no

mention elsewhere. It is, doubtless, a corruption. See Ormerod's *Cheshire*, vol. ii. p. 50, fol., 1819.

P. 239, l. 461. *He hard him whett a fauchion bright.*

Compare the lines in the original, l. 2203, p. 81.

P. 240, l. 465. *It behoooueth thee to lowte.*

In the margin of the MS. Dr. Percy has noted after this line, "some great omission here." I confess I do not perceive it.

P. 241, l. 506. *To the Castle of Hutton can they fare.*

Perhaps the manor of Hutton in Inglewood forest, Leath ward, Cumberland, is here intended. See Nicolson and Burn's *Hist. Cumb.*, ii. 388, or Hutchinson, i. 506. There is also *Hatton Castle*, in Allerdale below Derwent, in the same county. The whole of the territory hereabout was romance-ground.

*Ibid.* l. 515. *Why k<sup>ves</sup> of the Bathe weare the lace.*

Compare the original text, l. 2516, p. 92, which is very strangely altered here. The *lace* alluded to was of white silk, and worn on the left shoulder, as early as the reign of Richard the Second. See Anstis's "*Observations upon the Knighthood of the Bath*," 4to, 1725, pp. 9, 32, 35, 75. From a curious passage in Lord Herbert of Cherbury's *Life*, written by himself, 4to, 1764, p. 54, we learn that the practice was still observed in the reign of James the First, and that the Knights were obliged to wear the lace until they had done something famous in arms, or till some lady of honor had taken it off.

## The Turke and Golwin.

---

FROM the Percy Manuscript, and hitherto unpublished. The commencement of this singular romance-tale is evidently founded on a different version of the adventure related in the *Grene Knyght*, who is here transformed into a *Turk*, or, in other words, a *Pagan*. The poem, unfortunately, is very imperfect, and the connexion is not always obvious, but the story seems to run thus. After the *buffet* has been given by Gawayne, the Turk goes away, accompanied by the knight, and they repair to a castle, where the *counter-buffet* is demanded by the Turk. We next find them, after this proof of Gawayne's courage, sailing over the sea as friends, and they arrive at a castle inhabited by the King of Man, (who is a heathen Soldan,) and a rout of giants. A trial of skill takes place at tennis, in which Gawayne is assisted by the Turk, who passes for the knight's *boy*. Other trials of strength follow, which end in the discomfiture of the giants. The Soudan and one of his rout lay some plan to kill Gawayne, but are prevented by the Turk, who puts on a coat to make him invisible, and throws the giant into a boiling cauldron of lead, and the Soudan into the fire. After this, to complete the adventure, the Turk desires Gawayne to strike off his head, who at first refuses, but on his compliance, in the place of the Turk rises up a stalworth knight, who immediately sings *Te Deum*, by way of thankfulness, and to prove his orthodoxy. By this feat the ladies and knights confined in the castle are delivered from thralldom, and the kingdom of Man having first been offered by Arthur to Gawayne, who refuses it, it is bestowed on Sir Gromer, the quondam Turk, as a recompense for his services.

From the versification, this poem evidently proceeds from the same hand which composed the preceding one; nor will it, perhaps, be wrong to assign to one hand the greater part, if not the whole, of the romance-stories in the Manuscript.

P. 255, l. 318. *Sir Gromer.*

This name is probably borrowed from the *Morte d'Arthur*, in which "Syr Grummore Grummursum, a good knyghte of Scotland," is mentioned, vol. i. p. 229, and elsewhere.

## Carle off Carlile.

---

FROM the Percy Manuscript, and printed for the first time. It is most certainly a *rifacimento* of the older romance in the Porkington MS., and retains not only words but entire lines of the original. Some few alterations, however, as a matter of course, are introduced; and at the end of the poem an incident is inserted, altogether omitted in the older copy, namely the striking off the Carle's head, which corresponds nearly with the similar performance in the tale of *The Turke and Gowin*. The Notes on the earlier text may be referred to for illustration of the present poem.

---

## King Arthur and the King of Cornwall.

---

FROM the same Manuscript, and hitherto inedited. It has no title, and the first line has been cut away by the ignorant binder to whom the volume was intrusted, but both are supplied from the notice given of the ballad in the Dissertation prefixed to vol. iii. of the "*Reliques*," p. xxxvii. Dr. Percy has added in the margin of the MS. these words, "To the best of my remembrance, this was the first line, before the binder cut it." The poem is very imperfect, owing to the leaves having been half torn away to light fires (!) as the Bishop tells us, but I am bound

to add, previous to its coming into his possession. The story is so singular, that it is to be hoped an earlier and complete copy of it may yet be recovered. On no account perhaps is it more remarkable, than the fact of its close imitation of the famous *gabs* made by Charlemagne and his companions at the court of king Hugon, which are first met with in a romance of the twelfth century, published by M. Michel from a MS. in the British Museum, 12mo, Lond., 1836, and transferred at a later period to the prose romance of *Galien Rethoré*, printed by Verard, fol. 1500, and often afterwards. In the absence of other evidence, it is to be presumed that the author of the ballad borrowed from the printed work, substituting Arthur for Charlemagne, Gawayne for Oliver, Tristram for Roland, etc., and embellishing his story by converting king Hugon's spy into a "lody feend," by whose agency the *gabs* are accomplished. It is further worthy of notice, that the writer seems to regard Arthur as the sovereign of *Little Britain*, and alludes to an intrigue between the king of Cornwall and queen Guenever, which is nowhere, as far as I recollect, hinted at in the romances of the Round Table.

P. 276, l. 26. *Sir Marramiles and Sir Tristeram.*

As *four* knights accompanied the king, a line would seem to be wanting here, containing the names of Sir *Gawayne* and Sir *Bredbeddle*. Of the remaining two, Sir *Tristeram* is sufficiently well known, but of Sir *Marramiles* I am unable to supply any information.

P. 283, l. 195. "*Sayes, sleep you, wake you, noble King Arthur?*"

This is a phrase which seems to have been popular at the end of the sixteenth century, and may, perhaps, mark the age of the ballad. See the song of *Old Robin of Portingale*, in Percy, iii. 49, edit. 1794; Ravenscroft's *Pammelia*, 4to, 1609, No. 30; and Scott's *Border Minstrelsy*, vol. i. p. 151, 8vo, 1803. It is alluded to by Shakspeare in *King Lear*, Act. iii. Sc. 5, where Edgar, repeating some snatches of old ballads, says,

Sleepest or wakest thou, jolly shepherd?

P. 284, l. 210. *The Grene knight.*

This is Sir Bredbeddle, who has subdued the fiend *Burlow-beanie* by means of the "litle booke," he carried about him. See a previous Note, p. 353.



## Marriage of Sir Gawaine.

---

THIS fragment is borrowed from the text of the Percy Manuscript, as given in the "*Reliques of Ancient English Poetry*," vol. iii. p. 350, edit. 1794. Dr. Percy supplied the deficiencies in a very ingenious manner, and inserted the ballad thus amended in the first edition of his collection, 8vo, 1764, and repeated it in all subsequent impressions; but this mode of editing ancient poetry having justly been blamed by Ritson and Pinkerton, the Bishop in the fourth edition annexed the fragment, "with all its defects, inaccuracies and errata," in order to show the state of the poem in the MS. Ritson reprinted the *genuine* and the *amended* texts in parallel columns in the Dissertation prefixed to his *Metrical Romances*, 8vo, 1802, p. cx, and the ballad in its improved form was introduced also by Lewis into his *Tales of Wonder*, vol. ii. p. 362, 8vo, 1802. The Bishop was of opinion that this poem was more ancient than the time of Chaucer, and that he borrowed from it his *Wife of Bath's tale* (See *Cambro-Briton*, vol. i. p. 256, 8vo, 1820); and Sir Walter Scott in a letter to George Ellis writes, that the tale of Sir Gawayne's Foul Lady is originally Scaldic, as appears in the history of Hrolf Kraka, edited by Torfæus, 12mo, Havn. 1715, cap. vii. (*Life*, by Lockhart, vol. i. p. 334.) The passage itself is quoted from the *Saga* by Scott in his *Border Minstrelsy*, vol. ii. p. 140, in illustration of the old Scottish ballad of *King Henrie*, which preserves very remarkably the legend of the Scandinavian monarch, Helgius.

Warton says in a note to his "*History of English Poetry*," vol. ii. p. 41, ed. 1824, "I must not forget here, that Sir Gawaine, one of Arthur's champions, is celebrated in a separate romance. Among Tanner's Manuscripts we have *The Weddyng of Sir Gawaine*, Numb. 455, Bibl. Bodl. It begins, 'Be ye blythe, and listeneth to the lyf of a lorde riche.'" It would have given me much pleasure to have included this romance in the present volume, but Warton's reference is erroneous, and although the Rev. Dr. Bandinel with the greatest courtesy undertook a minute and laborious search for the poem in question, it was without success. Warton's noto-

rious inaccuracy in matters of this sort forms a sad blot in his otherwise very useful and entertaining work, of which a *critical* edition is still much desiderated.

P. 289, l. 32. *Tearne-wadling*.

See previous Note, in p. 330.

P. 293, l. 116. *Sir Lancelott and Sir Steven bold*.

The name of the second of these champions does not occur in the Round Table romances.

*Ibid.* l. 120. *Soe did Sir Banier and Sir Bore,  
Sir Garrett with them, soe gay.*

*Banier* is probably a mistake for *Beduer*, the king's constable. *Sir Bore* is Bors de Gaúves. (See previous Note, p. 313.) *Sir Garett* is *Gareth* or *Gaheriet*, the younger brother of Sir Gawayne; and his adventures, under the surname of *Beaumayns*, occupy an entire book,—the seventh,—in the *Morte d'Arthur*, vol. i. pp. 186–245. He took the part of Lancelot against his brothers, but was accidentally killed by him on the occasion of the rescue of queen Guenever. *Ibid.* vol. ii. p. 403. Revenge for his loss prompted Sir Gawayne to induce king Arthur to cross the sea to attack Lancelot, which ultimately proved the destruction of the whole of the *Table Ronde*. Sir Walter Scott in a Note on *Sir Tristrem*, p. 379, ed. 1833, quotes a “romance of Sir *Gaheret*,” in which the knight plays at chess with a beautiful fairy, [Floribelle, a *suivante* of the fairy Morgana,] and is vanquished, but is afterwards liberated from his confinement by his cousin [brother] Gawayne, who wins the game by a move long afterwards called *l'échec de Gauvain*, and now *l'échec du berger*, or *fool's-mate*. In reality there is no such romance, but the adventure here alluded to occurs in an episodical tale of Gawayne and his three brothers, analysed in the *Bibliothèque des Romans*, *Juillet*, 1777, pp. 87–122. I may here venture to correct another venial error of Scott, who in the same work, p. 416, quotes from Gower the lines,

There was Tristrem, which was beloved  
With bele Isolde; and Lancelot  
Stode with Guenor, and *Galahote*  
With his lady.

Sir Walter argues, that Gower is here incorrect, since *Galahaut* or *Galahad* had

no paramour. But Gower is perfectly accurate, and alludes to *Gallehault*, king of the *loingtaines isles* or *de oultre les marches*, whose mistress was Malchault, lady in attendance on queen Guenever, and by whose instrumentality the intrigue of Lancelot with her mistress was brought about. See the *Roman de Lancelot*, vol. i. ff. lxxxiii-v, edit. 1513. Scott confounds this *Gallehault* with *Galaad*, the immaculate son of Lancelot, who accomplished the adventure of the Sangreal.

# Glossary.



# G L O S S A R Y.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

AA. Awntyrs of Arthure.—AKC. Arthur and the King of Cornwall.—C. Carle of Carlile.—GC. Syre Gawene and the Carle of Carelyle.—GG. Golagros and Gawane.—GK. Syr Gawayn and the Grene Knyzt.—Gr.K. The Grene Knight.—J. Jeaste of Syr Gawayne.—MG. Marriage of Sir Gawaine.—TG. The Turke and Gowin.—The numbers refer to the lines of each poem. Words of frequent occurrence have a limited number of references. Those to which an *obelus* is prefixed appear to be irregular forms, or errors.

†A, he, GC. 628.

A, in, as A-SWOUNDING, in swooning, GR.K. 269. A-ROWE, in a row, C. 381.

ABAID, delay, GG. 55, 311, 548. See BAID.

ABANDONIT, *p.p.* brought under subjection, GG. 275.

ABATAYMENT, battlement, GK. 790.

ABLOY, an exclamation used in hunting, apparently borrowed from the French, and equivalent to *On! On!* GK. 1174.

ABOF, above, GK. 73, 112, 153.

ABONE, above, GG. 579, GR.K. 513.

A-BONE, excellently, well, J. 354. In the form of *i-bone* it occurs in *Lazamon* and later poets, and is applied to animate or inanimate objects.

ABOUE, ABOWNE, above, GK. 2217. AA. xxxviii. 11.

ABY, ABUY, to pay for, buy dear, and, in an oblique sense, atone for, suffer, C. 236, 264.

ACHAUFED, *p.t.* warmed, GK. 883.

ACHEUE, to obtain, arrive, GK. 1107, 1838.

ACHEUED, *p. t.* 1081, 1857. See CHEFE.

ACOLE, *pr. t.* embraces, GK. 1936. ACOLLEN, embrace, 2472.

ADOUN, down, GK. 254.

AFFERE, countenance, demeanour, GG. 707. See FEIR.

AFFRAY, fear, GG. 958. See FRAY.

AFYAUNCE, trust, GK. 642.

AFTER, afterwards, GK. 218.

†AGANE, probably a mistake for A.GOME, a man, GG. 525.

A-GAYN, towards, GC. 232. See A3AYN.

AGHLICH, fearful, dreadful, GK. 136.

A-GONNE, to go, GC. 497.

AY, ever, GK. 26, 73, 128, 167, 893. GG. 1160.  
 AY-QUERE, AY-WHERE, everywhere, GK. 599,  
 629, 745, 800.  
 AIR, previously, before, GG. 157, 606. See  
 ARE, ER.  
 AIRE, AYERE, heir, AA. liii. 4.  
 AYTHER, AYTHIRE, either, GK. 841, 939,  
 1307. AA. xxxix. 6.  
 †AKER, perhaps an error for UCH A, each,  
 every, GK. 1421.  
 †ALCE, also, likewise, GK. 2492.  
 ALDER-TRUEST, truest of all, GK. 1486.  
 ALDERES, ancestors, GK. 95.  
 ALGATE, every way, GK. 141, always, c. 58.  
 AL-HAL-DAY, All-hallows day, 1 November,  
 GK. 536.  
 ALKIN, ALKYN, of all kind, (*calles cynnes*.  
 Sax.) GG. 461, 794.  
 ALLYNS, altogether, GG. 207.  
 ALMOUS-DEDIS, almsdeeds, AA. xx. 5.  
 AL ONE, alone, GK. 735, 2155. AL HYM ONE,  
 AL HIS ONE, by himself, 749, 1048. See  
 ONE.  
 A-LOSED, *p. p.* praised, GK. 1512.  
 ALS, ALSE, also, likewise, GK. 270, 720, 933,  
 1627, etc. GG. 1171, 1250; as, GK. 1067.  
 AA. i. 2, *et pass.* (MS. Douce generally reads  
 As.) GG. 945.  
 ALSO, as, GC. 153.  
 ALTHER-GRATTEST, greatest of all, GK. 1441.  
 ALUISCH, elvish, having preternatural power,  
 GK. 681.  
 AMNANT, pleasantly? GK. 806.  
 A-MONGE, amidst, at intervals, GC. 437. c. 220.  
 AMONGEZ, amongst, GK. 1361.  
 AN, on? GK. 1808. if, GR. K. 338.  
 AN-HYȝTE, ANE HYȝT, on high, GC. 356, 551.  
 ANAIRMIT, *p. p.* armed, GG. 842.  
 ANAMAYLD, *p. p.* enamelled, GK. 169.  
 AND, if, GK. 1245, 1509, 1647. AA. xvi. 2.  
 GG. 347. GC. 189. J. 423. GR. K. 36. TG. 31.  
 ANE, one, GK. 223.  
 ANE-BAK, aback, GG. 449, 987.  
 A-NELEDE, *p. t.* approached, GK. 723.  
 ANERDIS, *pr. t.* adheres, dwells with, GG. 410.  
 ANGARDEZ, *gen. c.* arrogance? GK. 681. The

same word occurs as an adjective in the  
 Scottish alliterative Romance of Alexander:

Thire athils of Atenes, ther *angard* clerkis,  
 Than reuerent thai the riche seele, and red  
 ouer the pistille.

MS. Ashm. 44, f. 40<sup>b</sup>.

It is possible that the word in both the  
 above instances should be spelt with a *u*.  
 See Jamieson, v. *Ogart*, and Roquefort's  
*Glossaire*, v. *Angarde*.

ANIOUS, wearisome, fatiguing, GK. 535.

ANLAS, pointed blade or spike, AA. xxx. 13,  
 MS. D. The reading of the Linc. MS. is  
 a corruption.

ANOTHER, otherwise, GK. 1268.

ANTERUS, adventurous, GG. 393.

APENDES, APENDEZ, *pr. t.* appertains, be-  
 longs, GK. 623, 913.

APERT, openly, manifestly, GK. 154, 2392.

APPERTLY, openly, AA. xix. 6.

APPAREMENTIS, adornments? AA. xix. 5.

ARE, ere, previously, GK. 239, 1632, 1891.  
 AA. xxxi. 13. MS. D. GC. 197. See AIR,  
 ER.

ARERED, *p. p.* retreated, GK. 1902.

AREWEZ, ARWES, ARWEZ, arrows, GK. 1160,  
 1455, 1460.

ARN, are, GK. 280, 1094.

ARSOUNEZ, ARSOUNZ, saddle-bows, GK.  
 171, 602.

ARȝE, timid, fearful, GK. 241.

ARȝE, *subj.* should wax timid, GK. 2301. ARȝEZ,  
*pr. t.* waxest timed, 2277. ARȝED, *p. t.*  
 waxed timid, 1463, 2271.

ASAY, *n.* the point in the breast of the buck,  
 at which the hunter's knife was inserted,  
 to make trial of the animal's fatness, GK.  
 1328. See the *Book of St. Alban's*, and  
 Boucher's *Glossary*, v. *Assay*, new edit.

ASAY, to try, tempt, KE. 2362.

ASCRYED, *p. t.* shouted, GK. 1153. Printed  
 by Guest *astried*, and explained *opposed*, in  
*Hist. Engl. Rhythms*, ii. 168.

ASKEZ, ashes, GK. 2.

ASOYLED, *p. t.* absolved, GK. 1883.

ASPYE, to discover, GK. 1199.

ASSAUT, assault, GK. 1.

ASSWYTHE, quickly, GK. 1400. See SWITHE.

ASTALIT, *p. p.* decked, GK. 63.

ASTYT, suddenly, GK. 1210. See TIT.

ASTONAIT, ASTONAYT, *p. p.* confounded, stunned, GK. 107, 575.

AT, for, GK. 648; of, 703, (a modern Scoticism.) In Stevenson's Additions to Boucher the line in GK. 1006 is quoted as an instance of the Northern use of the relative *at* for *that*; but I regard it as a mistake of the scribe, since no other example of such a form occurs throughout the poem.

ATHEL, noble, good, GK. 5, 171, 241, 904, 1654, 2466. See HATHEL.

ATHER, either, GK. 1357.

ATTLE, *pr. t.* aim, design, GK. 27. ATLED, *p. t.* 2263. See ETYLLEDE.

ATTANIS, at once, GK. 985.

AT-WAPED, *p. p.* escaped, GK. 1167. Explained by Guest, *let fly at*, Hist. Engl. Rh. ii. 169. The word occurs again in another of the poems by the same author in the Cotton MS. Nero A. x. f. 73<sup>b</sup>.

Thay stel out on a stytle nyȝt, er any steuen ryses, & harde hurles thurȝ the oste, er enmies hit wyste; Bot er thay *at-wappe* ne moȝt the wach wyth oute, Hiȝe skelt watȝ the askry the skewes an vnder, etc.

AUEN, AWEN, OWD, GK. 10, 293, 836.

AUMAYL, enamel, GK. 236.

AUNCIAN, aged, GK. 1001, 2463. Used substantively, 948.

AUNTER, AVENTURE, AWNTIR, adventure, GK. 27, 29, 2522. AA. i. 1. lv. 13. AUNTEREȝ, *pl.* 2527.

AUNTERED, *p. p.* ventured, GK. 1516.

AUTHER, either, GK. 88, 702. AA. xvi. 3. MS. D. Pinkerton misprints this word *anyes*, which is explained by Mr. Guest *once*!

A-VANTERS, portions of the nombles of a deer, which lay near the neck; a term used in wood-craft, GK. 1342.

Then dresse the nombles, fyrst that ye recke;  
Downe the *auauncers* kerue, that cleuyth to the necke;

And down wyth the bolthrote put theym anone.  
*Boke of St. Alban's*, 1496, *sign. d. iv.*

One croke of the nombles lyeth euermore  
Under the throte-bolle of the beest before,  
That callyd is *auauncers*, whoso can theym kenne.  
*ib. sign. e. i.*

AUENAND, AUENANT, AUENANTE, comely, AA. xxiv. 3. GK. 339. Used substantively, *man* being understood, GK. 1194, 1283. AUYNANTIS, *pl.* 648.

AUENTAYLE, the open and moveable portion of the helmet which covered the mouth, for the purpose of respiration, GK. 608. So in the alliterative Scottish romance of *Morte Arthure*,

He brayedeȝ one a bacenett, burneschte of syluer,  
The beste that was in Basille, wyth bordurs ryche;  
The creste and the coronalle enclosed so faire,  
Wyth clasppes of clere golde, couched wyth stones;  
The vesare, the *aventaile*, enarmede so faire,  
Voyde w<sup>t</sup> owttyn vice, w<sup>t</sup> wyndowes of syluer.  
*MS. Linc. A. 1. 17. f. 63.*

This term is frequently used in early writers for the whole front of the helmet, including the visor, and much confusion has hence arisen. Consult Allou's paper *Sur les Casques du Moyen Age*, 4<sup>me</sup> époque, published in the *Memoires des Antiquaires de France*, Nouv. Ser., tome i. pp. 161-191, 8vo, 1835. It must be also remarked, that in the prose French romances of the Round Table, the *ventaille* is a distinct piece of armour, and put on before the helmet. See particularly *Roman de Perceval*, f. cxii, cxiv<sup>b</sup>, ed. 1530; *Roman de Lancelot*, vol. i. f. xlii. ed. 1513; *Rom. de Meliadus*, f. clxxi. ed. 1528; and *Rom. de Merlin*, vol. ii. f. cx<sup>b</sup>, ed. 1498.

AUENTURUS, adventures, GK. 491.

A-VYSE, AWYSE, to think, devise, GK. 45, 1389. AUYSED, *p. t.* viewed, observed, 771.



AVOW, A-VOWE, VOW, oath, AA. xvi. 11. GG. 273, 296. GC. 518. AKC. 22, 129, 147.  
 AW, *pr. t.* owns, possesses, GG. 262; demands, requires, 730. See A<sub>3</sub>T.  
 A-WHARF, *p. p.* whirled round, GK. 2220.  
 A-WONDIRDE, *p. p.* astonished, AA. xxvi. 9.  
 AXYD, *p. t.* asked, GC. 334.  
 A<sub>3</sub>AYN, A<sub>3</sub>AYNES, A<sub>3</sub>AYNEZ, A-<sub>3</sub>JENST, towards, GK. 815, 971; against, 1459, 1661, GC. 388, 478; opposite, 362.  
 A<sub>3</sub>LEZ, fearless, GK. 2335.  
 A<sub>3</sub>T, A<sub>3</sub>TE, *p. t.* owned, possessed, GK. 767, 843, 1775, 1941. See AW.

## B.

BACHILER, BACHILERE, bachelor, GG. 94, 1335.  
 BACENETT, BASNET, a light helmet, worn with or without a moveable front, AA. xxx. 3. GG. 601, 844.  
 BADE, BAID, *p. t.* abode, tarried, GK. 1699. AA. iv. 1. GG. 841; endured, persisted, 686, 936. See BODE.  
 BAY, round, GK. 967.  
 BAY, BAYE, bay or baiting of a wild-boar, when attacked by dogs, GK. 1450, 1564, 1582.  
 BAID, *n.* delay, GG. 1349. See ABAID.  
 BAYEN, *pr. t.* bay, bait, bark at, GK. 1909. BAYED, *p. t.* 1142, 1362, 1603.  
 BAILL, BALE, harm, evil, grief, GK. 2041, 2419. AA. xxiii. 4, xxv. 9. GG. 293, 716, 1134. GC. 530. GR.K. 222. C. 197, 418.  
 BALES, *pl.* AA. viii. 12.  
 BAINE, BAYN, BAYNE, BANE, prompt, ready, GK. 1092, 2158. GG. 1209. TG. 108. C. 308. Used adverbially, GG. 74, 79, 921. See BOUN.  
 BAIR, boar, GG. 733, 822.  
 BAYST, *p. t.* was abashed, GK. 376. A word of no unusual occurrence, from the Fr. *abaïsser*. Stevenson quotes it incorrectly *the bayst*, and then, without any authority, converts *bayst* into a substantive, and explains it *blow*. On re-considering the passage, I think he will be convinced of his mistake. See Boucher, v. *Baist*.  
 BAYTHE, to grant, GK. 327. BAYTHE, BAYTHEN, *pr. t.* 1404, 1840. Stevenson is here again greatly in error. He prints the line, *schal bay then thy bone*, and interprets *bay* by *obey*! It is in defence of my own explanations that I feel obliged to notice these mistakes in a truly valuable work, which I still trust will be continued.  
 BALE, belly, GK. 1333. In Stevenson's Add. to Boucher, this word is, I conceive, erroneously interpreted the *scrotum*.  
 BALEFULLE, evil, noxious, AA. xvii. 3.  
 BALEZ, bowels, GK. 1333.  
 BAL<sub>3</sub>E, ample, swelling, GK. 2032, 2172. Mr. Stevenson, however, explains it in the sense of *plain, smooth*.  
 BAN, to curse, TG. 157. BANNÉ, BANNENE, *pr. t.* AA. vii. 11. MS. D. xlvi. 7.  
 BANKERS, BANKOWRES, table-clothes, AA. xxvii. 4. MS. D. xxxv. 2.  
 BANRENT, banneret, noble, GG. 207, 1335. BANRENTIS, *pl.* 5, 1274.  
 BARAYNE, barren, applied to hinds not gravid, GK. 1320. BARAYNES, BARRAYNE, *pl.* used substantively, AA. iv. 2.  
 BARBE, edge of an axe, GK. 2310. BARBEZ, *pl.* points of arrows, 1457.  
 BARBICAN, out-work or tower of a castle, GK. 793.  
 BARBORANNE, barberry, a shrub, AA. vi. 6. See BERBER.  
 BARCELETT, species of bow, AA. iii. 12, iv. 1. See Stevenson's Add. to Boucher, v. *Berselet*.  
 BARE, mere, unconditional, GK. 277. In GK. 1141, it is applied to the *motes* or blasts of a horn, and seems to mean *short*, or *without rechate*. It is used adverbially, 465.  
 BARELY, unconditionally, certainly, GK. 548.  
 BARE-HEVEDIS, boars' heads, AA. xxx. 8. See BER-HEDIS.  
 BARET, BARRAT, strife, contest, GK. 21, 353. 2115; grief, GK. 752. AA. xxiii. 4. GG. 1133.

- BARFRAY, tower, GG. 774. By the mention of bells in the following line the connexion between this word and *belfrey* would seem to be established. See Stevenson's Add. to Boucher, *in v.*
- BARLAY, apparently a corruption of the French *par loi*, GK. 296.
- BARNE, child, AA. xxiv. 11. MS. D. Applied to Christ, xviii. 1. See BERNE.
- BARRED, *p. p.* striped diagonally, GK. 159, 600. See Tyrwhitt's Notes on Chaucer, iv. 150, ed. 1822, and Warton's *Hist. Engl. Poetr.* ii. 213. Stevenson interprets it *cross-chequered*, but, I think, erroneously.
- BARRES, diagonal stripes, GK. 162.
- BARTYMIT, *p. p.* struck, battered, GG. 716. The Editor of the reprint of 1827 is mistaken in wishing to read *Barkymit*.
- BASNET, see BACENETT.
- BASTEL-ROUEZ, turreted or castellated roofs, GK. 799.
- BATE, debate, conflict, GK. 1461.
- BATED, *p. t.* abated, J. 88.
- BATOLLIT, *p. p.* imbattled, GG. 43.
- BAUDERYK, strap by which the shield was suspended round the neck, GK. 621; belt or lace, 2486.
- BAWE, bow of a saddle? GK. 435.
- BAWE-MEN, bowmen, GK. 1564.
- BE, by, GK. 652, 1216.
- BEAU, fair, GK. 1222.
- BE-CALLE, *pr. t.* require, challenge, AA. xxxii. 7.
- BE-COM, *p. t.* went, GK. 460.
- BEDDEZ, *pr. t.* bids, GK. 1374. BEDE, *p. t.* bade, 1437, 2090.
- BEDE, to proffer, GK. 374. BEDE, *pr. t.* and *imp.* proffer, offer, 382, 2322. BEDE, BEDE, *p. t.* 1824, 1834, 2248. AA. l. 8.
- BE-DENE, BE-DEENE, BYDEENE, continuously? together? moreover? AA. i. 11, xxiv. 6. xxvi. 6. xxxvi. 4. xl. 9. GG. 29, 239, 319, 322. GK. 230; forthwith? GC. 48. Consult Boucher's Glossary *in v.* with regard to this difficult word.
- BEDIS, prayers, AA. xvi. 5.
- BEENE, arc, TG. 22.
- BEFORNE, BYFORNE, before, GK. 1375, 1577, GG. 87.
- BEFT, *p. p.* beaten, GG. 870.
- BEGE, big, GC. 229.
- BEGGYNGE, mansion, GG. 159. SEE BIGGING.
- BEILD, BELDE, protection, shelter, GG. 445, 641, 650, 822, 935, 1184.
- BEILDING, place of shelter, GG. 32.
- BEILDIT, *p. t.* imaged, formed, GG. 390, 1146. See Jamieson, *v. Beldit*. I think he is mistaken in the explanation given under *Beild*.
- BEIRDIS, ladies, GG. 1146. See BIRDE, BURDE.
- BEIRNIS, BEIRNYS, men, knights, GG. 204, 686. See BERYN, BURN.
- BEIS, *pr. t.* is or will be, GG. 821.
- BEKIRE, to attack, act hostilely against, AA. iv. 2.
- BE-KNEW, *sulj.* should acknowledge, GK. 903.
- BE-KNOWEN, *p. p.* acknowledged, 2391. See BI-KNOWE.
- BELDE, see BEILD.
- BELE-CHERE, good company or presence, GK. 1034.
- BELEF, badge? GK. 2486, 2517. Has this word any connexion with the Fr. *belif*, as it appears in the following passage? "Et quel escu portiez vous? Dame, je portay à la premiere foys ungescu blanc à une bande de *belif* vermeille."—*Rom. de Lancelot*, i. f. lxxxii. Elsewhere I find "une bende blanche de *bellif*."—*ib.* i. f. cxxx.
- BELIFE, BE-LYFE, quickly, AA. xxxix. 3. GG. 369, 622. See BILIVE.
- BELLE, bonfire, AA. xv. 6.
- BELLE, part of a lady's dress, perhaps the mantle, AA. xxix. 3.
- BEMYS, trumpets, GG. 467.
- BEMYT, *p. p.* summoned by sound of trumpet, GG. 746.
- BEN, prompt, ready, C. 302. See BAINE.
- BE-NAME, *p. t.* took, acquired, GG. 227.
- BENDE, band, bond, GK. 2505, 2517.

- BENDE, *p. t.* and *p. p.* bent, GK. 305, 2224 ; put down, 2105.
- BENE, to be, GK. 141. BEN, *pr. t.* are or will be, 1646.
- BENE, well, fair, GK. 2402, 2475. GG. 601, 688, 844, 1032. AA. vi. 6. xxix. 4. xxx. 3. lii. 8. In every instance but one this word is coupled with *ful*. It is impossible to interpret the majority of these passages by *quickly*, as Stevenson would have us. See his Additions to Boucher, *in v.*
- BENT, plain, field, so denominated from a coarse grass growing on open lands. GK. 353, 1465, 1599, 2115, 2233, 2338. AA. xxvi. 5, xlix. 5. GG. 156, 637. c. 68.
- BER, beer, GK. 129.
- BER-HEDIS, BERE-HEDES, boars' heads, AA. xxx. 8. MS. D. GG. 605. See BARE-HEUEDIS.
- BERBER, barberry, a shrub, AA. vi. 6. MS. D.
- BER, BERE, *p. t.* bare, carried, GK. 637, 1913.
- BERE, noise, AA. x. 8.
- BERIALIS, BERYALLIS, BERYELL, BERILES, beryls, precious stones, AA. xli. 2. GG. 896, 952, 1086.
- BERYNE, BERNE, man, knight, noble, GG. 59, 91, 115. AA. x. 5. BERYNS, BERNIS, BERNYS, *pl.* GG. 5, 378, 637. AA. iv. 1, xiv. 5, xxxviii. 9, xlix. 5. See BEIRNIS, BURN.
- BERN, barn, GC. 52.
- BER3, BER3E, mount, hill, GK. 2172, 2178.
- BESANDIS, BESANTES, besants, AA. xxix. 4. GG. 1086.
- BEST, beast, animal, GK. 1436. AA. 553. BESTES, *pl.* 1377.
- BE-STAD, *p. p.* circumstanced, J. 428.
- BETE, to amend, better, AA. viii. 12. BETTE, *p. p.* applied to fire, GK. 1367.
- BETTE, to beat, GC. 148, 158. BGT, BETIT, *p. t.* GG. 626, 680, 989. BETEN, *p. t. pl.* GK. 1437. BETEN, BETIN, *p. p.* worked, embroidered (Fr. *battu*), GK. 78, 1833, 2028. GG. 317.
- BEVERAGE, drink, liquor, GK. 1112, 1409. From the first passage, and one in *Piers Plouhman*, it would seem to have been the custom to drink, when making a bargain.
- BEVEREN, flowing? AA. xxviii. 6. MS. D. The Lincoln MS. reads *burely*. Jamieson seems inclined to explain it *shaking*, but I think he is wrong. The word occurs again in the alliterative *Morte Arthur*.
- The bolde kynge is in a barge, and a-bowtherowes, Alle bare-heuede for besye, with *beueryne* lokkes. MS. Linc. A. 1. 17. f. 91<sup>b</sup>.
- BEUER-HWED, color of a beaver? GK. 845. Is there any connexion with the preceding word?
- BEWES, BEWIS, boughs, AA. iii. 13, x. 10. GG. 468.
- BY-BLED, *p. p.* made bloody, AA. xli. 11.
- BY-CLAGGEDE, *p. p.* besmeared, AA. ix. 2.
- BYCOMES, *pr. t.* befits, GK. 471. BICOME, *p. t.* became, 6.
- BIDE, BYDE, BYDEN, to abide, endure, GK. 374, 520, 1582, 2041. GG. 1037. BIDES, BYDEZ, BYDIS, *pr. t.* abides, awaits, stays, GK. 376. AA. iii. 3, x. 5, xxv. 9.
- BY-DENE, See BE-DENE.
- BIGES, *pr. t.* builds, GK. 9. BIGGED, BYGGED, BYGGEDE, *p. p.* inhabited, built, 20. AA. vi. 6, lii. 8.
- BIGGING, mansion, c. 109. See BEGGYNGE.
- BIGLY, BYGLY, loudly, GK. 1141; deeply, severely, 1162; boldly, 1584; strongly, GG. 43. The second of these instances is interpreted *hugely* by Guest, *Hist. Engl. Rh.* ii. 167, but under a misapplication.
- BIGRAUEN, *p. p.* engraved, GK. 216.
- BI-CRYPT, *p. t.* grasped, GK. 214.
- BIHALDEN, BIHOLDE, *p. p.* indebted, beholden, GK. 1547, 1842.
- BY-HODE, *p. t.* behoued, GK. 717.
- BIKE, building, GG. 406.
- BYKENNEN, *pr. t.* commend, GK. 1307. BIKENDE, *p. t.* 596, 1982. See Stevenson's Add. to Boucher, v. *Bekenne*, which is, however, far from satisfactory as to the etymology.

- BI-KNOWE, BI-KNOWEZ, *pr. t.* acknowledge, acknowledges, GK. 2385, 2495. See BE-KNEW.
- BYLED, *p. t.* boiled, GK. 2082.
- BY-LEUYS, *pr. t.* remains, AA. vi. 4. BY-LEUEDE, *p. p.* left, xxii. 2.
- BILIUE, BILYUE, BY-LYUE, quickly, GK. 132, 1128, 1136, 1171, 1715. AA. xxxvii. 9. See BELIFE.
- BYNKE, bench, table, GG. 204.
- BIRDE, BYRD, lady, AA. iii. 3, xiii. 2. GG. 351.
- BIRDIS, BYRDIS, *pl.* AA. xii. 2, xiv. 5, xxix. 10. GG. 134. See BEIRDIS, BURDE.
- BYRE, shed, cowhouse, GG. 32.
- BIRKIN, birchen, GG. 31.
- BIRNAND, burning, GG. 78.
- BIRNY, cuirass, coat of mail, GG. 94, 199, 567.
- BIRNEIS, BIRNYS, *pl.* 680, 688, 757, 844. In the last passage the *plur.* seems written by error for the *sing.* See BRENE, BRUNY.
- BYRSIT, *p. p.* bruised, GG. 870.
- BYSE, white or grey, GG. 609.
- BISEMEZ, *pr. t.* befits, GK. 1612, 2191. BISEMED, *p. t.* befitted, became, 622, 2035.
- BISIDES, BISYDEZ, on the side, GK. 76, 856.
- BISIED, *p. t.* agitated, GK. 89.
- BISOYT, *p. t.* besought, GK. 96.
- BITAND, biting, sharp, GG. 934.
- BITIDDE, BY-TYD, BY-TYDE, *p. t.* befell, GK. 2522. AA. i. 1, lv. 13.
- BITTE, BYTTE, the steel part of an axe, GK. 2224, 2310.
- BI-WYLED, *p. p.* beguiled, GK. 2425.
- BYYT, hollow, cavity, GK. 1341, 1349.
- BLAN, *p. t.* caused to cease, GG. 1210. See BLINN.
- BLANCHART, white (horse), GG. 556.
- BLANDE, *p. p.* intermixed, blended, GK. 1205, 1931.
- BLASOUN, shield of arms, GK. 828.
- BLAUNG, blowing, GG. 467. Pinkerton chose to turn the *u* into a *v*, and Jamieson uselessly perpetuates the blunder.
- BLAUNNER, a species of fur? GK. 155, 573, 856, 1931. Compare *Ly beaus Disconus*, l. 116. It is left unexplained by Ritson, and not found in any other Glossary consulted.
- BLE, BLEE, hue, color, complexion, AA. xvii. 4. GG. 134, 212, 316, 895, 1016. GG. 427. MG. 4. BLEES, *pl.* features, AA. li. 9.
- BLEAUNT, species of rich cloth or stuff, also a robe or mantle, GK. 879, 1928. Sir W. Scott's error in explaining this word in *Sir Tristrem*, is adopted in Jamieson's Dict. See the latter work in v. *Bland*, Roquefort's Glossary, v. *Bliaux*, and Michel's *Charlemagne*, v. *Blianx*.
- BLED, *p. p.* interpreted by Jamieson *sprung*, GG. 608; but may, perhaps, be a misprint for *bred*.
- BLEDAND, bleeding, GG. 870.
- BLENCHED, *p. t.* receded, drew back, GK. 1715.
- BLENDED, *p. t.* blinded, GK. 2419.
- BLENDIS, *pr. t.* mingles, curdles, AA. xvii. 4. BLENDE, BLENT, *p. t.* and *p. p.* mingled, blended, GK. 1361, 1610, 2371. GG. 68, 1134. AKC. 274. Jamieson is mistaken in his interpretation of *Blent*.
- BLENK, to shine, GK. 2315. BLENKED, BLENKET, BLENKIT, *p. t.* shone, 799; appeared, looked, AA. xlii. 4. GG. 74.
- BLYCANDE, BLYKKANDE, shining, glittering, GK. 305, 2485.
- BLYKKED, *p. t.* shone, glistened, GK. 429.
- BLYNDIT, *p. p.* blended, GG. 896. See BLENDIS.
- BLINN, BLYNNE, to stop, delay, GK. 358. c. 471. BLYNNE, *imp.* cease, GK. 2322.
- BLYSSE, fortune, prosperity, GK. 18.
- BLYTHE, gay, bright, GK. 155.
- BLONK, BLONKE, steed, GK. 434, 785, 1581, AA. iii. 3, xliii. 2, xlv. 4. GG. 551, 560.
- BLONKES, BLONKIS, BLONKKES, *pl.* GK. 1128, 1693. AA. xxxix. 5. GG. 306, 754. See BLUNK.
- BLUBRED, *p. t.* foamed, blubbered; applied to a stream of water, GK. 2174.
- BLUNDER, confusion, trouble, GK. 18.
- BLUNK, steed, GK. 440. See BLONK.
- BLUNKET, a white stuff, AA. xxix. 3. MS. D. See PLONKETE.

- BLUSCH, *n.* look, GK. 520.  
 BLUSCHED, BLUSHED, *p. p.* looked, GK. 650, 793, GK. 388.  
 BLUSSCHANDE, blushing, glittering, GK. 1819.  
 BLW, BLWE, *p. t.* blew, GK. 1141, 1362.  
 BLWE, blue, GK. 1928.  
 BOBBAUNCE, boast, GK. 9.  
 BODE, bidding, proffer, GK. 852, 1824.  
 BODE, *p. t.* abode, GK. 785, 1564. See BADE.  
 BODEN, *p. p.* prayed, asked, GK. 327.  
 BOD-WORD, message, GK. 55, 123, 171.  
 BOIST, threat, GK. 436.  
 BOKE-LERED, *p. p.* book-learned, AA. lv. 3. MS. D.  
 BOKIT, *p. t.* vomited, GK. 571.  
 BOLDE, used substantively, *men* being understood, GK. 21.  
 BOLE, trunk of a tree, GK. 766.  
 BOLLE, bowl, cup, GK. 289. BOLLYS, *pl.* 622.  
 BOLNE, *pr. t.* swell, GK. 512.  
 BONCHEF, gaiety? GK. 1764.  
 BONE, BOONE, prayer, request, GK. 327. GK. 175, 522.  
 BONE-HOSTEL, lodging, GK. 776.  
 BONK, bank, height, GK. 511, 700, 710, 785, 1571. BONKES, BONKEZ, *pl.* 14, 1562, 2077. Jamieson prints the plural from *boukes*, and explains it *solitudes*!!  
 †BOOME, perhaps a mistake for GOOME, man, AKC. 119.  
 BORD, BORDE, BURD, BURDE, table, GK. 481. AA. xxxv. 7. GK. 1164. TG. 83, 165. To *begin the burd* or *tabull*, GK. 112. GK. 1155. GK. 359. See Warton's *Hist. Engl. Poetr.* ii. 5. BORDS, *pl.* c. 206.  
 BORDE, border, GK. 610. BORDS, *pl.* 159.  
 BORDEZ, jests? GK. 1954. See BOURDE.  
 BORDOUR, apparently a piece of armour attached to the cuirass, GK. 938, 977.  
 BORELYCH, burly, huge, strong, GK. 766, 2148, 2224. See BURELY.  
 BORNE, bourn, stream, GK. 731, 1570, 2174.  
 BORNYST, BURNYST, *p. p.* burnished, GK. 212, 582.  
 BOR3, BOR3E, BUR3, BUR3E, burgh, city, castle, GK. 2, 9, 259, 843, 1092. BURGHE3, *pl.* AA. lii. 7.  
 BOSTFULLE, boasting, GK. 169.  
 BOSTLYE, boasting, c. 115.  
 BOT, BOT IF, unless, GK. 1782. GK. 268, 716, 1300.  
 BOT, BOTE, *p. t.* bit, wounded, GK. 426, 1162, 1562; ate, AA. xliii. 2. The third of these instances is interpreted erroneously by Mr. Guest *beat*.  
 BOTE, BUTE, salvation, remedy, safety, AA. xliii. 3. GK. 39, 935. J. 143, 176.  
 BOTHEM, bottom, GK. 2145.  
 BOUN, BOUNE, BOWNE, ready, prompt, obedient, GK. 548, 852, 1311, 1693. AA. xxii. 3. GK. 51, 330, 813. TG. 9, 49; promptly, GK. 523.  
 BOUNE, *imp.* go, GK. 1184. BOUNIT, BOWNYT, *p. t.* went, 59, 455, 1348.  
 BOUR, BOURE, BOWER, chamber, GK. 853, 1519. GK. 330. GK. 4. AKC. 89.  
 BOURDE, sport, joke, GK. 1409. BOURDEZ, *pl.* 1212. See BORDEZ.  
 BOURDED, *p. t.* joked, GK. 1217.  
 BOURDYNG, joke, sport, GK. 1404.  
 BOURDOURE, circlet round the helmet, AA. xxx. 4. BOURDURES, *pl.* xlv. 2.  
 BOUSUM, BOWSUM, obedient, affable, GK. 125, 351, 445.  
 BOUT, BOUTE, without, GK. 361, 1285, 1444.  
 BOWLER, boiler? TG. 219.  
 BOWNE, see BOUN.  
 BO3E, to move, rise, go, GK. 344, 1220.  
 BO3ES, BO3EN, *pr. t.* 434, 1311, 2077, 2178. BO3ED, *p. t.* 481, 550, 1189, 2524.  
 BO3EZ, boughs, GK. 765, 2077.  
 BRA, an acclivity, GK. 1021.  
 BRACE, armour for the arms, GK. 582. See BRATHERIS.  
 BRACE, to embrace, J. 3.  
 BRACHES, BRACHEZ, hounds, GK. 1142, 1563, 1610.  
 BRACHETES, hounds, GK. 1603.  
 BRAD, *p. t.* and *p. p.* roasted, GK. 891. AA. xxvii. 4. MS. D.  
 BRADDE, *p. t.* extended, GK. 1928.

- BRAGING, boasting, GG. 467.  
 BRAY, good, bold, GK. 1909.  
 BRAY, *imp.* throw, TG. 191.  
 BRAYDEN, *p.p.* embroidered, GK. 220, 1833.  
 See BRAWDEN.  
 BRAIDES, BRAYDES, BRAYDEZ, *pr.t.* draws, GK. 621, 1584, 1609, 1901. AA. x. 5. MS. D. xxxv. 7. BRAID, BRAIDIT, BRAYD, BRAYDE, BRAYDIT, *p.t.* started, leapt, GK. 429. GG. 921. GR. K. 194; turned, GK. 440. GG. 79; cast, threw, GK. 2377; drew, GG. 757, 867. BRAIDE, BRAYDEN, *p.t.pl.* drew, GK. 1339. AA. xxxv. 7. MS. D. BRAYDE, *p.p.* drawn, thrown, GK. 2069.  
 BRAYEN, *pr.t.pl.* cry, as deer, GK. 1163.  
 BRAYN, BRAYN-WOD, mad, violent, GK. 286, 1461, 1580.  
 BRAISSIT, *p.p.* inclosed, GG. 844.  
 BRAIST, *p.t.* burst, GG. 754. See BRIST.  
 BRAITHLY, forcibly, violently, GG. 462, 626, 641, 716, 870, 1134.  
 †BRAKE, probably an error for BLAKE, black, AA. xxx. 8. MS. D.  
 BRAND, BRANDE, sword, AA. x. 5. l. 8. GR. K. 22.  
 BRANDES, *pl.* AA. xxxix. 10. See BROND.  
 BRANDENE, *p.p.* roasted, AA. xxvii. 4. MS. D. xxxv. 2. MS. D.  
 BRASSE, explained by Mr. Guest *gleses*, but I know not on what authority, AA. xv. 6.  
 BRATHERIS, vambraces, armour for the arms, GG. 994. "Item, *bracheres* knet to the shuldres of the cuyrie." MS. Harl. 6149, f. 46, where the original French text has *bracellets*.  
 BRAUDED, *p.p.* embroidered, AA. xxix. 4. MS. D. It has been printed inadvertently BRANDED, as in Pinkerton, Laing, and Jamieson, which is interpreted *bordered* by the latter.  
 †BRAUDURE, apparently an error, AA. xxx. 4. MS. D. Jamieson prints it *Brandur*. See BOURDURE.  
 BRAWDEN, *p.p.* woven, GK. 177, 580. See BRAYDEN.  
 BRAWEN, BRAWNE, brawn or flesh of a wild-boar, GK. 1611, 1631.  
 BRAWNDECHE, *p.t.* brandished, AA. x. 5.  
 BREAD, BREDE, breadth, AA. xlv. 13. c. 183.  
 See ON-BREID.  
 BREAKKE, to cut up the deer; a hunting term, c. 20. BREK, *p.t.* GK. 1333. BREKEN, *p.t.pl.* brake, 1564.  
 BREDDEN, *p.t.pl.* were bred, flourished, GK. 21.  
 BREDEZ, bounds, limits, GK. 2071.  
 BREM, BREME, fierce, bold, GK. 1142, 1155, 1580, 2200; loud, shrill, 1601; rugged, 2145. See BRYM.  
 BREME, BREMLY, BREMELY, BREMLYCH, quickly? GK. 779, 781; fiercely, boldly, 509, 1598, 2233, 2319.  
 BREN, BRENN, to burn, GR. K. 252. TG. 163.  
 BRENNER, *pr.t.* GK. 1609. BRENDE, BRENNED, BRENT, *p.t.* and *p.p.* 2, 195, 832, 875, 2165. AA. xxix. 4. MS. D.  
 BRENE, BRYNE, burny, cuirass, GK. 580. AA. xxx. 3. MS. D. xxxviii. 4. MS. D. xli. 7.  
 BRENES, BRENYES, *pl.* AA. xxx. 3, xlv. 11.  
 See BIRNY, BRUNY.  
 BRENING, burning, c. 181.  
 †BRENNER, an error probably for BREME, TG. 36.  
 BRERD, surface of the earth, GG. 1084.  
 BRESED, *p.p.* broken? GK. 305.  
 BRETH, rage, anger, GG. 571. See BRITH.  
 BRETHUR, brethren, GK. 39.  
 BRETYNIT, *p.t.* cut down, GG. 468. See BRITNED.  
 BREVE, to tell, inform, speak, GK. 1393, 1488. BREVED, BREVIT, *p.p.* told, esteemed, accounted, GG. 281, 417, 465; marked, GK. 1436; written, 2521. In the old edition of GG. the word is misprinted *beevit*, which is repeated by Pinkerton and Jamieson, and the latter endeavours, as usual, to find an etymon, but is very wide of the mark.  
 BREWE, *p.p.* brewed, made, AA. xlv. 7.  
 BRYDDES, BRYDDEZ, birds, GK. 166, 509, 746.  
 BRYM, loud, shrill, GG. 523, 534; fierce, cruel, 733, 822. See BREM.  
 BRYMME, flood, river, GK. 2172. BRIMES, *pl.* seas, waters, GR. K. 288.

BYRNE, See BRENE.

BRYMILY, fiercely, gg. 687. See BREME.

BRINT, BRYNT, *p. t.* and *p. p.* burnt, refined, AA. xxvii. 4. gg. 317; flashed, 769. See BRENE.

BRIST, to burst, gg. 641. BRIST, *p. t.* 306. See BRAIST.

BRITH, wrath, contention, gg. 125. See BRETH.

BRITNEZ, *pr. t.* breaks, cuts, gk. 1611. BRITNED, BRITTENED, *p. t.* and *p. p.* broke or cut in pieces, 2, 680, 1339. See BRETYNIT.

BROCHE, spit, gg. 80.

BROCHES, *pr. t.* spur, AA. xxxix. 5. BROCHED, BROCHIT, *p. t.* spurted, AA. xxxix. 5. MS. D. xlv. 4. gg. 306, 754.

BROKETES, torches, tapers, AA. xxxv. 9.

BRONCHED, *p. t.* pierced, AA. xlv. 5.

BRONDE, BRONT, sword, gk. 561, 588, 828, 1584. AA. xlv. 8. BRONDES, *pl.* AA. xlv. 9.

BRONDEZ, embers, gk. 2.

BROTHE, angry, gk. 2233.

BROTHEL, angrily, violently, gk. 2377.

BROTHER-HEDE, brotherhood, gk. 2516.

BROUN, used elliptically for the *brown deer*, gk. 1162. Mr. Guest is greatly mistaken in interpreting it *branches*.

BROWE, brow, gk. 1457. BROJES, BROJEZ, *pl.* 305, 961.

BRUNY, cuirass, gk. 861, 2012, 2018. See BRENE, BIRNY.

BRUSTEN, *p. t.* burst, gk. 1166. See BRIST.

BUE, fair? AKC. 65, 67.

BULLERAND, weltering, gg. 716, 1016.

BULT, *p. t.* built, dwelt, gk. 25.

BUR, blow, gk. 290, 374, 548, 2322; force, violence, 2261. See also the Glossary to *William and the Werwolf*, v. *Bere*, and Boucher, v. *Birr*.

BURD, see BORD.

BURDE, lady, gk. 613, 752, 961. AA. xiii. 2. MS. D. BURDES, BURDEZ, *pl.* gk. 942, 1232, 1373. See BIRDE, BEIRDIS.

BURDE, *p. t.* ought, behoved, gk. 2278, 2428. Hence may be corrected the inter-

pretation of *Birde* in the Glossary to *Havelok*, l. 2761. Cf. also Jamieson, vv. *Byrd* and *Boot*.

BUREDELY, forcibly? AA. xlvii. 11. MS. D. The Linc. MS. reads *swyftly*.

BURLY, BURLICHE, BURLYCHE, BURELY, huge, big; AA. xvi. 8, xxviii. 6, xxx. 8, xli. 8, xlii. 4. gg. 317, 551, 934. Used substantively, *man* being understood, AA. l. 8.

BURLOKEST, biggest, strongest, AA. xliii. 2.

BURN, BURNE, man, knight, noble, gk. 20, 73, 337, etc. AA. iii. 3. MS. D. xlii. 4. gk. 88. TG. 12. BURNES, *gen.* gk. 1616.

BURNES, BURNEZ, *pl.* gk. 259, 272, 481. AA. xxxviii. 9. MS. D. xlv. 7. See BEIRNIS, BERYNE.

BUSE, *pr. t.* behoves, AA. xxv. 3. See BURDE.

BUSK, to array, gk. 1220. BUSK, *imp.* prepare, 2248, 2284. BUSKES, BUSKKEZ, *pr. t.* goes, 1136, 1448, 2476; arrays, AA. xxxviii. 4. MS. D. BUSKEN, *pr. t. pl.* prepare, gk. 509, 1128. BUSKED, BUSKIT, BUSKYDE, *p. t.* and *p. p.* went, 1411. AA. xlv. 8. gg. 204, 304, 548; prepared, gk. 1693. gc. 48. TG. 9. This verb generally implies motion with a degree of haste.

BUSK, bush, gk. 182. BUSKEZ, *pl.* 1437.

BUSY, to be active, gk. 1066.

BUT, without, gg. 35, 98, 190. BUT, BUT AND, unless, gc. 522. J. 32.

BUTE, see BOTE.

## C.

CACH, to catch, take, acquire, gk. 133; to go, 1794. CACHEZ, KACHEZ, *pr. t.* 368, 2175.

CACHERES, hunters, gk. 1139.

CAMBURE, hooked, gc. 251.

CAN, *pr. t.* know, knows, gc. 193, 279. c. 268. CANNYST, knowest, gc. 314.

CAN, is extensively used as an auxiliary before verbs in the infinitive mood, to express a past tense, and is frequently, particularly in poems of later date, supplied by *gan*, as an equivalent, as CANENCLYNE, inclined,

- GK. 340. CAN PAYNE, pained, 1042. CAN REMOVE, removed, GG. 14. CAN FANG, took, 554. CAN DAW, dawned, 609. CAN FOUND, went, 884, 933. CAN FARE, CAN GOE, went, GK. 371, 506. CANN BEGINN, begun, c. 471. CAN DRAW, drew, MG. 19. See CON.
- CANEL-BONE, collar-bone, AA. xl. 12.
- CANT, strong, GG. 334.
- CANTELL, CANTELLE, corner, angle, AA. xli. 1. GG. 937.
- CAPADOS, hood or close cap, from the Fr. *cap-à-dos*, GK. 186, 572.
- CAPLE, horse, GK. 2175.
- CARANDE, caring, anxious, GK. 674, 750.
- CARE, grief, concern, GK. 1979, 2379.
- CARF, *p. t.* carved, AA. xlvii. 5.
- CARIAND, going, journeying, GG. 611. See CARY.
- CARNELEZ, battlements, embrasures, GK. 801.
- CARP, speech, conversation, GK. 307, 1013.
- CARP, KARP, to say, tell, speak, GK. 263, 696, 704. c. 128. CARPIS, CARPPEZ, *pr. t.* GK. 377, 1979. AA. xxviii. 9, xxxii. 6. CARPED, CARPIT, *p. t.* GK. 1088. AA. l. 11. MS. D. GG. 46, 92.
- CARY, to go, GG. 1098, 1332. CARYEZ, CARYIS, *pr. t.* GK. 734. GG. 366, 728. CARYS, CAYREZ, *imp.* GK. 2120. GG. 1249. CARYIT, *p. t.* 873.
- CASAR, KAYSERE, emperor, AA. xxxii. 7. GG. 1120.
- CASSIN, *p. p.* cast, GG. 1108.
- CAST, to speak, address, GK. 249. CAST, *pr. t.* contrive, GG. 323.
- CASTE, stratagem, AA. xlviii. 2. CASTES, *pl.* actions or wiles, GK. 1295.
- CAUELOUNZ, disputes? GK. 683. Perhaps a mistake for CAUELACIOUNZ. Cf. l. 2275.
- CEMMED, *p. p.* folded, twisted, GK. 188.
- CERCLE, circle round the helmet, GK. 615.
- CERKELYTT, *p. p.* encircled, AA. x. 3.
- CHACELET, CHASSELETT, small tower or castle? AA. xxxviii. 11.
- CHAFFER, merchandise, GK. 1647, 1939.
- CHAFTIS, chops, jaws, AA. xi. 2.
- CHAIP, *pr. t.* escape, GG. 279.
- CHALUS, jowls, cheeks, AA. xi. 2, the reading of MS. D. as an equivalent for *chaftis*. Jamieson's singular blunder in explaining this word will be noticed under CHOLLE.
- CHARG, matter, GK. 1940.
- CHARGEAUNT, dangerous? GK. 1604.
- CHARRE, *pr. t.* return, GK. 1678. CHARRED, *p. t.* led, turned, 850, 1143.
- CHARRES, *pl.* business, task, GK. 1674.
- CHASTE, chastity, AA. xx. 5. MS. D.
- CHAUFE, CHAWFFENE, to warm, AA. xxxv. 4.
- CHAUNCELY, accidentally, GK. 778.
- CHAUNTRE, religious service, GK. 63.
- CHEFE, upper part? AA. ix. 10.
- CHEFE, CHEIF, CHEUE, to obtain, GK. 1271. AA. xxi. 9. GG. 1193; to arrive, GK. 1676.
- CHEUED, *p. t.* obtained, GK. 1390. See ACHEUE.
- CHEFLY, CHEUELY, speedily? GK. 850, 883, 978, 1940.
- CHEK, fortune, GK. 1107, 1857. CHEKKE, ill fortune? 2195.
- CHELDEZ, shields of a boar, GK. 1611.
- CHEMNE, chimney, GK. 978.
- CHEPE, CHEPEZ, bargain, terms of buying and selling, or goods sold, GK. 1939, 1940, 1941.
- CHEPEN, to bargain, GK. 1271.
- CHER, CHERE, countenance, spirits, behaviour, GK. 562, 711, 883, 1745, 2169, 2496; entertainment, 1259. AA. x. 6.
- CHERE, chair, GC. 403.
- CHES, *p. t.* saw, beheld, GK. 798, 946.
- † CHEUARONE, chanfron, armour for a horse's head, AA. xxx. 10.
- CHEUCAUNCE, CHEUISAUNCE, CHEUY-SAUNCE, booty, gain, GK. 1390, 1406, 1678, 1939.
- CHILD-GERED, *p. p.* of childish manners, GK. 86.
- CHOLLE, jowl, jaws, AA. ix. 9. xi. 2. The second of these passages has occasioned Jamieson to make a very ridiculous mistake. He says *cholle* and *chalus* are *birds*,



- and then explains *chynne*, the *chin*, by *oak!!!* The reading of the Lincoln MS. at once shows the fallacy and folly of such an interpretation.
- CHORLE, churl, GK. 2107.
- CHYLDER, children, GK. 280.
- CHYMBLED, *p. p.* folded? GK. 958.
- CLAD, *p. p.* covered, GK. 885.
- CLATF, *p. t.* clove, GG. 937.
- CLAMBERANDE, clustering, GK. 1722.
- CLAMBRED, *p. p.* clustered, joined together, GK. 801.
- CLANLY, wholly, GK. 393.
- CLANNES, purity, chastity, GK. 653.
- CLATERANDE, clattering, bubbling, GK. 731.
- CLATTERED, *p. p.* resounded, GK. 1722.
- CLAUGHT, *p. t.* caught hold of hastily, clutched, GG. 82.
- CLEF, *p. t.* cleaved, AA. xl. 13, xli. 1.
- †CLEYNG, probably a mistake of the scribe for CLETHYNGE, clothing, AA. x. 2. MS. D. Jamieson trifles with the word in his usual manner.
- CLEIR, CLER, CLERE, fine, fair, bright, beautiful, noble, GK. 631, 942, 954, 1489. AA. xxx. 2. MS. D. GG. 53, 366, 672, 747, 1157. GC. 507. GR. K. 326.
- †CLEIRLY, for CLEIR, GG. 1332.
- CLEKIS, *pr. t.* strikes or seizes, AA. xlviii. 7.
- CLENE, fair, GK. 163. AA. vi. 2; wholly, GK. 1298. See CLANLY.
- CLENGEZ, *pr. t.* contracts or causes to shrink with cold, GK. 505, 2078. CLENGED, *p. t.* 1694.
- CLEPES, *pr. t.* calls, GK. 1310.
- CLERGYE, erudition, GK. 2447.
- CLEWES, cliffs, AA. x. 12, xii. 7. MS. D. reads *clowes*, which Jamieson explains *a hollow between two hills*.
- CLIPPES, eclipse, AA. viii. 3.
- †CLOLLE, an error of MS. D. for CHOLLE, AA. ix. 10. Jamieson here again is sadly at fault.
- CLOMBEN, *p. t.* climbed, GK. 2078.
- CLOUT, blow, GC. 323. c. 234, 260. See LOUT.
- CLOWIS, nails, splinters, GG. 683, 942.
- COCKWARD, COCKEWARDE, cuckold, AKC. 92, 104.
- COFT, *p. t.* bought, GG. 1057.
- COFLY, speedily? GK. 2011.
- COLD, *p. t.* of CAN, knew, c. 41. AKC. 195. See CON.
- COLEN, to cool, assuage, GK. 1253.
- COLERE, collar, AA. xlviii. 7.
- COLLAINE, COLLEN, Cologne, AKC. 164, 168, 176. Swords manufactured here seem to have been in repute.
- COM, COME, COMEN, *p. t.* came, GK. 824, 942, 1004. GC. 494.
- †COMAUNDEZ, *imp.* commend, GK. 2411.
- COME, coming, arrival, GK. 161.
- COMFORT, *p. t.* comforted, GR. K. 229. See Gloss. to *Will. and Werwolf*, in v.
- COMLY, COMLYCH, CUMLY, comely, fair, GK. 469, 539. GG. 1057. Used substantively, *man* being understood, GK. 674, 1755. Used adverbially, 648, 1307, 1629, 1794.
- COMLYLY, courteously, GK. 974, 1118, 1389.
- COMLOKER, comelier, GK. 869. COMLOKEST, *sup.* 52, 81, 767.
- COM'NYE, communing, discourse, AKC. 122.
- COMPAS, form, stature, GK. 944.
- CON, CONNE, can, GK. 2455. AA. xli. 5, xliii. 4. CONNEZ, *pr. t.* knows, GK. 1267, 1483.
- COUDE, COUTH, COUTHE, COWTHE, *p. t.* could, knew, 45, 1125, 1139, 1389, 1486. GG. 67, 920. GC. 85. COUTH, COUTHE, *p. p.* known, GK. 1490; skilled, GG. 376. See CAN.
- CON, CONNE, *pr. t.* COLD, COUTH, *p. t.* used as an auxiliary before verbs to express a past tense, as CON STUDIE, studied, GK. 230. CON ANSWARE, answered, 274. CON ROUN, communed, 362. CON FELDE, folded, 841. CON NYME, took, 993. CON LETE, looked, 1206. CONNE FALLE, fell, AA. vi. 7. MS. D. CONNE CALL, called, xi. 3, (in both which instances the Linc. MS. reads *gunne*.) CONNE RYDE, rode, GC. 65. CON STAND, stood, GR. K. 471. COLD FLING, flung, MG. 89. COUTH HINT, re-

- ceived, gg. 674. COUTH HEW, hewed, struck, 962. COUTH REHETE, cheered, 1158. COUTH FORBERE, forbore, 1200. See CAN.
- CONABLE, famous, or accomplished, GK. 2450.
- CONQUERE, conquest, gg. 1251.
- CONTERFELETTE, CONTREFELED, interwoven? AA. xxix. 6.
- CONUENABILL, befitting, gg. 363.
- CONYSAUNCE, CUNYSANCE, badge, cognisance, gg. 488, 1057.
- COPILLES, couples of dogs, AA. iv. 3.
- COPROUNES, capitals? GK. 797. "*Coperum*, capitellum," *Prompt. Parv.* See quotation under ENBANED.
- CORBELES, *gen.* raven's, GK. 1355. With regard to the *fee*, see Scott's Notes on *Sir Tristrem*, p. 388, ed. 1833.
- CORS, body, GK. 1297.
- CORTAYS, CORTAYSE, courteous, GK. 276, 467, 539.
- CORTAYSY, COURTAYSYE, courtesy, GK. 247, 263, 1300.
- CORTAYSLY, courteously, GK. 775, 903.
- CORTYNES, curtains, GK. 854.
- CORUON, *p. p.* carven, GK. 797.
- COSSE, kiss, GK. 1300. COSSES, Cossez, *pl.* 2351, 2360.
- COST, manner, business, GK. 546. COSTES, COSTEZ, *pl.* manners, qualities, virtues, 944, 1272, 1483, 1849, 2360, 2495. Hence may be interpreted *Cust*, in the *Owl and Nightingale*, which in the Glossary to that poem is left without explanation.
- COST, side, AA. xlvii. 5. COSTES, *pl.* ways? GK. 750.
- COSTEZ, *pr. t.* coasts? GK. 1696.
- COTHE, *p. t.* quoth, GK. 776.
- COUDE, chrysom-cloth at baptism, AA. xviii. 3.
- COUDE, COUTHE, COWTHE, see CON.
- OUNDUE, to conduct, guide, GK. 1972.
- OUNDUTES, songs, (Fr. *conduis*, cantique,) GK. 1655. The same word occurs in the poem of the *Owl and Nightingale*, l. 483, which is not explained by the editor.
- COUNTENAUNCE, custom, GK. 100, 1490.
- COUNTIR, to encounter, gg. 798. CONTIRS, *pr. t.* 815.
- COUNTIRPAS, counterpart, like, gg. 1212.
- COURCHEFES, head-covers, caps, AA. xxix. 8.
- COUTHLY, familiarly, GK. 937.
- COUENTIS, convents, AA. xvi. 6.
- COVER, *pr. t.* recover, regain, gg. 586.
- COVERTOR, COUERTOUR, cover or trapping of a horse, GK. 602; canopy of a bed, 1181.
- COUERTOREZ, *pl.* canopies, 855.
- COWTERS, pieces of plate for the elbows, GK. 583. See the NOTES, p. 315.
- COYNT, KOYNT, curious, quaint, GK. 877; skilful, cunning, 1525.
- COYNTLY, COYNTLYCH, KOYNTLY, cunningly, 578, 934, 2413.
- COJED, *p. t.* derided? shouted? GK. 307.
- CRAFTY, skilfully made, GK. 572.
- CRAKKANDE, resounding, loud, GK. 1166.
- CRAKKYNG, blast, blowing, GK. 116.
- CRASEDEST, most crazy, GK. 2196.
- CRATHAYN, craven, coward, GK. 1773. In Douglas, *Crawdoun*.
- CREST, top of a rock, GK. 731.
- CREUISSE, fissure, cavity, GK. 2183.
- CREWELLE, valiant, used substantively, *man* being understood, AA. xlviii. 1. See CRUEL.
- CRIANDE, crying, GK. 1088.
- CROCHIT, *p. p.* covered? gg. 1280, 1352.
- CROKED, *p. p.* bent aside, GK. 653.
- CROPORE, CROPURE, crupper, GK. 168, 602.
- CROYS, cross, GK. 643.
- CRUEL, keen in battle, AA. xlvii. 3. gg. 334, 541.
- CRUELTE, valour? gg. 1135.
- CRYSTENMAS, Christmas, GK. 985.
- CUMMEN, *p. p.* come, GK. 60, 62.
- CUMPAS, purpose, gg. 596.
- CUNYSANCE, see CONYSAUNCE.
- CURE, care, anxiety, gg. 1098, 1229.

## D.

- DA, DAA, doe, AA. v. 2. gg. 226.
- DABATE, strife, GK. 2041.
- DAIL, part, gg. 782. See DOLE.

- DALY, to dally, GK. 1253. DAYLYEDEN, *p. t.* 1114.
- DALT, *p. t.* and *p. p.* dealt, GK. 452, 1114, 1664, 2449.
- DANGE, *p. t.* struck, c. 134. See DYNG.
- DARE, to manifest fear, tremble, GK. 2258. DARE, DARES, DARYS, *pr. t.* GK. 315. AA. iv. 12.
- DARKIS, DARKYS, *pr. t.* lie hid, AA. iv. 12. v. 1. See DURKENE.
- †DARR, harm, GR.K. 401. See DEERE.
- DASE, the phrase here, *on dase*, GG. 712, is explained by Jamieson, *alive*, and I have no better interpretation to offer.
- DAW, to dawn, GG. 609, 732.
- DAWED, *p. t.* (?) GK. 1805.
- DAWYNGE, dawning, AA. xxvii. 5.
- †DAYN, disdain, GC. 179.
- DAYNTETHS, dainties, AA. xv. 1, xxxvi. 4, xxxviii. 3.
- DAYNETYUOUSELY, daintily, AA. xxvii. 2.
- DE, DEE, DEJE, to die, GK. 996. GG. 511, 808, 1035.
- DEARE, to injure, J. 172. DERED, *p. t.* GK. 1460.
- DEBETANDE, debating, GK. 2179.
- DEBONERTE, good manners, politeness, GK. 1273.
- DECE, DEISE, DES, DESSE, dais or table of estate, GK. 61, 75, 222, 250. AA. xiv. 13. MS. D. xv. 1. GG. 66, 1154.
- DEDE, death, AA. v. 2. viii. 7. GG. 270, 1215.
- †DEDIS, probably a mistake for TADIS, AA. x. 4.
- DEERE, DEIR, DERE, harm, evil, GG. 497, 808, 1266. GR.K. 387, 407.
- DEFENDE, *p. t.* defended, GK. 1156.
- DEFOLD, *p. p.* vanquished or disgraced, GG. 967.
- DEIR, DERE, joyful, delightful, GK. 47, 92, 1012, 1026, 1047; precious, costly, 75, 121, 193, 571. GG. 66, 319, 860, 897; honorable, 564. Used substantively, *man* or *knight* being understood, in the sense of worthy, noble, honorable, GK. 678, 928. AA. i. 4. GG. 206, 600, 785, 1284. Jamieson's interpretation of *bold*, *daring*, is, I think, wholly inadmissible. See DERELY.
- DEIR, DER, DERE, deer, beasts of chase, GK. 1151, 1322. GG. 226.
- DEISE, see DECE.
- DELE, to deal, (a blow,) GK. 295, 560; to give, bestow, 1805, 2192; to partake, 1968. DELES, DELEN, *pr. t.* 397, 1266.
- DELE, *n.* part, share, GR.K. 494.
- DELE, the Devil, GK. 2188.
- DELFUL, DELFULLE, doleful, GK. 560. AA. xii. 11. MS. D. See DULFUL.
- DELFULLY, dolefully, AA. xxiv. 3. MS. D. xlv. 8.
- DELIUER, active, nimble, GK. 2343.
- DELIUERLY, quickly, GK. 2009.
- DEMAY, *imp.* dismay, GK. 470.
- DEME, to judge, deem, GK. 246, 1322, 2183. DEMEN, *pr. t.* judge, think fit, 1082, 1529. DEMED, DEMYT, *p. t.* and *p. p.* esteemed, judged, determined, 240, 1089, 1668. GG. 805.
- DENAYE, to deny, refuse, GK. 1497.
- DENAYED, *p. t.* refused, GK. 1493.
- DENEZ, Danish, GK. 2223. Compare AKC. 166, and see the Note of Du Cange on Villehardouin, p. 298, fol. Par. 1657.
- DENT, *p. p.* indented, GG. 66.
- DENTTE, blow, GC. 396.
- DEPAYNT, DEPAYNTED, *p. p.* depicted, GK. 620, 647.
- DEPARTED, *p. t.* severed, divided, GK. 1335.
- DEPRECE, to vanquish? GK. 1219. DEPRECED, DEPRESED, *p. t.* vanquished, bore down, 6, 1770.
- DERAY, disorder, AA. xl. 6, MS. D.
- DERE, see DEERE, DEIR.
- DERED, see DEARE.
- DERELY, joyfully, honorably, GK. 817, 1031, 1253, 1327, 1559. See DEIR.
- DERF, strong, stern, GK. 564, 1000, 1233, 1492. GG. 859, 976.
- DERFLY, DERFELY, strongly, fiercely, sternly, GK. 1183. AA. xxiv. 13. GG. 671, 680.
- DERNE, secret, privy, GK. 558, 1012, 1047. GG. 840.

- DERNLY, DERNELY, secretly, GK. 1188; silently? 2334.
- DERREST, noblest, GK. 445, 483. GG. 805.  
See DEIR.
- DERWORTHLY, honorably, GK. 114.
- DES, DESSE, see DECE.
- DESTENYNG, destiny, GG. 270.
- DEVE, to confound, GK. 1286. DEVED, *p.p.* confounded, AA. xxii. 4, MS. D.
- DEVINIS, *pr. t.* decrees, GG. 1228.
- DEVOIRE, DEVOIR, service, duty, GG. 1048, 1266.
- DEW, *p. t.* dawned, GG. 600. See DAW.
- DEJE, see DE.
- DICHT, *p. p.* made, GG. 319. See DIȚT.
- DID, DIDDEN, see DO.
- DYTES, diets, repasts, AA. xv. 1. MS. D. reads *diotes*, which Pinkerton and Jamieson misprint *Drotes*, and the latter explains by *nobles*! Mr. Guest has been deceived also by this false reading, although he might have found the genuine text in Laing's work.
- DIGNE, DYNGNE, worthy, GK. 1316. GG. 9, 184.
- DILLE, dull, foolish, GK. 1529.
- DYMME, covert? AA. v. 1. MS. D.
- DYN, noise, revelry, GK. 47.
- DYNG, *pr. t.* smite, GG. 860. See DANGE.
- † DYNNEZ, *pr. t.* strikes, GK. 2105, perhaps an error for DYNGEZ.
- DYNNYT, *p. t.* roared, GG. 84.
- DYNT, stroke, blow, GK. 315, 560, 2105. GG. 829. DINTEZ, DINTIS, DYNTES, DYNTEZ, DYNTIS, DYNTEZ, *pl.* GK. 336, 202, 1460, AA. xl. 9, xlv. 8. GG. 67, 542, 946. See DUNT.
- DISCEUER, to discover, GK. 1862.
- DISCRYE, to describe, GK. 81.
- DISPLESES, *imp.* displease you, GK. 2439.
- DISPOYLED, *p. p.* undressed, GK. 860.
- DISTRYEZ, *pr. t.* destroys, GK. 2375.
- DISTANCE, dissension, strife, GG. 448, 1362.
- DYSWORSHIP, disgrace, J. 419.
- DIT, *p. p.* fastened, GK. 1233.
- DIȚT, to pronounce, make, GK. 295. DYHTIS, *pr. t.* get ready, AA. xxxix. 1. DIGHT, DYHT, *imp.* prepare, look after, J. 28. GK. 312. DIGHT, DIGHTE, DYHT, DYHTIE, DIȚT, DIȚTE, DYȚT, *p. t.* and *p. p.* prepared, dressed, placed, disposed, made ready, GK. 114, 678, 994, 1559, 1884, 1223, 1689. AA. i. 6, xiii. 4, xxvii. 2, li. 11. GG. 600, 732, 1029. GC. 372, 550. J. 130. C. 469; treated, circumstanced, AA. xlv. 8, xlviii. 12.
- DO, to cause, GC. 27; place, lay, GK. 1492, GG. 1111. DOS HER FORTH, goes out, GK. 1308. DOS, *imp.* do thou, GK. 1533. DOTHE, do ye, GC. 619. DOTȚ, *pr. t.* doth, GK. 2211. DID, DIDDEN, *p. t.* caused, GK. 1327. GG. 1298. DON, *p. p.* placed, GK. 478.
- DOEL, DOLE, DOOL, sorrow, torment, GK. 558. AA. xvi. 13, xliii. 8. GC. 537.
- DOGHETY, DOȚTY, DUȚTY, doughty, brave, GK. 724, 2264. Used substantively, *man* being understood, GK. 2334. AA. i. 11. DOUGHTYIS, *pl.* GG. 712.
- DOK, tail, GK. 193.
- DOLE, part, GK. 719. See DAIL.
- DOM, DOME, judgement, sentence, GK. 295, 1216, 1968.
- DONKANDE, damp, moistening, GK. 519.
- DOSER, back of a seat, GK. 478. In the *Prompt. Parv.* the "*Docer* of an hall," is explained *dorsorium*, *auleum*, i.e. hangings.
- DOSSOURS, cushions for the back, AA. xxxv. 2.
- DOTED, *p. t.* and *p. p.* became foolish, demented, GK. 1151, 1956.
- DOUCH-SPERE, nobleman, GG. 1334. DUCHEPERES, *pl.* AA. i. 4. See DUGEPERS.
- DOURLY, boldly, sternly, GG. 860.
- DOUTE, fear, GK. 246, 442.
- DOUTH, DOUTHE, people, nobles, GK. 61, 1365, 1415, 1956. See also Nero A. x. f. 73<sup>b</sup>.
- † DOWNE, probably a mistake of the transcriber, AA. xv. 2. The reading of MS. D. is, doubtless, correct.
- DOWTTOUS, fearful, AA. xl. 9.
- DRAD, *p. p.* afraid, AA. ix. 8, 9, MS. D.
- DRAUELED, *p. t.* slumbered fitfully, GK. 1750.

DRAȝT, drawbridge, GK. 817.  
 DRECHCH, delay? GK. 1972.  
 DREDFULLE, fearful, GC. 249.  
 DREDLES, void of dread, GK. 2334.  
 DREGHE, DREIGH, see ON-DREIGH.  
 DREPED, *p. p.* put to death, GK. 725.  
 DRES, to prepare, go, GK. 474. DRESSES,  
 DRESSEZ, *pr. t.* prepares, addresses,  
 rises, 417, 445, 566. DRESE, *pr. t. pl.*  
 treat, GC. 997. DRESSED, *p. t.* and *p. p.*  
 placed, set, GK. 75, 2033; went, addressed  
 themselves, 1415; rose, 2009.  
 DREUCH, *p. t.* drew, GC. 706.  
 DREUEDE, *p. p.* confounded, AA. xxii. 4.  
 DREȝ, strong? GK. 1750. Used adverbially,  
 2263.  
 DREȝLY, vigorously? GK. 1026.  
 DREȝT, see ON-DREIGH.  
 DRYE, DRYȝE, to endure, suffer, GK. 202,  
 560. AA. xi. 11. DRYE, *pr. t.* AA. xvi.  
 13.  
 DRIGHTIN, DRYȝTYN, the Lord, GK. 724,  
 996, 1548. GC. 1111, 1228.  
 DRIUANDE, driving, advancing quickly, GK.  
 222.  
 DRIVE, *p. t.* drove, GK. 7.  
 DRYȝE, see ON-DREIGH.  
 DRYȝE, calm, patient, GK. 335, 724; en-  
 during, tough, 1460.  
 DROF, *p. t.* drove, rushed, passed, GK. 786,  
 1151, 1176.  
 DRONKEN, *p. t.* drank, GK. 1025, 1668.  
 DROUPING, DROWPING, slumber, GK. 1748,  
 1750.  
 DROȝ, DROȝEN, *p. t.* drew, GK. 1188, 1463,  
 AA. xlv. 3.  
 DROȝT, drought, dryness, GK. 523.  
 DRURY, DRWRYE, amour, love, GK. 1507,  
 1517, 2449; love-token, 1805, 2033.  
 DUBBED, *p. p.* ornamented, dressed, clad,  
 GK. 75, 193, 571.  
 DUCHERY, dukedom, GC. 1072.  
 DUCHTELY, doughtily, GC. 785.  
 DUERGH, dwarf, GC. 79, 84.  
 DUGEPEES, DUSSIPERES, the Douze-Pairs of  
 France, AA. xxii. 4.

DUKIT, *p. p.* ennobled, made duke, GC. 1072.  
 DULEFULLY, dolefully, AA. xlviii. 12.  
 DULFUL, DULEFULLE, doleful, grievous, GK.  
 1517. AA. xiii. 4. See DELFUL.  
 DUNT, DUNTE, blow, GK. 452, 1286. See  
 DYNT.  
 DURANDLY, enduringly, GC. 335.  
 DURE, to endure, J. 398.  
 DURKENE, *pr. t.* lie hid, AA. iv. 12, MS. D.  
 v. 1. Pinkerton and Jamieson interpret  
 this falsely, *affright*. See DARKIS.  
 DUSCHAND, smiting hard, GC. 860.  
 DUT, mirth? GK. 1020.  
 DUT, DUTTE, *p. t.* doubted, feared, GK. 222,  
 784, 2257.

## E.

EFFRAYT, *p. p.* alarmed, GC. 1259.  
 EFTE, after, afterwards, GK. 641, 700, 788,  
 2388.  
 EFT-SONEZ, †EFTER-SONES, forthwith,  
 thereafter, GK. 1640, 2417.  
 EGGE, edge, GK. 212. Used for the *axe* itself,  
 2392.  
 EGHNE, ENE, YENE, *pl.* eyes, AA. ix. 12,  
 xxviii. 5, xlv. 9, xlvii. 1.  
 ELDE, age, GK. 844, 1520.  
 †ELLE, for ILLE, GK. 1811.  
 ELNȝERDE, ell-yard, GK. 210.  
 EM, EME, uncle, GK. 356, 543.  
 EMDELEZ, with equal sides, GK. 629.  
 EMELL, amidst? GC. 1230. Pinkerton prints  
 this *in mell*, which it may also possibly be  
 meant for.  
 EMPRIOUR, emperor, GC. 1230.  
 ENBANED, *p. p.* ornamented? GK. 790. The  
 same term is used by the author in another  
 poem, when describing the vessels used  
 at Balthazar's feast:  
 For ther wer bassynes ful bryȝt of brende golde  
 clere,  
 Enamaylde w<sup>t</sup> azer, and eweres of sute;  
 Couered cowpes foul clere, as casteles arayed,  
 Enbaned vnder batelment w<sup>t</sup> bantelles quoynt,

& fyled out of fygyres of ferlyle schappes;  
The *coperounes* of the canacles, that on the cuppe  
reres,  
Wer fetysely formed out in *fyhyoles* longe;  
Pinnacles pyȝt ther apert, that profert bitwene,  
etc.

*MS. Cott. Nero A. x. f. 77.*

ENBELYSE, to embellish, GK. 1034.  
ENBRAUDED, ENBRAWDED, ENBRAWDEN,  
p. p. embroidered, adorned, GK. 78, 166,  
606, 856.  
ENCHEIF, to accomplish? GK. 1059.  
ENDITE, p. t. put (to death,) GK. 1600.  
ENDORRED, p. p. gilded, AA. xxxvi. 4. Ja-  
mieson renders it *adorned*.  
ENDURAND, enduring, GK. 434.  
ENE, see EGHNE.  
ENESED, p. p. covered? GK. 184.  
ENEUCH, enough, GK. 1071.  
ENFOUBLED, p. p. wrapt up, GK. 959.  
ENGRELEDE, p. p. interspersed, AA. xl. 2.  
ENGREUIT, p. t. angered, GK. 975.  
ENKER, deep, intense? applied to color,  
GK. 150, 2477.  
ENNOURNED, ENNURNED, p. p. adorned, GK.  
634, 2027.  
ENQUEST, inquiry, GK. 1056.  
ENSCHREW, to prove, try, GK. 663.  
ENSENYE, ensign, war-word, GK. 474, 845.  
ENSENYES, pl. 315.  
ENSPRINGING, springing forth, GK. 1238.  
ENTAYLED, p. p. interwoven, embroidered,  
GK. 612.  
ENTYRE? GK. 704.  
ENTYSE, to acquire, GK. 2436.  
ER, ere, before, previously, GK. 92, 197, 712,  
etc. See AIR, ARE.  
ERAR, *comp.* rather, sooner, GK. 511.  
ERBER, the conduit leading to the stomach;  
a hunting term, GK. 1330. See *A Jewell*  
*for Gentrie*, 4to, 1614, sign. F. 2. "To  
make the erber," says Sir Walter Scott,  
"is to disembowel the animal;" but the er-  
ber certainly did not extend to the paunch,  
which is separately mentioned. See the  
Notes, p. 322.

ERD, ERDE, earth, GK. 27, 140, 881. GK.  
303, 1024.  
ERDEZ, pl. lands, GK. 1808.  
ERDLY, earthly, GK. 1241.  
ERYAUNT, errant, GK. 810.  
ERNDE, ERNDE, errand, GK. 257, 559, 809.  
ERNEST, a first payment by way of pledge to  
receive a larger, c. 248.  
ERTAND, enterprising, GK. 393. Jamieson  
explains it, *ingenious*.  
ESTE, (?) AA. vii. 6.  
ETAYN, giant, GK. 140. ETAYNEZ, pl.  
723.  
ETHE, pr. t. ask, GK. 379, 2467.  
ETHE, easy, GK. 676.  
ETTAND, p. pr. eating, GK. 303. ETTE, p. t.  
ate, GK. 113.  
ETYLLEDE, p. t. aimed, AA. xlviii. 5. See  
ATTLE.  
EUENDEN, evenly? perpendicularly? GK. 1345.  
EUEZ, borders? GK. 1178.  
EUYES, ivies? GK. 459.  
EXPOUN, to describe, explain, GK. 209, 1506.

## F.

FA, FAA, foe, GK. 911, 933. FAAS, pl. used  
for *sing.* AA. xlvii. 12. See FAY.  
FADE, wan? GK. 149.  
FAYLY, to fail, GK. 1067. FAILIEIS, FAIL-  
YEIS, FAYLEZ, pr. t. GK. 278, 455. GK.  
1139, 1239.  
FAIR, action, proceeding, enterprise, GK. 570,  
576, 731. Jamieson is in error in inter-  
preting the last of these instances, *funeral*  
*solemnity*, and has totally misunderstood  
the passage.  
FALE, fallow? grassy? GK. 728.  
FALL, FALLE, to befall, happen, GK. 483.  
AA. xxiii. 13. GK. 1007. FALLEZ, pr. t.  
befalls, appertains, GK. 1303, 1358, 2327.  
FALLETH, pr. t. behoves, c. 253, 277.  
FALLED, p. t. belonged, appertained, GK.  
2243. FALLEN, p. p. befallen, happened,  
23. See FELL.  
FALSSET, falsehood, GK. 1173.

- FAMYT, *p. t.* foamed, bubbled, *gg.* 636.  
 FANDE, FAYND, *imp. try*, *aa.* xv. 11. *gg.* 357.  
 FANE, vane, *gc.* 255.  
 FANE, FAYN, glad, joyful, *gk.* 388, 840, 1067.  
*gg.* 83. IN FAYN, joyfully, 26. Jamieson interprets the last example, *fondly*.  
 FANG, FANGE, FANGIN, to take, receive, accept, *gk.* 391. *gg.* 45, 357, 554, 902.  
 FANG, FANGIS, *pr. t.* 576, 1002. FANGIT, *p. p.* 421.  
 FANNAND, flowing, *gk.* 181.  
 FANTISE, FAYNTYSE, deceit, cowardice, *gk.* 2435. *gg.* 1222.  
 FANTOUN, phantom, illusion, *gk.* 240.  
 FARAND, goodly, *gk.* 101; going, riding, *gg.* 18.  
 FARAR, fairer, more honorable, *gg.* 1035.  
 FARDELLIS, pieces, shivers, *gg.* 1019.  
 FARE, unusual display, entertainment, *gk.* 537, 694; behaviour, conduct, 1116, 2386; course, path, 1793; proceeding, adventure, 2494; onset, *aa.* xxxi. 9, xli. 6; conduct, speech, *gc.* 169. *c.* 115; step, movement, action, *gc.* 181, 451, 466. *c.* 343. See FAIR.  
 FARE, to go, journey, *gk.* 506. FAIR, *pr. t.* *gg.* 1293. FAREZ, *imp. go ye*, *gk.* 2149.  
 FAREN, *p. p.* gone, 1231.  
 FAUCHION, falchion, *gk.* 83, 461.  
 FAUOURE, appearance, *aa.* xiii. 10.  
 FAUT, fault, *gk.* 1551, 2435.  
 FAUTES, FAWTES, *pr. t.* fails, *aa.* xxv. 7, xlv. 2.  
 FAUTING, loss, failure, *gg.* 1222.  
 FAUTLES, FAUTLEZ, faultless, *gk.* 640, 1761.  
 FAW, Fawe, variegated, *aa.* vii. 2. *gg.* 475, 1279.  
 FAWLDE, to embrace, *aa.* xxix. 12.  
 FAWNE, *pr. t.* caress, *gk.* 1919.  
 FAWTY, faulty, *gk.* 2382, 2386.  
 FAX, FAXE, hair, *gk.* 181. *aa.* xxix. 5.  
 FAY, FAYE, faith, *aa.* xxxi. 8. *gg.* 17. *j.* 443. *tg.* 92.  
 FAY, foe, *gg.* 56. FAYS, *pl.* 486. See FA.  
 FAYND, see FAND.  
 FAYRYZE, enchantment, magic, *gk.* 240.  
 FAYTHELY, certainly, *gk.* 1636.  
 FEALD, truss (of straw,) *c.* 239. It is so explained on the authority of Dr. Grainger in a MS. note in the Percy MS.  
 FEARD, *p. p.* afraid, *gk.* 232.  
 FECHTIN, *p. t.* fought, *gg.* 758.  
 FEDYRT, *p. p.* feathered, *gc.* 106.  
 FECHTAND, fighting, *gg.* 719.  
 FEILL, FEL, FELE, FELLE, many, *gk.* 122, 239, 428, 1566. *aa.* xxi. 2. *gg.* 28, 485. *gc.* 638. FELE-FOLDE, manifold, *gk.* 1545.  
 FEIR, FERE, demeanour, conduct, *gg.* 160, 810, 1264. See AFFERE.  
 FEIR, FERE, companion, fellow, mate, *gk.* 676, 695, 915, 2411. *gg.* 280, 911, 1115.  
 FEIRES, FEREZ, *pl.* *gk.* 594. *mg.* 163.  
 IN FEIR, IN FERE, together, in company, *gk.* 267. *aa.* xxvi. 6. *gg.* 411, 565. *gc.* 516. *gk.* 250. *tg.* 64. *c.* 103.  
 FEL, FELL, FELLE, fierce, bold, furious, cruel, *gk.* 291, 847, 874. *aa.* iv. 8, xv. 4. *gg.* 570, 802, 932. *gc.* 340. *j.* 366. *tg.* 229. *akc.* 246. Used substantively, *gk.* 1585.  
 FELAJES, fellows, *gk.* 1702.  
 FELAJSCHYF, fellowship, *gk.* 652.  
 FELDE, to fold, embrace, *gk.* 841.  
 FELDE, fold? *gk.* 890.  
 FELER, more, greater, *gk.* 1391. See FEILL.  
 FELL, FELLE, hill, moor, *gk.* 723. *aa.* iii. 6. *gg.* 193, 1290, 1318. FELLIS, *pl.* *aa.* i. 8, iv. 10, vii. 2. *gg.* 26.  
 FELL, FELLE, *p. t.* should befall, befell, *gk.* 1588. *gg.* 1200. See FALL.  
 FELLE, skin, hide, *gk.* 943, 1359, 1944. *gg.* 352. FELLEZ, *pl.* *gk.* 880, 1737.  
 FELLELY, FELLY, fiercely, cruelly, boldly, *gk.* 2302. *gg.* 576, 762.  
 FELLOUNE, cruel, fierce, *gg.* 670, 707.  
 FELONOSLY, keenly, *aa.* iv. 8.  
 FEMED, *p. t.* foamed, *gk.* 1572.  
 FEND, to defend, *gk.* 84.  
 FENYE, to feign, *gg.* 1187.  
 FENYE, FENYEING, deceit, *gg.* 745, 856, 1117.

- FENGEING, feigning, *gg.* 16.  
 FERD, fourth, *gg.* 656.  
 FERDE, host, troop, *aa.* xv. 4.  
 FERDE, fear, *gk.* 2130, 2272.  
 FERDE, FERDEN, *p. t.* proceeded, acted, *gk.* 149, 703, 1282, 1433. See FARE.  
 FERDE, *p. t.* and *p. p.* feared, afraid, *gk.* 1295, 1588, 2382.  
 FERE, bold, *gk.* 103.  
 FERK, to proceed, ride, *gk.* 1072, 1973.  
 FERKEZ, FERKES, *pr. t.* rides, rises, 173, 2013. FERKED, *p. t.* ran, 2173.  
 FERLY, wonder, marvel, *gk.* 716, 2414. *aa.* vi. 7, xxiii. 13. *gc.* 228. FERLIES, FERLYES, *pl.* *gk.* 23. *aa.* xxiii. 13, *MS. D.* xxiv. 1, *MS. D.* lv. 7. See FURLEY.  
 FERLY, FERLYLY, wondrous, wondrously, *gk.* 388, 741, 766, 1694, 2494. *gg.* 475, 795.  
 FERMYSOUN, FERNYSONE, a hunting term, applied to the time in which the male deer were *closed*, or not allowed to be killed, *gk.* 1156. *aa.* i. 8. Mr. Guest interprets it *winter season*.  
 FERRE, afar, *gk.* 1093.  
 FERUM, see ON-FERUM.  
 FEST, to secure, fasten, *gg.* 421. FEST, *pr. t.* *gg.* 1324. FEST, *p. t.* *gk.* 2347. FESTNED, *p. p.* 1783.  
 FETED, *p. t.* (?) *gk.* 1282.  
 FETLED, *p. p.* joined, *gk.* 656.  
 FETLY, fealty, *gk.* 1758.  
 FETT, FETTE, *p. p.* fetched, brought, *gk.* 1084. *gc.* 430. *c.* 467.  
 FEUTE, FEUTE, fealty, *gg.* 431, 1324.  
 FEUTRED, *p. t.* fixed in the lance-rest, *J.* 50. See FEUTER in Gloss. to *Will. and Werwolf*.  
 FEY, *p. p.* dead, slain, *aa.* xxii. 2, *MS. D.* *gg.* 640, 1067, 1110.  
 FYCH, to fix, *gk.* 396. FICHEDE, FYCHED, *p. p.* 658. *aa.* xxxix. 6.  
 FYERS, fierce, spirited, *J.* 158.  
 FYKED, *p. t.* shrank, was troubled, *gk.* 2274.  
 FILDORE, gold thread, *Fr. fil d'or*, *gk.* 189.  
 FYLED, *p. p.* ground, *gk.* 2225.  
 FYLYOLEZ, round towers? *gk.* 796. In Douglas the same term occurs in the form of *fyellis*. See Jamieson, *in v.* and also the quotation under *Enbanded*.  
 FYLIT, *p. p.* disgraced, *gg.* 1038.  
 FYLLE, to fulfil, *gk.* 1405, 1934.  
 FYLOR, grindstone? *gk.* 2225.  
 FYLTER, to weave? *gk.* 986. See Jamieson, *in v.*  
 FYNE, perfect, unconditional, *gk.* 1239.  
 FYNISMENT, end, finish, *gk.* 499.  
 FYNLY, wholly? *gk.* 1391.  
 † FIRE, perhaps a mistake for FERE, fear, *gk.* 1304.  
 FIRMYSCHAMIS? *aa.* i. 8. *MS. D.* Omitted in the Glossaries of Pinkerton and Jamieson. It has undoubtedly some connexion with FERMYSOUN.  
 FIRRE, FYRRE, further, *gk.* 378, 411, 1105, 2121.  
 FIRST, early, youthful, *gk.* 54.  
 FIRTH, an inclosed wood, *gg.* 193, 1293.  
 FIRTHES, FIRTHIS, *pl.* *aa.* xxvi. 6. *gg.* 27. See FRITHE.  
 FYSKEZ, *p. t.* runs, *gk.* 1704.  
 FITT, division of a poem or lay, *gk.* 263.  
 FYJED, *p. t.* were fair? *gk.* 796.  
 FLAT, ground, field, *gk.* 507.  
 FLAUGH, FLAW, FLAȝ, FLAȝe, *p. t.* flew, fled, *gk.* 459, 2274, 2276. *gg.* 857. *AKC.* 224.  
 FLEKERIT, *p. p.* spotted, *gg.* 475.  
 FLENDRI, splinters, *gg.* 915.  
 FLET, FLETTE, floor, *gk.* 294, 568, 832, 859, 1374, 1653, 1925.  
 FLETE, *p. t.* flitted, flew, *gk.* 1566.  
 FLYND, flint, *gg.* 28.  
 FLONE, arrow, *gk.* 1161. FLONEZ, FLONNUS, *pl.* 1566. *gc.* 106.  
 FLOSCH, flood, pool, *gk.* 1430. In Barbour, *Flouss*.  
 FLOTEN, *p. p.* removed, distant, *gk.* 714.  
 FLURE, flory, floured, *aa.* xxxi. 11, *MS. D.*  
 FNAST, FNASTED, to breathe hard, *gk.* 1587, 1702. See Glossary to Havelok, *in v.* and Reply to Singer's Remarks, p. 35.



- FOYNED, *p. t.* kicked, GK. 428.  
 FOYSOUN, plenty, GK. 122.  
 FOLD, FOLDE, FOULDE, earth, ground, GK. 23, 196, 396. 422. AA. xxxiv. 2, xxxvii. 8. GG. 56, 570.  
 FOLDEN, *p. p.* folded, GK. 959; plighted, 1783.  
 FOLDEZ, *imp.* grant thou, GK. 359; *pr. t.* accords, 499.  
 FOLE, fool, GK. 1545.  
 FOLOWED, *p. p.* baptised, AA. xviii. 4, MS. D. See FULLEDE.  
 FOLY, foolishly, GK. 324.  
 FOLJANDE, following, suitable, GK. 145, 859.  
 FOLJES, *pr. t.* follows, GK. 1164. FOLJED, *p. t.* followed, 1895.  
 FONDE, to try, endeavour, prove, GK. 291, 565, 986. FONDE, *subj.* might find, 1875.  
 FONDET, FOUNDED, *p. t.* attempted, proved, 1549, 2125, 2130.  
 FONDENE, see FOUND.  
 FONDRED, FOUNDERIT, FOUNDRIT, *p. t.* foundered, gave way, AA. xlii. 9. GG. 640, 1022.  
 FONGE, to take, receive, GK. 816, 1556, 1622. FONGEN, *pr. t.* 1265. FONG, FONGE, *p. t.* 646, 1363, 1315. FONGE, FONGED, *p. p.* 919, 1315.  
 Foo, large, largely? GK. 1430, 2326.  
 FOR, because, GK. 258; before? 965, 1822.  
 FOR-BETT, *p. p.* thoroughly beaten, AA. li. 8.  
 FOR-BLEDE, *p. p.* covered with blood, AA. li. 8.  
 FORCE, matter, TG. 265.  
 FORDONE, *p. p.* destroyed, AA. xxi. 10, MS. D.  
 † FORDWARD, covenant, GG. 1329. See FORWARD.  
 FORE, *p. p.* fared, c. 228. See FARE.  
 † FOREFORE, to destroy, kill, TG. 32. FORFERDE, *p. t.* GK. 1617. FORFAREN, *p. p.* GK. 1895.  
 FORE-LETE, to loose, GC. 209.  
 FORE-THOUGHT, *p. t.* repented, GC. 336.  
 FORGA, to lose, GG. 1183, 1189.  
 FORLANCYNG, cutting off, GK. 1334.  
 FORLORNE, *p. p.* destroyed, GG. 277.  
 FORME, beginning, GK. 499; foremost, GK. 2373.  
 FORNE, formerly? GK. 2422.  
 FOROUTIN, without, GG. 499, 1286.  
 FOR-SAKE, to deny, GK. 475. FORSOKE, *p. t.* 1826.  
 FORSIEST, mightiest, GG. 786.  
 FORSNES, strength, GK. 646.  
 FORSSIS, *pr. t.* enforce? GK. 202.  
 FORSSY, powerful, mighty, GG. 487. Used substantively, 719.  
 FORST, frost, GK. 1694.  
 FORTH, FORTHE, FORȝ, ford, stream, GK. 1585, 1617, 2173.  
 FOR-THI, FOR-THY, therefore, GK. 27, 240, 283, 455. AA. xxxiv. 9. GG. 364.  
 FORWARD, FORWARDE, covenant, GK. 1105, 1395, 1636. FORWARDES, FORWARDER, FOREWARDES, *pl.* 378, 409, 1405. J. 35.  
 FOR-WONDRED, *p. p.* astonished, GK. 1660. AA. xxvi. 9, MS. D.  
 FORȝATE, *p. t.* forgot, GK. 1472.  
 FOR-ȝELDE, *subj.* requite, GK. 839, 1279, 1535.  
 FOTEZ, feet, GK. 574.  
 FOTTE, to fetch, GK. 451.  
 FOUND, to go, journey, GG. 884, 933.  
 FOUNDEZ, FOUNDIS, FOWNDIS, *pr. t.* GK. 1585, 2229. AA. xxi. 1, 2. GG. 109, 370, 660. FONDENE, *pr. t. pl.* AA. xxi. 1, MS. D.  
 FOUND, FOWNDEDE, *p. t.* journeyed, AA. xxxi. 9. GG. 636, 909, 1293. FOUNDED, *p. p.* GK. 267.  
 FOURCHEZ, *pl.* a hunting term, applied to the forks or haunches of the deer, GK. 1357. The same term is used in the *Boke of St. Alban's*, 1496.  
 And after the ragge-boon kyttyth eyn also,  
 The *forchis* and the sydes eyn bytwene,  
 And loke that your knyues ay whettyd bene;  
 Thenne turne vp the *forchis*, and frote theym wyth blood,  
 For to saue grece; so doo men of good.  
 FRA, from, GG. 58.  
 FRAIST, FRAYST, to ask, seek, GK. 409. AA. xxxii. 9. GG. 121. FRAYST, FRAYSTEZ,

- pr. t.* ask, askest, GK. 279, 455; tries, 503.  
 FRAYST, FRAYSTED, *p. p.* asked, 324, 391, 1395; tried, proved, 1679.  
 FRASTYN, to prove, GG. 902. See FRAIST, FRESTIN.  
 FRATIT, *p. p.* fretted? wrought? GG. 889.  
 FRAUCE, deceit? GR.K. 355.  
 FRAUNCHIS, FRAUNCHYSE, frankness, liberality, GK. 652, 1264.  
 FRAY, to frighten, GG. 486. See AFFRAY.  
 FRAYN, to seek, GK. 489. FRAYNED, *p. t.* and *p. p.* asked, 359, 703, 1046.  
 FRE, noble, GK. 101, 847, 1156, 1885, 1961. GG. 138, 379. Used substantively, *lady*, being understood, GK. 1545, 1549, 1783.  
 FREELY, noble, lovely, used substantively, AA. XXIX. 12.  
 FREEST, most noble, GK. 2422.  
 FREIK, FREK, FREKE, man, warrior, GK. 149, 196, 241, 651. AA. XXI. 1, XXXI. 8. GG. 56, 83, 106. FREKEZ, *gen.* man's, GK. 537.  
 FREKES, FREKEZ, FREKIS, *pl.* men, 703, 840, 1172. GG. 370; persons, AA. VII. 1.  
 FREYNDFULLY, friendly, GG. 1173.  
 FREMEDLY, as a stranger, GK. 714.  
 FREMMYT, strangers, GG. 909, 1079.  
 FRIEND, *p. t.* asked, GR.K. 256. See FRAYN.  
 FRENKYSCH, French? frank? jocular? GK. 1116. In the Chester miracle-play of *The Deluge* the term is used by Noah's wife,  
 In faith, Noe, I had as lief thou had sleped, for  
 all thy *frankish fare*,  
 For I will not doe after thy red.  
 It is explained by the editor *nonsense*.  
 See *A Collection of English Miracle-Plays*,  
 etc. By W. Marriott, 8vo, Basel, 1838,  
 p. 6.  
 FRENYEIS, fringes, GG. 318, 889.  
 FRES, *p. t.* froze, GK. 728.  
 FRESCH, vigorous, GG. 1259.  
 FRESCHLY, quickly, GK. 1294.  
 FRESONE, Frieseland horse, AA. XXXI. 8, xliii. 5.  
 FRESTIN, to prove, GG. 911. FREST, *p. t.* 695. See FRAIST, FRASTYN.  
 FRETTE, FRET, FRETTE, *p. p.* fretted, laced, braided, AA. XXIX. 5. GG. 422. GR.K. 278.  
 FRYDDE for FRYTH, AA. I. 7, MS. D.  
 FRITHE, FRYTH, FRYTHE, an inclosed wood, GK. 1430, 1973, 2151. AA. XXVI. 6, MS. D. GR.K. 60. FRITHES, FRYTHES, FRYTHEZ, FRYTHIS, *pl.* GK. 695. AA. I. 8, MS. D. liii. 6.  
 FRYTHEDE, *p. p.* wooded, AA. I. 7.  
 FRO, from the time that, GK. 8, 62; from, 1336.  
 FROTE, *pr. t.* rub, GK. 1919.  
 FROUNSES, *pr. t.* wrinkles, contracts, GK. 2306.  
 FROUT, forehead, GK. 959.  
 † FROWE, from, GC. 118.  
 FRUSCHIT, *p. t.* rushed with violence, GG. 565, 617.  
 FULYE, explained by Jamieson, *leaf-gold*, GG. 939.  
 FULYEIT, *p. t.* and *p. p.* injured, destroyed, GG. 928, 1110.  
 FULLEDE, *p. p.* baptised, AA. XVIII. 4. See FOLOWED.  
 FULSUM, to help, aid, GK. 99.  
 FUNDEN, *p. p.* found, GK. 640.  
 FUNNESTANE, font, AA. XVIII. 4.  
 FURE, *p. t.* went, rode, AA. IV. 10. GG. 676.  
 FURLEY, *n.* wonder, marvel, GR.K. 354.  
 FURLEYS, *pl.* 286. See FERLY.  
 FURLEY, *adj.* wondrous, GR.K. 280.  
 FURLENTH, furlong, GG. 1279.  
 FUSIOUN, abundance, GG. 222.  
 FUST, hand? GK. 391.  
 FUTE, FUYT, track of a fox or beast of chase, by the odour, GK. 1425. See *Boke of St. Alban's*, and Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*, B. 18, ch. xxi. Also Gloss. to *Will. and Wer-wolf*, v. *Feute*.  
 G.  
 GAA, GAY, to go, AA. V. 8. GG. 54. GA, GAYS, *pr. t.* AA. V. 9. GG. 591. See GANE.  
 GAY, an epithet, used substantively, and applied to both sexes, GK. 970, 1822, 2035.

- AA. xli. 10. GG. 988. Hence we may, perhaps, correct the doubtful reading in GK. 1215.
- GAYLYARDE, sprightly, gay, used substantively, AA. xxxviii. 12.
- GAYN, to require, befit, GK. 584.
- GAYN, prompt, GK. 178; fit, proper, 1241.
- GAYN, GAYNE, promptly, quickly, GK. 1621, AA. vii. 7.
- GAYNEST, nearest, speediest, GK. 1973.
- GAYNLY, fitly, promptly, GK. 476, 1297.
- GAYSTYN, GEYSTYN, to lodge, GC. 146, 164.
- GAIT, GATE, way, road, path, GK. 696, 778, 930. GG. 54, 131, 381. J. 121; enterprise, GK. 124, 744, 791. GATES, GATIS, *pl.* roads, ways, GK. 709. AA. iii. 2, vii. 7.
- GAMBESOUNNS, GAMESONS, quilted doublet to defend the body, AA. xxxi. 3.
- GAMEN, GAMENE, GAMYN, sport, game, AA. v. 7, xii. 3, MS. D. xxxiv. 7. GG. 1144.
- GAMMENES, GAMNES, GAMNEZ, *pl.* GK. 1319. AA. xii. 3, xxxi. 12. See GOMEN.
- GANE, to go, GG. 8. See GAA.
- GANE, prompt, GG. 1027. See GAYN.
- GANYEIS, darts, arrows, GG. 465.
- GAR, GARE, GARR, GARRE, to cause, AA. xvii. 2, xlix. 11. GG. 472, 1080. GR. K. 147. TG. 23. GARED, GART, GARTE, *p. t.* and *p. p.* GK. 2460. AA. xxxvii. 13, lv. 1. GG. 295, 880, 952.
- GARATOURIS, watch-towers, GG. 482.
- GARET, tuiwet, watch-tower, GG. 525. GARBYTEZ, *pl.* GK. 791. See Du Cange, v. *Garitæ*.
- GARGULUN, part of the inwards of a deer, apparently included in the *numbles*. GK. 1335, 1340. See Scott's Notes to *Sir Tristrem*, p. 387, ed. 1833.
- GARSONE, GARYSOUN, treasure, reward, GK. 1255, 1807, 1837. AA. xii. 4, MS. D. GARSOMMES, GARSONS, GERSOMES, *pl.* AA. xii. 4, liv. 8.
- GAST, *p. p.* afraid, GK. 325.
- GAUDI, ornament? GK. 167.
- GEF, *p. t.* see GIF.
- GEIR, GEERE, GERE, armour, GK. 569, 584. GG. 738, 987. GR. K. 234; applied to spears, 672. GEREZ, *pl.* apparel, GK. 1470.
- GENT, fair, comely, GG. 72. GC. 364. Used substantively, *king* being understood, GG. 1285.
- GENTRICE, GENTRISE, courtesy, honor, GG. 139, 1105, 1202.
- GEREZ, *pr. t.* arrays, GK. 1872. GERED, *p. t.* and *p. p.* dressed, arrayed, 179, 957, 2227; disposed, 791; made, fashioned, 1832.
- GERSE, *pr. t.* causes, AA. xvii. 6. See GAR.
- GESERNE, GISERNE, axe, GK. 288, 326, 375, 2265.
- GET, booty, gain, GK. 1638.
- GETEN, *p. t.* and *p. p.* got, GK. 1171, 1625.
- GETERONE, GYTTORNE, giter, a sort of guitar, GC. 599. C. 466.
- †GEWES, *pr. t.* probably a mistake for GLEWES, look, AA. x. 11. MS. D. reads GLOWES.
- GHESTING, lodging, hospitable reception, AKC. 65, 67.
- GYDE, attire, gown, AA. i. 2, xxix. 2.
- GIF, to give, GK. 288, 365. GEF, *p. t.* GK. 370, 668, 2349.
- GIF, GIFFE, GINE, if, AA. xlviii. 13. GG. 56, 329. TG. 25.
- GYLD, *p. p.* gilded, GK. 569.
- GYLLIS, glens, AA. xxxiii. 2. The word occurs in the same sense in *La Bone Florence of Rome*, ap. Ritson, iii. 60. The MS. D. corruptly reads *grylles*, which consequently finds a place in Jamieson's Dictionary.
- GYNG, assembly, GK. 224.
- GIRD, to strike, smite, (governed by *lef*) GG. 106, 936. GYRDEZ, *pr. t.* strikes, spurs, GK. 2160. GIRD, GYRD, *pr. t. pl.* spur, strike, GG. 912, 999. GIRDEDE, GIRDIT, *p. t.* struck, AA. xlvii. 8; drew, GG. 848. See GURDENE.
- GIRDAND, spurring, riding, GG. 86.
- GYRSE, grass, AA. xxix. 2.
- GLADE, to gladden, GK. 989. GLADIT, *p. t.* entertained, GG. 208.

- GLADLOKER, gladiator, GK. 1064.  
 GLAID, *p. t.* glided, rode, GG. 888. See GLOD.  
 GLAM, noise, cry, clamor, GK. 1426, 1562.  
 See also MS. Cott. Nero, A. x. f. 68<sup>b</sup>.  
 GLAUERANDE, noisy, yelping, GK. 1426.  
 The same term is used in the metrical  
*Morte Arthure*, MS. Linc. f. 80.  
 GLAUIS, swords? GG. 558.  
 GLAUMANDE, riotous, GK. 46.  
 GLEDE, GLEED, GLEID, burning coal, ember,  
 GK. 1609. AA. xxxi. 3, MS. D. GG. 558.  
 GC. 237. AKC. iii. 262. GLEDEZ, GLEDIS,  
 GLEDYS, *pl.* GK. 891. AA. ix. 13, xxxi. 3.  
 GLEMAND, gleaming, GG. 557.  
 GLENT, *n.* glance, GK. 1290.  
 GLENT, *p. t.* glanced, looked, GK. 82, 476;  
 shone, 172, 569, 604; brightened, started  
 up, 1652; shrank, 2292.  
 GLETERANDE, GLYTERANDE, glittering, GK.  
 2039. AA. ii. 2, iii. 1, xxxvi. 3.  
 GLYDANDE, gliding, GK. 2266.  
 GLYFTE, *p. t.* looked, GK. 2265. AA. xxviii. 5.  
 MS. D. reads GLIFFED, which is mis-  
 printed GLISSED by Pinkerton, and thence  
 inserted in Jamieson's Dictionary.  
 GLISNAND, glistening, glittering, GG. 525,  
 652.  
 GLISTER, *pr. t.* glitter, AKC. 111.  
 GLYȝT, *p. t.* looked, GK. 842, 970. Probably  
 only another form of GLYFTE.  
 GLOD, *p. t.* glided, GK. 661.  
 GLODE, clump, hillock, tuft? GK. 2266.  
 GLODES, *pl.* 2181.  
 GLOMEDE, *p. t.* gleamed, glowed, AA. xxxi. 3.  
 GLOPPE, GLOPPYNNE, *pr. t.* wail, lament,  
 AA. vii. 13. GLOPPENED, GLOPPENYDE,  
*p. t.* wailed, mourned, AA. viii. 1, xli. 10,  
 xlii. 10.  
 GLOWAND, glowing, AA. ix. 13. GG. 558.  
 GLOWES, *pr. t.* looks, AA. x. 11, MS. D.  
 GOANDE, going, walking, GK. 2214.  
 GODAMERCY! an exclamation easily cor-  
 rupted from *God have mercy!* GK. 138.  
 GODLY, GODLYCH, GOUDLY, goodly, cour-  
 teously, GK. 273, 584, 1933.  
 GOG, a corruption of GOD, GK. 390.  
 GOME, man, knight, warrior, GK. 151, 178,  
 325, 375. AA. xxxiv. 7, MS. D. (In this last  
 instance Jamieson makes a strange blun-  
 der, by joining the part. *graithe* on to the  
 noun.) GG. 583, 698. GOMES, GOMMES,  
 GOMYS, *pl.* AA. v. 9, xxxvi. 3. GG. 1169.  
 GOMEN, game, sport, GK. 273, 661, 1014,  
 1376. GOMNES, GOMNEZ, *pl.* 495, 683,  
 1894. See GAMEN.  
 GOMENLY, playfully, GK. 1079.  
 GOPNYNG, affright? GK. 2461.  
 GORDE, *p. p.* gird, GK. 1851.  
 GORDEZ, *pr. t.* strikes, spurs, GK. 2062.  
 See GIRD.  
 GORGER, wrapper or covering for the throat,  
 GK. 957.  
 GOST, spirit, life, GK. 2250.  
 GOSTLYCH, ghostly, GK. 2461.  
 GOTȝ, *pr. t.* goeth, goes, GK. 375, 1293;  
*imp.* go ye, 2119.  
 GOULEZ, GOULIS, GOWLEZ, GOWLIS, gules,  
 GK. 619, 663. GG. 21, 603.  
 GRACONS, Greek? GK. 216.  
 GRAIED, *p. p.* a contracted form of GRAI-  
 THED, arrayed, AA. xxxi. 4, MS. D.  
 GRAYES, *pr. t.* becomes gray, GK. 527.  
 GRAYNE, to groan, GG. 472. GRANES, *pr. t.*  
 AA. xlvii. 9.  
 GRAITH, *imp.* prepare or undertake thou, GG.  
 124. GRAITHIS, GRAYTHEZ, *pr. t.* makes  
 ready, goes, GK. 2014. GG. 170. GRAI-  
 THIT, GRAYTHED, GRAYTHEDE, *p. t.* and  
*p. p.* arrayed, dressed, prepared, GK. 74,  
 109, 151, 666, 876, 2259. AA. xxxi. 4, xl.  
 1. GG. 131, 482, 547, 603, 1262; accom-  
 plished, 1267.  
 GRAYTH, GRAYTHE, ready, prepared, GK.  
 448, 597, 2047.  
 GRAITHLY, GRAYTHELY, readily, speedily,  
 GK. 417, 876, 1006, 1335. AA. xl. 1. GG.  
 54, 1023; steadfastly, cheerfully? GK.  
 1470, 2292.  
 GRAME, anger, J. 98; mischief, GK. 392.  
 See GREM.  
 GRAMEST, most angry, GG. 471. Jamieson  
 chooses to interpret this *warlike*.

GRANES, *pl.* groans, AA. xlviii. 9.  
 GRANT-MERCI, GRAUNT-MERCY, gramercy, thanks, GK. 838, 1037, 1392.  
 †GRASSE for GREASE, C. 19.  
 GRAT, *p. t.* wept, GG. 1141. See GRETE.  
 GRATHEST, readiest? AA. xxiv. 10, MS. D.  
 GRATEST, greatest, GK. 207, 1441.  
 GRE, degree, dignity, superiority, GG. 698, 1162.  
 GRECHES, *pr. t.* grows angry? AA. xli. 4.  
 GREIF, rage, passion, GG. 925, 960.  
 GREIF, *adj.* heavy? GG. 1262.  
 GREIS, steps, GG. 482.  
 GREM, GREME, anger, GK. 312, 1507, 2370; mischief, 2251. See GRAME.  
 GREMED, *p. t.* was grieved, AA. xli. 4.  
 GREN, to roar, C. 213.  
 GRENN, *pr. t.* made game, GK. 464.  
 GRES, GRESSE, grass, GK. 235, 2181.  
 GRET, *p. t.* greeted, accosted, GK. 842, 1933. GG. 377.  
 GRETE, used substantively for nobles, great men, GK. 2490.  
 GRETE, *n.* cry, AA. xxv. 12, xxvi. 1.  
 GRETE, GRETYNE, to cry, weep, GK. 2157. AA. viii. 8, xxii. 5. GRETES, GRETE, *pr. t.* vii. 13, xli. 9. GRET, *p. t.* viii. 1.  
 GREVE, grove, copse, GK. 1355, 1707, 1898, 1974. GREUES, GREUEZ, GREUYS, *pl.* 207, 508. AA. v. 8, xxvi. 2, MS. D. lii. 2.  
 GREUES, greaves, leg-armour, GK. 575.  
 GREUNDEN, greyhounds, AA. v. 8, MS. D. Jamieson most absurdly explains this *grandees!*  
 GRYED, *p. t.* trembled, was agitated, GK. 2370.  
 GRILLE, to torment, AA. xlix. 8. GRILLES, *pr. t.* torments, xxxiii. 6.  
 GRYLLE, hideous, frightful, AA. xlviii. 9.  
 †GRYLLES, see GYLLIS.  
 GRYMME, cruel, GK. 2260.  
 GRYNDEL, wrath, fierce, GK. 2338.  
 GRYNDEL-LAYK, anger, fierceness, GK. 312.  
 GRYNDELLY, wrathfully, GK. 2299.  
 GRYNDELSTON, grindstone, GK. 2202.  
 GRIP, possession, tenure, GG. 1169. GRIP-  
 PIS, *pl.* grasp, gripe, 347.

GRIPPED, GRIPPIT, GRYPED. *p. t.* grasped, GK. 421, 1335. GG. 1026.  
 GRISLY, horribly, fearfully, AA. xlvii. 2, 9.  
 GRYTHER, respite, AA. v. 7.  
 GROME, GRUME, man, knight, GK. 1006. GG. 105, 148, 1000, 1114. GROMYS, GRUMYS, *pl.* 8, 1027, 1144.  
 GRONYED, *p. t.* grunted as a wild-boar, GK. 1442.  
 GROSSE,—IN GROSSE, all together, GG. 1168.  
 GROUND, to bellow, GG. 238.  
 GROWELYNCE, grovelling, AA. xlvii. 8.  
 GRUCH, to grudge, GK. 2251.  
 GRUCHYNG, misliking, GK. 2126.  
 GRULINGIS, *gen. abs.* in a grovelling attitude, GG. 1024.  
 GRUME, GRUMYS, see GROME.  
 GRWE, will? GK. 2251. Compare *Griew* and *Gre* in Roquefort.  
 GUDLY, courteous, complaisant, AA. li. 2.  
 GURDES, *pr. t.* smites, AA. xlv. 10. GUR-  
 DENE, *pr. t. pl.* spur, xxxix. 1, MS. D. See GIRD.

## H.

HABBE, HABBES, HABBEZ, *pr. t.* have, hast, GK. 327, 452, 626, 1252.  
 HACHES, racks for hay, AA. xxxv. 6, MS. D. See HECKE.  
 HADEN, *p. t. pl.* had, GK. 52, 1446.  
 HADET, *p. p.* at enmity? GK. 681.  
 HAY! exclamation or cry of the hunters, GK. 1158, 1445. In the former instance it is most incorrectly rendered *hedge* by Mr. Guest, *Hist. E. R.* ii. 169. See HYGHE.  
 HAIL, all, GG. 434.  
 HAYLCE, to embrace, salute, GK. 2493.  
 HAYLSES, *pr. t.* 972. HAYLSED, *p. t.* 223, 810, 829. See HALCH, HALSED.  
 HAILLY, HALELY, wholly, GG. 175, 1299, 1317.  
 HAILSING, encounter, GG. 703.  
 HAIT, eager, courageous, GG. 742; used adverbially; hotly, fiercely, 949.  
 HALAWED, *p. p.* hallooed, GK. 1723.  
 †HALCE, neck, GK. 427.

- HALCH, to salute, embrace, *MG.* 65. HALCHED, *p. t.* and *p. p.* *GK.* 939. *MG.* 73. See HALSED, HAYLCE.
- HALCHEZ, *pr. t.* fastens, *GK.* 1613. HALCHED, *p. t.* looped, fastened, 185, 218, 657, 1852.
- HALD, stronghold, *GG.* 371, 583.
- HALDAND, holding, *GG.* 259.
- HALDE, to hold, *GK.* 1125. HALDES, HALDEZ, *pr. t.* holds, 53, 627. HALDEN, *p. t.* held, 124; *p. p.* obliged, bound, 1040, 1828; esteemed, 1297. HALT, *p. p.* held, 2079. In the last instance we recognise the common phrase of *hold up*, as applied to the heavens.
- HALE, whole, *GG.* 602, 1344.
- HALELY, see HAILLY.
- HALES, *pr. t.* drives, rushes, *GK.* 136. HALBD, HALLED, *p. t.* rushed, 458; rose, 788; pulled, hauled, 1338; shot, discharged, 1455; *p. p.* pulled? 157; gone, 1049. In most if not all the above instances the radical meaning of quick motion is predominant. See *Ihre, Gloss. Suio-Goth.*, v. *Hälla*, in the 7th signification.
- HALF, behalf, *GK.* 2149. See HALUE.
- HALYDAM, reliques of the saints? *GK.* 2123. See HOLYDOME.
- HALM, handle, *GK.* 218, 330, 2224.
- HALS, HALSE, neck, *GK.* 621, 1353, 1639.
- HALSED, *p. t.* saluted, *AA.* xxvii. 8, *MS. D.* c. 190. See HALCH, HAYLCE.
- HALSUMLY, comfortably, *GK.* 1731.
- HALTANE, haughty, proud, used substantively, *GG.* 962; precious, 963. See HAWTANE.
- HALUE, behalf, *GK.* 326, 692, 2119; side, 742, 1552. HALUE, *pl.* sides, *GK.* 2070, 2165. See HALF.
- HALUENDELLE, half-part, *AA.* l. 2.
- HALJEZ, saints, *GK.* 2122.
- HAMLOUNEZ, *pr. t.* a hunting term, used of the wiles of the fox, *GK.* 1708. So in the *Boke of St. Alban's*, 1496.
- And yf your houndes at a chace renne there ye hunte,  
And the beest begyn to renne, as hartes ben wonte,  
Or for to *hanylon*, as dooth the foxe wyth his gyle,  
Or for to crosse, as the roo doth otherwhyle.
- And in the older treatise of Twety, *MS. Cott. Vesp. A. xii. f. 6<sup>b</sup>*. "*Sohow* gothe to alle maner of chaces, and couplyng, and dyscouplyng, but if yowre houndes renne to one chace, that is to seye, rusejt, or *hamylone*, or croisethe, or dwelle, and they conne not put it no ferthere, ye shal seye, *Ho so, amy, so, venez a coupler*." Hence also may be explained the passage so miserably glossed in Hearne's *Peter Langtoft*, p. 308.
- With *hanelon* tham led, to mak the purale.
- HAN, *pr. t. pl.* have, *GK.* 23, 1089, 2093.
- HANSELLE, specimen, first occurrence, *GK.* 491. See HONDE-SELLE.
- HAP VPON HEJE, a phrase somewhat equivalent to *hap-hazard*, *GK.* 48.
- HAPNEST, most fortunate? *GK.* 56.
- HAPPED, *p. p.* fastened, *GK.* 655; wrapped, 864.
- HAPPUNYS, *pl.* fortunes, chances, *GG.* 825.
- HARBAROWE, *p. p.* lodged, *GR. K.* 348.
- HARBOROWE, HARBORROW, HARBROWE, lodging, *GC.* 137, 147. *GR. K.* 300. *C.* 145. See HERBERROW.
- HARDYNE, (?) *GC.* 241.
- HARE, hoary, *AA.* iv. 6. See HORE.
- HARLE, *pr. t.* drag, *AA.* xv. 5. HARLED, *p. p.* drawn, trailed, *GK.* 744.
- HARROWES, *pr. t.* robs, plunders, *GK.* 420. The oath here used may be found also in Chaucer and Lyndsay.
- HAS, *pr. t.* have, *GG.* 453.
- HASPEZ, *pr. t.* clasps, *GK.* 1388. HASPED, *p. p.* clasped, closed, 281, 590, 831.
- HASTLETTEZ, part of the inwards of a wild boar, *GK.* 1612. In modern writers spelt *harslets* and *haslets*. See Richardson's Dictionary.
- HAT, HATTE, *pr. t.* am named, *GK.* 253, 381, 2445; is called, 10. HATTES, art named, 379, 401. See HEGHT.

- HATHEL**, **HATHILL**, properly an adjective, but used substantively to denote generally a noble person, knight, or warrior, GK. 221, 234, 256, 309, 655, 844. GG. 900, 952, 963. Applied to God, GK. 2056, and to an attendant, 2065. **HATHELES**, **HATHELESE**, **HATHELLES**, **HATHELEZ**, **HATHILLIS**, *pl.* GK. 829, 895, 949, 1138, 1602. AA. iv. 5, MS. D. x. 13. xxxviii. 7, xlv. 1. GG. 1299. See **ATHEL**.
- HATTERIT**, *p. t.* shattered, GG. 702.
- HAT3**, **hath**, GK. *passim*.
- HAUBERGHE**, **HAWBERKE**, **HAWBRGH**, **hauberk**, **cuirass**, GK. 203, 268. GK. 82.
- HAW3**, **azure**, AA. ii. 5.
- HAWTANE**, **proud**; used adverbially, GG. 923, and substantively, 949. See **HALTANE**.
- HAUTESSE**, **nobility**, **power**, GK. 2454.
- HA3ER**, **more noble**, GK. 352, 1738.
- † **HEATHENNEST**, **heathendom**, AKC. 55.
- HECHT**, **promise**, **vow**, GG. 293.
- HECKE**, **rack for hay**, c. 232, 258. **HEKKES**, *pl.* AA. xxxv. 6. See **HACHES**.
- HEF**, *p. t.* **heaved**, **hove**, **raised**, GK. 120, 826, 1587.
- HEGHT**, *p. t.* **was named**, GG. 654, 742. See **HAT**, **HETT**.
- HEGHT3**, **HEIGHT**, *n.* See **ON HEGHT3**.
- HEICH**, **tall**, GG. 900.
- HEILL**, **to submit?** GG. 1309.
- HEYND**, **HEYNDLY**, see **HENDE**.
- HEIR**, **host**, **army**, GG. 1299. See **HERE**.
- HELDANDE**, **bowing**, **inclining**, GK. 972, 1104.
- HELDEN**, **to ride**, **follow**, GK. 1692. **HELDEZ**, *pr. t.* **moves**, **advances**, 221. **HELD**, **HELDET**, *p. t.* **set**, **went down**, 1321; **moved**, **went back**, 2331; **went**, **led**, GG. 126, 132. **HELDEN**, *p. t. pl.* **went**, **rode**, GK. 1922.
- HELDER**, **more**, **in a greater degree**, GK. 376, 430. A word still preserved in Lancashire and the North. See also **Ihre**, v. **Hæller**.
- HELE**, **HELLE**, **health**, **prosperity**, GG. 1103, 1176. GC. 171.
- HELYN**, **to heal**, GG. 882.
- HELING**, **covering**, AA. ix. 4, MS. D. See **HILLYNGE**.
- HEM**, **them**, GK. 862. AA. *passim*, MS. D.
- HEME**, **close**, **tight?** GK. 157.
- HEMELY**, **secretly**, **closely**, GK. 1852. Dan. *hemmelig*.
- HENDE**, **HEYND**, **fair**, **courteous**; an epithet applied to both sexes, GK. 108, 405, 467, 647, 896, 1104, 1731. AA. xxix. 13. GC. 126, 924, 1246. Used substantively, *knight* or *lady* being understood; GK. 827, 946, 1252, 1813, 2330. AA. liv. 9. GC. 183, 219. **HENDE**, *pl.* used substantively, GG. 132.
- HENDELAYK**, **courtesy**, GK. 1228. See also MS. Cott. Nero A. x. f. 68<sup>b</sup>.
- HENDESTE**, **fairest**, GK. 26. AA. xi. 1.
- HENDLY**, **HENDELY**, **HEYNDLY**, **fairly**, **courteously**, **well**, GK. 773, 829, 895, 1228. AA. iv. 5, xxvii. 8, xxxv. 6. GC. 132, 358.
- HENGES**, *pr. t.* **hangs**, GK. 182. **HENGED**, *p. t.* **hanged**, 732, 1345. See **HYNGE**.
- HENNE**, **hence**, GK. 1078.
- HENT**, **to take**, **receive**, GK. 827. **HENTES**, *pr. t.* 605. **HENT**, **HENTE**, *p. t.* 864, 983, 2277, 2317. GC. 393. GK. 82. **HENT**, *p. p.* GK. 2323, 2484. AA. xxxviii. 7.
- HER**, **HERE**, **their**, GK. 54, 120, 428; *et pass.* AA. iv. 3, MS. D. *et pass.* GC. 175, 648.
- HERANDE**, **hearing**, GK. 450.
- HERBER**, **lodging**, GK. 755, 812.
- HERBER**, **to lodge**, GK. 805. **HERBERED**, *p. t.* 2481.
- HERBERROW**, **HERBOROW**, **HERBROW**, **lodging**, GC. 126, 173, 342. c. 167. See **HARBOROWE**.
- HERBOROW**, **to lodge**, GC. 143.
- HERBORY**, **lodging**, GC. 184.
- HERDE**, **coarse?** AA. ii. 5, MS. D.
- HERE**, **host**, **army**, GK. 59, 2271. GC. 1147. See **HEIR**.
- HERE**, **hair**, GK. 180, 436; **bristles**, 1587.
- HERE**, **loss**, **injury**, GK. 703.
- HERE**, **to praise**, GK. 1634.

- HERED-MEN, HIRDMENNE, courtiers, nobles, attendants, GK. 302. AA. iv. 5.
- HERLE, twist, fillet, GK. 190.
- HERRE, higher, GK. 333.
- HERSUM, devout? GK. 932.
- HES, HEST, order, bidding, GK. 1039, 1090, 1092. HESTES, *pl.* promises, AA. xix. 1, MS. D.
- HEST, highest, noblest, GK. 550.
- HETE, to promise, GK. 2121. HETE, HETT, HETTEZ, *pr. t.* GK. 448. AA. xix. 1. GC. 411. c. 462. HETTE, *p. p.* GK. 450. See HYȝT.
- HETERLY, HETTERLY, violently, strongly, GK. 1152, 1446, 1462, 1587, 2311; quickly, suddenly? 2291, 2317. See Gloss. to *Will. and Werwolf*, v. *Hetterli*.
- HETES, *pl.* promises, GK. 1525.
- HETHEN, HETHYNNE, hence, GK. 1794, 1879. AA. xx. 13.
- HETT, *p. t.* was named, GK. 40. See HEGHT.
- HEUCH, *p. t.* hewed, GC. 702.
- HEUE, heavy? GK. 289.
- HEUEN, *pr. t. pl.* raise, GK. 1346. HEUENED, *p. p.* raised, GK. 349. See MS. Cott. Nero A. x. f. 64.
- HEUEN-RYCHE, heaven, GK. 2423.
- HEWEN, *p. p.* forged, GK. 211.
- HEWES, colors, GK. 1761. See HUWE.
- HEWYNE, heaven, GC. 1317.
- HEWYS, *pr. t.* strike? AA. xv. 5.
- HEȝ, HEȝE, high, GK. 48, 222, 593; noble, 812, 831; important, 1051. Used adverbially, 1417. See HȝE.
- HEȝLY, loudly, devoutly? GK. 755, 773, highly, greatly, 949; nobly? 983.
- HIGHT, height, GC. 900.
- HIDE, HYDE, skin, body, GK. 2312. GC. 564.
- HIDER, hither, GK. 264.
- HIDWIES, hideous, GC. 727, 861.
- HYE, HYȝ, to hasten, GK. 2121. AKC. 72. HYȝES, HYȝEZ, *pr. t.* 521, 1351, 1462. HȝEN, HYȝEN, *pr. t. pl.* GK. 1910. AA. x. 7, MS. D. HYE, HYȝE, *imp.* hasten thou, GK. 299. J. 127. HȝED, HYȝT, *p. t.* GK. 111, 826, 1153.
- HIGHE, Hȝ, HY, HYE, HYȝE, haste; always preceded by *in* or *on*, GK. 245. AA. iv. 5, MS. D. xxxii. 1, xxxviii. 7, MS. D. liv. 9, MS. D. GC. 735, 926, 949. GC. 287.
- HYGHE! shout or exclamation of the hunters, GK. 1445. See HAY.
- HIGHT, HȝT, HYGHE, HYGHT, HYȝT. See ON HEGHT.
- HILLYNGE, covering, AA. ix. 4. See HELLING.
- † HIM for HEM, GK. 49.
- HYNGE, *p. t.* hung, GC. 535. See HENGES.
- HINT, HYNT, to take, receive, GC. 674, 803. HYNT, *p. t.* and *p. p.* took, taken, received, 527, 703, 727; went, 62.
- HYPPED, *p. t.* hopped, jumped, GK. 1459, 2232.
- HIRDMENNE, see HERED-MEN.
- HIT, it, joined to a plural noun, as in German, GK. 280, 1251.
- HȝE, HYGHE, HYȝE, noble, GK. 120; loud, 307, 468, 1165, (not *long*, as Mr. Guest would have it,) 1602; tall, 1154. Used substantively for *heights*, *high ground*, GK. 1152, 1169, 2004, in the two former of which instances Mr. Guest explains it very erroneously by *hedge*. Hist. E. R. vol. ii. p. 169. So, in the Wycliffite Bible, 1 Kings, cap. 9: "To-day forsothe he came into the cytee, for to-day is sacrifice of the peple in the heeyȝ." MS. Trin. Coll. Dubl. A. 1. 9.
- HȝLICH, noble, admirable? GK. 183.
- HYȝT, *pr. t.* promise, GC. 378. HYGHT, HYȝT, *p. t.* promised, GK. 1966, 2218. GC. 591.
- HYȝT, height, stature, GK. 332.
- HYȝTHET, high, tall, GC. 259.
- HȝTLY, fitly, GK. 1612.
- HO, she, GK. 934, 948, 1001, 1191, 1206. AA. iii. 1, *et passim*, MS. D.
- HOCHIS, houghs? GC. 674.
- HOD, HODE, hood, GK. 155, 2297.
- HOE! Hoo! halt! stop! GK. 2330. TG. 121.
- HOL, HOLE, HOLLE, whole, entire, GK. 1338, 1406, 1613, 2296.



HOLD, HOLDE, castle, mansion, GK. 771. GC. 146, 186. GR.K. 348. C. 100.  
 HOLDE, faithfully, GK. 2129.  
 HOLDELY, faithfully, carefully, GK. 1875, 2016.  
 HOLKEDE, *p. p.* sunk, AA. ix. 12.  
 HOLLE, HOLȝ, hollow, GK. 2182. AA. ix. 12.  
 HOLLEN, the holly, MG. 55, 102. HOLYN-BOBBE, holly-bough, GK. 206.  
 HOLLY, wholly, GK. 1049, 1257.  
 HOLST, *pr. t.* holdest, GC. 481.  
 HOLT, HOLTE, forest, GK. 1677, 1697. AA. lv. 8. HOLTEZ, HOLTIS, *pl.* GK. 1320. AA. iv. 6, v. 5, lv. 9. GG. 234, 470. HOLT WODEZ, GK. 742. See Chalmers' Gloss. to Lyndsay, *in v.*  
 HOLYDOME, salvation? J. 372. See HALY-DAM.  
 HOM, them, GK. 99, 819, 979, 984.  
 HOMERED, *p. t.* hammered, struck, GK. 2311.  
 HONDE-SELLE, gift conferred at a particular season, GK. 66. See HANSELLE.  
 HONE, HOUNE, delay, GK. 1285. GG. 849. Also used by Barbour.  
 HOPE, *pr. t.* think, trust, GK. 140, 352, 2301. HOPES, thinkest, trustest, 395.  
 HOR, their, GK. 130, 1014, 1127, 1139.  
 HORE, hoary, GK. 743. See HARE.  
 HORLOTEZ, vagabonds, GK. 244.  
 HORS, *pl.* horses, GG. 674.  
 HOSE, *pr. t.* embrace, AKC. 151. Not in Brockett, but inserted by Grose as a North country word. It is evidently formed from *halse*.  
 HO SO, whoso, AA. ii. 3, MS. D. ix. 9, MS. D.  
 HOSTEL, inn, dwelling, GK. 805.  
 HOVAND, tarrying, waiting, GG. 905.  
 HOVED, *p. t.* tarried, GK. 785, 2168. See HUVIT.  
 HOUES, *pl.* hoofs, GK. 459.  
 HOUE, *p. t.* heaved, GC. 356. HOVYNE, *p. p.* heaved, raised, 551.  
 HOȝES, houghs, GK. 1357.  
 HULT, hilt, GK. 1594.  
 HUNT, huntsman, hunter, GK. 1422, 1701.

HUNTES, *pl.* 1147, 1604, 1910. AA. v. 5, MS. D.  
 HURDYS, hurdles, GG. 470.  
 HURSTES, woods, AA. v. 5, MS. D.  
 HUVIT, *p. t.* tarried, GC. 840. Misprinted by Pinkerton and Jamieson *Hewit*. See HOVED.  
 HUWE, HWE, color, complexion, GK. 147, 234. AA. ix. 4, MS. D. HWES, HWEZ, *pl.* GK. 707, 867, 1738.  
 HUWES, hills, AA. v. 5, MS. D.  
 HWEN, *pr. t.* hew, cut, GK. 1346.

## I. J.

I-ARMYD, *p. p.* armed, GC. 74.  
 I-BONDE, *p. p.* bound, GC. 91.  
 I-CHARGID, *p. p.* loaded, GC. 567.  
 ICHE, each, GK. 126, 1811.  
 I-CLEPPYDE, *p. p.* named, GC. 16.  
 I-COWERT, *p. p.* covered, GC. 357.  
 I-DYGHTE, I-DYȝT, *p. p.* prepared, GC. 504, 640. See DȝT.  
 I-FERE, together, GC. 554. See FERE.  
 I-HOLDE, *p. p.* held, accounted, GC. 90.  
 ISSE-ICKLES, icicles, GK. 732.  
 I-KEUERID, *p. p.* covered, GC. 552.  
 ILYCHE, (?) GK. 44.  
 ILK, ILKE, same, GK. 24, 1062, 1256, 1385. AA. i. 10. GG. 1157. ILK, ILKA, ILKEA, each, AA. iii. 10. GG. 473, 474.  
 ILKANE, each one, GG. 348, 1244.  
 ILLUMINAT, *p. p.* enlightened, GG. 394.  
 IN, INN, castle, mansion, GK. 1161. GC. 217. C. 139.  
 INCLINAND, INCLYNAND, bending, GG. 383, 387.  
 IN HIGHT, on high, aloud, GR.K. 423. See .ON HEGHTE.  
 IN NOGH, IN NOGHE, INOȝ, INOȝE, IN NOWE, YNOGHE, enough, GK. 77, 219, 404, 514, 1401, 1948. AA. xxix. 12.  
 † I-NORE, a mistake of the scribe for I-NOȝE, enough, AA. xxix. 11, MS. D. Jamieson, however, inserts it as a legitimate form, and finds an Armoric root for it!!!

INTROMETTING, admission, GK. 1171.

IN-WYTH, within, GK. 1055. In Pinkerton's text this word is printed erroneously *Ruwith*, which is inserted by Jamieson in his Dictionary, and the latter hazards on it, as usual, one of his absurd conjectures as to meaning.

I-PERESCHDE, *p. p.* destroyed, lost, GC. 374.

† I-QUERE, every where, GK. 660. See AY-QUERE.

IRAL, (?) AA. xlv. 5. See Notes, p. 334. It is misprinted *Sral* by Pinkerton, and admitted in this disguised form by Jamieson. Perhaps it is the same as *orielle*, which we are told by Sir John Maundevile, "is a ston well schynynge." *Voiage*, p. 48, ed. 8vo., 1839.

IRKE, incommoded, AA. vi. 12.

IRKED, *p. t.* were angry? strove? GK. 1573.

ISCHE, to issue, GC. 253.

I-SET, *p. p.* set, GC. 84.

ITHANDLY, diligently, GC. 231, 308.

I-TOLDE, *p. p.* told, GC. 96.

† I-VIS for I-WIS, GC. 549.

I-WIS, I-WISE, I-WYIS, I-WYS, I-WYSSE, Y-WYS, truly, certainly, GK. 252, 264, 1035, 1065, 1226, 1230, 1276, etc. AA. xiii. 3, xv. 12, xvii. 1, MS. D. xix. 13. GC. 177, 288, 341. GC. 17, 266, 658. J. 215, 309. I-WYSSE I WOT, GK. 1487. I-WYSSE I WENE, AA. xxiv. 4. Manifestly the Saxon adjective *gewis*, used adverbially. Several writers, and among them I include myself, (Gloss. to *Will. and the Werwolf*,) have erroneously explained this word *I know*, considering it equivalent to the Germ. *ich weiss*; but although satisfied about its origin, I still have my doubts whether it was not regarded as a pronoun and verb, by the writers of the fifteenth century.

I-WRYTE, *p. p.* written, GC. 18.

I-WROȝT, *p. p.* made, formed, GC. 333.

JAPEZ, jokes, jests, GK. 542, 1957.

JAPPYST, *pr. t.* jokest, GC. 201.

JENTYLE, gentle, of noble birth or breeding, used substantively, GK. 542.

JOYFNES, youth, GK. 86.

JOYLEZ, *pl.* jewels? GK. 542.

JOLILE, JOLYLY, gaily, GK. 42. AA. xxxix. 8.

JOURNAY, enterprise, GC. 789.

K. See also C.

KACHANDE, catching, reining up, GK. 1581.

KAY, left, GK. 422. A word probably introduced by the Danes. See Molbech's *Dansk Dialect-Lexikon*, in vv. *Kau, Kei*, and Outzen's *Gloss. der Friesischen Sprache*, in v. *Kei*.

KAYRE, to journey, depart, GK. 1048, 1670.

KAYRE, *pr. t.* go, return, AA. liii. 13.

KAYRED, *p. t.* and *p. p.* turned, returned, travelled, GK. 43. GK. 123.

KANEL, collar, neck, GK. 2298. See CANEL-BONE.

KAUTELLE, guile, caution, AA. xviii. 2.

KAUELACIOUN, strife, GK. 2275.

KAȝT, KAȝTEN, *pr. t.* received, took, GK. 643, 1118.

KELE, to assuage, AA. iv. 4, xvi. 6.

KELL, KELLE, dress for a lady's head, caul, AA. xxix. 6. GK. 261.

KEMPYS, knights, TG. 6.

KEND, *p. p.* known, GC. 1211, 1325.

KENDE, *p. t.* taught, GK. 1489.

KENE, bold, brave, GK. 321. GC. 185.

KENET, hound, GK. 1701. KENETTIS, *pl.* AA. iv. 4. Jamieson in his Supplement inserts this word from Sibbald, at the same time professing his ignorance whence the former had derived it, a tolerably convincing proof how carelessly he had read the poem of *Sir Gawan and Sir Galaron*, as printed in Pinkerton.

KENLY, boldly, GK. 1048.

KENNE, *pr. t.* commend, GK. 2067.

KENNES, *pr. t.* teaches, GK. 1484.

KEPE, *n.* care, heed, GK. 546. AA. xxxviii. 2. J. 74.

KEPE, to heed, or meet in a hostile way, GK. 307. KEPE, *imp.* take heed? 372.

KEPPES, *pr. t.* catches, strikes, AA. xlviii.

- 7, MS. D. **KEPIT**, *p. t.* and *p. p.* received honorably, *gg.* 178; guarded, 44.
- KERCHOFES**, kerchiefs, coverings for the head, *gk.* 954.
- † **KERE**, to recover, cure, *aa.* xvi. 6. Apparently a mistake for, or contraction of *keure*. In *The Erle of Tolous*, *ap.* Ritson, iii. 119, occurs *dyskere* for *discover*. Mr. Guest misprints the word *keen*, and explains it *drive from!* *Hist. E. R.* ii. 292.
- KERRE**, rock, *gk.* 1431.
- KEST**, chance, blow? *gk.* 2298; twist, knot, 2376; stratagem, 2413.
- KEST**, *p. t.* and *p. p.* raised, *gk.* 64; cast, 228, 1192, 1355; thought, formed a plan, 1855; set, appointed, 2242. **KESTEN**, *p. t. pl.* cast, 1649.
- KEUER**, to arrive, accomplish, *gk.* 750, 804; gain, 1221, 1254; recover, 2298. **KEVEREZ**, *pr. t.* obtains, brings, 1539; descends, 2221. **KEUERED**, *p. t.* recovered, 1755. This participle occurs in *aa.* xlvii. 1, MS. D., and is misprinted by Pinkerton *kenered*, which is repeated by Jamieson, who both in his Dictionary and Supplement wastes a great deal of absurd and useless argument on it. The real reading is established by *couverde*, i. e. *recovered*, of the Lincoln MS.
- KYD**, **KYDDE**, **KYDE**, *p. p.* known, renowned, *gk.* 51, 263, 1520. *aa.* i. 3, xi. 9.
- KYD**, **KYDDE**, *p. p.* directed, *gk.* 775; shewed, manifested, 2340.
- † **KIDE**, for **KITH**, country, *aa.* xii. 8, MS. D. Falsely explained by Jamieson, *shew, appearance*.
- KIN**, **KYN**, *n.* kind, *gk.* 890. *gg.* 517. **KYNNES**, *gen. c.* *gk.* 1886.
- KYNDE**, *n.* lineage, race, *gk.* 5; nature, disposition, reason, 321, 1348.
- KYNDE**, *adj.* suitable, *gk.* 473.
- KYNDELY**, suitably, *gk.* 135.
- KYNRIK**, kingdom, *gg.* 407.
- KYRF**, cut, blow, *gk.* 372.
- KYRK**, church, *gk.* 2196.
- KIRNELDE**, *p. p.* embattled, *aa.* lii. 4.
- KYRTEL**, tunic, gown, *gk.* 1831.
- KITH**, **KYTH**, **KYTHE**, country, land, territory, kingdom, *gk.* 460, 2120. *aa.* xii. 8, xxviii. 9. *gg.* 192, 320, 1251, 1352.
- KYTH**, to shew, *gg.* 376, 669, 873, 1212, 1229. **KYTHIT**, *p. t.* 159, 488.
- KNAGED**, *p. p.* nailed, riveted, *gk.* 577.
- KNAFE**, man, *gk.* 2136.
- KNARRE**, rock, cliff, *gk.* 1434. **KNARREZ**, *pl.* 721, 2166. See the *Owl and Nightingale*, l. 999.
- KNELAND**, kneeling, *gg.* 383.
- KNITTEN**, *pr. t.* cut? joined? *gk.* 1331.
- KNOKLED**, *p. p.* with craggy projections, rugged, *gk.* 2166.
- KNORNE**, *p. p.* rugged, *gk.* 2166.
- KNOT**, a hunting term, borrowed from and used as the French *naud*, *gk.* 1334; crag? 1431, 1434. **KNOTEZ**, *pl.* knobs, rivets, 577.
- KOYNTYSE**, cunning, *gk.* 2447.
- KRYSSOMMEDE**, *p. p.* anointed with chrism, or sacred oil, at baptism, *aa.* xi. 8, xviii. 3.

## L.

- LACH**, to take, receive, accept, *gk.* 234, 292, 1502, 1676. **LACCHEZ**, **LACHES**, **LACHEZ**, *pr. t.* *gk.* 595, 936, 1029. **LACHEN**, *pr. t. pl.* 1027, 1131.
- LACHET**, clasp, tie, *gk.* 591.
- † **LADDE**, lady, *gk.* 1810.
- LADLICHE**, hateful, odious, *gg.* 95, 160.
- LAFT**, *p. t.* granted, delivered, *gk.* 369.
- LAGHT**, **LAUGHT**, **LAJT**, *p. t.* and *p. p.* took, caught, received, *gk.* 328, 433, 667, 1830, 2499. *gg.* 623, 764, 922, 1260; taken, received, *gk.* 156, 971, 2507. *gg.* 454, 615; captured, 1182.
- LAGMON**, (?) *gk.* 1729.
- LAYK**, **LAIKE**, **LAKE**, sport, game, *gk.* 1023, 1125, 1513; strife of battle, *aa.* xlii. 5. *gg.* 832. **LAYKEZ**, *pl.* *gk.* 262.
- LAYKE**, to play, to sport, *gk.* 1111. **LAYKEZ**, *pr. t.* 1178. **LAYKED**, *p. t.* 1554, 1560.

- LAYKING, playing, GK. 472.  
 LAINE, concealment, falsehood, GR.K. 482.  
 LAYNE, to conceal, keep secret, GK. 1863, 2124, 2128. AA. vii. 5. GG. 1031. GR.K. 6. LAYNE, *pr. t.* and *imp.* GK. 1786. AA. xvi. 9, MS. D.  
 LAIR, teaching, instruction, GG. 364, 832.  
 LAIT, LATE, features, countenance, AA. xxvii. 6. GG. 746, 1271. LAITES, LATIS, *pl.* looks, gestures, AA. xxxviii. 1. GG. 95, 160. See LOTE.  
 LAYT, lightning? GK. 199.  
 LAYT, to look, seek, GK. 411. LAYTES, *pr. t.* GK. 355. LAYTE, *subj.* 449.  
 LAITHLES, unmannerly, GG. 157.  
 LAK, mischief, GG. 919.  
 LANCE, LAUNCE, to utter? to ride forth? GK. 1175; to tell, 2124. LAUNCES, *pr. t.* rides forth, 1464. LANCEN, *pr. t. pl.* fall quickly, 526. LANCED, LANSIT, LAUNCED, *p. t.* rode, 1561. GG. 901; uttered, threw out, GK. 1766, 1212.  
 LANGABERDE, *pl.* Lombards, GK. 12.  
 LANGES, *pr. t.* belongs, GG. 800.  
 LANS, lance, GG. 485. Compare l. 615. In the edit. 1508, and Pinkerton, it is printed *laus*, and explained by the latter *fires*; Jamieson, *more suo*, repeats the word, giving an absurd meaning and etymology.  
 LANTE, *p. t.* lent, gave, GK. 2250.  
 LAP, *p. t.* leapt, GG. 614.  
 LAPPE, lappet, or hem, GK. 936.  
 LAPPEZ, *pr. t.* embraces, GK. 973. LAPPED, LAPPIT, *p. t.* and *p. p.* wrapped, folded, 217, 575. GG. 991.  
 LAPPEZ, *pl.* flaps? GK. 1350.  
 LARGE, extent, GG. 241; bodily stature, J. 350.  
 LARGES, LARGESSE, liberality, GK. 2381; cry of the minstrels at feasts, c. 478.  
 LARGESSE, largeness, GK. 1627.  
 LASSEN, to lessen, GK. 1800.  
 LATHE, *n.* injury, harm, GK. 2507.  
 LATHE, *adj.* hateful, AA. xxxiv. 3.  
 LATHED, *p. t.* (?) GK. 2403. Perhaps a form of *Lazed*, laughed.  
 LAUGHT, see LAGHT.  
 LAUNDE, clear level space in a wood, plain, lawn, GK. 765, 2146, 2154, 2174, 2333.  
 LAUSEN, to loose, GK. 1784. LAWSEZ, *pr. t.* 2376.  
 LAUTE, LAWTE, faith, loyalty, GG. 394, 1107, 1308. See LEWTE.  
 LAWE, mount, hill, GK. 765, 2171, 2175. AA. iii. 5, MS. D. vii. 5. See LOUGHE.  
 LAWE, manner, GK. 790.  
 LAWE, *adj.* low, AA. iii. 6. MS. D. here reads *loze*, which is misprinted *lore* by Pinkerton, and explained by Jamieson, *solitary*, q. *for-lore*!!  
 LAWIT, *p. p.* unlearned, lay, GG. 1080. See LEWD.  
 †LAWTINGE, laughing? TG. 56.  
 LA3ANDE, laughing, GK. 988, 1068, 1212.  
 LA3E, to laugh, GK. 472. LA3ES, LA3EZ, *pr. t.* 316, 1479. LA3E, LA3EN, *pr. t. pl.* 464, 2514. LA3ED, *p. t.* 69, 909, 1079.  
 LA3T, see LAGHT.  
 LA3TER, laughter, GK. 1217.  
 LA3YNG, laughing, GK. 1954.  
 LE, LEE, land, plain, GK. 849, 1893. GG. 312, 341. TG. 47.  
 †LEANE for LAYNE, to conceal, c. 199.  
 LEASING, LESING, LESSYNGE, falsehood, GG. 338. GC. 442. C. 201.  
 LECHIS, physicians, GG. 883.  
 LEDANDE, leading, GK. 1894. AA. xxvii. 6.  
 LEDE, LEID, man, person, GK. 98, 540, 1063, 1195, 2095. AA. vii. 5, MS. D. xxxiv. 4, xlv. 7. GG. 70, 157, 262; people, folk, GK. 258; land, country, territory, 833, 1113. GG. 172, 186, 653. GC. 9; speech, language, AA. vii. 5. LEDEZ, LEDIS, *pl.* men, GK. 38, 126, 679, 1231. GG. 277, 369. See LEUDE.  
 LEELE, LELE, faithful, loyal, GK. 1516. GG. 71. GR.K. 361, 490. See LEL.  
 LEERE, LEIR, to learn, GG. 364, 653. J. 418.  
 LEIR, *pr. t.* teach, GG. 832.  
 LEF, dear, agreeable, GK. 909, 1111, 1924. See LEUE.  
 LEGGE, liege, GK. 346.  
 LEGIANCE, allegiance, GG. 263, 442.

- LEID, to rule, govern, *gg.* 48.  
 LEIF, to believe, give credence, *gg.* 1107, 1305. LEIF, *imp.* 71. See LEUE.  
 LEIF, *pr. t.* live, *gg.* 1189. See LEUE.  
 LEIME, gleam, light, *gg.* 1254.  
 LEKAME, body, *gg.* 1043. See LIKAME.  
 LEKE, *p. t.* fastened, encircled, *gk.* 1830. Su G. *lycka*.  
 LEL, LELL, loyal, faithful, *gk.* 35, 1513. *gg.* 1308. See LEELE.  
 LELELY, LELLY, loyally, faithfully, *gk.* 449, 1863, 2124. *gg.* 1031, 1183.  
 LEMAND, LEMANDE, gleaming, shining, *gk.* 485, 1119.  
 LEMANE, LEMMAN, LEMMANE, mistress, *gk.* 1781. *aa.* xlii. 3, xlviii. 8.  
 LEME, to shine, gleam, *gc.* 424. LEMED, LEMYT, *p. t.* *gk.* 591, 1137, 2010. *gg.* 615.  
 LENDE, LEYND, to dwell, tarry, continue, *gk.* 1100. *gg.* 152. LENDE, *pr. t.* *gk.* 1499. LENDE, *imp.* *aa.* xxxii. 11. LENT, *p. t.* and *p. p.* sate, was stationed, *gk.* 1002; occupied, 1319; dwelt, remained, 2440. *gg.* 70.  
 LENE, to grant, *aa.* xviii. 7, MS. D.  
 LENG, LENGE, to dwell, tarry, remain, *gk.* 411, 254, 1068. *aa.* xvii. 6, xxxii. 11, MS. D. liii. 7. LENGES, LENGEZ, *pr. t.* *gk.* 536, 693. LENGED, *p. t.* 1194, 1299, 1683.  
 LENTOUN, Lent, *gk.* 502.  
 LEPPIS, *pr. t. pl.* leap, *aa.* li. 3.  
 LERD, *p. p.* learned, the clergy, *gg.* 1080.  
 LERE, countenance, *gk.* 318, 418. *gg.* 1253. See LYRE.  
 LERE, to teach? *gk.* 1109. See LEERE.  
 LESE, falsehood, *gc.* 7, 265.  
 LESE, to lose, *gk.* 2142. *aa.* xxii. 12, xxxiv. 3, MS. D.  
 LESTAND, lasting, *gg.* 1227.  
 LET, LETT, LETTE, hindrance, *gk.* 2142. *aa.* iii. 10. *gc.* 597, 615; delay, *gg.* 755.  
 LET, LETTE, *p. t.* caused, *gk.* 1084; feigned, acted, 1201, 2257. LET NOT, was not able, 1733.  
 LETE, to look, *gk.* 1206.  
 LETHE, to depress, moderate, *gk.* 2438.  
 LETHER, skin, *gk.* 1360.  
 LETTE, to stop, tarry, *gk.* 2303. LETTEZ BE, *imp.* leave off, 1840. LETTED, *p. t.* hindered, 1672.  
 LETTYNGE, hindrance, *aa.* li. 10.  
 LETTRURE, science, *gk.* 1513.  
 LEUDE, LUDE, man, knight, *gk.* 133, 232, 449, 675, 851, 908; territory, land, 1124. LEUDES, *gen. c.* man's, 2499. LEUDEZ, *pl.* men, 849, 1023, 1413. See LEDE.  
 LEUDLEZ, companionless, *gk.* 693.  
 LEUGH, *p. t.* laughed, *gg.* 1065.  
 LEUAND, LEUEANDE, living; *aa.* xxxiv. 4. *gg.* 70, 430. Used substantively, *gg.* 954.  
 LEUE, *pr. t.* live, *gk.* 1035. See LEIF.  
 LEUE, to believe, *gk.* 2421. LEUE, *pr. t.* 1784, 2128. See LEIF.  
 LEUE, dear, beloved, *gk.* 1133, 2054. *aa.* xlix., MS. D. See LEF.  
 LEUED, LEUIT, *p. p.* left, *aa.* xxii. 2, MS. D. xxii. 6. *gg.* 661.  
 LEUER, rather, liefer, *gk.* 1251. *tg.* 95; dearer, *gk.* 1782. LEUEST, dearest, most precious, *gk.* 49, 1802.  
 LEVIN, scorn, *gg.* 1043.  
 LEWD, LEWED, *p. p.* ignorant, unlearned, *gk.* 1528. *tg.* 30.  
 LEWTE, loyalty, faith, *gk.* 2366, 2381. See LAUTE.  
 LE3, *p. t.* lay, *gk.* 2006.  
 LETTEN, *p. t.* took, *gk.* 1410. See LAGHT.  
 LYAND, lying, *c.* 229, 255.  
 LICHTIT, *p. t.* alighted, *gg.* 677. See LIGHTE.  
 LYERE, LYRE, complexion, countenance, *gk.* 943, 2228. *gg.* 614, 1003, 1145. *aa.* xiii. 6; skin, flesh, *gk.* 2050. In *aa.* xiii. 6, MS. D. reads *lere*, which Pinkerton misprints *lever*, and the word, thus disguised, is duly introduced into Jamieson's Dictionary.  
 LIFLÖD, livelihood, *gk.* 133.  
 LYFTE, sky, heaven, *gk.* 1256.  
 LYGEZ, *pr. t.* lies, *gk.* 1179.  
 LIGHTE, LYGHTE, LY3T, to descend, alight, *gk.* 1175, 1373, 2220. *aa.* xvii. 6. xxi. 8.

- LJ3TEZ, LY3TEZ, *pr. t.* GK. 1906, 2176.  
 LYGHTE, *imp.* AA. xxxii. 11. LIGHT,  
 LIGHTE, LIGHTIT, LYGHTE, LY3T, *p. t.*  
 GK. 822. AA. iii. 6, vi. 12, xlv. 7. GG. 623,  
 755. TG. 78, 288. LIGHTIT, LJ3T, LYGHTE,  
 LY3T, *p. p.* GK. 1924. AA. vi. 5, MS. D.  
 xiii. 8. GG. 130.  
 †LIGHTH, member, limb, GR. K. 57. See  
 LYTHE.  
 LIKAME, body, GG. 294.  
 LIKAND, agreeable, pleasant, GG. 241, 258,  
 573.  
 LYKE, body, personal stature? GG. 858.  
 LIKING, joy, pleasure, GG. 267, 1065.  
 LYKKER-WYS, delightful, delicious, GK. 968.  
 LYMP, to happen, befall, GK. 1109. LYMPED,  
 LYMPEDDE, *p. t.* 907. AA. xlviii. 4.  
 LYND, LYNDE, wood, tree, lime-tree, GK.  
 526, 2176. GG. 289. GC. 114. J. 406.  
 LYNDE-WODES, *pl.* GK. 1178.  
 LYNDES, loins, GK. 139.  
 LYNE, linen; whence for female apparel in  
 general, GK. 1814.  
 LING, LYNG, line, file, GG. 766, 858, 1261.  
 LIPPIN, to have confidence, GG. 832.  
 LIS, to assuage, GG. 173.  
 LIST, pleasure? GK. 1719.  
 LYST, *pr. t.* pleases, GK. 2133. LYST, *p. t.*  
 desired, willed, 941, 1784, 2049.  
 LYSTENNYTH, *imp.* listen ye, GC. 1.  
 LISTES, lists inclosed for combat, AA. xxxviii. 9.  
 LYSTILY, LYSTILY, promptly? GK. 1190,  
 1334.  
 LYT, LYTE, little, GK. 701, 1776. GG. 901;  
 short while? GK. 2303.  
 LYTH, LYTHEN, to listen, GK. 1719. GG.  
 875. LYTHIS, *imp.* listen ye, 1163.  
 LYTHE, member, limb, GC. 190.  
 LYTHER, territories, AA. liii. 2.  
 †LITYS, *pl.* delights, AA. xvii. 5.  
 LYUERAY, bounty, allowance, T. 117, 476.  
 LY3E, to lie, recline, GK. 1096, 1994.  
 LY3T, lightly, GK. 87.  
 LY3TH, light, not heavy, GK. 608.  
 LY3TLY, easily, GK. 1299.  
 LODE, guidance, GK. 969; behaviour? 1284.  
 †LODLY, for LOUDLY? GK. 1634.  
 LODLY, LODLYE, uncourteously, GK. 1772;  
 loathly, c. 182. AKC. 119, 158.  
 LOFDEN, *p. t.* loved, GK. 21.  
 LOFIT, *p. t.* praised, GG. 1145.  
 LOFT, LOFTE, chamber, GK. 1096, 1676.  
 LOIS, fame, GG. 1078. See LOS.  
 LOISSIT, *p. t.* lost, GG. 677, 755, 874; *p. p.*  
 destroyed, 277.  
 LOKE, *subj.* guard, GC. 214.  
 LOKEN, *p. p.* secured, inclosed, fastened, GK.  
 35, 765, 2487.  
 LOME, tool, axe, GK. 2309.  
 LONCHED, perhaps weshould read LOUCHED,  
 bending down? AA. xiii. 6, MS. D.  
 LONGEZ, *pr. t.* belongs, GK. 2381. LONGED,  
*p. t.* belonged, appertained, 1524, 2515.  
 J. 9.  
 LONGYNGE, regret, trouble, GK. 540.  
 LOPEN, *p. t.* and *p. p.* leapt, GK. 1413. AA.  
 li. 3, MS. D.  
 LORE, learning, skill, GK. 665.  
 LOREERE, LORREERE, laurel-tree, AA. iii. 6,  
 vi. 5.  
 LORNE, *p. p.* lost, AA. xxxvii. 2.  
 †LORRE for LORREERE, laurel-tree, AA. iii. 6,  
 MS. D. Pinkerton misprints it *lone*, and  
 Jamieson, as usual, places the word, thus  
 misrepresented, in his Dictionary, with an  
 Icelandic derivation!  
 LORTSCHYF, lordship, GK. 849.  
 LOS, LOSE, renown, fame, GK. 258, 1528.  
 AA. xxxvi. 7.  
 †LOSSE, to lose, AA. xxxiv. 3, MS. D. See  
 LESE.  
 LOTE, mirth? jest? GK. 119, 1623, 1917.  
 LOTEZ, *pl.* 988, 1086, 1116, 1399, 1954. It  
 is connected with the Fr. *losterie*, badinage.  
 LOTE, (?) GK. 2211.  
 LOTE, features, aspect, gesture, GK. 639.  
 AA. xxvii. 6, MS. D. See also MS. Cott.  
 Nero A. x. f. 42.  
 LOTHE, loath, unwilling, GK. 127, 1578.  
 LOUFESOM, lovely, GC. 450. See LUFsome.  
 LOUGHE, hill, AA. vii. 5. See LAWE.  
 LOUKES, LOWKEZ, *pr. t.* locks, GK. 628,

2007. LOUKED, *p. t.* was fastened, looped, 217.
- LOUPE, loop-hole in a castle, GK. 792.
- LOUT, blow, TG. 142.
- LOUT, LOUTE, LOWTE, to bow down, obey, bend to, GK. 248. AA. xiv. 7. GG. 991, 1276. GR.K. 465. TG. 314. LOUTES, LOUTEZ, *pr. t.* descends, GK. 833, 933; stoops, bends, 1306, 1504. LOUTIT, *p. t.* bent, GG. 1021.
- †LOUUE, for LOUIE? *pr. t.* praise, GK. 1251.
- LOUELYCH, *adv.* lovingly, GK. 1410. See LUFly.
- LOUELOKER, lovelier, GK. 973. LOUELOK-KEST, loveliest, GK. 52.
- LOUY, LOUIES, LOUYES, *pr. t.* love, loves, GK. 1795, 2099, 2468. LOUIED, *p. t.* loved, 87, 702.
- LOUIT, *p. t.* praised, GG. 581, 1028.
- LOWANDE, shining, GK. 236; conspicuous, 679, 868.
- LOWD OR STILL, on all occasions, GR.K. 342; a phrase of constant occurrence in the romance writers.
- LOWE, flame, AA. vii. 5.
- LOWE, (?) GK. 1399.
- LOWE, LOJE, *p. t.* laughed, GK. 2389. AA. xli. 3.
- †LOWELYURE, lovelier, GC. 369.
- LOJ, LOJE, low, GK. 302, 1040, 1170. AA. xxxvii. 9.
- LOJLY, lowly, humbly, GK. 851, 1960.
- LUDE, see LEUDE.
- LUF, love, pleasure, GK. 1086, 1284, 1524.
- LUF-LAJYNG, amorous play, GK. 1776.
- LUFly, LUFlyCH, *adj.* lovely, fair, comely, agreeable, amiable, GK. 38, 575, 792, 868, 981, 1469, 1480, 1657, 1757. GG. 667, 755. LUFlyis, *pl.* used substantively, *men* or *knights* being understood, 1003.
- LUFly, LUFlyCH, *adv.* courteously, lovingly, becomingly, GK. 254, 595, 1206, 1306, 1583. GG. 991.
- LUFlyLY, courteously, lovingly, GK. 369, 2176, 2514.
- LUFsome, LUFsum, lovely, GK. 1814. AA. xxvii. 6. GG. 241, 746, 1253, 1271.
- LUKES, *imp.* look ye, AA. xxxvi. 7.
- LUR, loss, misfortune, GK. 355, 1284, 1682.
- LUSCHIT, *p. t.* encountered violently? GG. 1003. Omitted by Pinkerton and Jamieson.
- LUST, gluttony, GG. 82.
- LUSTY, powerful, GG. 172, 258.
- LUT, LUTTE, *p. t.* stooped, bowed down, GK. 418, 2236, 2255. See LOUT.

## M.

- MACH, to encounter, meet in combat, GK. 282. GG. 753. MACHED, MACHIT, *p. p.* matched in fight, arranged, AA. xxxiv. 8, xli. 11. GG. 1159.
- †MACE, *pr. t.* makes, GK. 1885. See MAISE.
- MADDE, *subj.* should rage with love, GK. 2414.
- MA FAY! ma foi! GK. 1495.
- MAGRY, MAGREYS, in spite of opposition, GG. 771. GC. 164. See MAWGREF.
- MAY, MAYE, maiden, GK. 1795. GG. 97. GC. 71, 491.
- MAYLE, MAILYE, coat of mail, AA. xlviii. 6. GG. 965. MAILES, MAILYEIS, MAYLES, *pl.* coats of mail, rings of mail, AA. xxx. 5, xxxix. 11, xl. 10, xlvii. 6. GG. 851, 1013.
- MAILL, company, GG. 215. See MELLE.
- MAYN, great, powerful, strong, GK. 94, 187, 336, 497.
- MAYN, MAYNE, strength, AA. xxxviii. 10. J. 49.
- MAYNE, moan, sorrow, GG. 796.
- MAYNTEMES, *pr. t.* maintains, GK. 2053.
- MAISE, MAS, MASE, *pr. t.* makes, GK. 106. AA. xxi. 12. GG. 796.
- MAISTRI, MASTERY, strife, conflict, GG. 96. TG. 65.
- MAKAND, making, GG. 216.
- MAKE for MAKED, *p. t.* made, GC. 518.
- MAKELES, MAKLES, matchless, AA. xxvii. 10, MS. D. xlviii. 10, l. 6.
- MALES, MALEZ, bags, trunks, GK. 1129, 1809.

- MALT, *p. t.* dissolved, GK. 2080.
- MANHEDE, manhood, doughty deeds, GG. 69.
- MANKIT, *p. t.* maimed, impaired, GG. 1013.
- MANREDENE, MANRENT, homage, AA. l. 5. GG. 1218.
- MANSED, *p. t.* menaced, GK. 2345.
- MARRE, to destroy, GK. 2262. MARRIT, *p. p.* GG. 96, 720, 965.
- MARREDE, *p. t.* moaned? AA. ix. 6.
- MASERE, maple, GC. 434.
- MAT, MATE, *p. p.* discouraged, wearied, GK. 336, 1568.
- MATENS, MATYNEZ, MATYNNES, morning prayers, GK. 756, 2188. AA. xvi. 3, xviii. 8.
- MAW-GREF, in spite of, GK. 1565. See MAGRY.
- MAȝTYLY, mightily, forcibly, GK. 2262, 2290.
- ME, used absolutely, as the Fr. *on*, GK. 1214. Often, as an expletive, 1905, 1932, 2014, 2144.
- MEBLE, goods, AA. xvi. 4. See MOBIL.
- MEDILERTHE, MEDLERT, the earth, AA. l. 6. See MIDDLEARTH.
- MEEN, to make mention of, remember, AA. vi. 9. MENE, *pr. t.* vi. 8. See MENE, MIN, MYNNE.
- MEKIL, MEKLE, much, great, AA. xliii. 6. GG. 303, 796.
- MEL, MELE, MELLE, to speak, talk, GK. 2295, 2503. GG. 299. MELL, MELEZ, MELIS, *pr. t.* GK. 543, 974, 2336. AA. xxvi. 8. GG. 395. GK. 37. MEL, *imp.* GG. 354. MELED, *p. t.* GK. 447, 1280, 2373.
- MELE, MELL, to join in battle, fight, GG. 69, 543. MELLIT, *p. t.* 572, 1012, 1119.
- MELLE, MELLE, MELLY, conflict, battle, GK. 342, 644, 1451. GG. 696, 851, 1148.
- MELLE, company, IN MELLE, together, AA. xxv. 8.
- MEMERED, *p. t.* murmured, AA. ix. 9. The word is still preserved in the North. See Brockett, v. *Mammer*. Jamieson explains it, erroneously, *to recollect oneself*.
- MENE, to signify, GK. 232; devise, 985; make attempt on, 1157; commemorate? AA. xviii. 8, 9; intend, GG. 96. MENE, *imp.* commemorate? AA. xxv. 8. In the third and fifth of these instances, MS. D. reads *Mynge*, *Mende*, and *Menge*. See MEEN, MIN, MYNNE.
- † MENEWITH, (?) AA. xxvii. 3, MS. D. Pinkerton and Jamieson neglect the contraction, and print *mewith*, which the latter interprets, *moveth, changeth*!
- MENGE, MYNGE, AA. xviii. 8, MS. D. xxv. 8, MS. D. Jamieson explains it, *to soothe*; but from xviii. 9, it would seem to be only another form of MEND, or MENE, to remember.
- MENGED, *p. p.* mixed, GK. 1720.
- MENSK, MENSKE, honor, worship, GK. 834, 914, 2052. AA. xviii. 9. MENSKE, *pl.* GK. 2410.
- MENSK, *adj.* worshipful (used ironically), GK. 964.
- MENSK, to honor, treat with respect, GK. 446. MENSKE, MENSKIT, *p. p.* honorably decked, GK. 153; honored, GG. 215.
- MENSKFUL, honorable, GK. 555, 1268, 1809; goodly, noble, GG. 408, 481.
- MENSKLY, honorably, GK. 1312, 1983.
- MENY, MEYNY, retinue, household, company, GK. 101, 1372, 1625, 1729, 2468.
- MENYNG, knowledge, remembrance, GK. 924; commemoration? AA. xix. 2, lv. 4, 6. See MYNNYNGE.
- MER, to be in confusion, GG. 1013. Used also in *Wallace*.
- MERE, *adj.* simple, pure, good, GK. 153, 878, 924, 1495.
- MERE, *n.* appointed place of meeting, GK. 1061. Perhaps we should read MERK, q. v.
- MERELY, an instrument of music, GC. 599.
- MERK, appointed term or place, GK. 1073. GK. 1237.
- MERKE, dark, used substantively for night, TG. 69.
- MERKIT, *p. t.* rode, GG. 176.
- MES, mess, meal, GK. 999.
- MESoure, moderation, GG. 355.
- MESSE-QUYLE, the time of celebrating mass, GK. 1097.
- METELY, measurely, fitly, GK. 1004, 1414.



- METHLES, uncourteous, GK. 2106.  
 MEUED, *p. t.* moved, GK. 90.  
 MEJEL-MAS, Michaelmas, GK. 532.  
 MIDDLEARTH, MYDDELERDE, the earth, GK. 2100. TG. 40. See MEDILERTHE.  
 MYGHTYIS, *pl.* used substantively, *men* being understood, GG. 1012.  
 MIN, MYN, to mention or remember, c. 140, 162. See MENE, MYNNE.  
 MYN, MYNNE, less, GK. 1881. GG. 1159.  
 MYNGE, see MENGE.  
 MYNGED, *p. t.* assembled? GK. 1422.  
 MYNNE, to think, remember, devise, GK. 141, 1800, 1992. MYNEZ, MYNNE, *pr. t.* 995, 1681, 1769. MYNNED, *p. t.* 982. See MENE, MIN.  
 MYNNYNG, commemoration! AA. xix. 2, MS. D. See MENYNG.  
 MYNT, aim, blow, GK. 3345. MYNTES, *pl.* 2352.  
 MYNT, *p. t.* attempted? GG. 771.  
 MYNTEST, MYNTEZ, *pr. t.* didst aim or strike, aims, strikes, GK. 2274, 2290.  
 MYRKE, obscure, AA. vi. 11.  
 MYS, MYSSSE, fault, offence, AA. xv. 11, xvi. 3. GG. 97, 291. J. 196. MYSSSES, *pl.* GK. 2391.  
 MYS-BODEN, *p. p.* offered wrong, GK. 2339.  
 MISY, quagmire, GK. 749. Still used in the North.  
 MYSTER, necessity, AA. xviii. 9.  
 MYST-HAKEL, cloak of mist, GK. 2081.  
 MYTE, smallest piece of money, GG. 1069.  
 MYTH, to shew, GG. 871.  
 MYJTEZ, *pl.* might, power, GK. 282.  
 MO, more, GK. 23, 730, 770. AA. xxv. 2.  
 MOBIL, property, goods, GG. 807. MOBYLLES, *pl.* AA. xvi. 4. See MEBLE.  
 MOCHE, great, GC. 253. See MUCH.  
 MODE, mind, GK. 1475.  
 MOYSE, *imp.* muse, reflect, AA. xiii. 11.  
 MOYSSSED, *p. t.* looked fixedly, as out of the senses, ix. 6.  
 MOLAYNES, (?) GK. 169.  
 MOLATT, mullet in heraldry, c. 57.  
 MOLD, MOLDE, MOULD, earth, ground, GK. 137, 914, 964. AA. xvi. 4. GG. 350. GR. K. 283. c. 435. AKC. 10.  
 MOLDE, form? GC. 570.  
 MON, used as the Germ. *man*, and Fr. *on*, for one, a person, GK. 1209, 1484.  
 MON, must, GK. 1811.  
 MONE, complaint, GC. 123.  
 MONTURE, MOUNTURE, saddle-horse, GK. 1691. AA. xliii. 9.  
 MORE, greater, bigger, GK. 649, 2100.  
 MOROUN, MORROWNE, morrow, GK. 1208. GC. 496.  
 MOT, MOTE, may, GK. 342, 387, 2053. GC. 153, 205. TG. 171. c. 113; must, GK. 1965, 2510. AA. xxv. 3, MS. D.; might, AA. vi. 9.  
 MOTE, assemblage, meeting, GK. 635, 910.  
 MOTE, castle? GK. 764, 2052.  
 MOTE, atom, GK. 2009.  
 MOTE, MOTEZ, *pl.* notes or measures of a bugle, GK. 1141, 1364.  
 MOWE, may, GK. 1397.  
 MOJȚ, MOJȚEN, might, GK. 84, 1871, 1953.  
 MOJȚH, mouth, GC. 253.  
 MUCH, great, loud, GK. 182, 2336.  
 MUCH-QUAT, many matters, GK. 1280.  
 MUCKEL, stature, size, GK. 142.  
 MUGED, *p. t.* stirred, hovered, GK. 2080.  
 MULNE, mill, GK. 2203.  
 MUNT, blow, GK. 2350. See MYNT.  
 MUNT, *p. t.* feigned, GK. 2262.  
 MURYLY, merrily, in joke, GK. 2336, 2345.  
 MURNAND, mourning, GG. 1128.  
 MUSED, *p. t.* (?) GK. 2424.  
 MUTE, pack of hounds, GK. 1451, 1720; meeting, 1915.  
 MUTHE, mouth, GK. 447, 1428.  
 MUUAND, moving, GG. 1166.  
 MWE, to move, GK. 1565.

N.

NA, than, GG. 1228.  
 NADE, had not, GK. 724, 763.  
 NAF, have not, GK. 1066.

- NAY, *p. t.* denied, refused, GK. 1836.  
 NAYLET, *p. p.* nailed, GK. 599.  
 NAYTED, *p. p.* (?) GK. 65.  
 NAKERYs, NAKRYN, *pl.* drums, GK. 118, 1016. See Tyrwhitt's note on Chaucer, l. 2513.  
 NAR, are not, GK. 2092.  
 NAUNT, *thy naunt*, thine aunt, GK. 2467. See Glossary to *William and the Werwolf*, under letter N.  
 NAUTHER, NAWTHER, neither, GK. 203, 430, 1095.  
 NAXTY, filthy, AA. xv. 3, MS. D.  
 NAȝT, night, GK. 1407.  
 NEDE, NEDES, NEDEZ, necessarily, of necessity, GK. 1287, 1771, 1965, 2510.  
 NEDFULLE, in necessity, AA. xv. 3.  
 NEGh, NEGHE, to approach, GK. 1054; to touch, 1836. See NEȝE.  
 NEKED, little or nothing, GK. 1062, 1805.  
 NEME, *pr. t.* take, GK. 1347. NEMMYT, *p. p.* taken, selected, GG. 664. See NYME.  
 NERRE, nearer, GK. 237, 556, 1306.  
 NEUEN, NEUIN, to name, GK. 58. GG. 506, 664, 823, 1039. NEUENES, *pr. t.* GK. 10.  
 NEUENED, *p. t.* and *p. p.* 65, 541.  
 NEWIT, *p. p.* renovated, GG. 1071.  
 NEWTHIR, neither, GG. 1120.  
 NEȝ, NEȝE, NIEȝ, nigh, GK. 929, 1771, 1922.  
 NEȝE, to approach, GK. 1575. NEȝES, *pr. t.* 1998. NEȝED, *p. t.* GK. 132, 697, 929.  
 †NYCHT, to approach, GG. 240.  
 NYE, NYȝE, difficulty, trouble, harm, GK. 58, 2002, 2141. The same word is twice used in the plural, MS. Cott. Nero A. x. ff. 81, 84.  
 NYE, to harm, assault, GK. 1575.  
 NIF, unless, GK. 1769.  
 NIGROMANCE, necromancy, c. 405.  
 NIKKED NAYE, GK. 2471. NYKKED WITH NAY, 706. NICKED WITH NAY, GR.K. 501. NYKIS WITH NAY, GG. 115, 332.  
 A phrase expressive of denial, common to alliterative poems. See Gloss. to *William and the Werwolf*, and the *Towneley Mysteries*, for many examples.  
 NYME, to take, GK. 993, 2141.  
 NIRT, *n.* cut, hurt, GK. 2498.  
 NYS, nice, strange, GK. 323.  
 NYSEN, *pr. t.* (?) GK. 1266.  
 NYTE, to deny, GG. 899.  
 NOBELAY, NOBILLAY, nobleness, GK. 91. GG. 899, 1071.  
 NO BOT, except, GK. 2182.  
 †NOGHE, nigh, GK. 697.  
 NOKE, nook, corner, GK. 660.  
 NOLDE, would not, GK. 1054, 1825.  
 NOME, *n.* name, GK. 10, 408, 937.  
 NOME, *p. t.* took, GK. 809, 1407. NOMEN, *p. p.* taken, 91. See NYME.  
 NONEZ, NONS, nonce, GK. 844. The derivations of this phrase suggested by Junius, Tyrwhitt, Thomson, Jamieson, and myself (Gloss. *Will. and Werw.*) are certainly erroneous, and I have now not the least doubt that the original form was the Saxon *for than anes*; a conclusion I had formed previous to my noticing the same opinion in a note of Price upon Warton, vol. ii. p. 496.  
 NORNE, NURNE, to proffer? GK. 1661, 1669, 1823. NORNE, *pr. t.* allege? 2443.  
 NURNED, *p. t.* proffered? 1771. The use of this verb seems to be almost peculiar to the author of the poems in MS. Nero A. x. In another passage, I find it thus :  
 An other nayed also, & nurned this cause,  
 "I haf ȝerned & ȝat ȝokkeȝ of oxen,  
 & for my hyȝes hem boȝt, to bowe haf I mester;  
 To se hem pulle in the plow aproche me by-  
 houȝeȝ."—f. 57<sup>b</sup>.  
 NOTE, occasion, business, use, GK. 358, 599. AA. xxix. 11. GG. 410, 550, 1116. NOTIS, *pl.* 501, 506.  
 NOTE, throat-knot? (Fr. *nœud*) GK. 420.  
 NOTE, voice? GG. 823.  
 NOTE, to view? GG. 240.  
 NOTE, noted? GK. 2092.  
 NOUMBLES, parts of the inwards of the deer, GK. 1347. See Notes, p. 322; and

- A Jewell for Gentry*, 4to, 1614. sign. f. e.
- NOUMERIT, *p. p.* numbered, gg. 227.
- NOUTHE, NOWTHE, now, GK. 1251, 1934, 2466; not, 1784.
- NOUTHER, neither, GK. 659.
- NOWEL, Noel, Christmas, GK. 65.
- NOY, annoyance, gg. 1044.
- NOY, *imp.* annoy, trouble, gg. 823.
- NOȝT, nought, GK. 680, 694, 961.
- NURNE, NURNED, see NORNE.
- NWE, new, anew, GK. 60, 636, 1668.
- NWEZ, news, tidings, GK. 1407.
- NWȝER, NWEȝER, new-year, GK. 60, 105, 284. NWȝERES, NWEȝEREZ, *gen. c.* 454, 1054, 1669.
- O.
- O, of, GK. 615. O NEWE, anew, GK. 65.
- OBEYAND, obedient, gg. 1217.
- OBEISE, to obey, gg. 1209, 1326.
- OBEISING, obedience, homage, gg. 1322.
- OBLISSING, submission, gg. 272. Perhaps a mistake for the last word.
- OF, from, GK. 183, 519, 1413; off, 773, 1332, 1607. TG. 287.
- OF-KEST, *p. t.* cast off, GK. 1147.
- OF-STRAYE, astray, J. 207. See ON-STRAY.
- OGHE, *p. t.* ought, GK. 1526.
- OLDE, age, GK. 1440.
- ON, one, GK. 30, 206, 864, 952; in, 867, 969.
- ON-BREID, extensive, gg. 23; abroad, around, 952.
- ON-CHASYNG, a-chasing, a-hunting, GK. 1143.
- ON-COOLDE, (?) GK. 2474.
- ON-DREIGH, ON-DREȝT, ON-DRYȝE, ONE-DREGHE, back, at a distance, GK. 1031. AA. xl. 6, xlv. 3. gg. 110.
- ONE, alone, unaccompanied; HYM ONE, alone, GK. 904; BOT OURE ONE, only ourselves, 1230; LET THE GOME ONE, let the man alone, 2118; WE AR OURE ONE, we are by ourselves, 2245. See AL ONE.
- ONE-BAK, aback, AA. xl. 8. See ANE-BAK.
- ONE-HERANDE, in the hearing of, AA. xxxii. 1.
- ONEȝ, once, GK. 1090. See Stevenson's Add. to Boucher, v. *Anes*.
- ON-FERUM, afar, GK. 1575.
- ON FYRST, VPON FYRST, at first, GK. 301, 491, 1477.
- ON-FORTONE, misfortune, gg. 1225.
- ON HEGHTE, ON HEIGHT, ONE HIE, ON HIGHTE, ON HIȝT, ON HYGHE, ON HYGHT, ON HYȝT, VPON HYȝT, in height, GK. 421; on high, aloft, above, 421. AA. xxxv. 6, xli. 3, xlviii. 1, l. 7. c. 470; aloud, AA. xxvii. 8, xxxii. 1, MS. D. xxxii. 10, li. l. j. 269, 414, 416.
- ON-HUNTYNG, a-hunting, GK. 1102.
- ON LENTHE, afar, GK. 232, 1231.
- ON-LIFE, ON-LYUE, VPON LYUE, alive, in life, GK. 385, 1717, 1786. gg. 404.
- ON-LOFT, ON-LOFTE, VPON LOFTE, aloft, above, GK. 788, 2261. gg. 70, 485, 614, 991; aloud, AA. xlviii. 8, MS. D.
- ON-LOGHE, below, down, GK. 1373.
- ON-LOWDE, aloud, AA. xlii. 3.
- ON NYȝTES, at night, in the night, GK. 47, 693.
- ON-SLANTE, aslant, AA. xlviii. 6.
- ON (VP)-SLEPE, asleep, GK. 244.
- ON-STEIR, astir, gg. 830.
- ON-STRAY, ONE-STRAYE, astray, aside, GK. 1716. AA. xl. 4, xli. 12. gg. 19, 916, 992; at intervals, apart, AA. xxxi. 2.
- ONSWARE, to answer, GK. 275. ONSWAREZ, *pr. t.* 386.
- OONLY, alone, AA. viii. 7, MS. D.
- OR, than, GK. 1543.
- OR, ORE, before, gg. 276. gc. 137.
- ORE, mercy, J. 106.
- ORITORE, oratory, GK. 2190.
- O-RYȝT, aright, GK. 40.
- ORPEDLY, boldly, GK. 2232.
- OSTEL, mansion, GK. 253. See HOSTEL.
- OTHER, or, GK. 96, 702, 1246; either, 2216.
- OUCHES, ornaments, J. 327.
- OULK, week, gg. 1343. Used also by Bel-lenden.

OUR, over, GG. 3, 19, 24.  
 OURCUM, to overcome, GG. 348.  
 OURGILT, *p. p.* overgilt, GG. 158.  
 OURTAK, to overtake, GG. 1240.  
 OUTE, throughout, wholly, GK. 1511.  
 OUTRAGE, to fight, J. 441.  
 OUTRAY, OWTTRAYE, to injure, destroy, AA. xxiv. 12. The first form is printed by Pinkerton, Jamieson, and Sibbald, ONTRAY, and on their authority I inadvertently admitted it, but I am now convinced it should be OUTRAY. See Jamieson's Supplement, *in v.*  
 OUTRAGE, surprising, GK. 29.  
 OUERGONE, to conquer, J. 396.  
 OUER-THWERT, across, GK. 1438.  
 OUER-WALT, *p. p.* overcome, GK. 314.  
 OUER-3EDE, *p. t.* passed over, GK. 500.  
 O3T, *n.* ought, GK. 300, 1815.  
 O3T, *adj.* bold, GK. 2215.

## P.

PADE, toad, AA. ix. 10.  
 †PAY, a misprint for GAY, GG. 310, as appears from l. 233. Jamieson however supposes it to mean *region*, from the Fr. *pais*.  
 PAY, PAYE, pleasure, AA. ii. 6, xxxi. 6. GK. 504. TG. 164. AKC. 126.  
 PAYAND, paying, GG. 143.  
 PAYEZ, *pr. t.* pleases, GK. 1379.  
 PAILYEOUN, PAILYEOUNE, pavilion, GG. 312, 880.  
 PAYNE, to be at pains, endeavour, GK. 1042.  
 PAIR, PAYRE, to injure, impair, GK. 1734. GG. 1093. PAIR, *pr. t.* fail, 1085. PAYRED, *p. t.* failed, GK. 650, 1456.  
 PAISAND, heavy, GG. 463.  
 PAYTTRURE, defence for the neck of a horse, GK. 168, 601.  
 PALE, PALL, PALLE, PAULLE, rich or fine cloth, AA. ii. 6, vi. 1, xxviii. 2, xxxiv. 12. GG. 3, 63, 235, 313. GK. 112, 324. TG. 81. C. 206.

PALWERK, fine cloth, AA. ii. 6, MS. D. Jamieson interprets it *spangled work*.  
 PANE, cloth, GK. 154. AA. xxviii. 2. GG. 1127. PANEZ, *pl.* GK. 855.  
 PAPIAYEZ, parrots, GK. 611.  
 PAPURE, paper, GK. 802.  
 PARAGE, lineage, GG. 284.  
 PARAMOUR, *n.* gallant? GG. 654.  
 PARAMOURS, courtship, C. 220.  
 PARAUNTER, peradventure, GK. 2343.  
 PARDYE, by God! verily, J. 489.  
 PARED, *p. p.* cut, GK. 802.  
 PARTENYNG, possessing, consisting of, GG. 1104.  
 PARTYCE, covenant? GG. 1306.  
 PASE, to poise, GG. 463; pass, 708.  
 PASSANDE, passing, GK. 1014.  
 PATROUNES, sovereigns, GK. 6.  
 PAUMEZ, antlers, GK. 1155.  
 PAUNCE, coat of mail, GK. 2017. Jamieson's erroneous interpretation of *covering for the knee* is obvious, *in v. Pans*.  
 PELICOCUS, *pl.* (?) AA. xxxi. 6. Omitted in Jamieson. See Douce's remarks on this word in *Illustr. of Shakspeare*, vol. ii. p. 160.  
 PELLOKIS, bullets, GG. 463.  
 PELOURE, PELURE, PILLOURE, costly fur, GK. 154. AA. ii. 6. GG. 313. PELURES, *pl.* GK. 2029.  
 PENCELLE, banner, AA. xxxi. 2.  
 PENDAUNTES, PENDAUNTEZ, the dropping ornaments of horse-trappings or a girdle, GK. 168, 2038, 2431.  
 PENYES, pence, money, GK. 79.  
 PENTANGEL, PENTAUNGEL, figure of five points, GK. 620, 636, 664. See Notes, p. 318.  
 PENTED, *p. t.* pertained, GK. 204.  
 PERNYNG, picking and dressing, a term applied to birds, GK. 611.  
 PERRE, PERRYE, jewelry, AA. ii. 6, xxix. 5, 9, MS. D.  
 PERTLY, openly, promptly, GK. 544, 1941. GG. 927. GC. 420.  
 PES, peace, GK. 266.

- PESANE, PESAYNE, PYSAN, gorget of mail or plate, attached to the helmet, GK. 204. AA. xlv. 11. GG. 927. So named from *Pisa*, where these gorgets were probably first fabricated. In an inventory, cited by Du Cange, of the year 1316, is, "Item 3 *colorettes Pizaines* de jazeran d'acier."
- PESE, measure, weight, GK. 2364.
- PETER! an oath, used as *Mary!* GK. 813. It was left unexplained in the Glossary to *Will. and the Werwolf*. Other instances of its use may be found in the *Towneley Mysteries*, p. 29. *Rauf Coilhear*, sign. B. ii.; Ritson's *Metr. Rom.* iii. 313, where the editor corrects it, erroneously, *porter*; Romance of *Morte Arthure*, MS. Linc. ff. 81<sup>b</sup>. 83<sup>b</sup>.; and Romance of *Syr Percyvalle*, ib. f. 166<sup>b</sup>.
- PICHED, PYCHED, *p. p.* fastened, GK. 576; situated, 768.
- PICHT, PIGHT, FIGHTE, PİȝT, PYGHT, PYGHTTE, PYȝT, *p. p.* pitched, fixed, GK. 1456, 1734. AA. xxxiv. 13, xxxv. 1, xxxvii. 1. GG. 313. J. 265. GR.K. 28; arrayed, AA. xxviii. 2, MS. D. but the Linc. MS. reads DYGHTE.
- PIKED, PYKED, *p. p.* choice? GK. 769; picked out, burnished, 2017.
- PILLOUR, see PELOURE.
- PINE, PYNE, trouble, grief, pain, torment, GK. 123, 747, 1812, 1985.
- PYNE, to take pains, GK. 1538. PYNED, *p. t.* 1009.
- PYNED, *p. p.* (?), GK. 769. Perhaps a mistake for PYNACLED.
- PYSAN, see PESANE.
- PITH, PYTH, marrow, strength, power, GK. 1456. GG. 783, 927, 1290.
- PITT, *p. p.* put, assigned, TG. 32.
- PLATEZ, *pl.* steel armour for the body, GK. 2017.
- PLEASANCE, pleasure, GK. 1247; (KERCHYF OF) J. 347. See Notes, p. 351.
- PLIGHT, PLYȝT, hostility, danger, GK. 266. GG. 1104, 1305; offence? GK. 2393. PLYTES, *pl.* 733.
- PLONKETE, a white stuff, AA. xxix. 3. See BLUNKET.
- POYNT, condition, GK. 2049.
- POYNTE, to declare, write, GK. 1009.
- POLAYNES, knee-pieces in a suit of armour, GK. 576. See Notes, p. 315.
- POLD, *p. p.* pulled, GC. 180.
- POLEMUS, *pl.* (?) AA. xxxi. 6. Omitted by Pinkerton and Jamieson. Perhaps we should read POLBINUS, *knee-pieces*.
- POLICED, POLYSED, POLYST, *p. p.* polished, GK. 576, 2038; made clean, absolved, 2393.
- POMELL, crest? J. 335.
- POUER, poor, GK. 1538.
- PRAYERE, meadow, GK. 768.
- PRAYSE, to estimate, appraise, GK. 1850.
- PRECE, *pr. t.* proceed, GK. 2097.
- PREKETES, *pl.* wax tapers, AA. xxxv. 9.
- PRESE, throng, battle, GG. 236.
- PRESED, *p. t.* thronged, GK. 830.
- PRESENT, presence, GG. 1287.
- PREST, ready, prompt, AA. lv. 3. GR.K. 246.
- PRESTLY, promptly, GK. 757, 911.
- PREVE, privy, secret, GK. 902.
- PREVE, to prove, GK. 262. PREVED, *p. p.* proved, 79.
- PREWEY, privy, cautious, GC. 181, 451.
- PRIE, to gallop, GK. 2049. PRIKED, *p. t.* rode quickly, GR.K. 246.
- PRYME, six o'clock in the morning, GK. 1675.
- PRIS, PRYS, price, estimation, excellence, GK. 1247, 1277, 1770, 1850, 2364; reward, prize, 1379, 1630. GG. 392.
- PRYS, note of the horn, blown in hunting, after breaking up the game, GK. 1362, 1601.
- PRISE, fine, good, prized, GK. 1945. AA. xxix. 9, MS. D. GG. 236.
- PRISE, to attempt? GG. 116.
- PRISIT, *p. t.* accounted worthy of prize? GG. 721.
- PRYSOUN, prisoner, GK. 1219.
- PROUES, PROVESE, PROWES, valor, courage, GK. 912, 1249. GG. 538, 598, 1290.

PURE, quite, perfect, GK. 808, 1247.

PURED, *p. p.* refined, pure, GK. 633, 912, 1737, 2393.

PURED, PUREDE, *p. p.* furred, GK. 154. AA. xxviii. 2.

## Q.

QUAKAND, quaking, GG. 675.

QUARTE, QUERT, good spirits, joy, AA. XX. 10. GG. 586.

QUAT, what, GK. 233, 460; how, 563, 2201.

QUAT so, whatsoever, GK. 255.

†QUEL, while, GK. 822.

QUELDEPOYNTEs, *pl.* hassocks? GK. 877.

QUELLE, to put an end to, GK. 752; to kill, 1449, 2109. QUELLED, *p. p.* slain, 1324.

QUELLYS, cries, AA. iv. 9.

QUEME, good, GK. 578; pleasant, 2109.

QUEN, QUHEN, when, GK. 20, 130, 497.

QUENTANCE, acquaintance, familiarity, GG. 1120.

QUENTYS, cunning, GG. 1220.

QUENTLY, easily, GG. 1223.

QUERE, where, GK. 1058. QUERE so, wheresoever, 1227, 1490. QUER-FORE, wherefore, 1294.

QUERRE, quarry, Fr. *curée*; a term of hunting, GK. 1324. To make the quarry, is to break up the deer, and feed the hounds on the skin.

QUERT, see QUARTE.

QUEST, united cry of the hounds, GK. 1150, 1421. QUESTES, *pl.* AA. iv. 9, MS. D.

QUESTEDE, *p. t.* hunted in full cry, AA. iv. 9.

QUETHE, cry, clamor, GK. 1150.

QUETHEN, whence, GK. 461.

QUETHER, whether, GK. 1109.

QUETTYNG, whetting, GK. 2220.

QUHA, who, GK. 69. QUHASA, whoso, 771.

QUHARE, where, GG. 107.

QUHEIL, wheel, GG. 1225.

QUHELMYS, *pr. t.* rolls, GG. 1225.

QUHY, QUY, why, GK. 623. GG. 96.

QUHIL, QUHILL, QUILE, QUYL, QUYLE, while, GK. 30, 257, 722, 1035. GG. 186; until, GK. 536. GG. 85, 272, 586; sometimes, 1730. QUYLE FORTH, during some, 1072.

QUHILK, QUILK, which, GG. 132, 607, 1165.

QUHILUM, whilom, GG. 546.

QUYK, alive, GK. 2109.

QUYSEWES, cuisses, armour for the thighs, GK. 578.

QUIT, QUITE, QUYT, QUYTE, white, GK. 799, 885, 1205, 2364.

QUYTE, to requite, repay, GK. 2244, 2324. AA. xlv. 2. GG. 1101. J. 363. QUYT, *p. p.* requited, GG. 203, 586.

QUO, who, GK. 231. QUO so, whoso, 209, 306.

QUOD, QUODE, *p. t.* quoth, GK. 256, 309, 343. AA. viii. 9, lii. 1. J. 212.

QUOYNANCE, acquaintance, familiarity, GK. 975.

QWESCHYNS, cushions, AA. xxxv. 2.

## R.

RABEL, rabble, pack, GK. 1899.

RACE, RASE, swift course, pace, GK. 1420. AA. ix. 8. GG. 1213. See RES.

RACE, blow? GK. 2076.

RACH, hound, GK. 1903. RACH, RACHES, RACHEZ, RACHCHES, RACHCHEZ, RACHIS, *pl.* 1164, 1362, 1420, 1426, 1907. AA. v. 6. GG. 1344. See *The Maister of the Game*, f. 71, MS. Cott. Vesp. B. xii.

RAD, RADE, afraid, GK. 251. AA. ix. 8, 9.

RAD, RADD, ready, quick, GK. 862. AA. xxiii. 8, MS. D. c. 326.

RADLY, promptly, readily, GK. 367, 1164, 1343, 1744.

RAGIT, *p. p.* torn? GG. 854.

RAYE, track? AA. v. 6.

RAIK, to go, proceed, GG. 371, 1070.

RAYKES, *pr. t.* goes, rides, AA. xxvii. 7, MS. D. RAYKEZ, *imp.* proceed, GK. 1076.

RAIKIT, RAYKED, RAYKEDE, *p. t.* went,

- moved, ran, GK. 1727, 1735. AA. ix. 8. GG. 72, 613, 1130.  
 RAYLED, *p. t.* spread, GK. 952; bordered, 163, 603, 745. AA. ii. 4.  
 RAYSOUN, reason, argument, GK. 227.  
 RAITH, RAITHLY, quickly, promptly, GG. 128, 371, 910, 986, 1129, 1252. See RAITH.  
 RAK, vapor, fog, GK. 1695.  
 RAK, encounter, GG. 918.  
 RAKE, course, road, GK. 2144, 2160.  
 RAMAND, roaring, GG. 1129.  
 RAMY, to roar, growl, GK. 238. RAMYT, *p. t.* roared, shouted, GG. 693, 966. See ROME.  
 RANDONE, swift course, J. 254.  
 RANDONIT, *p. p.* flowed with a swift course, GG. 248.  
 RANK, strong, GG. 691. See RONK.  
 RAPELY, quickly, GK. 2219.  
 RAPES, *p. t.* moves quickly, runs, GK. 1309, 1903.  
 RARIS, roarings, GG. 85.  
 RASCH, encounter, shock, GG. 914.  
 RASEZ, *pr. t.* rushes, GK. 1461.  
 RASIT, *p. p.* abashed, GG. 396.  
 RASSE, raised mound, eminence, GK. 1570.  
 So also in another poem in the same MS., the author says of the Ark,  
 Hit saȝtled on a softe day, synkande to ground;   
 On a rasse of a rok hit reste at the laste.  
 Nero A. x. f. 63.  
 The word is not in Jamieson; but is preserved in Cumberland. See Brockett, v. *Raise*.  
 RASSIT, *p. t.* razed, destroyed, GG. 986.  
 RATH, RATHE, quickly, soon, AA. li. 4. GG. 1314. See RAITH.  
 RATHE, savage, hasty? AA. xxxiv. 9.  
 RATHELED, *p. p.* fixed, rooted, GK. 2294.  
 RAUDE, a path? GK. 1710.  
 RAUGHT, *p. t.* reached, gave, GK. 458, 630. c. 237, 323; *p. p.* given, c. 330.  
 RAVINE, beasts of chace, prey, GK. 416.  
 RAW, row, GG. 396. RAWEZ, *pl.* GK. 513.  
 RAWTHE, terrible, jarring, GK. 2204.  
 RAȝTEZ, *pr. t.* gavest, GK. 2351. RAȝT, *p. t.* rushed, 432; reached, gave, 1817, 1874, 2297. See RAUGHT.  
 REBANES, ribbons, AA. ii. 3.  
 †REBE, an error, apparently, for RUBYES, AA. xxxi. 4, MS. D. Pinkerton and Jamieson print it *reve*; and the latter gives us the usual quantum of nonsense on it.  
 REBUTIT, *p. p.* repulsed, GG. 1136.  
 RECH, RECHE, to reach, give, GK. 66, 1804, 2059; attain, 1243. RECHES, RECHEZ, *pr. t.* extends, 183; reachest, givest, 2324.  
 RECHAS, RECHAYSE, the *recheat*, a hunting term, applied to the notes blown on the horn to call the dogs, AA. v. 6, MS. D. v. 10. The term is preserved in Shakspeare. See Nares Gloss. v. *Recheat*.  
 RECHATAND, blowing the recheat, GK. 1911.  
 RECHATED, *p. t.* blew the recheat, GK. 1466; *p. p.* blown on with the recheat, 1446.  
 RECHLES, careless, GK. 40.  
 RECOMFORTHED, *p. t.* encouraged, AA. iv. 4.  
 RECURE, remedy, GG. 1203.  
 REDDOURE, violence, AA. vii. 3.  
 REDE, *n.* counsel, AA. viii. 2. GG. 120. c. 87.  
 REDE, to maintain, GK. 1970; to counsel, 2111. AA. xli. 5, xliii. 4. REDEZ, REDYS, *pr. t.* manageth, GK. 373; tells, AA. ii. 3.  
 REDE, REEDE, REDDEN, *pr. t.* counsel, GK. 363. AA. xxxiv. 9. GG. 323. GK. 133.  
 RED, *subj.* should counsel, GK. 738.  
 REDDE, *p. p.* counselled, said, 443.  
 REDLES, void of counsel, GG. 1130.  
 REDLY, readily, GK. 373. See RADLY.  
 REFOURME, *pr. t.* renew, remake, GK. 378.  
 REFT, *p. t.* snatched, took away, GG. 81.  
 REHETE, to cheer, GK. 1158. REHAYTED, *p. t.* cheered, encouraged, 895, 1422, 1744.  
 REIF, to rob, GK. 1314.  
 REYKYNGE, running, GK. 110.  
 REIME, realm, GK. 1258.  
 REIRDIT, *p. t.* clamored, GG. 914; *p. p.* resounded, 85; reared? 238.

- REKENLY, straightway? promptly? GK. 39, 251, 821.
- REKNAND, riding? GG. 519.
- RELED, *p. t.* swaggered, GK. 229; rolled, spread, 304.
- RELYES, *pr. t.* follow? continue? AA. v. 6.
- REMENE, to remember, GK. 2483.
- REMRORDE, to blame, GK. 2434.
- REMWE, to change, GK. 1475.
- RENAY, *pr. t.* refuse, GK. 1827. RENAYED, *p. t.* refused, 1821.
- RENK, RENKE, man, knight, GK. 303, 691, 1558, 1821. AA. xxvi. 5, l. 3. GG. 72, 113.
- RENKES, RENKIS, RENKKEZ, *pl.* GK. 432, 862, 1134, 2246. GG. 11, 133. In Richardson's Dictionary, 4to. 1837, I regret to find this by no means unusual word entered as REUK, on the authority of Whitaker's vile text of *Piers Plouhman*.
- RENNANDE, running, GK. 857.
- RENNE, to run, GK. 1568. RENNES, RENNEZ, *pr. t.* runs, 310, 731, 1570.
- RENTARIS, holders of lands, chiefs, GG. 403.
- RES, swift course, pace, GK. 1164, 1899. AA. xxvii. 7, MS. D. See RACE.
- RESAYT, a hunting term, applied to the stations taken up by those on foot, GK. 1168.
- RESCOWE, rescue, GK. 2302.
- RESETTE, RESSET, place of reception, abode, GK. 2164. GG. 38.
- RESYNGE, *pr. t.* resign, AA. l. 4.
- REST, *p. t.* rested? AA. xxv. 5, MS. D.
- RESTATYED, *p. p.* stopt, driven back, GK. 1153.
- RESTEYED, *p. t.* constrained? GK. 1672.
- RESTLES, without rest, GG. 113, 307.
- RESTLING, struggling? GG. 458.
- REUTH, sorrow, GG. 693, 996, 1129.
- REUAY, festivity, GG. 1343.
- REUE, to take away, bereave, GK. 2459.
- REUEDE, *p. p.* bereaved, AA. xxii. 8.
- REUERSSIDE, *p. p.* trimmed, AA. ii. 3. The same phrase is found in the alliterative *Morte Arthure*.
- And with ladily lappes, the lenghe of a zerde,  
And alle redily reuersside w<sup>t</sup> rebanes of golde.  
MS. Linc. f. 87<sup>b</sup>.
- Pinkerton misprints this word *reidsett*, from the Douce MS., which is gravely received by Jamieson, and dignified with a Saxon derivation!!
- REW, to repent, GG. 98. REWYTH, *pr. t.* repents, GC. 195. REWIT, *p. t.* pitied, GG. 1090.
- REWFULLY, compassionately, AA. xxv. 5.
- RIALE, RIAL, RIALLE, RYAL, RYALLE, royal, GK. 905. AA. xxvi. 7, xlix. 3. GG. 15, 72. GC. 26, 593. RYALLE, *pl.* nobles, used substantively, AA. l. 4.
- RIALLEST, royalest, GG. 402.
- RYALME, realm, GK. 691. RYALMES, *pl.* 310.
- RIALTE, royalty, GG. 1041.
- RICHES, RICHES, RYCHES, *pr. t.* goes, GK. 8; prepares, dresses, 1309, 1873. RICHEN, RICHES, *pr. t. pl.* dress, GK. 1130; march, AA. xxi. 3, MS. D. RYCHED, *p. p.* prepared, GK. 2206.
- RICH, RICHE, RYCH, RYCHE, noble, proud, powerful, GK. 8, 20, 39, 40, 397, 1744. GG. 402. Used substantively in the plural, *nobles*, GK. 66, 362.
- RYCH, *pr. t.* teach? GK. 1223.
- RICHCHANDE, running, GK. 1898.
- RICHE, *n.* (?) GK. 2177.
- RYCHED, *p. p.* enriched, GK. 599.
- RICHELY, RYCHELY, proudly, nobly, GK. 308, 931.
- RYD, RYDDE, to release, GK. 364; rescue, 2244.
- RIDAND, riding, GG. 189.
- RIDE, fierce, rough, GG. 500. Used also by Barbour.
- RYDE, *p. t.* proceed, GK. 1344.
- RYGGE, back, GK. 1344, 1608.
- RIGHTE, *p. t.* rip, cut, AA. xxxix. 11.
- RIGHTUIS, righteous, GG. 1091.
- RIGHTWISLY, righteously, AA. xxv. 5, MS. D.
- RIENE, to reign, GG. 424. See RING.



- RYKANDE, potent, loud? GK. 2337.  
 RIMED, *p. t.* vociferated? GK. 308.  
 RYMEZ, rims, borders? GK. 1343.  
 RYN, to run, GG. 1344.  
 RYNE, territory, GG. 225.  
 RING, to reign, GK. 495. RYNGIS, *pr. t.* 1236, 1289.  
 RINGAND, reigning, GG. 1041.  
 RYNK, ring, GK. 1817, 1827.  
 RYOL, royal, GK. 2036.  
 RIOLYSE, nobles, GG. 910.  
 RYOT, revel, GK. 1345.  
 RYPEZ, *pr. t.* becomes ripe, GK. 528.  
 RISE, RYS, bough, twig, GK. 1698. GG. 854, 1344.  
 RISSHE, *n.* rush, AA. xliii. 7.  
 RISTE, resting place? AA. v. 6.  
 RYSTE, *p. t.* rested, AA. xviii. 10.  
 RYTTE, *pr. t.* cut, rip, GK. 1332.  
 RYUE, rife, much, GK. 2046.  
 RYUEZ, *pr. t.* rips, rives, cuts, GK. 1341, 2290.  
 RIVED, *p. t.* arrived, AKC. 32.  
 RYȳT, *p. t.* addressed, prepared, GK. 308.  
 ROCHE, rock, GK. 2199.  
 ROCHER, rock, GK. 1432. ROCHERES, ROCHEREZ, *pl.* 1327, 1698.  
 RODE, ROODE, complexion, AA. xiii. 5. GC. 367.  
 RODE, Rood, GK. 1949.  
 ROE, peace, rest, GR.K. 395. Germ. *ruh*. It is left unexplained by Ritson in *Le Bone Florence*, Metr. Rom. iii. 36; and *Erle of Tolous*, ib. iii. 122.  
 ROF, blow, cut, GK. 2346.  
 ROGH, ROGHE, ROȳ, ROȳE, rough, shaggy, GK. 745, 1432, 1608, 1898, 2162, 2198.  
 ROȳ, ROȳE, king, AA. xlix. 3. GG. 189.  
 ROKKED, *p. p.* rolled, cleansed, GK. 2018. Geoffrey of Vinesauf says, "*Rotantur lorice, ne rubigine squalescunt*," which Sir S. Meyrick adds, was done by putting the coat of mail into a barrel filled with sand, and rolling it about.—*Crit. Inq.* l. 85. Hence may be explained a passage in Lajamon, l. 22287.  
 ROME, to growl, roar, c. 209. See RAMY.  
 ROMEZ, *pr. t.* walks, proceeds, GK. 2198.  
 RONEZ, *pl.* thickets, brush-wood, GK. 1466.  
 RONGE, *p. t.* resounded, GK. 2204.  
 RONK, RONKE, strong, GK. 513. AA. xlvii. 6. See RANK.  
 RONKKLED, *p. p.* wrinkled, GK. 953.  
 ROOKE, heap, c. 370.  
 ROTE, (?) GK. 2207.  
 ROUGHT, *p. t.* recked, lamented, GR.K. 242.  
 ROUN, to whisper, commune, GK. 362.  
 ROUNCE, steed, GK. 303.  
 ROUS, fame, GK. 310.  
 ROUSE, brag, boast, GR.K. 166. See RUSE.  
 ROUT, army, multitude, GG. 307. RG. 131, 175.  
 ROUT, ROUTE, violent movement, impetus, GK. 457; blow, AA. xli. 5. GG. 630, 940.  
 ROUTIS, *pl.* blows, c. 500.  
 ROUE, *p. t.* cleaved, cut, GK. 2346.  
 ROUEZ, roofs, GK. 799.  
 ROȳ, ROȳE, see ROGH.  
 RUBES, rubies, AA. ii. 4. The Douce MS. reads, *rybees*, which is only a variation in spelling, or blunder of the scribe, but which Jamieson chooses in the 8vo edit. of his Dictionary to explain "*shoes called turn-overs*"!!!  
 RUCHCHED, RUCHED, RUSCHED, *p. t.* moved, advanced? GK. 303, 367, 2219. See RICHES.  
 RUDE, *adj.* strong? GG. 85.  
 RUDE, *n.* Rood, GG. 124.  
 RUDEDE, *p. p.* ruddy, GK. 1695. See RODE.  
 RUDELEZ, curtains, GK. 857.  
 RUDLY, speedily, GG. 561, 673. GR.K. 153. See RADLY.  
 RUGH, RUȳE, rough, GK. 953, 2166. See ROGH.  
 †RUYSCHLY, apparently an error for RUYNSCHLY, violently, GK. 432.  
 RUNISCH, violent, impetuous, GK. 457.  
 RUNISCHLY, fiercely, roughly, GK. 304. See MS. Cott. Nero A. x. ff. 80<sup>b</sup>, 85<sup>b</sup>.  
 RURD, RURDE, noise, clamor, GK. 1149, 1698, 1916, 2219, 2337.

RUSE, boast, gg. 98; fame, 1241. See ROUS.  
RUTHES, *pr. t.* moves, dresses? GK. 1558.  
Cf. RICHES.

## S.

SA, so, gg. 831.  
SABATOUNZ, steel shoes, GK. 574. See Notes,  
p. 315.  
SAD, stable, strong, gg. 249; grave, 428.  
SADEL, to saddle, GK. 1128. This word is  
only inserted for the purpose of pointing  
out a singular error of Mr. Guest, who  
prints the word *fadel*, and then explains it  
*fettle*. Hist. Engl. Rh. ii. 167.  
SADLY, gravely, steadily, GK. 437, 1593, 1937,  
2409. GG. 574.  
SAF, save, except, GK. 394.  
SAFE, SAUENE, to assuage, alleviate, AA.  
xvii. 1.  
SAGE, (?) GK. 531.  
SAGE, man, gg. 266. See SEGE.  
SAY, saint, GK. 774.  
SAIKLESE, guiltless, gg. 3, 797.  
SAIL, SAILL, SALE, hall, GK. 197, 243, 349.  
AA. xxvii. 1. GG. 72, 133, 360, 1092.  
SAYLANDE, flowing, GK. 865.  
SAILL, happiness, gg. 267.  
SAYN, girdle, GK. 589.  
SAYN, saint, GK. 1788.  
SAYND, SAYNDIS-MAN, messenger, GK. 47,  
326, 367.  
SAYNE, see SANE.  
SAYNED, *p. t.* blessed, GK. 761, 1202.  
SAYNT, rich stuff, Fr. *samit*, GK. 2431.  
SALAND, sailing, gg. 250.  
SALER, salt-cellar, AA. xxxv. 8, MS. D. SA-  
LERS, *pl.* AA. xxxv. 8.  
SALF, to save, preserve, gg. 793.  
SALT, assault, gg. 473.  
SALUE, to salute, GK. 1473.  
SALURE, salt-cellar, GK. 886. See SALER.  
SALUST, *p. t.* saluted, gg. 136, 382, 1278.  
SALUED, SALUEDE, *p. p.* saved, AA. xvii. 12,  
xix. 10.  
SAMBUTES, housings, saddle-cloth, AA. ii.  
11, MS. D.

SAME, SAMEN, SAMYNE, together, GK. 50,  
363, 673, 744. GG. 906, 914.  
SAMEN, to assemble, GK. 1372. SAMNED,  
*p. p.* joined, 659.  
SAMYNE, same, gg. 304, 315.  
SANAP, SANAPE, napkin, GK. 886. AA. xxxv.  
8, MS. D. SANAPES, *pl.* AA. xxxv. 8. "*Sa-  
noppe*, manutergium," *Prompt. Parv.* Ja-  
mieson absurdly interprets this *mustard!!!*  
SANDEL, see SENDAL.  
SANE, SAYNE, to say, gg. 4. J. 57.  
SANED, SANEDE, *p. p.* healed, AA. liv. 4, 10.  
† SAUDE, *p. p.* served? AA. ii. 11, MS. D.  
Jamieson prints this *sande*, and explains it  
*girt*.  
SAUF, to save, gg. 1102.  
SAUGHTILLE, to make peace, to be reconciled,  
AA. lii. 10.  
SAUGHTNYNG, peace, reconciliation, gg.  
1264.  
SAULL-PROW, spiritual benefit, gg. 269.  
SAUAND, saving, excepting, gg. 441.  
SAUED, *p. p.* healed, AA. liv. 4, 10, MS. D.  
SAUER, safer, GK. 1202.  
SAUERLY, savourly, carefully, GK. 1937,  
2048.  
SAW, SAJE, saying, speech, GK. 1202, 1246.  
GG. 266. SAWIS, SAJEZ, *pl.* GK. 341. GG.  
873.  
SAWTIRE, saltire, AA. xxiv. 8.  
SAWTRY, SAWTRYE, psaltery, GC. 598. c.  
466.  
SAJTYNGE, reconciliation, AA. li. 11, MS. D.  
See SAUGHTILLE.  
SCADE, *p. t.* severed, GK. 425.  
SCAR, to frighten, gg. 279.  
† SCAS, probably a mistake for cast, AA. xlviii.  
2, MS. D. Those who wish it may see  
what Jamieson has made of the corruption.  
SCATHE, harm, GK. 674, 2353.  
SCHADDEN, *p. t.* shed, dropt, GK. 727. See  
SHADE.  
SCHAFTE, spear, GK. 205.  
SCHAFTEDE, *p. t.* set, sank, GK. 1467.  
SCHAGHES, groves, AA. vi. 2, MS. D. See  
SCHAJE.

- SCHAIP, *imp. go*, gg. 599.  
 SCHAIR, SCHARE, *p. t.* cut, smote, gg. 930, 968.  
 SCHALE, shall, GK. 1240.  
 SCHALK, man, knight, GK. 160, 424, 1776, 2061, 2372. GG. 599. SCHALKEZ, SCHALKIS, *pl.* GK. 1454. GG. 639, 891. SCHALK, *gen. pl.* 562.  
 SCHANE, bright, AA. xxvi. 4. See SCHENE.  
 SCHANKES, legs, GK. 160. See SCHONKES.  
 SCHAP, *p. t.* was formed, GK. 2328.  
 SCHAPE, to escape? GK. 1210.  
 SCHAPEN, *p. p.* shaped, GK. 213.  
 SCHAPES, *pr. t.* relates, GK. 1626.  
 SCHAPLY, fitly, fairly, GK. 453.  
 SCHARP, used substantively for sword, GK. 1593, 1902; axe, 2318.  
 SCHATERANDE, dashing, GK. 2083.  
 SCHawe, to shew, GK. 27.  
 SCHaJE, grove, wood, GK. 2161. See SCHAGHES.  
 SCHEDDIT, *p. t.* cut, gg. 990. SCHED, *p. p.* cut, shaved, 604.  
 SCHEDER, *pr. t.* drifts? GK. 956.  
 SCHEDEZ, *pr. t.* pours, GK. 506.  
 †SCHEIDIS, a misprint for SCHEILDIS, GK. 668. Jamieson, however, endeavours to find a meaning, and explains the word *distances!*  
 SCHEIRLY, SCHIRLY, SCHYRLY, clearly, GK. 1880; brightly, gg. 22, 477. See SCHIR.  
 SCHELDEZ, shields of a boar, GK. 1456, 1626.  
 SCHEMERED, *p. t.* glittered, GK. 772.  
 SCHEND, SCHENDE, to destroy, confound, GK. 2266. GG. 1077. SCHENT, *p. t.* went to pieces, 619. SCHENT, SHENTE, *p. p.* injured, conquered, disgraced, AA. xlix. 7. GG. 689, 1068, 1186. J. 16, 514.  
 SCHENE, SCHEYNE, SHEENE, SHENE, bright, beautiful, clear, GK. 662, 2314. AA. xxiv. 8, xxx. 7, xxxix. 7, liv. 7. GG. 242, 444, 477, 639. GK. 447. Used substantively, GK. 2268.  
 SCHENE, *p. t.* were conspicuous, gg. 1273.  
 SCHENT, *n.* disgrace, gg. 1077.  
 SCHERE, SCHIERE, countenance, mien, GK. 334. GG. 616.  
 SCHERE, to shear, cut, GK. 213. SCHER, *p. t.* 1337. See SCHAIR.  
 SCHIDES, SCHYDES, splinters, AA. xxxix. 7, 9.  
 †SCHILDE, should, GK. 1286.  
 SCHYLDE, *subj.* forbid, GK. 1776.  
 SCHINANDE, shining, GK. 269.  
 SCHYNBAWDES, greaves? armour for the legs, AA. xxxi. 5. MS. D. seems to read SCHYNBANDES, and it is so printed by Pinkerton and Jamieson. The same term occurs again in the alliterative *Morte Arthure*:  
 The schafte schoderede and schotte in the schire beryne,  
 That the schedande blode one his schanke runnys,  
 And schewede one his *schynbawde*, that was schire burneste.  
*MS. Linc. f. 93<sup>b</sup>.*  
 SCHYNDERED, *p. t.* severed, shivered, GK. 424, 1458, 1594.  
 SCHIR, SCHIRE, SCHYIRE, SCHYR, SCHYRE, fair, bright, clear, GK. 317, 425, 619, 772. GG. 537, 610, 639, 690, 1331. Used substantively for *skin* or *neck*, 2256. See SCHEIRLY.  
 SCHYRE, fairly, clearly, GK. 506, 2083.  
 SCHYRER, fairer, clearer, GK. 955.  
 SCHO, she, GK. 1259, 1550, 1555. AA. i. 13, iii. 1, xxvii. 7.  
 SCHOLES, *pr. t.* (?) GK. 160.  
 SCHONKES, SHONKEZ, legs, GK. 431, 846.  
 SCHONKIT, *p. t.* gave way, failed, gg. 619. Jamieson prints it *Schenkit*, and interprets it *agitated*. See also Weber's Gloss. to *Met. Rom. v. Schenche*.  
 SCHORE, shore, earth, GK. 2161, 2332. SCHOREZ, *pl.* 2083.  
 SCHORE, high, eminent, gg. 340.  
 SCHORE, threat, gg. 103.  
 SCHORE, to threaten, gg. 276.  
 SCHOTTEN, *p. t.* shot, GK. 1167.  
 SCHOWEN, SCHOWUEZ, SCHOWYS, *pr. t.* shove, push, throng, GK. 1454, 2161.

- AA. v. 1. SCHOWUED, *p. t.* shoved, fell with force, GK. 2083.
- SCHRANK, *p. t.* sunk, pierced, GK. 425, 2313.
- SCHREDE, to clothe? AA. xxxi. 5.
- SCHROF, *p. t.* shrived, GK. 1880.
- SCHROUD, apparel, armour, GG. 599, 968.
- SCHRUDEDE, *p. p.* dressed, AA. ii. 7.
- SCHRYDES, *pr. t.* covers or protects from? AA. ii. 7. MS. D. reads SHEDES.
- SCHUNT, backward step? GK. 2268.
- SCHUNT, *p. t.* shunned, shrunk, GK. 1902, 2280.
- SCHUPE, *p. t.* purposed, disposed, GG. 456, 473.
- SCHURDE, *p. p.* dressed, AA. ii. 7, MS. D.
- SCHWNE, to protect? GK. 205.
- SCOWTES, high rocks? GK. 2167. See Brockett, *in v.*
- SECH, to seek, GK. 1052.
- SEE, kingdom, GC. 660.
- SEGE, SEGGE, siege, GK. 1, 2525.
- SEGE, SEGG, SEGGE, man, knight, GK. 96, 115, 226, 394, 437. AA. xxviii. 8. GG. 90, 459. SEGGE, *gen. c.* man's, GK. 574.
- SEGGES, SEGGEZ, SEGIS, *pl.* GK. 673, 822, 1438. GG. 142, 209, 651.
- SEGHE, *p. t.* saw, GK. 1705.
- SEY, sea, GG. 3.
- SEY, *p. t.* saw, GK. 1619.
- SEYE, to go, GK. 1879. SEZEN, *p. p.* arrived, 1958.
- SEILL, SELE, good fortune, prosperity, GK. 1938, 2409, 2422. GG. 4.
- SEYMLY, fair, comely, GG. 524. The edit. 1508, reads *seynily*, by a misprint, which Pinkerton converts into *seynity*. Jamieson contends that *seynily* is right, and means *signal!!!*
- SEIR, SERE, *adj.* several, GK. 124, 632, 761, 822, 1982. AA. xvii. 2, MS. D. GG. 214, 251, 1338.
- SEIR, *adv.* much, eagerly? GK. 473.
- SEIR, GG. 529, is so printed by Pinkerton and Jamieson, although the edit. of 1508 reads FEIR. The meaning is doubtful.
- †SEIR, probably a mistake for SCHIR, bright, GG. 242.
- SEYTH, see SETHE.
- SEKER, SEKORE, sure, trusty, GK. 265. GG. 2. See SIKER.
- SELADYNES, chalcidies, AA. ii. 9, MS. D. Falsely printed by Pinkerton and Jamieson *seladynes*.
- †SELCOUGHT, *pl.* marvels, GG. 210.
- SELCOUTH, marvellous, strange, GG. 266, 409, 1338.
- SELCOUTHES, marvels, wonders, AA. xxvi. 8, MS. D.
- SELDEN, seldom, GK. 499.
- SELE, see SEILL.
- SELLOKEST, most surprising, GK. 1439.
- SELLY, *n.* marvel, wonder, GK. 474, 2170.
- SELLYEZ, *pl.* 239.
- SELLY, *adj.* strange, GK. 28.
- SELLY, *adv.* wondrously, GK. 1194.
- SELLYLY, strangely, wondrously, GK. 963, 1803.
- †SELLYLY, perhaps for SELLY, excellent, GK. 1962.
- SELOURE, SELURE, canopy, GK. 76. AA. xxvii. 2. See SYLOUR.
- SELUEN, joined to a noun or pronoun in the singular, GK. 51, 107, 113, 1548.
- SEMBLAUNCE, SEMBLAND, SEMBLAUNT, countenance, appearance, behaviour, GK. 148, 468, 1273, 1658. GG. 428, 1282. J. 8.
- SEMBLE, SEMBLEE, assembly, GK. 1429. GG. 214.
- SEMBLE, *pr. t.* assemble, AA. vi. 1, MS. D.
- SEMBLYNGE, meeting together, AA. li. 11.
- SEME, (?) GK. 1085.
- SEMED, *p. t.* besemed, befitted, GK. 73, 1929.
- SEMELEDE, *p. t.* assembled, AA. vi. 1.
- SEMELY, SEMLY, *adj.* comely, fair, GK. 672, 685. AA. xxxv. 8. GG. 1092, 1197.
- SEMEZ, seams, borders, GK. 610.
- SEMELY, SEMLYCH, *adv.* fairly, suitably, becomingly, courteously, GK. 865, 882, 916, 1198, 1658.
- SEMLELY, SEMLYLY, becomingly, GK. 622. AA. ii. 11.
- SEMLOKER, more seemly, fairer, GK. 83.

- SEMYDE, SEMYT, *p. t.* appeared, AA. ii. 10. GG. 529.
- SEN, since, GG. 57, 434.
- †SEND, for SENT, C. 198.
- SENDAL, SENDALE, SANDEL, fine silk, GK. 76. AA. XXX. 9.
- SENE, *adj.* (?) GK. 341. It is allied to Su. *g. sann*, true?
- SENE, to see, GK. 712. SENE, *pr. t.* AA. xlv. 13.
- SENS, without, GG. 779.
- SENYEOUR, lord, master, GG. 145, 326.
- SERE, see SEIR.
- SERE, (?) GK. 1522, 2417.
- SERKE, shirt, GC. 535. C. 367.
- SERLEPES, severally, by turns, GK. 501.
- SERTAYN, certainly, GK. 174.
- SERVED, *p. p.* deserved, GK. 1380.
- SERUY, *n.* service? GK. 751. Cf. 940.
- SESE, to receive, GK. 1825. SESED, *p. t.* held, seized, 822, 1330.
- SESED, *p. t.* and *p. p.* ceased, GK. 1, 1083, 2526.
- SET UPON SEVIN, OR ON SEVIN, a phrase which Jamieson, v. *Scheidis*, gives up as inexplicable, and yet which is of such frequent occurrence as to deserve more notice than he has chosen to bestow on it. It is in most cases spoken of God, and the original idea seems to imply the creation of the world in seven days, whence it means *to set or dispose in order*, GG. 1045. Compare the *Pystyl of Susan*, xxi. 4; and *Towneley Mysteries*, pp. 85, 97, 118. But in GG. 508, 668, the phrase appears to have acquired another sense, namely, *to encounter in battle*. In the same sense it occurs in the alliterative *Morte Arthure*, f. 75<sup>b</sup>.
- SETE, (?) GK. 889. GG. 1155. Perhaps connected with Su. G. *sæta*, prodesse.
- SETE, SETEN, *p. t.* and *p. p.* sat, 865, 940, 1522.
- SETHE, SETHYNE, SEYTH, afterwards, then, since, GC. 222, 290, 299, 436, 469. See SITHEN.
- SETOLERS, players on the citole, a species of hurdy-gurdy? AA. xxvii. 5.
- SETTEL, seat, chair, GK. 882.
- SEUER, to part, GK. 1988. SEUERES, *pr. t.* 1797.
- SEW, *p. t.* follow, AA. vi. 2. SEWYDE, *p. t.* followed, GC. 62.
- SEWE, prepared dish of meat, perhaps a stew, GK. 892. SEWES, *pl.* 124, 889.
- SEJ, SEJE, SEJEN, *p. t.* saw, GK. 672, 707, 1911.
- SHADE, *p. t.* shed, flowed, J. 90. See SCHADDEN.
- SHAFTMONE, half a foot, AA. xli. 2. This term is retained by Sir John Harrington, in his translation of Ariosto.
- SHINAND, shining, AA. xli. 2.
- SHINDRE, *pr. t.* shiver, break, AA. xxxix. 7, MS. D.
- SHOEN, shoes, GR.K. 516.
- SHONTEST, *pr. t.* shrinkest, GR.K. 469. See SCHUNT.
- SHOURE, conflict, J. 76.
- SHRED, *p. p.* severed, cut, AA. xlv. 10.
- SIC, such, GG. 274, 506.
- SICKERLY, SICKIRLY, SYCKERLYE, surely, truly, GG. 432, 773, 1005. J. 210. GR.K. 215.
- SYFLEZ, *pr. t.* whistles, blows, GK. 517.
- SYKANDE, sighing, GK. 1796.
- SIKED, SYKED, *p. t.* sighed, GK. 672. AA. xliii. 13. GR.K. 268.
- SIKER, SYKER, *adj.* sure, trusty, brave, GK. 96, 115, 2048, 2493. GG. 484.
- SIKER, *adv.* surely, GK. 1637.
- SIKING, SYKYNG, sighing, GK. 753. AA. vii. 10, MS. D. SYKYNGEZ, *pl.* GK. 1982.
- SYLOURE, canopy, GG. 66. See SELOURE.
- SILIT, *p. t.* sank, GG. 524. Jamieson's absurd interpretation of this line is unworthy notice. See his Dict. v. *Seynity*, or *Seynily*, words which never existed at all, except by the merest typographical blunders.
- SILLE, SYLL, seat, throne, GK. 55. GG. 433, 1197.
- SYLUENER, silver, plate? GK. 124.
- SYN, SYNE, SYNNE, since, GK. 19, 24, 919, 1892; then, afterwards, GG. 62, 304. GC. 515.
- SYNGNE, sign, token, GK. 625.

- SYRE, lord, master, GG. 144, 428. GC. 223, 395.
- SYTE, disgrace, sorrow, GG. 1099, 1202.
- SYTIS, *pl.* torments, AA. xvii. 1.
- SYTH, sight? GG. 1315.
- SITH, time, GG. 382. SITHE, SYTHE, SYTHES, SYTHEZ, SYTHIS, *pl.* GK. 17, 632, 761, 1868. AA. xlii. 6. GC. 354, 638.
- SITHEN, SITHENNE, SYTHE, SYTHEN, SYTHENNE, afterwards, then, next, since, GK. 1, 6, 43, 115, 358, 1234, 1339. AA. iii. 6, xx. 5, xxxv. 7. J. 42. See SETHE.
- SITTANDE, sitting, AA. xxxviii. 7.
- SYȝ, SYȝE, *p. t.* saw, GK. 83, 200, 1582.
- †SKAITHT, injury, harm, GG. 279.
- SKAYNED, *p. p.* (?) GK. 2167.
- †SKELED, apparently an error for SERKELED, incircled, AA. x. 3, MS. D.
- SKERE, modest? GK. 1261.
- SKETE, quickly, GK. 19.
- SKYFTED, *p. p.* shifted, changed, GK. 19.
- SKILL, SKYL, SKYLLE, reason, GK. 1296, 1509. GG. 1219. MG. 167.
- †SKYNNNEZ, kind; the initial letter in pronunciation having become detached from the preceding word, GK. 1539. See other instances in *Lagamon*, vol. ii. p. 607; and *Arthur and Merlin*, p. 159, 4to, 1838.
- SKIRLES, *pr. t.* screams, AA. xlii. 3.
- SKYRTEZ, horse-trappings, GK. 601; skirts of a robe, 865.
- SKOWES, SKUWES, SKWEZ, groves, shady coverts? GK. 2167. AA. v. 1, MS. D., x. 12, MS. D. Cf. MS. Cott. Nero A. x. f. 81, 81<sup>b</sup>.
- SKRIKES, SKRYKE, SKRYKIS, *pr. t.* shrieks, shriek, AA. x. 12, MS. D., xlii. 2, xlviii. 8.
- SKRILLES, *pr. t.* screams, AA. xlviii. 8, MS. D.
- SLADE, SLAID, valley, GK. 2147. GG. 840.
- SLADEZ, *pl.* GK. 1159.
- SLAKE, gap or ravine between two hills, AA. xxiii. 12.
- SLAKED, *p. p.* drunken? GK. 244.
- SLAWE, *p. p.* slain, c. 420.
- SLE, skilful, GG. 883.
- SLEUTYNG, shooting, letting fly, GK. 1160.
- SLEȝE, ingenious, GK. 797, 893.
- SLEȝLY, slily, softly, GK. 1182.
- SLEȝT, SLIȝT, stratagem, GK. 1854, 1858.
- SLEȝTEZ, *pl.* 916.
- SLIKES, *pr. t.* slides, AA. xlviii. 6, MS. D. The Linc. MS. reads *slydys*, contrary to the rhythm. Pinkerton and Jamieson falsely print the word *slik*, and the latter makes it an adjective.
- SLYNGE, blow, AA. xlviii. 5. The Douce MS. reads *slenk*, which is only a provincial mode of pronunciation. Jamieson, however, is misled by it, and interprets it erroneously, *a piece of low craft*.
- SLYȝT, skilful, GK. 1542.
- SLODE, *p. t.* slipt, GK. 1182.
- SLOKES, blows? GK. 412.
- SLOMERYNG, slumbering, GK. 1182.
- SLOT, pit of the stomach, GK. 1330, 1593.
- See NOTES, p. 322.
- SMETEN, *p. t.* smote, GK. 1763.
- SMETHELY, smoothly, GK. 1789.
- SMOLT, mild, GK. 1763.
- SMURE, to smother, be concealed, GG. 1204.
- SNART, SNARTLY, severely, sharply, GK. 2003. AA. vii. 4, MS. D.
- SNAYPED, SNAYPPEDE, *p. t.* nipped, GK. 2003. AA. vii. 4.
- SNELLE, keenly, AA. vii. 4.
- SNELLES, *pr. t.* pierces? AA. vii. 4, MS. D.
- SNETERAND, drifting, AA. vii. 4, MS. D.
- SNITERED, *p. t.* drove, drifted, GK. 2003.
- SOCHT, *p. t.* went, proceeded, GG. 302, 459.
- See SOȝT.
- SOFT, to soften, GG. 1055.
- SOJOURNED, *p. p.* lodged, GK. 2048.
- SOMER, beast of burthen, GK. 567.
- SONDE, Providence, GC. 150.
- SONER, to trust? GG. 1105.
- SONYNGE, swooning, GC. 318.
- SOP, hasty meal, GK. 1135. SOPPES DE MAYN, *pl.* strengthening draughts, or viands, AA. xxxvii. 10. Dunbar uses the phrase *breid of mane*, which is equivalent to the *pain de maine* of Chaucer.
- SORE, *p. t.* grieved, GK. 1826, 1988.

- SORJE, imprecation, GK. 1721; sorrow, 2415.  
 SOTELER, player on the citole? AA. xxvii. 5, MS. D. See SETOLERS.  
 SOTH, SOTHE, truth, GK. 84, 355.  
 SOTHEN, *p. p.* boiled, sodden, GK. 892.  
 SOUNDE,—IN SOUNDE, well, unhurt, GK. 2489.  
 SOUNDER, herd of wild swine, GK. 1440. See Notes, p. 323.  
 SOUNDYLY, soundly, GK. 1991.  
 SOURQUYDRYE, pride, GK. 311.  
 SOUERANEFULL, noble, GG. 1304.  
 SOWME, number, GK. 1321.  
 SOJT, *p. t.* went, departed, GK. 685, 1438.  
 SPACE, to require? GK. 1199.  
 SPAIL, blow? GK. 984.  
 SPALIS, splinters, GG. 629.  
 SPARE, barren, GG. 112.  
 SPARE, several, divers, GK. 901.  
 SPARIS, *imp.* spare ye, GG. 274.  
 SPARLYR, calf of the leg, GK. 158. I have only met with this word once elsewhere, namely in the early Wycliffite version of Deuteronomy, cap. xxviii. v. 35, where the later version reads "hyndere partes of the leg."  
 SPARTHE, axe, GK. 209.  
 SPED, *p. t.* went, proceeded, GK. 1444. Used as *p. p.* with the verb *to be*, to imply success, GR.K. 375.  
 SPEDE, profit, GK. 918.  
 SPEDED, *p. t.* hastened, GK. 979.  
 SPEDLY, expediently? GK. 1935.  
 SPEIR, SPEREZ, *pr. t.* inquire, inquires, GK. 1624. GG. 274.  
 SPEK, SPEKEN, *p. t.* spake, GK. 1117, 1288.  
 SPELLE, speech, narrative, GK. 209, 1199, 2184.  
 SPELLEZ, *pr. t.* talkest, GK. 2140.  
 SPEND, SPENET, *p. t.* fastened, GK. 158, 587.  
 SPENNE, (?) GK. 1074, 2316.  
 SPENNE, spinny, quickset hedge, GK. 1709, 1896.  
 SPERE-FEILD, field of battle, GG. 1238.  
 SPETOS, cruel, GK. 209.  
 SPILLYNGE, failure, AA. xx. 7. The MS. D. reads *Speling*, which Jamieson falsely explains *instruction*.  
 SPYRE, *imp.* ask, AA. xx. 9. See SPETR.  
 SPYT, injury, GK. 1444.  
 SPITETH, *pr. t.* injureth, TG. 155.  
 SPORNE, interpreted by Jamieson *to stumble*, GG. 879. See Notes, p. 342.  
 SPRENGED, *p. t.* sprang, GK. 1415; dawned, 2009.  
 SPRENT, SPRENTE, *p. t.* leapt, GK. 1896. J. 146, 253. GR.K. 200; shivered, split, GG. 618, 1238.  
 SPRIT, *p. t.* started? GK. 2316.  
 SPURED, SPURYED, *p. p.* inquired, GK. 901, 2093.  
 SPUTE, *imp.* dispute, AA. xx. 9, MS. D.  
 STABLED, *p. p.* established, GK. 1060.  
 STABLYE, station of huntsmen, GK. 1153. Used also by Wyntown.  
 STACKE, *p. t.* stuck, J. 267.  
 STAD, *p. p.* placed, disposed, GK. 33, 644, 2137. See MS. Cott. Nero A. x. ff. 58, 68, 70<sup>b</sup>.  
 STAF-FUL, quite full, GK. 494.  
 STAKERIT, STAKKERIT, STAKRIT, *p. t.* staggered, GG. 624, 916, 929.  
 STALE, STALLE, seat, GK. 104, 107.  
 STALKED, *p. t.* approached, moved, GK. 237.  
 STALUART, STALWART, STALWORTH, strong, powerful, brave, GK. 846, 1659. GG. 89, 353, 710, 718, 741. TG. 25. STALUART, and STALWARTIS, *pl.* used substantively, GG. 642, 768.  
 STANDERTIS, *pl.* tapers of a large size? AA. xxxv. 9.  
 STANGE, pole, staff, GK. 1614.  
 STAPALIS, staples, fastenings, GG. 981.  
 STAPLED, *p. p.* furnished with staples, GK. 606.  
 STARANDE, glittering, GK. 1818.  
 STARGAND, starting, AA. xl. 4, MS. D.  
 START, *p. t.* started, moved, GK. 431, 1716.  
 STAUE, staff? GK. 2137.  
 STED, STEDDE, place, GK. 439, 2213, 2323.  
 STEIR, see ON-STEIR.  
 STEIR, to stir, GG. 505, 671.  
 STEK, *p. t.* stuck, GK. 152.

- STEKILLEDE, *p. t.* strewed, AA. xxxi. 2. Perhaps we should read STREKILLEDE.
- STEL, *p. t.* stole, GK. 1191.
- STEL-GERE, armour, GK. 260.
- STEMED, STEMMED, *p. t.* stood still? spoke in a low voice? GK. 230, 1117.
- STENT, *p. t.* stopt, AA. xlv. 7; *p. p.* restrained, GG. 559.
- STERAND, stirring, active, GG. 588, 890.
- STERNE, stout, brave; used substantively, *man* being understood, GG. 19, 108, 987. See STURNE.
- STERNYS, stars, AA. xxxi. 2.
- STERYNE, stout, AA. xxxi. 1.
- STEUEN, STEVIN, voice, sound, shout, GK. 242, 2008, 2336. GG. 2, 666, 821; conference, GK. 1060, 2194, 2213.
- STID, place, AA. xxv. 4, MS. D. See STED.
- STIF, *adj.* strong, brave, GK. 104, 107, 322.
- STIF, *adv.* courageously, GK. 671.
- STIRTANDE, starting, spirited, AA. xl. 4.
- STYNT, *n.* cessation, GG. 974.
- STYNT, to stop, GG. 767, 863.
- STYTH, stout, brave, GG. 678, 718.
- STITHIL, *pr. t.* voyage? GG. 460. Jamieson is certainly mistaken in converting this word into an adverb, and explaining it *eagerly*.
- STITHLY, STYTHLY, stiffly, strongly, GK. 431, 575.
- STIȝT, strongly? AA. xlvi. 6.
- STIȝTEL, to dispose? GK. 2137. STIȝTLES, STIȝTLEZ, *pr. t.* sits, dwells, 104, 2213. STYȝTEL, *imp.* set, dispose, 2252.
- STOKEN, *p. p.* secured, fastened, fixed, GK. 33, 494, 782, 2194.
- STONAY, conflict, GG. 863; trouble of the mind, 1056.
- STONAY, to confound, GG. 831. STONYES, *pr. t.* art astonished, AA. xxxii. 4. STONAYED, STONAYT, STONYED, *p. p.* confounded, astonished, GK. 1291. AA. xlv. 9. GG. 1. 625, 821.
- STOND, STONDE, time, while, AA. xlv. 9. GC. 1. C. 45.
- STONDED, *p. t.* confounded? AA. xlvii. 4.
- STOR, STORE, *adj.* strong, GK. 1291, 1923. GC. 122. See STOUR.
- STORE, *n.* combat, AA. lv. 11. See STOUR.
- STOTIN, to cease, stop, GG. 768. STOTIT, *p. t.* 678.
- STOTTYDE, *p. t.* stammered, AA. ix. 5.
- STOUND, STOUNDE, STOWNDE, time, AA. liv. 11. GG. 642, 929. J. 160. STOUNDEZ, *pl.* GK. 1517, 1567.
- STOUNED, STOUNNEDE, STOWNED, *p. t.* was confounded, astonished, GK. 242, 301. AA. ix. 5. See STONAY.
- STOUR, STOWRE, STURE, *adj.* strong, brave, AA. lv. 11. GG. 87, 534. J. 73. MG. 8.
- STOUR, STOURE, STOWER, STOWRE, *n.* battle, conflict, AA. xliii. 6. GG. 353, 575, 624. GC. 5. J. 183. GR. K. 46. TG. 149. C. 4.
- STOURNE, stout, bold, AA. xxxi. 1, MS. D. See STURNE.
- STOWT, strong, used substantively, GG. 831.
- STRAY, see ON-STRAY.
- STRAID, *p. t.* strode, GG. 616.
- STRAIK, *n.* blow, GG. 929, 981.
- STRAIK, *p. t.* struck, GG. 1018, 1164.
- STRAYNE, to restrain, curb, GK. 176.
- STRAKANDE, *p. pr.* blowing, GK. 1364, 1923. A hunting term. See MS. Cott. Vesp. B. xii. f. 102<sup>b</sup>.
- STRAUGHT, straight? GG. 460.
- STREYTE, STRIȝT, *p. p.* stretched, erect, AA. xli. 13, xlii. 1.
- STRENYEIT, *p. p.* constrained, GG. 276.
- STRENKEL, *pr. t.* scatter, AA. xlvi. 5.
- STRENT, to strengthen, GG. 199.
- STREȝT, close, tight, GK. 152.
- STRY, STRYE, to destroy, GK. 2194. AA. xxi. 6, MS. D. Erroneously interpreted by Jamieson to *overcome*.
- STRIGHT, straight? GG. 199.
- STRYKES, *pr. t.* rides, AA. xl. 4.
- STRYTHE, STRYTHTHE, position of the legs when firmly placed, stride, GK. 846, 2305.
- STROT, *adj.* (?) GK. 1710. Possibly related to the Middle High Dutch *strut*, copse, thicket.
- STUBBE, stock of a tree, GK. 2293.
- STUDE, place? GG. 718.



- STUF**, strength? GG. 495.  
**STUFFIT**, *p. p.* tired, exhausted? GG. 830.  
**STUMMERAND**, stumbling, GG. 624.  
**STURNE**, stout, bold, GK. 143. Used substantively, 214. AA. xli. 12. See **STERNE**.  
**STURTES**, stirrups, GK. 171.  
**SUAGE**, *pr. t.* assuage, relax, GG. 828.  
**SUANDE**, following, GK. 1467.  
**SUCCEUDRY**, presumption, proud language, GG. 278. See **SURQUIDRE**.  
**SUES**, *pr. t.* follows, GK. 510. **SUED**, *p. t.* followed, 501, 1705.  
**SUGETTE**, subject, AA. xxiv. 7.  
**SUIRE**, neck, GM. 129. See **SWYRE**.  
**SUMNED**, *p. p.* summoned, GK. 1052.  
**SUNDRED**, *p. p.* severed, disjoined, GK. 659.  
**SUPPOSE**, although, GG. 94, 824.  
**SURFET**, fault, GK. 2433.  
**†SURGET**, apparently an error for *suget*, subject, AA. xxiv. 7, MS. D. Jamieson considered it at first an *heraldic term*, and afterwards, to mean a *debauched woman*, in allusion to Guenever!!!  
**SURQUIDRE**, pride, GK. 2457.  
**SUTELL**, skilful, GG. 697.  
**SUWENE**, *pr. t.* follow, AA. vi. 2, MS. D. See **SEW**.  
**SWANG**, *p. t.* swung, smote, GG. 562. See **SWING**.  
**SWANGE**, loins? GK. 138, 2034. AA. xlviii. 6, MS. D.  
**SWAP**, blow, AA. xlii. 7.  
**SWAP**, *imp.* exchange, GK. 1108. **SWAPPED**, **SWAFT**, *p. t.* struck, AA. xl. 7, 11, xlvii. 6, MS. D.  
**SWARE**, square, GK. 138.  
**SWARE**, neck? GG. 1053.  
**SWAREZ**, *pr. t.* answers, GK. 1766. **SWARED**, *p. t.* answered, 1793, 2011.  
**SWATHEL**, strong man, AA. xlii. 7.  
**SWEYED**, *p. t.* moved, pressed, GK. 1429.  
**SWENGES**, *pr. t.* starts, GK. 1756. **SWENGED**, *pr. t.* proceed, move quickly, 1615.  
**SWENGED**, *p. t.* rushed, 1439. See MS. Cott. Nero A. x., ff. 58<sup>b</sup>, 66.  
**SWERE**, *p. t.* swore, GK. 1825.  
**SWETE**, *n.* suit, GK. 2518.  
**SWETE**, *adj.* used substantively, *knight* or *lady* being understood, GK. 1108, 1222.  
**SWETE**, *p. t.* sweated, GK. 180.  
**SWETHLED**, *p. p.* folded, GK. 2034.  
**SWEUENES**, dreams, GK. 1756.  
**SWE3**, *pr. t.* follows, GK. 1562. See **SEW**.  
**SWE3E**, *p. t.* stooped, GK. 1796.  
**SWYEREZ**, squires, GK. 824.  
**SWYKES**, *pr. t.* acts treacherously, AA. xlii. 7. Jamieson explains it falsely, *to cause to stumble*.  
**SWILKE**, **SWYLK**, **SWYLKE**, such, AA. v. 13, xxiii. 13, xxvi. 9.  
**SWILLED**, *p. t.* washed? AKC. 276.  
**SWYNG**, to strike, GK. 828.  
**SWYNGEZ**, *pr. t.* rushes, GK. 1562. See **SWENGES**.  
**SWINKE**, to labor, TG. 103.  
**SWYRE**, neck, throat, GK. 138, 186, 957. AA. xl. 7, MS. D.  
**SWITH**, **SWITHE**, **SWYTHE**, quickly, GK. 8, 815, 1424, 2259. GG. 380. TG. 312; greatly, earnestly, GK. 1860, 1866, 1897.  
**SWYTHELY**, quickly, or much, GK. 1479.  
**SWOGHE**, quiet, GK. 243.  
**SWOGHES**, *pr. t.* flow with noise? AA. v. 3.  
**SWOUNDING**, swooning, GK. 269.  
  
**T.**  
**TA**, one, GG. 904.  
**TABERNACLES**, ornamental work in architecture, GC. 610.  
**TABLET**, table-cloth? AA. xxxi. 11, MS. D.  
**TABLEZ**, corbels? GK. 789.  
**TACHEZ**, *pr. t.* fastens, GK. 2176. **TACHED**, **TACHCHED**, *p. p.* attached, fixed, 219, 2512.  
**TADE**, toad, AA. ix. 10, MS. D.  
**TAGHTE**, *p. t.* took, AA. li. 6.  
**TAKIS**, *imp.* take thou, AA. xiv. 1.  
**TAKLES**, garments? GK. 1129.  
**TALE**, speech, discourse, GK. 1236.  
**TALENTTYF**, desirous, GK. 350.  
**TALKKAND**, talking, GK. 108.  
**TANE**, one, GK. 1131. See Price's Note on Warton, ii. p. 496.

- TANE, to take, GC. 203. TAS, TA, TAN, *pr. t.* 913, 977, 1920, 2305. TA, TAS, *imp.* 413, 1390, 1811. TAN, TANE, *p. p.* 490, 1210, 2488. GG. 910. C. 173.
- TAPE, TAPPE, stroke, rap, GK. 406, 2357.
- TAPIT, carpet, GK. 568; table? 884. TAPITES, TAPYTEZ, *pl.* tapestry, 77, 858.
- TARS, is stated by Du Cange to mean *Tharsia*, a country adjoining to Cathay, but not to be confounded with Tartary. See his Glossary, v. *Tartarinus*. In GK. 77, 858, it is named as the place where tapestries were manufactured, and in 571 a rich silk must be understood. The phrase is met with in Chaucer, and in the alliterative *Morte Arthure*, f. 87.
- TASEE, clasp, fibula, AA. xxviii. 4. MS. D. reads *Tasses*, in the plural, which Jamieson erroneously interprets *girdles*.
- TATHE, *pr. t.* takest, GK. 2357.
- TATHIS, fragments, GG. 913.
- TAUGHTE, *p. t.* gave, AA. xlvii. 7.
- TAUJT, *p. p.* behaved, mannered, GC. 328.
- TAYSSED, *p. p.* driven, harassed, GK. 1169.
- TAYT, fair, plump? GK. 1377. See MS. Cott. Nero A. x. f. 69.
- TAJT, TAJTTE, *p. t.* taught, GK. 1485, 2379.
- TECCELES, blameless, GK. 917.
- TECH, disposition, quality, GK. 2488. TECHES, *pl.* 2436.
- TEDDER-STAKES, stakes driven into the ground to which horses or cattle are tethered, C. 185. Still used in the North.
- TEIR, TER, TERE, tedious, irksome, AA. x. 4. GG. 213, 898, 1341. See TOR.
- TEIRFULL, tedious, fatiguing, GG. 33, 42, 760.
- TELDE, mansion, habitation, GK. 1775. TELDES, *pl.* 11.
- TELDET, *p. t.* set up, GK. 1648. TELDED, TELDEDE, *p. p.* set up, built, 795, 884; covered, AA. xxx. 9.
- TEMES, stories, themes? GK. 1541.
- TEMYT, *p. t.* emptied, GG. 756.
- TEND, tithe, tenth, GG. 760.
- TENE, *n.* sorrow, mischief, GK. 22. AA. xxii. 9; trouble, GK. 1008; anger, AA. xl. 5, xlvii. 7.
- TENE, *adj.* difficult of passage, perilous, fatiguing, GK. 1707, 2075. GG. 33.
- TENE, to grieve, GK. 2002. TENEZ, *pr. t.* troubles, matters, 547. TENED, *p. t.* grieved, 2501; *p. p.* molested, 1169.
- TENEFUL, grievous, AA. xlvii. 7, MS. D.
- TENELYNG, trouble? GK. 1514.
- TENT, *n.* intent, care, attention, GK. 624. AA. xiii. 9, MS. D. GG. 149.
- TENT, to pay attention, GG. 342. TENTED, *p. t.* took care of, GK. 1018.
- TENTETH, *pr. t.* contenteth, C. 129.
- TEUGH, TEWCH, tough, GG. 704, 1069. In the latter instance it is used in a phrase by no means unusual, meaning *to make difficulties*. See Tyrwhitt's Gloss. in v. *Tough*.
- TEYND, (?) GG. 1083.
- THA, the, GK. 1069.
- THAI, THAY, those, GG. 218, 365, 737.
- THAIRTILL, thereto, GG. 1296.
- THAN, when, GG. 1186.
- THANE, perhaps acc. case of *the*, AA. xxvi. 3.
- THAR, THERE, *pr. t.* need, GK. 2354. AA. xiv. 1, MS. D.
- THAT, used for *what*, GK. 1406; joined with a noun in the plural, *those*, GG. 339, 1153. GC. 221, 426.
- THAZ, though, GK. 350, 438, 467. See THOZ.
- THEDE, THEID, country, land, kingdom, GK. 1499. GG. 174, 345, 435.
- THEDER, thither, GK. 935.
- THEE, to thrive, GK. 73.
- THEN, than, GK. 24, 236, 655.
- THER, THERE, where, GK. 353, 428, 874.
- THER-FORNE, therefore, GK. 1107. THER-TYKE, thereto, 1110, 1369.
- THEWES, THEWEZ, manners, GK. 912, 916.
- THINE, THYNE, thence, GG. 229, 1313.
- THINKKEZ, THYNK, THYNKE, THYNKES, THYNKKEZ, *pr. t.* seems, GK. 1111, 1241, 1481, 1793, 2109. AA. xxv. 10.
- THIR, these, AA. viii. 6, xxviii. 9. GG. 5715 *et sæpius*.

- THIS, THISE, THYSE, these, GK. 42, 114, 654, 1514. AA. lv. 7. GG. 1194.
- THO, perhaps a mistake for THE, GK. 39, 1419.
- THO, those, GK. 68, 466. AA. xx, 3. C. 382.
- THOE, then, TG. 246. C. 398.
- THOF, though, GK. 624.
- THOGHT, though, GG. 210, 501, 575.
- THOLED, *p. t.* suffered, GK. 1859, 2419.
- THONKE, *n.* thank, GK. 1984. THONK, THONKKEZ, *pl.* 1031, 1380.
- THORE, there, GK. 667.
- †THOWE, then, GR.K. 370.
- THOJ, though, GK. 69. See THAJ.
- THOJT, *p. t.* seemed, GK. 49, 803, 819, 870.
- THRA, THRAW, bold, GG. 60. TG. 34. See THRO.
- THRANG, battle, *melée*, GG. 345, 709.
- THRANG, *p. t.* crowded, pressed, GG. 60.
- THRAST, *p. t.* thrust, GK. 1443.
- THRAT, *p. t.* threatened, GK. 1713; urged? 1980.
- THRAWEN, *p. p.* bound, twisted, GK. 194.
- THRAWEN, *adj.* brawny? GK. 579.
- THREPE, chiding, GK. 1859, 2397.
- THREPEZ, *pr. t.* chides, reproves, GK. 504.
- THRETED, *p. t.* threatened, GK. 1725.
- THRICH, *n.* push, rush, GK. 1713.
- THRIL, slave, GG. 435.
- THRIUAND, THRYUANDE, hearty, GK. 1980; successful, GG. 345.
- THRIUANDLY, THRYUANDELY, heartily, GK. 1080, 1380; prosperously, GG. 435.
- THRO, THROE, earnest, eager, GK. 645, 1021, 1713, 1751, 1868, 1946; bold, confident, 2300. GR.K. 470. C. 151. See THRA.
- THROLY, earnestly, GK. 939.
- THRONGE, *p. t.* thrust, crowded, GK. 1021.
- THROWE, time, while, GK. 1680, 2219.
- THROWEN, *p. p.* plump? GK. 1740. See THRAWEN.
- THRUBCHANDLER, TRUBCHANDLER, (?) AKC. 120, 169.
- THRYES, thrice, GK. 1936.
- THRYNGEZ, *pr. t.* crowdest, GK. 2397.
- THRYNNE, three, GK. 1868.
- THRYUEN, *p. p.* well-favored, GK. 1740.
- THRYJT, *p. t.* threw, GK. 1443; *p. p.* given, 1946.
- THULGED, *p. t.* endured, GK. 1859.
- THURLED, *p. t.* pierced, GK. 1356.
- THURJ, THURJE, through, above, GK. 91, 243, 645, *et pass.*
- THUJT, *p. t.* thought, GK. 843, 848.
- THWARLE, tight, hard, GK. 194. *Wharl-knot* is still used in the same sense in Lancashire.
- THWONG, thong, GK. 194. THWONGES, *pl.* 579.
- THY, therefore, GK. 2247.
- TYBER, the river Tiber in Italy, AA. xxii. 9, MS. D. The reading of the Lincoln MS. proves how far wide of the truth Jamieson was, in conjecturing the word to mean *warrior*.
- TYDE, to betide, GG. 1083. TYDEZ, *pr. t.* 1396.
- TYFFEN, *p. t.* array, put in order, GK. 1129.
- TIGHT, TYGHT, TYJT, *p. p.* fastened, tied, GK. 568, 858. AA. xxviii. 4; accoutred, GG. 197; made, built, 526; prepared, 744; undertaken? 898.
- TIL, TILLE, TYLLE, to, GK. 673, 1979. AA. xxviii. 9. GG. 1163. CC. 506.
- TYLD, tent, mansion, GG. 356. See TELDE.
- TYMBER, TIMBIRE, to cause, build up, AA. xxii. 9. See Ritson's Gloss. Metr. Rom. *in v.*
- TYNT, *p. p.* lost, GG. 993.
- TYPOUN, type, pattern, GK. 1540.
- TIT, TITE, TIT, TYT, TYTE, promptly, speedily, GK. 31, 299, 1596. AA. xiii. 9, MS. D. GG. 756. CC. 357. C. 393. See ASTYT.
- TYTELET, commencement, chief, GK. 1515.
- TITLERES, hounds, GK. 1726.
- TYXT, text, GK. 1515, 1541.
- TYJT, *p. t.* undertake? GK. 2483. See TIGHT.
- To, too, GK. 1827. J. 60; till, AA. xxxix. 5. GG. 306, 754.
- To-BRAKE, *p. t.* brake in pieces, CC. 398.

- To-DYGHT, to occasion, cause, J. 112. See Dȳȝt.  
 To-FYLCHED, *p. t.* seized, pulled down, GK. 1172.  
 To-FLEN, to flee, GC. 210.  
 To-HEWE, to cut in pieces, GK. 1853.  
 ToKE, *p. t.* gave, GC. 294.  
 ToLE, weapon, GK. 413, 2260.  
 ToLKE, man, GK. 1775, 1811, 1966. See TULK.  
 ToME, leisure, AA. xxv. 2, MS. D.  
 To-MORN, To-MORNE, to morrow, GK. 548, 756, 1097.  
 ToNE, *p. p.* betaken, committed, GK. 2159.  
 TOPPYNG, mane? GK. 191.  
 ToR, ToRE, tedious, difficult, GK. 165, 719. AA. xv. 8. See TEIR.  
 To-RACED, *p. p.* run down, GK. 1168.  
 ToRET, *p. p.* turreted, GK. 960.  
 ToRFEIR, hardship, GC. 876.  
 ToRNAYEEZ, *pr. t.* turns, wheels, GK. 1767.  
 ToRNAYLE, task? GK. 1540. Perhaps we should read ToRvAYLE, labor, from Isl. *torvelldr*.  
 ToRRIS, towers, GC. 42; high rocks, 42. In this last sense it is still used in the North, but Jamieson blunders at it, *more suo*.  
 ToRTORS, turtles, GK. 612.  
 To-STIFFILIT, *p. p.* overthrown, GC. 625. See Brockett, v. *stavelling*.  
 To-TACHCHED, *p. p.* fastened, tied, GK. 579. See TACHEZ.  
 ToTES, *pr. t.* peeps, GK. 1476.  
 To-TURNIT, *p. t.* turned? GC. 704.  
 ↑ Tow, two, TG. 35.  
 ToWCHEZ, covenants? GK. 1677.  
 ToWEN, *p. p.* fatigued, GK. 1093.  
 ToȝT, promptly? GK. 1869.  
 TRACE, path, business, J. 442.  
 TRAYFOLES, knots, devices, AA. xl. 3.  
 TRAYFOLEDE, *p. p.* ornamented with knots, AA. xl. 3. The MS. D. reads *trifeled*. From the Fr. *treffilier*, a chain-maker.  
 TRAYLEZ, *pr. t.* hunt by the track or scent, GK. 1700.  
 TRAIST, *adj.* trusty, GC. 756, 913.  
 TRAIST, *adv.* trustily, faithfully, GC. 292, 415, 752.  
 TRAIST, *p. t.* pledge faith, GC. 1122. TRAYST, *p. p.* assured, GK. 1211.  
 TRAISTFULLY, faithfully, GC. 197.  
 TRAISTLY, trustily, securely, GC. 704, 744.  
 TRAYTERES, (?) GK. 1700.  
 TRAMMES, stratagems, GK. 3.  
 TRANES, devices, knots, AA. xl. 3, MS. D.  
 TRANTES, *pr. t.* employs artifices or tricks, GK. 1707. See Towneley *Mysteries*, v. *Trant*, which is left unexplained in the Glossary.  
 TRAS, TRASE, track of game, AA. v. 11, xlvii. 12, MS. D.  
 TRASED, TRASIT, *p. p.* twined, GK. 1739; confounded? GC. 675.  
 TRAUAYL, fatigue, labor, GK. 2241. TRAVALIS, *pl.* GC. 898.  
 TRAUAYLED, TRAUALIT, TRAUELDE, *p. p.* travelled, GK. 1093; fatigued, AA. li. 6. GC. 34.  
 TRAUNT, trick, GK. 1700. See TRANTES.  
 TRAUTHE, TRAWETH, TRAWTHE, troth, faith, fidelity, GK. 403, 626, 1050, 1545, 1638.  
 TRawe, to believe, GK. 70, 94. TRawe, *pr. t.* 1396. TRawe, *imp.* trust, 2112. See Trowe.  
 TREJETED, *p. p.* marked, adorned, GK. 960.  
 TRENTALLES, service of thirty masses, AA. xvii. 10.  
 TRESSOUR, head-dress, GK. 1739.  
 TREST, firmly, trustily, GC. 526.  
 TRESTES, TRESTEZ, trestles, supports of a table, GK. 884, 1648.  
 TRETE, row, array, AA. xxviii. 3.  
 TRETID, *p. t.* entreated, GC. 1066.  
 TREUX, truce, GC. 572.  
 TREW, truce, GC. 1122.  
 TREWLOUES, TREWLUFFES, TRULOFEZ, true-love knots, GK. 612. AA. xxviii. 3, xl. 3.  
 TRICHERIE, treachery, GK. 4.  
 TRYED, *p. p.* fine, costly, good, GK. 77, 219.  
 TRIFELED, see TRAYFOLEDE.  
 TRISTE, appointed station in hunting, AA.

iii. 11. TRISTIS, *pl.* AA. iii. 8, 9. See Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*, vol. ii. p. 355.  
 TRYSTER, station in hunting, GK. 1712.  
 TRISTORS, TRISTRES, TRYSTERES, *pl.* GK. 1146, 1170. AA. iii. 8, 9, MS. D.  
 TRYSTYLY, faithfully, GK. 2348.  
 †TRYVE for TRYVE, GC. 315.  
 TROCHET, (?) a term of architecture, GK. 795.  
 TROFELYTE, *p. p.* ornamented with knots, AA. xxviii. 3. See TRAYFOLEDE.  
 TROWE, to believe, GK. 2238. TROWE, *pr. t.* 813. TROWE, *imp.* GC. 129. See TRawe.  
 TRUE, (?) GK. 1210.  
 TRUMPES, TRUMPEZ, trumpets, GK. 116, 1016.  
 TRUSSEN, *pr. t.* pack up, GK. 1129.  
 TRWE, true, GK. 1091, 1514, 1845.  
 TRWLUF, TRWELUF, true love, GK. 1527, 1540.  
 TUGLIT, *p. p.* toiled, fatigued, GG. 34.  
 TULE, (?) GK. 568. See the next word.  
 TULY, seems to be equivalent, GK. 858, to *Toulouse*, 77; which place seems then to have been famed for its tapestries.  
 TULK, man, knight, GK. 3, 638, 2133.  
 TULKES, *pl.* 41. See TolKE.  
 TURATIS, turrets, GG. 42.  
 †TURNYGE for TURNYNGE, tournaying, AA. xl. 5.  
 TURSSIT, *p. t.* trussed, packed, GG. 224.  
 TUSCHEZ, tusks, GK. 1573, 1579.  
 TWYNE, TWYNNE, two, twain, GK. 425, 962, 1339.  
 TWYES, twice, GK. 1522.  
 TWYN, TWYNNE, to sever, part, GK. 2512. GG. 1240.  
 TWYNNEN, *p. p.* twined, GK. 191.

## U. V.

VCH, VCHE, each, GK. 101, 131, 628, 995.  
 VCH A, each, GK. 742, 997, 1262.  
 VCHON, VCHONE, each one, GK. 98, 657, 1113.  
 †UHEN, when, GC. 439, 460.

†UHER, UHERE, where, GC. 429, 509.  
 †UHY, why, GC. 429.  
 VMBE, around, about, GK. 589, 1830, 2034.  
 VMBE-CLIPPED, VMBE-CLYPPED, *p. t.* encircled, embraced, GK. 616. AA. x. 2, MS. D.  
 VMBE-FOLDES, *pr. t.* encircles, falls about, GK. 181.  
 VMBE-KESTEN, *p. t.* surrounded, GK. 1434.  
 VMBE-LAPPEZ, *pr. t.* enfolds, GK. 628.  
 UMBE-TEJE, *p. t.* inclosed, GK. 770.  
 VMBE-TORNE, about, around? GK. 184.  
 VMBE-WEUED, *p. t.* inclosed, GK. 581.  
 VMBYCLEDE, *p. p.* surrounded, AA. x. 2.  
 VMSTRODE, *p. t.* bestrode, GK. 81.  
 VMWYLLES, want of will, refusal, AA. xxxiii. 8, MS. D. Perhaps *agayne* in this line is an error for *at*. See VN-THANKES.  
 VNABASIT, *p. p.* undaunted, GG. 496.  
 VN-BENE, rugged, impassable, GK. 710. See BENE.  
 VNBLYTHE, mournful, GK. 746.  
 VNCELY, mischievous, GK. 1562.  
 VN-CLERE, cloudy, dark, AA. x. 2.  
 VNCOUTH, strange, marvellous, GK. 93, 1808.  
 VNDER, VNDRE, VNDRONE, VNDRONNE, VNDURE-NONE, nine o'clock in the forenoon, AA. vi. 7, xvii. 7. GC. 119.  
 VN-DY3T, *p. p.* undressed, GC. 453.  
 VNDO, to cut up game; a hunting term, GK. 1327.  
 VNETH, VNNETH, VNNETHES, scarcely, GK. 134. AA. li. 7. GK. 467.  
 VNFANE, *adj.* sorrowful, GG. 795.  
 VN-FAYNE, *adv.* unwillingly, AA. vii. 1.  
 VNFILD, *p. p.* not blown? GG. 352.  
 VNFRENDE, enemy, GG. 1239.  
 VNHAP, misfortune, GK. 438, 2511.  
 VNHARDELED, *p. t.* dispersed, GK. 1697.  
 From the Fr. *hardelle*, troupe. See the *Maister of the Game*, f. 100<sup>b</sup>, MS. Cott. Vesp. B. xii.  
 VNHENDELY, uncourteously, AA. xv. 5.

- VNLACE, to cut up; a hunting term, GK. 1606. VNLAISSIS, *pr. t.* unfasten, GG. 369. VNLAISSIT, *p. p.* unclothed, 294.
- VN-LAMYT, *p. p.* uninjured, GG. 442.
- VNLELE, disloyal, GG. 1107.
- VNLEUTE, disloyalty, GK. 2499.
- VN-LOUKED, *p. t.* unlocked, GK. 1201.
- VNLUSSUM, uncourteous, GG. 95.
- VN-METE, immense, GK. 208.
- VNQUART, uneasiness, GG. 675. It is applied to *horses*, therefore can scarcely be interpreted *sadness*, with Jamieson.
- VNRYDE, cruel, severe, GK. 630.
- VN-RYDELY, ruggedly, GK. 1432.
- VNRUSE, trouble, disquiet, GG. 499.
- VNSAUGHT, *p. p.* troubled, at strife, GG. 456.
- VN-SLAYN, *p. p.* not slain, GK. 1858.
- VN-SLYJE, careless, GK. 1209.
- VNSOUND, *n.* trouble, sorrow, GG. 590.
- VNSOUND, *adj.* sorrowful, GG. 638.
- VNSOUNDLY, mischievously? GK. 1438. See MS. Cott. Nero A. x. f. 59<sup>b</sup>.
- VN-SPARELY, unsparingly, GK. 979.
- VNSPURD, *p. p.* unasked, GK. 918.
- VNSTONAIT, *p. p.* not confounded, GG. 642.
- VN-THANKES, displeasure, adverse of will, AA. xxxiii. 8.
- VN-THRYUANDE, uncourteous, GK. 1499.
- VNTILLE, unto, AA. liv. 13.
- VNTYJTEL, merrily? GK. 1114.
- VN-TRAWTHE, unfaithfulness, GK. 2383.
- VP-BRAYDE, *p. p.* drawn up, GK. 781.
- VPON, at, GK. 9, 301, 1934.
- VRYOUN, GK. 608. Since I wrote the note on this term, p. 317, I have met with two original documents, which confirm my conjecture as to the correctness of the term *hourson*, and its signification. The first is a receipt from Guillaume de Leiry, embroiderer and armourer, for forty-five *frans d'or*, paid by Charles of Navarre, "pour la façon d'une cote d'armes, et un *hourson* tout de velinau vermeil et asur, qu'il a fait de broderie pour le dit seigneur, et à ses armes," dated 8 Oct. 1378; and the second is a warrant from Louis, duke of Orleans, to pay to Colin Pilleur, armourer, the sum of twenty *frans d'or*, for "un camail d'acier qu'il a baillé et délivré pour notre bassinet, et pour avoir fait garnir notre dit bassinet pardedens de satin, de *hourson*, et autres estoffes pour garnir notre hernoiz de jambes pardedens de satin," dated 9 July, 1392. The dates of these documents, it will be observed, tend strongly to establish the period at which the English romance was composed.
- †U<sup>tt</sup>, with, GC. 441.
- VTTER, out, outward, GK. 1565.
- VAYLES, veils, GK. 958.
- VAILYEAND, strong, GG. 243; valiant, 1286.
- VAILYEING, of worth, worthy, GG. 328.
- †VAILL, to choose, GG. 211. See WAIL.
- VAYRES, (?) GK. 1015.
- †VAPPINS, weapons, GK. 820.
- †VEDIS, weeds, armour, GG. 563, 855.
- †VEIR, war, GG. 549.
- VENERY, science of hunting, GC. 85. GK. 495.
- VENGEAND, avenging, GG. 759.
- VENTAILE, VENTAILL, VENTALLE, moveable piece over the mouth, in front of the helmet, AA. xxxii. 5, xlv. 11. GG. 867. See AVENTAILE.
- VENTEROUS, venturesome, GK. 38, 100.
- VER, man, knight, GK. 866.
- VERAMENT, truly, GK. 32, 83, 437.
- VERDURE, green, GK. 161.
- VERNAGE, kind of white wine, AA. xxxvi. 2. See Tyrwhitt's Gloss.
- VERRAY, true, GK. 161, 957.
- VERRYS, glasses, AA. xxxvi. 2.
- VESIAND, viewing, GG. 243.
- VEWTERS, men who tracked the deer by the *fewte* or odor, GK. 1146.
- UYAGE, journey, expedition, GK. 535.
- †VIGHT, brave, GK. 325.
- VYLANY, VYLANYE, fault, GK. 345, 634.
- VIST, *p. t.* saw, GK. 494.
- VOYDE, to quit, GK. 346. VOYDEZ, *pr. t.* casts, 1342. VOYDED, *p. t.* got rid of, 1518; *p. p.* void, free, 634.

## W.

- WA, WAA, *n.* mischief, sorrow, AA. v. 4. GG. 58.
- WA, *adj.* sorrowful, GG. 1185.
- WADE, to pass, penetrate, GG. 568.
- WAGE, surety? GK. 533.
- WAYEMETTEDE, *p. t.* lamented, AA. ix. 3. See WAYMENT.
- WAIF, to wave, be agitated, GG. 440.
- WAYKE, weak, GK. 282.
- WAIL, choice, GG. 982.
- WAIL, WALE, to seek, GK. 398; choose or possess, 1238. AA. xxvii. 3. GG. 1096; select, GG. 361, 784. WALIT, *p. t.* chose, 7, 549. WALED, WAILIT, *p. p.* chosen, GK. 1276. GG. 587.
- WAILL, abundance? GG. 223, 1339. See WALE.
- WAYMENT, *p. t.* lamented, AA. ix. 3, MS. D. Jamieson erroneously takes the word for a noun. See Roquefort, v. *Weimentaunts*.
- WAYMYNGES, lamentations, AA. vii. 9, MS. D.
- †WAYNE for VAYNE, GC. 128.
- WAYNED, *p. t.* and *p. p.* sent? GK. 264, 984, 1032, 2456, 2459. See other instances of this word in MS. Cott. Nero A. x. ff. 79<sup>b</sup>, 80<sup>b</sup>, 89<sup>b</sup>.
- WAYNES, *pr. t.* strikes, AA. xlii. 2, xlviii. 3.
- WAYNEZ, *pr. t.* raises, GK. 1743. WAYNED, *p. t.* raised, AA. xxxii. 5, MS. D.
- WAYTEZ, WAYTTIS, *pr. t.* watches, looks, GK. 1186, 2289. AA. xlviii. 3. WAYTED, *p. t.* looked, GK. 2163.
- WAYTH, WATHE, game, venison, GK. 1381, hunting, AA. xxxiv. 5.
- WAYUED, *p. t.* stroked, moved, GK. 306.
- WAKED, *p. t.* kept awake, sat up at night, GK. 1094.
- WAKKEST, weakest, GK. 354.
- WAKNED, *p. t.* awakened, GK. 119; lighted, 1650.
- WALD, *n.* plain, GK. 587.
- WALD, to wield, GG. 7; enjoy, possess, 450.
- WALT, *p. t.* GK. 231, 485.
- WALE, WALLE, *adj.* choice, good, excellent, GK. 1010, 1403, 1712, 1759.
- WALKEZ, *pr. t.* spreads, GK. 1521.
- WALLANDE, boiling, fervent, GK. 1762.
- WALOUR, valour, GK. 1518.
- WALT, *p. t.* threw, cast, GK. 1336.
- WALTERED, *p. t.* rolled, GK. 684. See WELTERAND.
- WAN, *p. t.* came, GK. 2231; won, gained, GG. 70.
- WANDE, bough, tree? GK. 1161.
- WANDRETH, sorrow, AA. xvii. 8. GG. 700, 1199.
- WANE, *n.* mansion, habitation, hall, AA. xiii. 3, xxv. 4. GG. 211, 237, 494, 781, 1339.
- WANE, *adj.* wanting, deficient, GK. 493.
- WANYT, *p. t.* diminished, GG. 1208.
- WANT, *pr. t.* fail, GK. 203.
- WAP, blow, GK. 2249.
- WAPPED, *p. t.* flew with violence, as an arrow, GK. 1161; rushed, as the wind, 2004. WAPPIT, *p. p.* thrown open quickly, GG. 127..
- WAR! exclamation of the hunters, GK. 1158. Mr. Guest explains it, erroneously, as I judge, by *fear*, Hist. E. R. ii. 169. See the *Towneley Mysteries*, pp. 36, 41. Thus also in the *Maister of the Game*, in the instructions for hunting the hare, the horsemen are directed "for to kepe that none hownde folowe to sheepe ne to other beestis, and if thei do, to ascrie hem sore, and bilaisshe hem wel, seying lowde, Ware! Ware! ha, ha! Ware!" MS. Cott. Vesp. B. xii. f. 97<sup>b</sup>.
- WAR, worse, GG. 1033.
- WAR, WARE, aware, GK. 764, 1586; wary, GC. 603.
- WARE, to use, employ, GK. 402, 1235. WARET, *p. p.* acted, 2344.
- WARY, WARRY, to curse, AA. xxxiii. 7. MS. D. GG. 1082. WARIED, *p. t.* AA. ix. 3, MS. D.
- WARYS, to protect, defend, GG. 1006.
- WARYST, *p. p.* GK. 1094. See WERE.

- WARLY, warily, GK. 1186, 1900.
- WARLIEST, strongest, GG. 493. Jamieson misunderstands the word.
- WARLOKER, more warily, GK. 677.
- WARNE, to forbid, prevent, GG. 253. c. 93. See WERNE.
- WARP, to cast, GK. 2253. WARP, *p. t.* cast, uttered, GK. 224, 1423, 2025.
- WARTHE, water-ford, GK. 715. See Grose's Glossary, *in v.*
- WASCH, to consume? GK. 2401.
- WAST, waist, GK. 144.
- WASTE, wilderness, GK. 2098.
- WASTELL, fine bread, GG. 223.
- WATHE, injury, danger, GK. 2355.
- WATHELY, severely, mortally, AA. xxiv. 4, liv. 3. Pinkerton misprints the word *woyeley* (for *wothely*) which gives occasion to Jamieson to trifle as usual.
- WAT3, was, GK. *passim*. Used for *had*, as in German, 1413.
- WAUNDEN, *p. p.* wound, bound, GK. 215.
- WAX, *p. t.* waxed, AA. xliii. 12.
- WE! Ah! GK. 2185. WE-LOO, alas! GK. 2208.
- WEDE, armour, clothing, part of the dress, GK. 831, 1310, 2358. WEDES, WEDEZ, WEDIS, WEDYS, *pl.* armour, garments, 151, 271, 861. AA. i. 9, ii. 9. GG. 759; foliage of the groves, GK. 508.
- WEDE, *adj.* mad, AA. xliii. 12.
- WEDYRS, *pl.* had weather, AA. xxvi. 3. Cf. *Towneley Myst.* p. 98.
- WEES, knights, AA. liv. 3, MS. D. See WY.
- WEILD, WELDE, WELDEN, to possess, enjoy, GK. 835, 837, 1064. AA. xxvii. 3, xxxiii. 8; rule, GG. 1188; sustain, J. 163. WEILDIS, WELDEZ, *pr. t.* possesses, GK. 1528, 2454. GG. 781; rules, 174. WEILD, *pr. t.* rule, 151. WEILD, WEILDIT, *p. t.* possessed, had, GG. 37, 941.
- WEIR, doubt, GG. 469, 569.
- WEIR, WERE, war, hostility, combat, GK. 271, 1628. AA. xxxix. 8. GG. 57, 162, 1137, 1198, 1260.
- WELAWYLLE, exceeding wild, rugged, dangerous, GK. 2084.
- WELA WYNNE, well joyous, GK. 518. The adv. *welawynnelly* occurs in the same MS. Nero A. x. f. 68<sup>b</sup>.
- WELE, wealth, riches, GK. 7, 60, 1270, 1394. GG. 73; joy, GK. 485, 1371, 1767, 2490; good fortune, 997, 2134.
- WELKYN, air, sky, GK. 525, 1696.
- WELLE, grassy plain, sward, AA. iii. 2.
- WELLE, to boil, AA. xxv. 4.
- WELLING, boiling, TG. 239.
- † WELLONY, villainy, GC. 194.
- WELNE3, WELNEJE, almost, GK. 7, 867.
- WELTERAND, rolling, GG. 469.
- WELTERES, *pr. t.* rolls, GG. 290. See WALTERED.
- WEMELES, unhurt, GG. 99. Jamieson is mistaken in rendering it *blameless*.
- WEN, WENE, doubt, GG. 35, 98, 282.
- WEND, WENDE, to go, GK. 559, 1028, 1053. GG. 57, 99. GC. 515. c. 374. WENDIS, *pr. t.* GG. 287. WENDIS, *imp.* 114.
- WENDE, *p. t.* GK. 900, 1161. c. 332.
- WENT, WENTE, *p. p.* gone, GK. 1712. AA. i. 9, xxxiv. 5, MS. D. GG. 1132.
- WENDEZ, *pr. t.* turns, GK. 2152.
- WENE, *pr. t.* ween, think, GK. 270, 1226.
- WENYS, AA. xlv. 2. WEND, WENDE, WENT, *p. t.* GK. 669, 1711. AA. l. 2. GG. 1260.
- WENER, fairer, GK. 945. See the Gloss. to Molbech's edit. of the old Danish translation of the first eight books of the Old Testament, 8vo. 1828, v. *Wæn*.
- WENGED, *p. t.* avenged, GK. 1518.
- WEPAND, weeping, GG. 973.
- WER, worse, GK. 1015. See WAR.
- WERBELANDE, whistling? GK. 2004.
- WERD, fate, GK. 1082. See WYRDE.
- WERDEZ, *pr. t.* are, GK. 1542.
- WERE, had, GK. 244.
- WERE, *p. t.* wore, GK. 1928.
- WERE, to defend, guard, GK. 2015, 2041. GG. 58, 1188.
- WERE, to make war, GG. 287.



- WERY, *pr. t.* worry, AA. v. 4.  
 WERYIT, *p. t.* cursed, AA. ix. 3. See WARY.  
 WERN, to forbid, GC. 138, 477. WERNES, *pr. t.* denies, GK. 1824. WERNED, *p. p.* 1494. See WARNE.  
 WERNYNGE, denial, GK. 2253.  
 WERRE, war, GK. 16. WERREZ, *pl.* 720.  
 WERRYOURIS, warriors, GG. 7.  
 WESAUND, wind-pipe, GK. 1336.  
 WESCHE, *p. t.* washed, GK. 887.  
 WET, *p. t.* pierced? GG. 759.  
 WETE, *adj.* (?) AA. vii. 9.  
 WETE, WETENE, WETTE, to know, wit, AA. viii. 11, xvi. 2, xix. 3, MS. D. GC. 379. See WIETE, WIT.  
 WETERLY, eagerly? fiercely? GK. 1706.  
 WETING, knowledge, AA. xix. 4, MS. D.  
 WEUCH, woe, mischief, GG. 700.  
 WEUE, to give, GK. 1975. WEUED, *p. t.* 2359.  
 WEX, *p. t.* waxed, GK. 319. See WAX.  
 WEJED, *p. t.* carried, GK. 1403.  
 WEJTHT, wight, GC. 375.  
 WHARRED, *p. t.* made a whirring noise, GK. 2203.  
 WHAT, how? GK. 1163, 2203.  
 WHAT SO, whatsoever, GK. 384, 1550.  
 WHEDER WARDE, whitherward, GK. 1053.  
 WHENE, queen, GK. 74, 2492.  
 WHETHEN, WHYTHENE, whence, GK. 871. AA. xxviii. 12. In the second instance the scribe of the MS. D. has incorrectly written *whelene*, on which Jamieson wastes a weak conjecture.  
 WHETHER, either of two, GK. 203.  
 WIGHT, active, GC. 563. See WIGHT.  
 WHYRLANDE, rushing, GK. 2222.  
 WHYSSYNES, cushions, GK. 877.  
 WHOS, whoso, GC. 256, 268.  
 WY, WYGHE, WYȝ, WYȝE, man, knight, GK. 131, 249, 384, 581, 1487. AA. xxix. 1, xxxii. 2. GG. 57, 287. Applied to God, GK. 2441. WYES, WYIS, WYȝES, WYȝEZ, *pl.* GK. 1403, 1167. AA. xxvi. 9. GG. 151.  
 WICH, what, GK. 918.  
 WICHT, brave, active, GG. 1248.  
 WICHTELY, actively, GG. 579.  
 WIETE, to know, AA. xix. 3, 12. See WETE, WIT.  
 WIGHT, WIGHTE, WYȝT, WYȝTE, WYȝT, brave, strong, active, AA. xlv. 1, l. 2, lii. 11. GG. 198, 656. GC. 53. J. 287. TG. 20. C. 432. See WȝT.  
 WIGHTELYE, WIGHTILYE, WYȝTELYE, actively, J. 144, 146. GK. 200.  
 WYȝTENES, bravery, courage, AA. xxi. 4.  
 WYȝTIS, *gen. c.* person's, AA. ii. 9.  
 WYKIS, corners of the mouth, GK. 1572.  
 WYLDE, used substantively for beasts of the chase in general, GK. 1150, 2003; and in the singular number, 1167, 1586, 1900, the words *deer, boar, fox*, being respectively understood.  
 WYLE, WYLY, wily, GK. 1728. Used substantively, 1905.  
 WILELE, warily, AA. xlv. 3.  
 WILFULLY, willingly, AA. xlix. 1.  
 WYLYDE, wild, amorous, GK. 2367.  
 WYLYNYNG, will, GK. 1546.  
 WILSOME, WYLSUM, pleasant, fair, GK. 689. GC. 532.  
 WYLT, *p. p.* escaped, GK. 1711.  
 WIN AWAY, to depart from, GG. 1046.  
 WYND, wind, GG. 770. Jamieson sadly misinterprets this line, owing to Pinkerton having printed *and* for *ad*, which latter in the edit. 1508 is a misprint for *as*.  
 WYNDEZ, *pr. t.* returns, GK. 530.  
 WYNNE, *n.* joy, GK. 15, 1765, 2420, MS. D. GC. 448.  
 WYNNE, *adj.* goodly, GK. 1032, 2430, 2456.  
 WYNNE, to come, arrive at, GK. 402, 1537, 2215. WYNNEZ, *pr. t.* proceeds, goes, 1569, 2044.  
 WYNNE-LYCH, cheerful, GK. 980.  
 WYNT-HOLE, wind-hole? GK. 1336.  
 WYPPED, *p. t.* struck, GK. 2249. See WAP.  
 WYRDE, fate, GK. 1752, 2134, 2418. WYRDES, *pl.* 1968. See WERD.  
 WIRKAND, making, GG. 701.  
 WYSSE, to teach, direct, GK. 549. WISE, WYSSE, *pr. t.* 739. GG. 820, 1033.

- WYSTE, WYSTEN, *p. t.* knew, GK. 461, 1087, 1435.  
 WYSTY, (?) GK. 2189.  
 WIT, with, GK. 113. WYT INNE, within, 1435.  
 WIT, (?) GG. 1137.  
 WIT, WYT, to know, learn, GK. 131, 255, 1508.  
 WYTEZ, *pr. t.* looks on, GK. 2050.  
 WITH, WYTH, by, GK. 664, 1153, 1229, 2416.  
 WITH THI, on condition that, AA. lii. 10.  
 WYTIS, *pr. t.* goes, departs, AA. xvii. 7.  
 WITLES, WITLESE, deprived of reason, GG. 573, 972, 1014.  
 WYTERLY, certainly, GC. 312.  
 WY3CREST, (?) GK. 1591.  
 WY3T, *n.* wight, person, GK.  
 WY3T, WY3T, WY3THT, brisk, active, brave, GK. 119, 1762. GC. 15, 24, 260. See WIGHT.  
 WY3TEST, bravest, GK. 261.  
 WY3TLY, quickly, GK. 688.  
 WLONK, fair, beautiful, GK. 515, 581, 1977, 1988, 2432.  
 WLONKEST, fairest, GK. 2025. AA. i. 9, xxvii. 9, liv. 7, MS. D. Jamieson explains it falsely by *gaudily dressed* and *rich*.  
 WNMANGLIT, *p. p.* unmangled, GC. 720.  
 WOD, WODE, Woud, mad with anger, GK. 2289. AA. xlii. 2. GC. 573, 972, 1014.  
 WOD-WRAITH, 770.  
 WOD, *p. t.* went, GK. 787.  
 WOD-CRAFTEZ, *pl.* skill in the arts of the chace, GK. 1605.  
 WOD-LYND, foliage of the wood, forest, GC. 123.  
 WODWOS, *pl.* wild men, monsters, GK. 721.  
 WOKE, *p. t.* watched, sate up at night, GK. 1025.  
 WOLDE, to have power over, AA. lii. 3. MS. D. reads at wolde, in which case it is a substantive.  
 †WOLED, would, GK. 1508.  
 WOMBE, belly, GK. 144.  
 WON, WONE, power or will, GK. 1238. GC. 37.  
 WON, WONE, dwelling, mansion, chamber, GK. 257, 736, 906, 2490. WONEZ, WONUS, *pl.* 685, 1051, 1386, 2400. GC. 520, 532. Often used for the singular.  
 WON, WONE, to dwell, GK. 257, 814. WONEZ, WONYES, *pr. t.* 399, 2098. WONDE, WONED, *p. t.* 50, 701, 721. WONYD, *p. p.* 2114.  
 WONDE, to avoid, shrink back, GK. 563. WONDE, *pr. t.* avoid, omit, 488.  
 WONDER, *n.* marvel? GK. 16.  
 WONDER, WONDERE, WONDIR, WNDIR, WOUNDER, WOUNDIR, WUNDIR, *adv.* wondrous, GK. 2200. GC. 35, 86, 353, 930, 1002, 1104. GC. 34. The second of these instances is printed *wound*, by mistake, in the edit. of 1508: on which see Jamieson's *nugæ*.  
 WONDERLY, WONDIRLY, wondrously, GK. 787, 1025. GC. 162.  
 †WONE, one, GC. 89, 297.  
 WONE, estimation? GK. 1269; plenty, J. 495.  
 WONYNG, WONNYNGE, dwelling, AA. xxv. 4.  
 WONNEN, *p. t.* conducted, brought, GK. 831.  
 WONEN, WONNEN, *p. p.* arrived, come, GK. 461, 1365; brought, 2091.  
 WONT, use, custom, GK. 17; lack, want, 131.  
 WONT, WONTEZ, *pr. t.* fail, fails, GK. 987, 1062.  
 WORDE, fame, reputation, GK. 1521.  
 WORLDE, Nature, GK. 530.  
 WORMEZ, dragons, serpents, GK. 720.  
 WORRE, worse, GK. 1588, 1591.  
 WORT, herb, GK. 518.  
 WORTH, to be, happen, GK. 238, 1202, 1214, 1302. GC. 1096. WORTHEZ, WORTHIS, *pr. t.* is, becomes, will or shall be, GK. 2035, 1106, 1387. GC. 332, 833, 1239.  
 WORTH, WORTHE, *subj.* be, GK. 2127, 2374.  
 WORTHED, WOURTHIT, *p. t.* was, became, 485. GC. 973, 1054; would be, GK. 2096.  
 WORTHED, *p. p.* become, 678.  
 WORTHE, worthy, GK. 559. WORTHY is used substantively, 1276, 1508.  
 WORTHELY, WORTHILY, WORTHILYCH, WOR3ELY, *adj.* worthy, honorable, GK.

343. AA. xxviii. 10, xxxv. 11, MS. D., xxxviii. 6, xlvi. 3.
- WORTHY, *adv.* worthily, GK. 1477.
- WORTHILY, honorably, properly, GK. 72, 144.
- WORTHILIESTE, worthiest, AA. xxix. 1.
- WOT, WOSTE, *pr. t.* know, knowest, GK. 24. AA. xx. 1.
- WOTHE, harm, injury, mischief, GK. 222, 488, 1576.
- WOUGH, WUGH, harm, mischief, GG. 1067, 1199. See WOZE.
- WOUDIS, *pr. t.* becomes, will become, GG. 822. See WORTH.
- WOUT, countenance, GG. 1278.
- WOWCHE SAF, *pr. t.* vouchsafe, GK. 1391.
- WOWES, walls, GK. 1180.
- WOXES, *pr. t.* grows, waxes, GK. 518. WOX, *p. t.* waxed, GG. 795, 1185. See WAX, WEX.
- WOZE, wrong, harm, GK. 1550.
- WOZE, wall, GK. 858. WOZEZ, *pl.* 1650.
- WRAIGHLY, evilly, GG. 162. Jamieson interprets it *strangely* or *awkwardly*.
- WRAITH, wrath, GG. 973.
- WRAITHLY, wrathly, GG. 298, 563, 1014. Cf. RAITHLY.
- WRAKE, destruction, mischief, GK. 16. AA. xvii. 8.
- WRASST, *adj.* loud, stern, GK. 1423.
- WRASST, (?) GK. 1663. See *Towneley Mysteries*, p. 178.
- WRASST, *p. p.* disposed, GK. 1482.
- WRATHED, *p. p.* ensnared? GK. 2420.
- WREEKE, revenge, J. 424.
- WREJANDE, reviling, GK. 1706. See Grose, v. *Wree*.
- WRIGHTIS, carpenters, GG. 469.
- WRO, obscure corner, GK. 2222.
- WROTH, WROTHE, angry, violent, GK. 70, 319, 525, 1706.
- WROTH, *p. t.* moved round, GK. 1200.
- WROTHELY, angrily, GK. 2289.
- WROTHELOKER, more angrily, GK. 2344.
- † WROUGHT for RAUGHT, reached, AKC. 202.
- WROJT, WROJTEN, *p. t.* occasioned, GK. 3, 22.
- WRUCKED, *p. p.* thrown up, AKC. 187.
- WRUXLED, *p. p.* clad, folded? GK. 2191.
- WUGH, see WOUGH.
- WUNDIE, see WONDER.
- Y.
- YARD, staff, AKC. 246.
- YARE, *adj.* ready, TG. 101. c. 114.
- YARE, JARE, *adv.* quickly, soon, GK. 2410. gr.k. 318; ere, previously, TG. 126, 137.
- YARNYNG, desire, GG. 426.
- YEFTYS, gifts, GG. 643.
- YEID, *p. t.* sent, GG. 228, 1116.
- YELDE, *p. t.* requite, GC. 527, 529.
- YENE, see EGHNE.
- YHIT, yet, GG. 95.
- YHUDE, YUDE, *p. t.* went, GG. 304, 577.
- YND, India, gr.k. 281.
- YODE, *p. t.* went, J. 87. TG. 77.
- YOLDIN, *p. p.* yielded, GG. 1126.
- YRNE, iron, GK. 2267.
- YRNES, harness, armour, GK. 729.
- YUDE, see YHUDE.
- YZE, eye, GK. 198. GC. 324. YZEN, *pl.* GK. 82, 304, 684.
- 3.
- 3AYNED, *p. p.* hallooed, GK. 1724.
- † 3AMEDE, apparently an error for 3AMEREDE, *p. t.* cried, AA. vii. 9.
- 3AMERS, *pr. t.* cries, AA. vii. 9, MS. D.
- 3AMYRLY, lamentably, AA. vii. 8.
- 3ARANDE, 3ARRANDE, loud, snarling, GK. 1595, 1724.
- 3ARE, see YARE.
- 3ARKKEZ, *pr. t.* makes ready, disposes, GK. 2410. 3ARKED, *p. p.* made ready, 820.
- 3AULAND, yelling, AA. vii. 8, MS. D.
- 3AULE, 3AULES, *pr. t.* howl, yells, GK. 1453. AA. vii. 9, MS. D.
- 3E, yea, GK. 813, 1091, 1497; still, ever, 1729.
- 3EDE, 3EDEN, *p. t.* went, GK. 817, 1122, 1400, 1684.
- 3EDERLY, promptly, soon, GK. 453, 1215, 1485, 2325.

- 3EFE, 3EYFE, if, GK. 198, 388.  
 3ELDE, 3ELDEZ, *pr. t.* yield, requite, yields,  
     pays, GK. 498, 1038, 1215, 1263. 3ELDE,  
     3ELDEN, *p. t.* yielded, gave, 67, 1595,  
     1981.  
 3ELLE, *pr. t.* yell, GK. 1453.  
 3ELPYNG, pomp, ostentation, GK. 492.  
 3EP, 3EPE, active, alert, GK. 60, 105, 284,  
     1510; fair? 951.  
 3EPLY, promptly, GK. 1981, 2244.  
 3ER, year, GK. 60, *et alib.*  
 3ERN, 3ERNE, quickly, GK. 498; earnestly,  
     eagerly, 1478, 1526. AA. xlviii. 3.  
 3ERNES, 3IRNEZ, *pr. t.* passes? GK. 498, 529.  
 3ET, 3ETTE, yet, GK. 776, 1122.  
 3E3E, *pr. t.* ask, GK. 1215. 3E3ED, *p. t.* asked,  
     67.
- 3IF, if, GK. 1494, 1496.  
 3IRNEZ, see 3ERNES.  
 3OD, *p. t.* went, GK. 1146.  
 3OL, Christmas, GK. 284, 500.  
 3OLDEN, *p. t.* yielded, GK. 453, 820. See  
     3ELDE.  
 3OLLANDE, howling, yelling, AA. vii. 8.  
 3OL3E, yellow, tawny, GK. 951.  
 3OMERAND, moaning, whining, AA. vii. 8,  
     MS. D.  
 3OMERLY, lamentably, piteously, GK. 1453.  
 3ONGE, younger one, GK. 951.  
 3ONGE-3ER, youth, GK. 492.  
 3ONKE, young person, GK. 1526.  
 3ORE, long time, GK. 2114.  
 †3OWE, your, GK. 1092.



## CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS.

---

- P. 7, l. 107, *for ftif read ftif.*  
P. 12, l. 251, *for for-rad read for rad.*  
P. 12, l. 256, *insert a comma after Nay.*  
P. 15, l. 343, *dele the comma after worpilych, and insert it after 3e.*  
P. 15, l. 353, *for the semicolon substitute a full stop, and l. 357, for the comma place a semicolon.*  
P. 17, l. 395, *for p<sup>n</sup> read p<sup>n</sup>.*  
P. 17, l. 417, *insert a comma at the end of the line, and in the next line after hede.*  
P. 21, l. 535, *for amo<sup>o</sup> read anio<sup>o</sup>.*  
P. 22, l. 561, *for the comma place a full stop.*  
P. 22, l. 563, *a note of interrogation would be better after wonde.*  
P. 23, l. 591, *for ou<sup>o</sup> (sic in MS.) read oup<sup>o</sup>.*  
P. 27, l. 700, *insert a comma after Holy-hede, and dele it after bonk.*  
P. 29, l. 763, *insert commas after felf and fegge.*  
P. 32, l. 850, *for chefly read chefly.*  
P. 33, l. 859, *insert commas after fete and flet.*  
P. 33, l. 862, *for hem in the MS. perhaps we should read hym.*  
P. 34, l. 882, *for be-fete read he fete.*  
P. 34, l. 893, *for aylawes read ay lawes, and for fle3e3 (sic MS.) read fle3e.*  
P. 38, l. 1018, *for pauēture read pauēture.*  
P. 44, l. 1174, *dele the comma after abloy.*  
P. 48, l. 1264-5-6, *for the comma substitute a semicolon after nobele, and in the next line a comma instead of the semicolon, after dede3, and in the third a semicolon for the comma, after nyfen.*

- P. 50, l. 1337, *for fcharp read fcharp.*
- P. 52, l. 1378, *for fchyre (sic MS.) we should read fchyre, and grete is an error of the press for grece. Cf. ll. 425, 2313.*
- P. 52, l. 1402, *for e read pe.*
- P. 54, l. 1442, *supply the defect in the MS. by And euere.*
- P. 54, l. 1443-4, *the hiatus may be restored with certainty, For pre at and fped hym.*  
 I am indebted for this suggestion to the Rev. R. Garnett.
- P. 55, l. 1466, *for rouez read ronez.*
- P. 56, l. 1513, *for lellayk read lel layk.*
- P. 58, l. 1565, *for maden read made.*
- P. 59, l. 1572, *dele the conjectural reading, as unnecessary.*
- P. 59, l. 1580, *in this line and seems wanting after watz.*
- P. 60, l. 1623, *a verb is apparently wanting after lorde.*
- P. 66, l. 1794, *for kyffe read kyffe.*
- P. 67, l. 1815, *so reads the MS., but the sense would seem to require nade or nozt.*
- P. 72, l. 1940, *insert a comma after ze.*
- P. 75, l. 2035, *dele the comma after filke.*
- P. 76, l. 2059, *for if read if.*
- P. 77, l. 2083, *for fchownd read fchowued.*
- P. 77, l. 2162, *dele the conjectural reading.* In the ancient manuscript romances of the Round Table the name of *Hector des Mares*, (as printed in Malory,) the natural son of king Ban, is always written *Hestor*.
- P. 82, l. 2220, *for a wharf read a-wharf.*
- P. 84, l. 2293, *for fton read fton.*
- P. 85, l. 2308, *for refcowe read refcowe.*
- P. 85, l. 2321, *dele the comma after worlde.*
- P. 86, l. 2335, *for dernely read deruely.*
- P. 86, l. 2344, *dele the comma after haf.*
- P. 88, l. 2392, *for of read of.*
- P. 89, l. 2420, *substitute a semicolon for the comma after wyles.*
- P. 90, ll. 2446, 2452, *perhaps Morgne should be printed Morgue, as in the French romances.*
- P. 90, l. 2447, *dele the comma after clergie.*
- P. 90, l. 2461, *for gomen, (sic MS.) we should probably read gome.*
- P. 97, iv. 2. *The lines have been, by mistake of the printer, numbered erroneously from this place, and the stanzas are therefore always referred to in the Glossary. The total number of lines in the poem is 716.*

- P. 97, iv. 5, *for* forfothte *read* forfothte, *which is, apparently, an error for* forfothe.
- P. 99, vii. 6, *for* este *we should no doubt read* loweste.
- P. 100, ix. 5, *for* ftottyde *read* ftottyde.
- P. 110, xxv. 9, *for* medecyes *read* medecynes.
- P. 111, xxvi. 9, *paire is evidently a mistake of the scribe for* pai.
- P. 112, xxix. 6, *perhaps* The *is here superfluous*.
- P. 115, xxxiii. 1, 2, *transpose the points at the conclusion of these two lines*.
- P. 123, xlviii. 1, *for* clenly MS. D. *reads* kenely.
- P. 127, lv. 6, Yglande, *sic MS. for* Ynglande.
- P. 131. This Romance is reprinted from the re-impression made at Edinburgh, 4to, 1827, but it was not observed, till too late, that most of the mere errors of the press in the old edition of 1508 were there corrected. The emendations therefore now made are such as escaped the notice of the recent editor, or were neglected by him.
- P. 137, l. 166, *for* And *we should, no doubt, read* In.
- P. 138, l. 191, *the edition of 1508 reads* consing, *not* cousing.
- P. 141, l. 261, *for* ye *read* þe.
- P. 143, l. 300, *for* mynde (*sic edit.*) *we should read* myude.
- P. 161, l. 779, *for* fen fpeir *the editor of 1827 conjectures* fen ye fpeir, *but I think my own emendation more correct*.
- P. 174, l. 1118, *for* scheth *read* scheith; *the edit. 1508 has* schelth.
- P. 178, l. 1227, *for* led *we should perhaps read* ledis.
- P. 180, l. 1271, *for* luffum *read* luffum.
- P. 181, l. 1299, *for* That *the sense seems to require* And.
- P. 181, l. 1300, *the edit. 1508 has* wounyn, *not* wounen, *and in the next line* forlonne, *not* fortonne.
- P. 182, l. 1332, *for* be hald *read* behald.
- P. 182, l. 1334, *the edit. 1508 has* douffipere, *which was altered injudiciously in edit. 1827*.
- P. 187, l. 9, *for* ffronge (*sic MS.*) *we should read* frange.
- P. 194, l. 259, *for* hythēt *we should read* hyȝtht.
- P. 196, l. 328, *for* knyȝtt<sup>s</sup> *the sense requires* knyȝt.
- P. 200, l. 465, G. *is perhaps superfluous*.
- P. 225, l. 45, *for* both blyth & blee *we should probably read* so bryght of blee.
- P. 228, l. 125, *for* eu ye *read* eu<sup>2</sup>ye.
- P. 229, l. 166, *the inverted commas should be placed before* Kay.
- P. 240, l. 469, *for* shoutest *read* shontest.
- P. 252, l. 231, *in the margin, for* inviffible *read* inviffible.



- P. 283, l. 205, *for wifn read wifh*.
- P. 289, l. 18, *the seems to be wanting*.
- P. 298<sup>b</sup>, l. 62. The name of *Gromer Somer Joure* would seem to have been taken from the printed *Morte d'Arthur*, (vol. ii. p. 392, ed. Southey,) and, consequently, prove the poem to be later than the year 1485. The correct reading is *Gromer Gromerson*, or *Gromorssum*, as appears from vol. i. p. 231.
- P. 298<sup>x</sup>, l. 300. In reference to *Gyngolyne*, (see p. 347) may be added the title of the romance in the Lambeth MS. 305, f. 73. "A tretys of one *Gyngelayne*, othirwise namyd by Kyng Arthure *Ly beus disconeus*, that was bastard son to Sir Gaweyne."

## NOTES.

- P. 304, l. 26. A third portion of the same romance, but imperfect at the beginning and end, is preserved in a MS. in Trinity College, Dublin, marked D. 4. 12. It is written in a late hand of the fifteenth century, and commences towards the end of the third *passus*, and ends in the middle of the twelfth. It occupies forty quarto leaves.
- P. 307, l. 12, *for* Helie de Borron *read* Walter Map, and *dele* the remainder of the sentence.
- P. 310, last line. In addition to the references here given, Jones's *Relicks of the Welsh Bards*, 4to, Lond. 1794, p. 108, contains a notice of this Christmas play, as performed in Oxfordshire.
- P. 318, l. 30. Consult also Thoms' Notes on Aubrey, in the *Anecdotes and Traditions*, 4to, 1839, p. 98, published by the Camden Society.
- P. 319, l. 31. In a collection of Welsh arms made in 1560, and printed in Owen's *British Remains*, 8vo, 1777, Gwalchmai ab Gwyar is said to bear "*Quarterly, ermines and ermine, a fess argent*," p. 49.
- P. 320, l. 13. An abridgement of this legend may be found inserted in the Chronicle of John of Glastonbury, printed by Hearne, vol. i. p. 77, 8vo, 1726.
- P. 320, l. 27, *for* sixteenth *read* fourteenth.
- P. 330, l. 27. In the *Roman de Lancelot*, vol. iii. f. xlv<sup>b</sup>. *Cardueil* in *Galles* is distinguished from *Carlyon*.
- P. 332, l. 27. Malory's authority is to be found in the *Roman de Lancelot*, vol. iii. f. cxciii<sup>b</sup>, edit. 1513.

- P. 341, l. 11. Since I wrote this note I have found Arthur's expedition to Jerusalem mentioned in one of the interpolated passages of Nennius, ap. Gale, cap. 63. He is stated to have caused a consecrated cross to be made, by which he conquered the Pagans, and of which portions were preserved at *Wedale* in Lothian. Also in the *Roman d'Alexandre*, composed by Alexandre de Paris in the twelfth century, he makes Arthur march to the extremity of the East, and erect two golden statues, which were subsequently discovered by Alexander. See De la Rue, *Essais sur les Bardes*, vol. i. p. 35.
- P. 344, l. 7, *for* professor *read* possessor.
- P. 344, l. penult., *for* at the close of the reign of Henry the Sixth *read* in the reign of Edward the Fourth.

## GLOSSARY.

- P. 371, v. BRAUDED. Add to the reference, xxxv. 2, MS. D.
- P. 376, v. DERFLY. *Add here* DERUELY, GK. 2334, *and dele the word and reference under* DERNLY.
- P. 379, v. ESTE. *Dele this word and reference.*

N.B. The last poem in the Appendix, No. VIII. was discovered too late to be cited in the Glossary, but there are but few words of any obscurity, and most of these appear to be corrupt forms occasioned by the carelessness of the scribe, as in the case of *lute*, l. 238, and *scott*, l. 477.

THE END.

PRINTED BY RICHARD AND JOHN E. TAYLOR,  
RED LION COURT, FLEET STREET.















